Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the general and legal notices in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
Contents

Tables ........................................ v

Summary of changes .......................... vii

Chapter 1. Lenovo XClarity Administrator Overview ............................. 1
  Logging in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator ................................. 5
  User interface tips and techniques ........................................... 9
  Using the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app ....................................... 10

Chapter 2. Administering Lenovo XClarity Administrator ..................... 15
  Managing authentication and authorization .................................. 15
    Managing the authentication server ...................................... 15
    Managing user accounts .................................................. 28
    Managing stored credentials ............................................. 34
    Managing roles and role groups ........................................ 35
    Managing access to devices ............................................. 51
  Implementing a secure environment ....................................... 54
    Changing the user-account security settings ............................ 56
    Configuring cryptography settings ..................................... 58
    Working with security certificates .................................... 59
    Enabling encapsulation ................................................ 69
    Implementing NIST SP 800-131A compliance ............................ 69
  Using VMware Tools .................................................. 71
  Configuring network access ............................................. 71
  Setting the date and time ............................................. 77
  Setting inventory preferences ......................................... 79
  Setting threshold preferences for generating alerts and events ............ 80
  Setting up automatic problem notification to Lenovo Support (Call Home) ........................................... 80
  Setting up automatic problem notification to a preferred service provider ........................................... 85
  Backing up and restoring system data and settings .......................... 87
    Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator ................................ 87
    Restoring Lenovo XClarity Administrator ................................ 89
    Migrating data and settings to another Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance ........................................... 90
  Managing disk space .................................................. 93
  Managing remote shares ............................................... 94
  Changing the language of the user interface ................................ 95
  Shutting down Lenovo XClarity Administrator ................................ 95
  Restarting Lenovo XClarity Administrator ................................ 96

Chapter 3. Monitoring devices and activities ................................. 99
  Viewing a summary of your environment .................................. 99
    Viewing a summary of your hardware status ............................ 100
    Viewing a summary of your provisioning status ....................... 101
    Viewing a summary of Lenovo XClarity Administrator activity ...... 103
  Monitoring system resources ........................................... 103
  Monitoring trends in provisioning status ................................ 105
  Placing devices in maintenance mode .................................... 106
  Working with alerts .................................................. 107
    Viewing active alerts ................................................ 107
    Excluding alerts ..................................................... 111
    Resolving an alert ................................................... 112
    Acknowledging alerts ................................................ 113
  Working with events .................................................. 113
    Monitoring events in the event log ................................... 113
    Monitoring events in the audit log ................................... 115
    Resolving an event .................................................. 117
    Excluding events .................................................... 117
    Forwarding events ................................................... 118
  Working with jobs ................................................... 149
    Monitoring jobs ...................................................... 149
    Scheduling jobs ...................................................... 152
    Adding a resolution and comments to a job ............................ 154
  Viewing relationships between jobs and events ........................... 155

Chapter 4. Management considerations ........................................ 159
  Comparison between Flex System Manager and Lenovo XClarity Administrator ........................................... 159
  Migrating from Flex System Manager .................................... 161
  Using another management software in tandem with Lenovo XClarity Administrator ........................................... 162

Chapter 5. Managing resource groups ......................................... 165
  Viewing the status of devices in a resource group ....................... 165
  Viewing the members of a resource group ................................ 167
  Creating a dynamic resource group ..................................... 170
  Creating a static resource group ....................................... 172
  Removing a resource group ............................................ 173
  Modifying resource-group properties ................................... 174
Tables

1. Account Security settings. . . . . . . . . 56
2. Role of each network interface based on network topology. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 73
3. Functional comparison between Flex System Manager and XClarity Administrator. . . . 160
4. Lenovo MAC address pool . . . . . . . . . 302
5. Brocade WWN address pool . . . . . . . . . 304
6. Emulex WWN address pool . . . . . . . . . 305
7. Lenovo WWN address pool . . . . . . . . . 306
8. QLogic WWN address pool . . . . . . . . . 307
9. Port availability for RHEL Virtualization profiles . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 436
10. Port availability for RHEL Basic and Minimal profiles . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 436
11. Port availability for Windows profiles . . . . . 437
Summary of changes

Follow-on releases of Lenovo XClarity Administrator management software support new hardware, software enhancements, and fixes.

Refer to the change history file (*.chg) that is provided in the update package for information about fixes.

This version supports the following enhancements to the management software.

For information about changes in earlier releases, See What’s new in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jobs, events, and alerts</td>
<td>You can acknowledge active alerts so that they do not affect the severity status for the applicable device (see Acknowledging alerts). You can select multiple devices and put them in maintenance mode at a time (see Placing devices in maintenance mode).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device configuration</td>
<td>You can configure DNS servers, NTP servers, and user-account security settings on managed servers using configuration patterns (see Defining extended management-controller settings).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system deployment</td>
<td>The following operating system can no longer be deployed from XClarity Administrator (see Supported operating systems). • CentOS Linux 7.0 and 7.1 • Microsoft® Windows® Server 2012R1 • Red Hat® Enterprise Linux Server 6.2–6.7, 7.0, and 7.1 • SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server 11SP4 • VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) 5.1u1, 5.1u2, 5.1u3 You can use the subnetCIDRNumber macro to add the subnet mask of the host server to be used after the operating system is deployed to an unattend file or post-installation script (see Predefined macros).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware updates</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator comes with a predefined firmware-compliance policy named Latest firmware (see Creating firmware-compliance policies). You can retrieve information about and download the latest firmware-updates for all managed devices or a selected set of devices in a single step (see Downloading firmware updates). You can select the Report Non-Compliance for Firmware Without Target global setting to flag devices as non-compliant when a firmware component has no associated target in the firmware-compliance policy (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows device-driver updates</td>
<td>By default, only device drivers for managed hardware are listed. You can clear the Show Device Drivers for installed hardware global setting to instead list all device drivers in each imported UpdateXpress System Pack (see Configuring global Windows device-driver update settings).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1. Lenovo XClarity Administrator Overview

Lenovo XClarity Administrator is a centralized, resource-management solution that simplifies infrastructure management, speeds responses, and enhances the availability of Lenovo® server systems and solutions. It runs as a virtual appliance that automates discovery, inventory, tracking, monitoring, and provisioning for server, network, and storage hardware in a secure environment.

Learn more:
- XClarity Administrator: Managing hardware like software
- XClarity Administrator: Overview

XClarity Administrator provides a central interface to perform the following functions for all managed devices.

**Hardware management**

XClarity Administrator provides agent-free hardware management. It can automatically discover manageable devices, including server, network, and storage hardware. Inventory data is collected for managed devices for an at-a-glance view of the managed hardware inventory and status.

There are various management tasks for each supported device, including viewing status and properties, and configuring system and network settings, launching the management interfaces, powering on and off, and remote control. For more information about managing devices, see Managing chassis, Managing servers, and Managing switches.

**Tip:** Server, network, and storage hardware that can be managed by XClarity Administrator is referred to as devices. Hardware that is under XClarity Administrator management is referred to as managed devices.

You can use the rack view in XClarity Administrator to group your managed devices to reflect the physical rack setup in your datacenter. For more information about racks, see Managing racks.

Learn more:
- XClarity Administrator: Discovery
Hardware monitoring

XClarity Administrator provides a centralized view of all events and alerts that are generated from the managed devices. An event or alert is passed to the XClarity Administrator and is displayed in the events or alerts log. A summary of all events and alerts is visible from the Dashboard and the Status bar. Events and alerts for a specific device are available from the Alerts and Events detail page for that device.

For more information about monitoring hardware, see Working with events and Working with alerts.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

Configuration management

You can quickly provision and pre-provision all of your servers using a consistent configuration. Configuration settings (such as local storage, I/O adapters, boot settings, firmware, ports, and management controller and UEFI settings) are saved as a server pattern that can be applied to one or more managed servers. When the server patterns are updated, the changes are automatically deployed to the applied servers.

Server patterns also integrate support for virtualizing I/O addresses, so you can virtualize Flex System fabric connections or repurpose servers without disruption to the fabric.

For more information about configuring servers, see Configuring servers using configuration patterns.

Learn more:
• XClarity Administrator: Bare metal to cluster
• XClarity Administrator: Configuration patterns

Firmware compliance and updates

Firmware management is simplified by assigning firmware-compliance policies to managed devices. When you create and assign a compliance policy to managed devices, XClarity Administrator monitors changes to the inventory for those devices and flags any devices that are out of compliance.

When a device is out of compliance, you can use XClarity Administrator to apply and activate firmware updates for all devices in that device from a repository of firmware updates that you manage.

Note: Refreshing the repository and downloading firmware updates requires an Internet connection. If XClarity Administrator has no Internet connection, you can manually import firmware updates to the repository.

For more information about updating firmware, see Updating firmware on managed devices.

Learn more:
• XClarity Administrator: Bare metal to cluster
• XClarity Administrator: Firmware updates
• XClarity Administrator: Provisioning firmware security updates

Operating-system deployment

You can use XClarity Administrator to manage a repository of operating-system images and to deploy operating-system images to up to 28 servers managed servers concurrently.

For more information about deploying operating systems, see Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers.

Learn more:
User management
XClarity Administrator provides a centralized authentication server to create and manage user accounts and to manage and authenticate user credentials. The authentication server is created automatically when you start the management server for the first time. The user accounts that you create for XClarity Administrator can also be used to log in to managed chassis and servers in managed-authentication mode. For more information about users, see Managing user accounts.

XClarity Administrator supports three types of authentication servers:

* **Local authentication server.** By default, XClarity Administrator is configured to use the local authentication server that resides on the management node.

* **External LDAP server.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory is supported. This server must reside on an outboard Microsoft Windows server that is connected to the management network. When an external LDAP server is used, the local authentication server is disabled.

* **External SAML 2.0 identity provider.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) is supported. In addition to entering a user name and password, multi-factor authentication can be set up to enable additional security by requiring a PIN code, reading smart card, and client certificate.

For more information about authentication types, see Managing the authentication server.

When you create a user account, you assign a predefined or customized role group to the user account to control the level of access for that user. For more information about role groups, see Creating a custom role group.

XClarity Administrator includes an audit log that provides a historical record of user actions, such as logging on, creating new users, or changing user passwords. For more information about the audit log, see Working with events.

Device authentication
XClarity Administrator uses the following methods for authenticating with managed chassis and servers.

* **Managed authentication.** When managed authentication is enabled, the user accounts that you create in XClarity Administrator are used to authenticate managed chassis and servers.

  For more information about users, see Managing user accounts.

* **Local authentication.** When managed authentication is disabled, the stored credentials that are defined in XClarity Administrator are used to authenticate managed servers. The stored credentials must correspond to an active user account on the device or in Active Directory.

  For more information about stored credentials, see Managing stored credentials.

Security
If your environment must comply with NIST SP 800-131A standards, XClarity Administrator can help you achieve a fully compliant environment.

XClarity Administrator supports self-signed SSL certificates (which are issued by an internal certificate authority) and external SSL certificates (which are issued by a private or commercial CA).

Firewalls on chassis and servers can be configured to accept incoming requests from only XClarity Administrator.

For more information about security, see Implementing a secure environment.
Service and support
XClarity Administrator can be set up to collect and send diagnostic files automatically to your preferred service provider when certain serviceable events occur in XClarity Administrator and the managed devices. You can choose to send diagnostic files to Lenovo Support using Call Home or to another service provider using SFTP. You can also manually collect diagnostic files, open a problem record, and send diagnostic files to the Lenovo Support Center.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Service and support

Task automation using scripts
XClarity Administrator can be integrated into external, higher-level management and automation platforms through open REST application programming interfaces (APIs). Using the REST APIs, XClarity Administrator can easily integrate with your existing management infrastructure.

The PowerShell toolkit provides a library of cmdlets to automate provisioning and resource management from a Microsoft PowerShell session. The Python toolkit provides a Python-based library of commands and APIs to automate provisioning and resource management from an OpenStack environment, such as Ansible or Puppet. Both of these toolkits provide an interface to XClarity Administrator REST APIs to automate functions such as:

• Logging in to XClarity Administrator
• Managing and unmanaging chassis, servers, storage devices, and top-of-rack switches (devices)
• Collecting and viewing inventory data for devices and components
• Deploying an operating-system image to one or more servers
• Configuring servers through the use of Configuration Patterns
• Applying firmware updates to devices

Integration with other managed software
XClarity Administrator modules integrate XClarity Administrator with third-party management software to provide discovery, monitoring, configuration, and management functions to reduce the cost and complexity of routine system administration for supported devices.

For more information about XClarity Administrator, see the following documents:

• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for Microsoft System Center
• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for VMware vCenter
• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for Nutanix Prism

For additional considerations, see Using management software other than the XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Learn more:
• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for Microsoft System Center overview
• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for Nutanix
• Lenovo XClarity Integrator for VMware vCenter

Documentation
The XClarity Administrator documentation is updated regularly online in English. See the XClarity Administrator online documentation for the most current information and procedures.

The online documentation is available in the following languages:

• German (de)
• English (en)
• Spanish (es)
• French (fr)
Logging in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator

Log in to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface using a supported web browser.

Before you begin

Ensure that you are using one of the following supported web browsers:
- Chrome™ 48.0 or later (55.0 or above for Remote Console)
- Firefox® ESR 38.6.0 or later
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 11
- Microsoft Edge
- Safari® 9.0.2 or later (IOS7 or later and OS X)

**Note:** Launching the management-controller interfaces from XClarity Administrator using the Safari web browser is not supported.

Ensure that you log in to the XClarity Administrator web interface from a system that has network connectivity to XClarity Administrator management node.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to log in to the XClarity Administrator web interface.

Step 1. Point your browser to the IP address of XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** If you have Eth0 and Eth1 networks on separate subnets, and if DHCP is used on both subnets, use the Eth1 IP address when accessing the web interface for initial setup. When XClarity Administrator starts for the first time, both Eth0 and Eth1 get a DHCP-assigned IP address, and the XClarity Administrator default gateway is set to the DHCP-assigned gateway for Eth1.

**Tip:** Access to the web interface is through a secure connection. Ensure that you use https.

Using static a IPv4 address

If you specified an IPv4 address in eth0_config, use that IPv4 address to access XClarity Administrator using the following URL:
https://<IPv4_address>/ui/login.html

For example:
https://192.0.2.10/ui/login.html

Using a DHCP server in the same broadcast domain as XClarity Administrator
If a DHCP server is set up in the same broadcast domain as XClarity Administrator, use the IPv4 address that is displayed in the XClarity Administrator virtual-machine console to access XClarity Administrator using the following URL:

https://<IPv4_address>/ui/login.html

For example:
https://192.0.2.10/ui/login.html

**Using a DHCP server in a different broadcast domain as XClarity Administrator**

If a DHCP server is not set up in the same broadcast domain, use the IPv6 Link-Local Address (LLA) that is displayed for eEth0 (the management network) in the XClarity Administrator virtual-machine console to access XClarity Administrator, for example:

```markdown
------------------------------------------
Lenovo XClarity Administrator Version x.x.x
------------------------------------------
eth0 Link ethernet HWaddr 2001:db8:65:12:34:56 inet addr: 192.0.2.10 Bcast 192.0.2.55 Mask 255.255.255.0 inet6 addr: 2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3/64 Scope:Link
eth1 Link ethernet HWaddr 2001:db8:64:23:45:67 inet addr: 192.0.2.20 Bcast 192.0.2.130 Mask 255.255.255.0 inet6 addr: 2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3/64 Scope:Link
```

You have 150 seconds to change IP settings. Enter one of the following:
1. To set a static IP address for Lenovo XClarity virtual appliance eth0 port
2. To use a DHCP address for Lenovo XClarity virtual appliance eth0 port
x. To continue without changing IP settings

---

**Tip:** The IPv6 link local address (LLA) is derived from the MAC address of the interface.

**Attention:** If you are configuring XClarity Administrator remotely, you must have connectivity to the same layer 2 network. It must be accessed from a non-routed address until the initial setup is complete. Therefore, consider accessing XClarity Administrator from another VM that has connectivity to XClarity Administrator. For example, you can access XClarity Administrator from another VM on the host where XClarity Administrator is installed.

- **Firefox:**

To access the XClarity Administrator web interface from a Firefox browser, log in using the following URL. Note that brackets are required when entering IPv6 addresses.

https://[<IPv6_LLA>/ui/login.html]

For example, based on the previous example shown for Eth0, enter the following URL in your web browser:

https://[fe80:21a:64ff:fe12:3456]/ui/login.html

- **Internet Explorer:**

To access the XClarity Administrator web interface from an Internet Explorer browser, log in using the following URL. Note that brackets are required when entering IPv6 addresses.

https://[<IPv6_LLA>%25<zone_index>]/ui/login.html

where `<zone_index>` is the identifier for the Ethernet adapter that is connected to the management network from the computer on which you launched the web browser. If you are using a browser on Windows, use the `ipconfig` command to find the zone index, which is displayed after the percent sign (%) in the **Link-Local IPv6 Address** field for the adapter. In the following example, the zone index is “30.”

PS C:> ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter vEthernet (teamVirtualSwitch):

- Connection-specific DNS Suffix .
- Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . : 2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3%30
- Autoconfiguration IPv4 Address . : 192.0.2.30
- Default Gateway . . . . . . . : 

If you are using a browser on Linux, use the `ifconfig` command to find the zone index. You can also use the name of the adapter (typically Eth0) as the zone index.

For example, based on the examples shown for Eth0 and the zone index, enter the following URL in your web browser:

https://[2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3%30]/ui/login.html

The XClarity Administrator initial login page is displayed:

Step 2. Select the desired language from the Language drop-down list.

**Note:** The configuration settings and values that are provided by the managed devices might be available only in English.

Step 3. Enter a valid user ID and password, and click Log In.
The first time you log in with a user account, you are required to change the password. Passwords must meet the following criteria:

- Must contain eight or more characters with at least one number (0 - 9) and one alphabetical character (a - z, A - Z)
- Cannot contain spaces
- Cannot repeat or reverse the user name
- Cannot use more than three of the same characters consecutively
- Must contain at least two of the following combinations:
  - One uppercase alphabetical character
  - One lowercase alphabetical character
  - One of the following special characters: ; @ _ ! ' $ & +

**What to do next**

The XClarity Administrator dashboard page is displayed:

![Dashboard Page](image)

**Note:** If the host operating system is shut down unexpectedly, you might receive an authentication error when you attempt to log in to XClarity Administrator. To resolve this problem, restore XClarity Administrator from the last backup to access the management server (see **Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator**).

You can perform the following actions from the user-actions menu (ADMIN_USER) on the XClarity Administrator title bar.

- Find information about how to use XClarity Administrator in the embedded help system by clicking **Help**.
  
  The XClarity Administrator documentation is updated regularly online in English. See the [XClarity Administrator online documentation](#) for the most current information and procedures.
- View the XClarity Administrator license by clicking **License**.
- View information about the XClarity Administrator release by clicking **About**.
- Change the language of the user interface by clicking **Change language**.
- Log out of the current session by clicking **Log out**.
- Submit ideas or provide feedback about XClarity Administrator by clicking **Submit ideas** or **Submit feedback**.
- Ask questions and find answers on the Lenovo XClarity Community forum website by clicking **Visit forum**.

### User interface tips and techniques

Consider these tips and techniques when using the Lenovo XClarity Administrator user interface

**Viewing more or less data per page**

You can change the number of rows that are displayed per page using the links on the bottom right of the table. You can display **10**, **25**, **50**, or **All rows**.

**Finding data in large lists**

Most fields can accept up to 128 characters.

There are several ways to display a subset of a large list based on specific criteria.

- You can sort the table rows by clicking the column header.

  Changing the sort order of a table column is persistent across the user sessions.

- You can use the **Filter By** icons and **Show** drop-down list that is available on some pages to display a subset of data based on the selected criteria.

- You can further refine the subset by entering text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filters** field to find data that is found in any available column.

  You can choose from the past 10 searches by selecting the searches from the drop-down menu on the **Filters** field. The last active search on a page is persistent across user sessions.

**Viewing column data**

If the column size prevents all information from displaying in the table cell (indicated by an ellipsis), you can view the complete information in a popup by hovering over text in the cell.

**Configure table columns**

You can configure tables to show information that is important to you.

- You can choose which columns to show or hide by clicking **All Actions ➔ Toggle Columns**.

- You can reorder columns by dragging the column headers to the preferred location.

**Changing the language of the user interface**

You have an option to set the language of the user interface when you first log in.

After you are logged in, you can change the language of the user interface by clicking the user-actions menu( ![ADMIN_USER](image)), and then clicking **Change language**. Select the language that you want to display.

**Note:** The help system displays in the same language that is set for the user interface.

**Getting help**

XClarity Orchestrator offers several ways to get help with the user interface.
• Some pages provide additional details about a specific field or status using Help icons (Help). Hover the cursor over the icon to display a pop-up with helpful information.
• To get help about how to perform specific actions from the user interface, click the user-actions menu (Help) and then click Help.

Using the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app

Lenovo XClarity Administrator offers a mobile app for Android and iOS devices. You can use the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app to securely monitor physical systems, get real-time status alerts and notifications, and take action on common system level tasks. The app can also connect directly via an enabled USB port to a ThinkSystem server and provide virtual LCD capability.

Learn more: Lenovo XClarity Mobile app overview

Using the XClarity Mobile app, you can perform the following activities:
• Configure network settings and properties
• View the status summary of each connected XClarity Administrator.
• View the status summary of all managed devices.
• Display graphical views (maps) for chassis, rack servers, and storage devices.
• View resource groups that are defined on the XClarity Administrator.
• View rack-switch port information and change configured port status.
• Monitor the inventory and detailed status of each managed device.
• Monitor audit events, hardware and management events, alerts, and jobs.
• Turn on or off the location LED on a managed device.
• Power on, power off, restart, or reseat a managed device.
• Trigger the collection of diagnostic data.
• View device warranty information and status
• Set up automatic problem notification through Call Home.
• View the summary of open service tickets and delete service tickets
• Push event notifications to your mobile device (see Forwarding events to mobile devices).
• View the summary of active users and system resource usage
• Send feedback about this mobile app to Lenovo Support.
• Connect your mobile device directly to a ThinkSystem server to manage the server using the XClarity Mobile app (for devices that support USB tethering).
• Download Lenovo XClarity Controller service data when the mobile device is connected to a ThinkSystem server.

You can also connect your mobile device directly to ThinkSystem servers and then launch the XClarity Mobile app and log in to the server’s baseboard management controller using the same web and CLI credentials. A menu of additional information and actions is available, including:
• Service
  – Share summary information using email or other means that is provided by the mobile device
  – Clear the event and audit log
  – Download the event and audit log to the mobile-device local storage or transmitting the log by any means that is provided by the mobile device
  – Download the BMC FFDC service file to the mobile-device local storage or transmitting the file by any means that is provided by the mobile device
  – View historical graph data for power, thermal and system usage
  – Enable “One-Touch” service mode, which provides an immediate summary of active alerts and critical device information
• Configuration and Initial Setup
  – Manage a new device using the selected XClarity Administrator
  – Configure server properties, such as location and contact information for initial setup
- View and changing the IPv4 and IPv6 BMC network interface settings
- Specify boot order and one-time boot settings
- Change the front panel USB port assignment
- View the number of server reboots and total power on hours

• Power Actions
  - Power the server on or off, restarting the server, or triggering NMI
  - Reset the BMC

Tip: After the app is open, you must refresh the app to see the updated status, inventory, events, and jobs.

Prerequisites
• iOS tablets are supported at iPhone screen-resolution only. Android tablets are not currently supported.
• The following mobile operating systems are supported:
  - Android 7 – 9
  - iOS 10 and later

Notes:
- Android 5 is supported only for XClarity Mobile 2.3.0 and earlier.
- iOS 8 is supported only for XClarity Mobile v1.3.0 and earlier.
- iOS 9 is supported only for XClarity Mobile v1.3.1 and earlier.
- Facial recognition that is used on iPhone X/XR/XS devices is not supported.
• XClarity Mobile can connect to XClarity Administrator 1.2.1 or later.
• Ensure that a network connection is available from your mobile device to the XClarity Administrator instances. This might require the use of a VPN solution. See your network administrator for assistance.
• Import the CA certificate for each XClarity Administrator instance.

Important: All connections to XClarity Administrator use HTTPS. However, there must be a valid certificate chain before the connection is considered trusted and data can be passed to the mobile device. To create a trusted certificate chain, you must import the XClarity Administrator self-signed certificate authority (CA) into the mobile device.

To import the self-signed CA certificate for each XClarity Administrator instance into the mobile device, complete the following steps.

1. Download the CA certificate to a local system:
   a. Connect to the XClarity Administrator instance using a web browser on your local system.
   b. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security to display the Security page.
   c. Click Certificate Authority under the Certificate Management section. The Certificate Authority page is displayed.
   d. Click Download Certificate Authority Root Certificate.

      Attention: Normally, it is not necessary to click Regenerate Certificate Authority Root Certificate to complete this process. Doing so might disrupt communication with managed devices unless the correct procedure is followed. For more information, see Working with security certificates.

   e. Click Save as der or Save as pem to save the CA certificate as a DER or PEM file on your local system. PEM format works in most cases.

2. Transfer the CA certificate file to your mobile device, for example, by using an accessible storage repository (such as Dropbox™), email, or file transfer through a connected cable.
3. Import the trusted CA certificate:

   - (Android) Typically this is done by selecting Settings → Security → Install from phone storage, and then selecting the certificate file that you downloaded.

     **Important:** If your successfully installed CA certificate is not signed by a third party, the Network may be monitored by an unknown third-party message is displayed on Android devices. Because the CA certificate is generated in your trusted environment, this message can be safely ignored. Ensure that the message is for the XClarity Administrator CA certificate before ignoring the message.

   - (iOS) Open the email on your mobile device, and click the document link in the email to import the trusted CA certificate.

     **Attention:** For iOS 10.3 and later, imported certificates are not trusted by default. To trust the certificates, select Settings → General → About → Certificate Trust Settings, and then enable the certificate trust.

### Installing and setting up

1. Download the XClarity Mobile app from iTunes App Store (iOS) or Google Play Store (Android).

   **Note:** Users in China can also download the Android version from Lenovo app store (乐商城), Baidu app store website (百度手机助手) or Tencent app store website (应用宝). After logging in to the website, search for “XClarity.”

2. To install the app, follow instructions on the mobile device.

   **Important:** A mobile OS-level security code to unlock screen access is required to use the XClarity Mobile app. If one is not already set up, you are instructed to set one up during installation.

3. Click Settings to add or edit connections to multiple XClarity Administrator instances using the automatic discovery or by providing an IP address and user credentials, set a PIN code for the app, change the event and audit log settings, and select your preferred language.

   **Important:** For Android devices, XClarity Mobile app v2.1.0 and earlier is not automatically updated to v2.2.0. You must manually uninstall the current XClarity Mobile app before installing v2.2.0 (see “Resolving issues” for more information).

### Updating to XClarity Mobile app v3.0

XClarity Mobile app v3.0 has upgrades to the most modern technologies with emphasis on performance and security. This includes changes to the local storage model, which requires you to reconfigure some settings when updating to the latest app:

- Connections to XClarity Administrator instances (IP addresses or hostnames, user name, and password)
- Security settings, including your four-digit passcode and fingerprint authentication, if applicable
- Language setting (English is the default)

### Connecting directly to ThinkSystem servers

Lenovo Think System servers include a front panel USB port that you can use to connect to your mobile device to provide similar capabilities that were available on the LCD system-information display panel on other Lenovo servers.

To manage a ThinkSystem server by directly connecting to server, complete these steps.

1. Switch the server front panel USB from host to BMC by performing one of the following steps.
   a. From the management controller CLI, run the `usbfp` command
   b. From the management controller web interface, click BMC Configuration → Network → Front Panel USB Port Management.
c. Hold the blue ID location LED on the front panel for at least 3 seconds until the light blinks every couple of seconds.

2. Connect your phone USB cable to the front panel USB port on the ThinkSystem server.

3. On your mobile device, enable USB tethering.
   a. For iOS, click Settings → Cellular → Personal Hotspot.
   b. For Android, click Settings → Mobile hotspot and tethering → USB tethering.

4. On your mobile device, launch the XClarity Mobile app.

5. If automatic discovery is disabled, click Discovery on the USB Discovery page to connect to the server’s management controller and collect information, including inventory, health, firmware, network configuration, and a list of the latest active events.

Tip:
• Ensure that you use a high-quality USB cable that supports data and power. Be aware that some cables that are supplied with mobile devices are only for charging purposes.

Note: To connect to ThinkSystem SD530, you must also use a high-quality micro USB to USB cable or adapter.
• The USB-attached server must be powered on to report the full set of voltage, temperature, and usage statistics in the summary status cards.
• If the USB-attached server does not have an external “blue identification” LED/button on the front panel, you must use the management controller web interface or CLI to change the front panel USB port management selection, if needed.
• Changes made to the management-controller network interface from the XClarity Mobile app take effect immediately without requiring management controller to be restarted. For example, if the IPv4 interface is changed from a static address to DHCP, the interface immediately obtains a DHCP assigned address.
• On the Newsfeed tab, the “Latest active events” card initially displays up to three active events that are listed on the management controller’s Active Events tab. On the mobile app, if you tap that card, all of the active events are displayed. Note that this is a list of active and resolved events, not a full list of all events.
• When using the XClarity Mobile app v1.3.2 to connect to XClarity Administrator v1.3.0 and later, some data that is received from the XClarity Administrator (such as event logs) might not be fully translated in supported languages.

Using demonstration mode
You can enable Demonstration Mode on the Settings page to populate the XClarity Mobile app with demo data for two XClarity Administrator instances, including racks and chassis. In this mode, you can view the status summary of the XClarity Administrator instances, view detailed status and inventory of devices, and monitor events and alerts. However, management actions, such as powering on and off, are not supported.

Notes:
• You can enable demonstration mode only when there are no connections to actual XClarity Administrator instances.
• You cannot add connections to actual XClarity Administrator instances while demonstration mode is enabled.

Searching
You can use the Search field to display managed devices with a specific name or status (Critical, Warning, or Normal). For example, if you search for “crit,” only managed devices in the Critical status and with names that include “crit” are displayed.
Resolving issues

Installation issues:

- Typically, when a new version of the Android mobile app is posted to the app store, the app automatically updated on your mobile device. However, due to enhanced security measures, the newly released mobile app v2.2.0 is no longer updated automatically. This is a one-time “transition” issue and only affects the upgrade to v2.2.0. Subsequent updates will operate as expected.

The Android mobile app is “signed” with a secure key to enhance security. The secure key size was increased in the new release. Because the signed app does not match the earlier app’s signature, the Android installation security process prevents the automatic update.

To update the mobile app, uninstall the current version of the mobile app, download the latest version of the Android app from the app store, and reinstall the app. On most Android devices, the app can be uninstalled using the Settings ➔ Applications ➔ Application Manager menu item.

Connectivity issues:

- XClarity Mobile requires an available network connection from your mobile device to the XClarity Administrator instances. This might require the use of a VPN solution. See your network administrator for assistance.

- Connections from your mobile device to each XClarity Administrator instance require a trusted certificate chain. See the online documentation for instructions to download and install the trusted CA certificates on your mobile device.

If your successfully installed CA certificate is not signed by a third party, the Network may be monitored by an unknown third-party message is displayed. Because the CA certificate is generated in your trusted environment, this message can be safely ignored. Ensure that the message is for the XClarity Administrator CA certificate before ignoring the message.

- When switching your mobile device from a virtual private network (VPN) to a local network or vice versa, you might see the message The secure gateway has rejected the connection attempt. A new connection attempt to the same or other secure gateway is needed, which requires reauthentication. Log on to Lenovo XClarity Mobile to continue using the app.

Security issues:

- If you forget your PIN code, uninstall and reinstall the XClarity Mobile app. Then, re-establish all connections.

- If you clear credentials on an Android device, the encryption key is erased. You must re-establish all connections.

Event issues:

- By default, the event log shows hardware and management events that were received in the last 24 hours, and the audit log shows audit events that were received in the last 2 hours. If no events were received during the selected time periods, then the event log and audit log are not shown on the Monitoring page in XClarity Mobile.

- If you set up event forwarding in XClarity Administrator to send events to an email account, links in the email might not work on Android devices. Ensure that your version of Android and your email app support hyperlinks. If hyperlinks are unsupported, use another email app.

Help system issues:

- On some devices, the help system does not scale correctly to the size of the screen. Use the help-system controls to maximize and then minimize the page.
Chapter 2. Administering Lenovo XClarity Administrator

Several administration tasks, such as adding users or viewing jobs, are available from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Managing authentication and authorization

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides security mechanisms to verify a user’s credentials and control access to resources and tasks.

Managing the authentication server

By default, Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses a local Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server to authenticate user credentials.

About this task

Supported authentication servers

The authentication server is a user registry that is used to authenticate user credentials. Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports three types of authentication servers:

- **Local authentication server.** By default, XClarity Administrator is configured to use the embedded Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server that resides in the management server.
- **External LDAP server.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory and OpenLDAP are supported. This server must reside on an outboard Microsoft Windows server that is connected to the management network. When an external LDAP server is used, the local authentication server is disabled.

  **Attention:** To configure the Active Directory binding method to use login credentials, the baseboard management controller for each managed server must be running firmware from September 2016 or later.

- **External SAML identity provider.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) is supported. In addition to entering a user name and password, multi-factor authentication can be set up to enable additional security by requiring a PIN code, reading smart card, and client certificate. When an SAML identity provider is used, the local authentication server is not disabled. Local user accounts are required to log in directly to a managed chassis or server (unless Encapsulation is enabled on that device), for PowerShell and REST API authentication, and for recovery if external authentication is not available.

  You can choose to use both an external LDAP server and an external identity provider. If both are enabled, the external LDAP server is used to log in directly to the manage devices, and the identity provider is used to log in to the management server.

Device authentication

By default, devices are managed using XClarity Administrator managed authentication to log in to the devices. When managing rack servers and Lenovo chassis, you can choose to use local authentication or managed authentication to log in to the devices.

- When **local authentication** is used for rack servers, Lenovo chassis, and Lenovo rack switches, XClarity Administrator uses a stored credential to authenticate to the device. The stored credential can be an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server.

  You must create a stored credential in XClarity Administrator that matches an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server before managing the device using local authentication (see Managing stored credentials in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).
Note: RackSwitch devices support only stored credentials for authentication. XClarity Administrator user credentials are not supported.

- Using managed authentication allows you to manage and monitor multiple devices using credentials in the XClarity Administrator authentication server instead of local credentials. When managed authentication is used for a device (other than ThinkServer servers, System x M4 servers, and switches), XClarity Administrator configures the device and its installed components to use the XClarity Administrator authentication server for centralized management.

  - When managed authentication is enabled, you can manage devices using either manually-entered or stored credentials (see Managing user accounts and in the XClarity Administrator online documentation). The stored credential is used only until XClarity Administrator configures the LDAP settings on the device. After that, any change to the stored credential has no impact the management or monitoring of that device.

Note: When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.

- If a local or external LDAP server is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, user accounts that are defined in the authentication server are used to log in to XClarity Administrator, CMMs and baseboard management controllers in the XClarity Administrator domain. Local CMM and management controller user accounts are disabled.

- If an SAML 2.0 identity provider is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, SAML accounts are not accessible to managed devices. However, when using an SAML identity provider and an LDAP server together, if the identity provider uses accounts that exist in the LDAP server, LDAP user accounts can be used to log into the managed devices while the more advanced authentication methods that are provided by SAML 2.0 (such as multifactor authentication and single sign-on) can be used to log into XClarity Administrator.

- When managed authentication is enabled for ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers:

  - Baseboard management-controller firmware supports up to five LDAP user roles. XClarity Administrator adds these LDAP user roles to the servers during management: lxc-supervisor, lxc-sysmgr, lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, and lxc-os-admin. Users must be assigned to at least one of the specified LDAP user roles to communicate with ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers.

  - Management-controller firmware does not support LDAP users with the same username as local user of the server.

- For ThinkServer and System x M4 servers, the XClarity Administrator authentication server is not used. Instead, an IPMI account is created on the device with the prefix “LXCA_” followed by a random string. (The existing local IPMI user accounts are not disabled.) When you unmanage a ThinkServer server, the “LXCA_” user account is disabled, and the prefix “LXCA_” is replaced with the prefix “DISABLED_”. To determine whether a ThinkServer server is managed by another instance, XClarity Administrator checks for IPMI accounts with the prefix “LXCA_”. If you choose to force management of a managed ThinkServer server, all the IPMI accounts on the device with the “LXCA_” prefix are disabled and renamed. Consider manually clearing IPMI accounts that are no longer used.

  In XClarity Administrator v2.4 and later, if you use manually-entered credentials, XClarity Administrator automatically creates a stored credential and uses that stored credential to manage the device.

Notes: When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.

- Each time you manage a device using manually-entered credentials, a new stored credential is created for that device, even if another stored credential was created for that device during a previous management process.
When you unmanage a device, XClarity Administrator does not delete stored credentials there were automatically created for that device during the management process.

**Recovery account**

If you specify a recovery password, XClarity Administrator disables the local CMM or management-controller user account and creates a new recovery user account (RECOVERY_ID) on the device for future authentication. If the management server fails, you can use the RECOVERY_ID account to log in to the device to take recovery actions to restore account-management functions on the device until the management node is restored or replaced.

If you unmanage a device that has a RECOVERY_ID user account, all local user accounts are enabled, and the RECOVERY_ID account is deleted.

- If you change the disabled local user accounts (for example, if you change a password), the changes have no effect on the RECOVERY_ID account. In managed-authentication mode, the RECOVERY_ID account is the only user account that is activated and operational.
- Use the RECOVERY_ID account only in an emergency, for example, if the management server fails or if a network problem prevents the device from communicating with XClarity Administrator to authenticate users.
- The RECOVERY_ID password is specified when you discover the device. Ensure that you record the password for later use.

For information about recovering a device management, see “Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure” on page 202 and “Recovering rack or tower server management after a management server failure” on page 244.

**Setting up an external LDAP authentication server**

You can choose to use an external LDAP authentication server instead of the local Lenovo XClarity Administrator authentication server on the management node.

**Before you begin**

The initial setup of XClarity Administrator must be completed before setting up the external authentication server.

The following external authentication servers are supported:

- OpenLDAP
- Microsoft Active Directory. It must reside on an outboard Microsoft Windows server that is connected to the management network, data network, or both

Ensure that all ports that are required for the external authentication server are open on the network and firewalls. For information about port requirements, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

You must create or rename role groups in the local authentication server to match the groups that are defined in the external authentication server.

Ensure that there are one or more users with lxc-recovery authority in the local authentication server. You can use this local user account to authenticate directly to XClarity Administrator when a communication error occurs with the external LDAP server.
**Note:** When XClarity Administrator is configured to use an external authentication server, the Users Management page in the XClarity Administrator web interface is disabled.

**Attention:** For Active Directory, to configure the binding method to use login credentials, the baseboard management controller for each managed server must be running firmware from September 2016 or later.

XClarity Administrator performs a connectivity check every 5 minutes to maintain connectivity to configured external LDAP servers. Environments with many LDAP servers might experience high CPU usage during this connectivity check. To achieve the best performance, ensure that most or all of the LDAP servers in the domain are reachable, or set the authentication-server selection method to **Use Pre-Configured Servers** and specify only known, reachable LDAP servers.

**Procedure**
To configure XClarity Administrator to use an external authentication server, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Set up the user-authentication method for Microsoft Active Directory or OpenLDAP.

- If you choose to use non-secure authentication, no additional configuration is required. The Windows Active Directory or OpenLDAP domain controllers use non-secure LDAP authentication by default.

- If you choose to use secure LDAP authentication, you must set up the domain controllers to allow secure LDAP authentication. For more information about setting configuring secure LDAP authentication in Active Directory, see the [LDAP over SSL (LDAPS) Certificate article on the Microsoft TechNet website](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/previous-versions/windows/it-pro/windows-server-2008-R2-and-2008/ff793348(v=ws.10)).

  To verify that the Active Directory domain controllers are configured to use secure LDAP authentication:
  - Look for the **LDAP over Secure Sockets layer (SSL) is now available** event in the domain controllers Event Viewer window.
  - Use the **ldp.exe** Windows tool to test secure LDAP connectivity with the domain controllers.

**Step 2.** Import the Active Directory or OpenLDAP server certificate or the root certificate of the certificate authority that signed the server certificate.

  a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security**.
  b. Click **Trusted Certificates** in the Certificate Management section.
  c. Click the **Create** icon to add a certificate.
  d. Browse for the file or paste the PEM-formatted certificate text.
  e. Click **Create**.

**Step 3.** Configure the XClarity Administrator LDAP client:

  a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security**.
  b. Click **LDAP Client** under the Users and Groups section to display the LDAP Client Settings dialog.
c. Fill in the dialog based on the following criteria.

1. Select one of these user-authentication methods:
   - **Allow logons from local users.** Authentication is performed using the local authentication. When this option is selected, all user accounts exist in the local authentication server on the management node.
• **Allow logons from LDAP users.** Authentication is performed by an external LDAP server. This method enables remote management of user accounts. When this option is selected, all user accounts exist remotely in an external LDAP server.

• **Allow local users first, then LDAP users.** The local authentication server performs the authentication first. If that fails, an external LDAP server performs the authentication.

• **Allow LDAP users first, then local users.** An external LDAP server performs the authentication first. If that fails, the local authentication server performs the authentication.

2. Choose whether to enable or disable secure LDAP:

• **Enable secure LDAP.** XClarity Administrator uses the LDAPS protocol to connect securely to the external authentication server. When this option is selected, you must also configure trusted certificates for the purpose of enabling secure LDAP support.

• **Disable secure LDAP.** XClarity Administrator uses an unsecure protocol to connect to the external authentication server. If you choose this setting, your hardware might be more vulnerable to security attacks.

3. Select one of these server-selection methods:

• **Use Pre-Configured Servers.** XClarity Administrator uses the specified IP addresses and ports to discover the external authentication server.

  If you select this option, specify up to four pre-configured server IP addresses and ports. The LDAP client attempts to authenticate using the first server address. If authentication fails, the LDAP client attempts to authenticate using the next server IP address.

  If the port number for an entry is not explicitly set to 3268 or 3269, the entry is assumed to identify a domain controller.

  When the port number is set to 3268 or 3269, the entry is assumed to identify a global catalog. The LDAP client attempts to authenticate using the domain controller for the first configured server IP address. If this fails, the LDAP client attempts to authenticate using the domain controller for the next server IP address.

  **Important:** At least one domain controller must be specified, even if the global catalog is specified. Specifying only the global catalog seems to be successful but is not a valid configuration.

  When the cryptography mode is set to NIST-800-131A, XClarity Administrator might not be able to connect to an external LDAP server using a secure port (for example, using LDAPS over default port 636) if the LDAP server is not capable of establishing a Transport Layer Security (TLS) version 1.2 connection with the LDAP client in XClarity Administrator.

• **Use DNS to find LDAP Servers.** XClarity Administrator uses the specified domain name or forest name to discover the external authentication server dynamically. The domain name and forest name are used to obtain a list of domain controllers, and the forest name is used to obtain a list of global catalog servers.

  **Attention:** When using DNS to find LDAP servers, ensure that the user account to be used to authenticate to the external authentication server is hosted on specified domain controllers. If the user account is hosted on a child domain controller, include the child domain controller in the service request list.

4. Select one of these binding methods:

• **Configured Credentials.** Use this binding method to use the client name and password to bind XClarity Administrator to the external authentication server. If the bind fails, the authentication process also fails.
The client name can be any name that the LDAP server supports, including a distinguished name, AMAccountName, NetBIOS name, or UserPrincipalName. The client name must be a user account within the domain that has at least read-only privileges. For example:

```
cn=administor,cn=users,dc=example,dc=com
example\administor
administor@example.com
```

**Attention:** If you change the client password in the external authentication server, ensure that you also updated the new password in XClarity Administrator. For more information, see [Cannot log in to XClarity Administrator](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- **Login Credentials.** Use this binding method to use an Active Directory or OpenLDAP user name and password to bind XClarity Administrator to the external authentication server.

  The user ID and password that you specify are used only to test the connection to the authentication server. If successful, the LDAP client settings are saved, but the test login credential that you specified are not save. All future binds use the user name and password that you used to log in to XClarity Administrator.

**Notes:**

- You must be logged in to XClarity Administrator using a fully-qualified user ID (for example, administor@domain.com or DOMAIN\administor).
- You must use a fully qualified test client name for the binding method.

**Attention:** To configure the binding method to use login credentials, the management controller for each managed server must be running firmware from September 2016 or later.

5. In the **Root DN** field, it is recommended that you do not specify a root distinguished name, especially for environments with multiple domains. When this field is blank, XClarity Administrator queries the external authentication server for the naming contexts. If you use DNS to discover the external authentication server or if you specify multiple servers (for example, dc=example,dc=com), you can optionally specify the top-most entry in your LDAP directory tree. In this case, searches are started using the specified root distinguished name as the search base.

6. Specify the attribute to use to search for the user name.

   When the binding method is set to **Configured Credentials**, the initial bind to the LDAP server is followed by a search request that retrieves specific information about the user, including the user’s DN, login permissions, and group membership. This search request must specify the attribute name that represents the user IDs on that server. This attribute name is configured in this field. If this field is left blank, the default is **cn**.

7. Specify the attribute name that is used to identify the groups to which a user belongs. If this field is left blank, the attribute name in the filter defaults to **memberOf**.

8. Specify the attribute name that is used to identify the group name that is configured by the LDAP server. If this field is left blank, the default is **uid**.

d. **Click** [Apply](#).

The XClarity Administrator attempts to test the configuration to detect common errors. If the test fails, error messages are displayed that indicate the source of the errors. If the test succeeds and connections to the specified servers complete successfully, user authentication might still fail if:
- A local user with `lxc-recovery` authority does not exist.
- The root distinguished name is incorrect.
- The user is not a member of at least one group in the external authentication server that matches the name of a role group on the XClarity Administrator authentication server. XClarity Administrator cannot detect whether the root DN is correct; however, it can detect whether a user is a member of at least one group. If a user is not a member of at least one group, an error message is displayed when the user attempts to log in to XClarity Administrator. For more information about troubleshooting issues with the external authentication servers, see Connectivity Issues in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Step 4. Create an external user account that can access XClarity Administrator:

a. From the external authentication server, create a user account. For instructions, see the Active Directory or OpenLDAP documentation.

b. Create an Active Directory or OpenLDAP global group with the name of a predefined and authorized group. The group must exist within the context of the root distinguished name that is defined in the LDAP client.

c. Add the Active Directory or OpenLDAP user as a member of the security group that you created previously.

d. Log on to XClarity Administrator using the Active Directory or OpenLDAP user name.

e. **Optional:** Define and create additional groups. You can authorize these groups and assign roles to them from the Users and Groups page.

f. If secure LDAP is enabled, import trusted certificates to the external LDAP server (see Installing a customized, externally signed server certificate).

**Results**

XClarity Administrator validates the LDAP server connection. If the validation passes, user authentication occurs on the external authentication server when you log in to XClarity Administrator, CMM, and management controller.

If the validation fails, the authentication mode is automatically changed back to the **Allow logons from local users** setting, and a message that explains the cause of the failure is displayed.

**Note:** The correct role groups must be configured in XClarity Administrator, and user accounts must be defined as member of one of those role groups on the Active Directory server. Otherwise, user authentication fails.

**Setting up an external SAML identity provider**

You can choose to use a Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) 2.0 identity provider to perform authentication and authorization for Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

The initial setup of XClarity Administrator must be completed before setting up the identity provider.

The identity provider must be Microsoft Active Directory Federated Service (AD FS) and can be connected to either the management network, data network, or both. Because authentication is done through your web browser, your web browser must be able to access XClarity Administrator and the SAML server.
You can download IDP metadata using the following URL: \url{https://<ADFS_IP_Address>/federationmetadata/2007-06/federationmetadata.xml}, where <ADFS_IP_Address> is the IP address for AD FS (for example, \url{https://10.192.0.0/federationmetadata/2007-06/federationmetadata.xml}).

You must create or rename role groups in the location authentication server to match the groups that are defined in the external authentication server.

To set up an SAML identity provider, you must be logged in as a user that is a member of the \texttt{lxc\_admin} or \texttt{lxc\_supervisor} group.

\section*{About this task}

XClarity Administrator supports using a Security Assertion Markup Language 2.0 identity provider to authenticate and authorize users. In addition to entering a user name and password, the identity provider can be set up to require additional criteria to validate a user’s identity, such as entering a PIN code, reading a smart card, and authenticating using a client certificate.

When XClarity Administrator is set up to use a identity provider, interactive login requests from the XClarity Administrator web interface are redirected to the identity provider for authentication. After the user is authenticated, the web browser is redirected back to XClarity Administrator.

\textbf{Note:} If the identity provider is enabled, you can bypass the identity provider and log in to XClarity Administrator using the local or external LDAP authentication server by opening your web browser to the XClarity Administrator login page (for example, \url{https://<ip_address>/ui/login.htm}).

When XClarity Administrator is configured to use an identity provider profile, the Users Management page in the XClarity Administrator web interface is not disabled. Local user accounts are required to directly log in to a managed chassis or server (except when Encapsulation is enabled on that device) and for PowerShell and REST API authentication.

\section*{Procedure}

Complete the following steps to set up an external SAML identity provider (AD FS).

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Step 1.} Create a recovery user account that can be used to log in to XClarity Administrator if the identity provider becomes unavailable (see Managing user accounts).
  \item \textbf{Step 2.} Retrieve the identity provider (IDP) metadata from the identity provider, and save the file on the XClarity Administrator host.
  \item \textbf{Step 3.} Configure the XClarity Administrator SAML client.
    \begin{itemize}
      \item From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click \texttt{Administration $\rightarrow$ Security}.
      \item Click \texttt{SAML Settings} under the Users and Groups section to display the SAML Settings dialog.
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
c. Fill in the fields on the SAML Settings page:

1. Verify that the entity ID matches the IP address of the XClarity Administrator management server.
2. Choose whether the generated metadata is to be digitally signed.
3. Choose whether authentication requests are to be signed.
4. Choose whether authentication responses must be signed.
5. Choose whether the artifact-resolution requests that are sent to the remote identity provider must be signed.
6. Paste the SAML identity provider (IDP) metadata that was generated by the identity provider and retrieved in step 2 on page 23 into the IDP Metadata field.

d. Click Apply to apply the changes and update the text in the SP Metadata field.

Attention: Do not select SAML Enabled at this point. You will enable SAML in a later step to restart XClarity Administrator.
e. Copy and paste the data in the SP Metadata field to a file, and save the file with the .XML extension (for example, sp_metadata.xml). Copy this file to the AD FS host.

Step 4. Configure AD FS.
   a. Open the AD FS Management tool.
   b. Click ADFS ➔ Relying Party Trusts.
   c. Right click Relying Party Trusts, then click Add Relying Party Trust to display the wizard
   d. Click Start
   e. On the Select Data Source page, select Import data about the relying party from a file, and then select the SP metadata file that you saved in step 3e.
   f. Enter a display name.
   g. Click Next on all pages to choose the default values.
   h. Click Finish to display the Claim Rules page
   i. Leave Send LDAP Attributes as Claims as default, and click Next.
   j. Enter a claim rule name.
   k. Select Active Directory for the attribute store.
   l. Add a mapping. On the left side select SAM-Account-Name, and on the right side, select Name ID for the outgoing claim type.
   m. Add another mapping. On the left side, select Token-Groups-Unqualified Names, and on the right side select Group for the outgoing claim type
   n. Click OK.
   o. Locate the trust that you just created in the list of Relying Party Trusts.
   p. Right-click the trust, and click Select properties. The trust Properties dialog is displayed.
   q. Click the Advanced tab, and select SHA-1 as the secure hash algorithm.

Step 5. Save the server certificate from AD FS.
   a. Click AD FS console ➔ Service ➔ Certificates.
   b. Select the Certificate under Token-signing.
   c. Right-click the certificate, and click View Certificate.
   d. Click the Details tab.
   e. Click Copy to File, and save the certificate as a DER encoded binary X.509 (.CER ) file.
   f. Copy the server certificate .CER file to the XClarity Administrator host.

Step 6. Import the AD FS trusted certificate into XClarity Administrator web interface.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security.
   b. Click Trusted Certificates in the Certificate Management section.
   c. Click the Create icon ( ) to add a certificate.
   d. Select the server certificate .CER file that you saved in the previous step.
   e. Click Create.

Step 7. Click SAML Settings under the Users and Groups section to display the SAML Settings dialog.

Step 8. Select SAML Enabled to enable management of user accounts using an external identity provider. When this option is selected, all user accounts exist remotely in an identity provider.

Step 9. Click Apply to apply the changes and restart the management server.

Step 10. Wait a few minutes for XClarity Administrator to restart.
Attention: Do not restart the virtual appliance manually during this process.

Step 11. Close and reopen the web browser.

Step 12. Log in to the XClarity Administrator web interface from the identity provider.

Results

The XClarity Administrator attempts to test the configuration to detect common errors. If the test fails, error messages are displayed that indicate the source of the errors.

XClarity Administrator validates the identity provider connection. If the validation passes, user authentication occurs on the identity provider when you log in to XClarity Administrator.

Determining the type of authentication method that is used by Lenovo XClarity Administrator

You can determine the type of authentication method that is used currently from the LDAP Client and SAML Settings tabs on the Security page.

About this task

The authentication server is a user registry that is used to authenticate user credentials. Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports three types of authentication servers:

- **Local authentication server.** By default, XClarity Administrator is configured to use the embedded Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server that resides in the management server.

- **External LDAP server.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory and OpenLDAP are supported. This server must reside on an outboard Microsoft Windows server that is connected to the management network. When an external LDAP server is used, the local authentication server is disabled.

  **Attention:** To configure the Active Directory binding method to use login credentials, the baseboard management controller for each managed server must be running firmware from September 2016 or later.

- **External SAML identity provider.** Currently, only Microsoft Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) is supported. In addition to entering a user name and password, multi-factor authentication can be set up to enable additional security by requiring a PIN code, reading smart card, and client certificate. When an SAML identity provider is used, the local authentication server is not disabled. Local user accounts are required to log in directly to a managed chassis or server (unless Encapsulation is enabled on that device), for PowerShell and REST API authentication, and for recovery if external authentication is not available.

  You can choose to use both an external LDAP server and an external identity provider. If both are enabled, the external LDAP server is used to log in directly to the manage devices, and the identity provider is used to log in to the management server.

Procedure

To determine the type of authentication server that is being used by the management software, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security.**

Step 2. Click **LDAP Client** under the Users and Groups section to display the LDAP Client Settings dialog.

Verify which user-authentication method is selected:

- **Allow logons from local users.** Authentication is performed using the local authentication.
  When this option is selected, all user accounts exist in the local authentication server on the management node.
• **Allow logons from LDAP users.** Authentication is performed by an external LDAP server. This method enables remote management of user accounts. When this option is selected, all user accounts exist remotely in an external LDAP server.

• **Allow local users first, then LDAP users.** The local authentication server performs the authentication first. If that fails, an external LDAP server performs the authentication.

• **Allow LDAP users first, then local users.** An external LDAP server performs the authentication first. If that fails, the local authentication server performs the authentication.

**Step 3.** Click **SAML Settings** under the Users and Groups section to display the SAML Settings page.

If **SAML Enabled** is selected, then a identity provider is used.

**Accessing Lenovo XClarity Administrator after an external LDAP server failure**

If you are using an external LDAP authentication server and that server fails or is not available, use the following procedure to recover access to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface by using the local authentication server on the management node.

**Procedure**

To change the LDAP client setting, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Log in to the XClarity Administrator web interface using a user account with `lxc-recovery` authority. For more information about the client domain name, see Setting up an external LDAP authentication server.

**Step 2.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security.**

**Step 3.** Click **LDAP Client** under the Users and Groups section to display the LDAP Client dialog.

**Step 4.** Select **Allow logons from local users** for the user authentication method to enable local management of user accounts. When this option is selected, all user accounts exist locally on the management server.

**Step 5.** Click **Apply.**

**Results**

You can now use the user accounts in the local authentication server to access the XClarity Administrator management server. After your external authentication server is restored and available to the management server, you can change the LDAP client setting back to the external authentication server.

**Accessing Lenovo XClarity Administrator after an external SAML identity provider failure**

If you are using an external SAML identity provider and that server fails or is not available, use the following procedure to recover access to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface by using the XClarity Administrator local authentication server.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to change the SAML client setting.

**Step 1.** Open your web browser to the XClarity Administrator login page (for example, `https://<ip_address>/ui/login.html`).

**Step 2.** Log in to the XClarity Administrator web interface using a local recovery user account that you created when you set up the identity provider.

**Step 3.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security.**

**Step 4.** Click **SAML Settings** under the Users and Groups section to display the SAML Settings dialog.
Step 5. Clear Enable SAML to disable the SAML identity provider. When this option is cleared, the local authentication server or external LDAP server (if configured) is used for authentication.

Step 6. Click Apply.

Results

You can now use the user accounts in the local authentication server to access the XClarity Administrator management server. After your external identity provider is restored and available to the management server, you can change the authentication method to the identity provider.

Managing user accounts

User accounts are used to log in and manage Lenovo XClarity Administrator and all chassis and servers that are managed by XClarity Administrator. XClarity Administrator user accounts are subjected to two interdependent processes: authentication and authorization.

About this task

Authentication is the security mechanism by which a user’s credentials are verified. The authentication process uses the user credentials that are stored in the configured authentication server. It also prevents unauthorized management servers or rogue managed-system applications from accessing the resources. After authentication, a user can access XClarity Administrator. However, to access a specific resource or perform a specific task, the user must also have the appropriate authorization.

Authorization checks the permissions of the authenticated user and controls access to resources based on the users’ membership in a role group. Role groups are used to assign specific roles to a set of user accounts that are defined and managed in the authentication server. For example, if a user is a member of a role group that has Supervisor permissions, that user can create, edit, and delete user accounts from XClarity Administrator. If a user has Operator permissions, that user can only view user-account information.

Creating a user

User accounts are used to manage authorization and access to resources.

About this task

The first user account that you create must have the role of Supervisor and must be activated (enabled).

As an added measure of security, create at least two user accounts that have the role of Supervisor. Ensure that you record the passwords for these user accounts, and store them in a secure location in case you must restore the Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

To add a user to XClarity Administrator, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security.

Step 2. Click Local Users under the Users and Groups section to display the Users Management page.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ) to create a user. The Create New User dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Fill in the following information in the dialog.

- Enter a user name and description for the user.
- Enter the new and confirm new passwords. The rules for the passwords are based on the current account-security settings.
• Select one or more role groups to authorize the user to perform appropriate tasks. For information about role groups and how to create custom role groups, see Creating a custom role group.

• (Optional) Set Change password on first access to Yes if you want to force the user to change the password the first time the user logs in to XClarity Administrator.

Step 5. Click Create.

What to do next

The user account is displayed in the Users Management table. The table shows the associated role groups and the account status for each user account.

After you create a user account, you can perform the following actions on a selected user account:

• Modify the user name, description, and role for a user account by clicking the Edit icon.

• Delete the user account by clicking the Delete icon.
• Reset the password for the user account (see Resetting the password for a user).
• Unlock the account (see Unlocking a user).
• Enable or disable a user account (see Enabling or disabling a user).

**Enabling or disabling a user**
You can change enable or disable a local user account in the authentication server.

**Procedure**
To enable or disable a user account, complete the following steps.

• If the local authentication server is used:
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator title bar, click **Administration ➔ Security**.
  2. Click **Local Users** under the Users and Groups section to display the Users Management page.
  3. Select a user account.
  4. If the user account is enabled, click **All Actions ➔ Disable selected account** to disable the user. The account status in the table changes to **Disabled**.
  5. If the user account is disabled, click **All Actions ➔ Enable selected account** to enable the user. The account status in the table changes to **Enabled**.

• If an external LDAP server is used, enable or disable a user account in Microsoft Active Directory.

• If an external SAML identity provider is used, enable or disable a user account in the identity provider.

**Logging off an active user**
You can log off (terminate) an active user from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

You must be logged on to XClarity Administrator using a user account with **lxc-supervisor** or **lxc-security-admin** authority.

**Procedure**
To log off an active user, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator title bar, click **Administration ➔ Security**.

**Step 2.** Click **Active Sessions** under the Users and Groups section to display the Active Sessions Management page.

**Step 3.** Select one or more user accounts.

**Step 4.** Click **Log Off User**.

**Changing the password for your user account**
You can change the password for your user account.

**Procedure**
Complete the following steps to change your password.

• If the local authentication server is used:
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator title bar, click the user-actions menu ( altında **ADMIN_USER**), and then click **Change Password**. The Change Password dialog is displayed.
2. Enter the current password.
3. Enter the new and confirm-new passwords. The rules for the passwords are based the current account-security settings.
4. Click Change.

- If an external authentication server is used, change your password in Microsoft Active Directory.

**Attention:** If you updated Microsoft Active Directory with a new password for the client account that is used to bind XClarity Administrator to the external authentication server, ensure that you also update the new password in the XClarity Administrator web interface (see Setting up an external LDAP authentication server).

- If an external SAML identity provider is used, change your password in the identity provider.

### Resetting the password for a user

You can reset the password for any user account.

**Procedure**

To reset a password, complete the following steps.

- If the local authentication server is used, rest the password from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Security**.
  2. Click **Local Users** under the Users and Groups section to display the Users Management page.
  3. Select a user account from the table.
  4. If the user account is enabled, click the **All Actions ➔ Reset Password for Selected User**. The Reset Password dialog is displayed.
     a. Enter the new and confirm new passwords. The rules for the passwords are based the current account security settings.
     b. Optionally set **Change on first access** to Yes if you want to force the user to change the password the first time the user logs in to XClarity Administrator.
     c. Click **Reset**.
• If an external LDAP server is used, reset the password in Microsoft Active Directory.
• If an external SAML identity provider is used, reset the password in the identity provider.
• If you cannot log in to XClarity Administrator using another supervisor account or if another supervisor account does not exist, you can reset the password for a local user with recovery or supervisor authority by mounting an ISO image that contains a configuration file with the new password. For more information, see Password for a local recovery or supervisor user is forgotten in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Unlocking a user
You can unlock a user account that is locked out of Lenovo XClarity Administrator. A user account can become temporarily locked if the user attempts too many logins that are not valid.

About this task
The user-account security settings control the amount of time that must pass before a user that was locked out can attempt to log back in again. If the Lockout period after maximum login failures setting is set to 0, the user account remains locked until the administrator explicitly unlocks it. For more information about the lockout period for maximum login failures, see Changing the user-account security settings.

You can also permanently disable or enable a user account. For more information, see Enabling or disabling a user.

Note: You must have Supervisor authority to unlock a user account.

Tip: You can use XClarity Administrator to unlock user accounts that are managed using the local authentication server. You cannot unlock user accounts in an external authentication server by using the XClarity Administrator.

Procedure
To unlock a user account, complete the following steps.
• If the local authentication server is used:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security.
  2. Click Local Users under the Users and Groups section to display the Users Management page.
  3. Select the user account from the table.
  4. Click the All Actions ➔ Unlock Account for Selected User.
• If an external LDAP server is used, unlock the user account in Microsoft Active Directory.
• If an external SAML identity provider is used, unlock the user account in the identity provider.

Monitoring active users
You can determine who is logged in to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface from the Dashboard page.

Procedure
• You can get find a list of active users and their IP addresses by clicking Dashboard from the XClarity Administrator menu bar.

  The active user sessions are listed in the Activity section.
• You can get a list of all active users (other than the current user) and their IP addresses by clicking **Administration ➝ Security** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar, and then clicking **Active Sessions**.

**Note:** In XClarity Administrator v2.2 and later, user sessions that are inactive for more than specific amount of time are logged out automatically. You can set the inactivity period by clicking **Administration ➝ Security** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar, clicking Account Security Settings, and then adjusting the **Web inactivity session timeout** value. Note that the change does not affect active user sessions. It only affects user sessions that start after the setting is changed.

### Active Sessions Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Uses Id</th>
<th>Created</th>
<th>Idle For</th>
<th>Last Accessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.38.98.198</td>
<td>SCALE</td>
<td>Jan 4, 2018, 9:...</td>
<td>0 minutes</td>
<td>Jan 4, 2018, 3:52:02 PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.38.108.281</td>
<td>JVANH</td>
<td>Jan 4, 2018, 1:...</td>
<td>0 minutes</td>
<td>Jan 4, 2018, 3:51:27 PM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing stored credentials

Stored credentials are used to manage authorization and access to chassis and servers that are managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator using local authentication.

Before you begin

You must have lxc-supervisor or lxc-security-admin authority to create, modify, or delete stored credentials.

About this task

A stored credential must be a local user account on a device or a user account in an Active Directory server.

If you choose to manage devices using local authentication instead of XClarity Administrator managed authentication, you must select a stored-credentials account during the management process.

Important: XClarity Administrator does not validate the user name and password that you specify for the stored credential. It is your responsibility to ensure that specified information corresponds to an active user account on the local device or Active Directory (if the managed device is configured to use Active Directory for authentication).

Attention: The stored credentials must have supervisor access or sufficient authority to make configuration changes on the device. If you attempt to manage a server with stored credentials that do not have sufficient authority on the device, the manage process might succeed but additional administrative inventory actions on the device might fail due to access-denied errors, which could lead to perceived connectivity problems with the device.

Procedure

To add a stored credential to XClarity Administrator, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security. The Security page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Stored Credentials under the Managed Authentication section to display the Stored Credential page.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ) to create a stored credential. The Create New Stored Credentials dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Fill in the following information in the dialog.
   • Enter a user name and optional description for the stored credential.
   • Enter and then confirm the password for the stored credential.
   • Optionally enter and then confirm the password for the RECOVERY_ID stored recovery credentials.

Step 5. Click Create Stored Credential.

What to do next

The stored-credential account is displayed in the Stored Credential table. The table shows the associated ID and description for each stored-credential account.
From the Stored Credentials page, you can perform the following actions on a selected stored-credential account:

- Modify the user name, password, and description for a stored-credential account by clicking the **Edit** icon.

  **Note:** If you manage a device using a stored credential and enable managed authentication, you cannot edit the stored credential.

- Delete the stored-credential account by clicking the **Delete** icon.

To resolve stored credentials that have become expired or invalid, see Resolving expired or invalid stored credentials for a server.

**Managing roles and role groups**

A **role** is used to control user access to resources and limit the actions that users can perform on those resources. A **role group** is a collection of one or more roles and is used to assign those roles to multiple users. The roles that you configure for a role group determine the level of access that is granted to each user that is a member of that role group. Each Lenovo XClarity Administrator user must be a member of at least one role group.
Creating a custom role

A role is a set of privileges, or permissions to perform a specific action. Lenovo XClarity Administrator includes several predefined (default) roles. You can also create custom roles that enforce a unique set of privileges that users can perform.

Before you begin

You must have lxc-supervisor or lxc-security-admin authority to perform this task.

About this task

To create a custom role, select one or more predefined roles that are closest in scope to the role that you want to create, and then clear the individual privileges that you want to restrict. This ensures that you get all of the intended privileges and that the role is constructed correctly with dependent privileges.

Some XClarity Administrator privileges depend on corresponding management-module privileges to perform actions on managed devices (see Management module v1 privileges and Management module v2 privileges). An XClarity Administrator privilege might allow you to request an action on a managed device, but the device will deny the request if you do not have the corresponding privileges for the CMM, IMM, or XCC. For example, if you create a custom role to perform power actions on managed devices, you would add the lxc-inventory-modify-device-power-state privilege and:

- For a ThinkSystem server in a rack, add the mm-power-and-restart-access-v1 privilege.
- For an entire Flex System chassis (including devices in the chassis), add the mm-power-and-restart-access-v1 privilege.
- For a ThinkSystem server in a chassis, add mm-power-and-restart-access-v1, mm-blade-operator-v2, and the mm-blade-#-scope-v2 privilege that matches the target server.

All roles contain read-only privileges. No custom role can be more restrictive than the lxc-operator role.

If a user does not have privileges to perform specific actions, menu items, toolbar icons, and buttons that perform those actions are disabled (greyed out).

XClarity Administrator provides a role group for each predefined role, using the same name as the role. Consider creating a role group for new roles that you create. For more information about role groups, see Creating a custom role group.

- **lxc-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can modify non-security related settings and perform all non-security related operations on the management server, including the ability to update and restart the management server. This role also provides the ability to view all configuration and status information about the management server and managed devices.

- **lxc-recovery.** Users that are assigned this role can modify security settings and perform security-related operations on the management server. These users can also authenticate directly to the XClarity Administrator even if the authentication method is set to external LDAP server. This role provides a recovery mechanism in case a communication error occurs with the external LDAP server that uses the “Login Credentials” configuration.

Users that are assigned this role always have access to all managed devices. You cannot restrict access to devices for this role.

- **lxc-security-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can modify security settings and perform security-related operations on the management server and managed devices. This role also provides ability to view all configuration and status information about the management server and managed devices.

Users that are assigned this role always have access to all managed devices. You cannot restrict access to devices for this role.
- **lxc-supervisor.** Users that are assigned this role can access, configure, and perform all available operations on the management server and all managed devices. Users that are assigned this role always have access to all managed devices. You cannot restrict access to devices for this role.
- **lxc-operator.** Users that are assigned this role can view all configuration and status information about the management server and managed devices. This role prohibits users from performing operations or modifying configurations settings on the management server and managed devices.
- **lxc-fw-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can create firmware policies and deploy those policies to managed devices. Users that are not assigned this role can only view policy information.
- **lxc-os-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can download and deploy operating systems and device-driver updates to managed servers. Users that are not assigned this role can only view operating-system and device-driver information.
- **lxc-hw-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can modify non-security settings and perform non-security related operations on managed devices, including the ability to update and restart managed devices. This role also provides the ability to view all configuration and status information about the management server and all managed devices.
- **lxc-service-admin.** Users that are assigned this role can collect and download service files for XClarity Administrator and managed devices. Users that are not assigned this role can collect but not download service data.
- **lxc-hw-manager.** Users that are assigned this role can discover new devices and place those devices under the management control of the XClarity Administrator. This role prohibits users from performing operations or modifying configurations settings on the management server and managed devices beyond those operations that are necessary to discover and manage new devices.

The following predefined roles are reserved and cannot be used to create new role groups or assigned to new users.
- **lxc-sysrdr**
- **lxc-sysmgr**

**Procedure**

To create a custom role, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security**.

**Step 2.** Click **Roles** under the Users and Groups section to display the Roles Management page.
Step 3. Click the **Create** icon (/Create/) to create a role. The Create Custom Role dialog is displayed.
Create Custom Role

**Step 4.** Enter a role name and description.

**Step 5.** Select a predefined role to use as a starting point for this custom role.

If you select an existing role, the privileges that are associated with that role are selected in the dialog.

**Step 6.** Modify the privileges for this new role by selecting or clearing privileges from the Select additional privileges drop-down menus.

**Note:** If you select all privileges in specific category, and privileges are added to that category when you update or upgrade XClarity Administrator, the new privileges are automatically added to the custom role.

**Step 7.** Click Create. The new role is added to the table on the Role Management page.
Results

You can also perform the following actions.

• View the privileges associated with a specific role by selecting the role and clicking the View icon ( ).
• Rename or edit the custom role by clicking the Edit icon ( ). When you edit a custom role, you can change selected privileges, the description, and list of users that are associated with the role.

Note: You cannot modify a predefined role

• Delete the predefined or custom role by clicking the Delete icon ( ).
• Add or remove roles from a role group (see Adding and removing multiple users from a role group).
• Restore all predefined roles that were deleted by clicking All Actions ➔ Restore Default Roles.

Predefined privileges

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides a set of privileges (permissions) that allow a user to perform a specific action. The privileges are organized into categories based on the type of action.

Access privileges

These privileges provide permissions to modify cryptographic and SSL/TLS modes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-apply-crypto-settings</td>
<td>Apply cryptography settings</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Access control privileges

These privileges provide permissions to control access to resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-modify-resource-access-control</td>
<td>Edit resource access control settings</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Certificate management privileges

These privileges provide permissions to manage security certificates in Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-add-external-certificates</td>
<td>Add an external certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-add-trusted-certificates</td>
<td>Add a trusted certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-certificate-signing</td>
<td>Generate certificate signing request</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-external-certificates</td>
<td>Delete an existing external certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-trusted-certificates</td>
<td>Delete an existing certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-download-ca</td>
<td>Download certificate authority root certificate</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege name</td>
<td>Privilege description</td>
<td>Default roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-download-server-certificate</td>
<td>Download server certificate</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-modify-certificate-revocation-list</td>
<td>Modify or replace certificate revocation list</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-regenerate-ca</td>
<td>Regenerate certificate authority root certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-regenerate-download-ca</td>
<td>Regenerate certificate authority root certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-regenerate-server-certificate</td>
<td>Regenerate server certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-resolve-untrusted-certificates</td>
<td>Resolve untrusted certificates</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-upload-server-certificate</td>
<td>Upload server certificate</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitoring and events privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage events and alerts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-event-audit</td>
<td>Manage event and audit logs</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-monitoring-create-edit-event-forwarders</td>
<td>Create and modify event forwarders</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-monitoring-create-edit-push-services</td>
<td>Create and modify push services</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-monitoring-remove-event-forwarders</td>
<td>Delete event forwarders</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-monitoring-remove-push-services</td>
<td>Delete push services</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-monitoring-set-event-thresholds</td>
<td>Set event thresholds</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Firmware updates privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage and apply firmware updates and UpdateXpress System Packs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-apply-assign-policy</td>
<td>Assign firmware compliance policy to devices</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-apply-perform-updates</td>
<td>Perform firmware updates</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-policies-create-policies</td>
<td>Create, copy, edit, and import firmware compliance policies</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege name</td>
<td>Privilege description</td>
<td>default roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-policies-delete-policies</td>
<td>Delete compliance policies</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-repository-delete-packages</td>
<td>Delete firmware update packages</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-repository-download-packages</td>
<td>Download and import firmware update packages and refresh catalog of firmware update packages</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-fwUpdates-repository-export-packages</td>
<td>Export firmware update packages</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Resource group privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to use resource groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-resource-create-edit-group</td>
<td>Create and modify resource groups</td>
<td>lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-resource-delete-group</td>
<td>Delete resource groups</td>
<td>lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Inventory privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to discover and manage devices, and view device inventory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-dm-manage-device</td>
<td>Manage Chassis, Servers, Storage and Switches</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-dm-modify-ip-settings</td>
<td>Enable or disable checking for duplicate IP addresses in the same subnet</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-inventory-modify-device-power-state</td>
<td>Modify canisters, cmms, nodes, storage and switches power state</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-inventory-modify-device-properties</td>
<td>Modify cabinets, canisters, chassis, cmms, nodes, storage and switches properties</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-inventory-modify-node-pfa-config-settings</td>
<td>Modify predicted failure alerts (PFA) configuration settings</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jobs management privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage jobs (tasks).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-tasks-remove-jobs</td>
<td>Delete jobs</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-tasks-schedule-jobs</td>
<td>Schedule jobs</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Managed authentication privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage authentication, including stored credentials.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-stored-credentials</td>
<td>Delete stored credentials</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-modify-stored-credentials</td>
<td>Edit existing stored credentials</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Management module v1 privileges**

These privileges are associated with the LDAP permission bits (bitstrings) that are enforced by management modules for rack servers and entire Flex System chassis (including all devices in that chassis).

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not enforce these permissions. The permissions are enforced by the managed devices that use an XClarity Administrator use account.

If the device is managed using managed authentication (using the local authentication server for authentication), the local authentication server uses these permissions to indicate to the managed devices which permissions to use to log in to the device. You would configure these same permissions in an external LDAP server.

**Notes:**

- To narrow permissions to individual devices in a chassis, you must specify management module v2 privileges in addition to the management module v1 privileges (see Management module v2 privileges).
- Management module v1 privileges are not supported for FlexSystem switches that do not have Secure IOM enabled, RackSwitch switches, Storage devices, and ThinkServer servers.

For information about the LDAP permission bits for each management module, see the online documentation.

- [Configuring LDAP in the CMM and CMM2 online documentation](#)
- [Configuring LDAP in the IMM and IMM2 online documentation](#)
- [Configuring LDAP in the XCC online documentation](#)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mm-advanced-adaptor-configuration-v1</td>
<td>Advanced adaptor configuration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-basic-configuration-v1</td>
<td>Basic configuration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-clear-event-logs-v1</td>
<td>Clear event logs</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-deny-always-v1</td>
<td>Deny always</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-networking-and-security-v1</td>
<td>Networking and security</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-power-and-restart-access-v1</td>
<td>Power/restart access for servers and Flex switches</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-remote-console-access-v1</td>
<td>Remote control access for servers</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Privilege name | Privilege description | default roles
--- | --- | ---
mm-remote-console-and-virtual-media-access-v1 | Remote console and virtual media access for servers | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor
mm-supervisor-v1 | Supervisor access | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
mm-user-account-management-v1 | User management | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor

**Management module v2 privileges**

These privileges are associated with the LDAP permission bits (bitstrings) that are enforced by management modules for individual FlexSystem and ThinkSystem devices in a chassis (chassis, servers and switches with Secure IOM enabled).

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not enforce these permissions. The permissions are enforced by the managed devices that use an XClarity Administrator use account.

If the device is managed using *managed authentication* (using the local authentication server for authentication), the local authentication server uses these permissions to indicate to the managed devices which permissions to use to log in to the device. You would configure these same permissions in an external LDAP server.

**Notes:**

- You must also specify management module v1 privileges for the entire chassis (see Management module v1 privileges).
- Management module v2 privileges are not supported for FlexSystem switches that do not have Secure IOM enabled.

For information about the LDAP permission bits for each management module, see the online documentation.

- [Configuring LDAP](#) in the CMM and CMM2 online documentation
- [Configuring LDAP](#) in the IMM and IMM2 online documentation
- [Configuring LDAP](#) in the XCC online documentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-1-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 1 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-2-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 2 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-3-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 3 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-4-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 4 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-5-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 5 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-6-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 6 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-7-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 7 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege name</td>
<td>Privilege description</td>
<td>Default roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-8-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 8 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-9-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 9 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-10-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 10 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-11-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 11 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-12-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 12 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-13-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 13 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-14-scope-v2</td>
<td>Node 14 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-administration-v2</td>
<td>Node administration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-configuration-v2</td>
<td>Node configuration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-operator-v2</td>
<td>Blade operator</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-blade-remote-presence-v2</td>
<td>Node remote presence</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-administration-v2</td>
<td>Chassis administration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-configuration-v2</td>
<td>Chassis configuration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-log-management-v2</td>
<td>Chassis log account management</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-operator-v2</td>
<td>Chassis operator</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-scope-v2</td>
<td>Chassis scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-chassis-user-account-management-v2</td>
<td>User management</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-deny-always-v2</td>
<td>Deny always</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-io-module-1-scope-v2</td>
<td>I/O module 1 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-io-module-2-scope-v2</td>
<td>I/O module 2 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege name</td>
<td>Privilege description</td>
<td>Default roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-io-module-3-scope-v2</td>
<td>I/O module 3 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-io-module-4-scope-v2</td>
<td>I/O module 4 scope</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-switch-administration-v2</td>
<td>Switch administration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-switch-configuration-v2</td>
<td>Switch configuration</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-switch-operator-v2</td>
<td>Switch operator</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm-supervisor-v2</td>
<td>Supervisor access</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Management server privileges**
These privileges provide permissions to update management server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-mgmtserverupdates-delete-updates</td>
<td>Delete management server updates</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-mgmtserverupdates-download-updates</td>
<td>Download and import management server updates and refresh management server catalog</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-mgmtserverupdates-perform-updates</td>
<td>Perform management server updates</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Network management privileges**
These privileges provide permissions to configure network settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-network-edit</td>
<td>Modify network access</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OS deployment privileges**
These privileges provide permissions to manage and deploy operating systems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-create-edit-remote-file-server</td>
<td>Create and edit a remote file server entry</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-create-import-export-edit-os-files</td>
<td>Create, import, export, and edit OS images and custom files</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-delete-os-files</td>
<td>Delete OS images and custom files</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-delete-remote-file-server</td>
<td>Delete a remote file server entry</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege name</td>
<td>Privilege description</td>
<td>Default roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-edit-global-settings</td>
<td>Edit information in global settings dialog <strong>Note:</strong> Changing global IP-assignment settings affects the network settings; therefore, to make changes to the global IP-assignment settings, you must also have also have lxc-osdeploy-edit-settings-and-deploy-os-images privileges.</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osdeploy-edit-settings-and-deploy-os-images</td>
<td>Modify deployment settings and deploy OS images to one or more servers</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OS driver updates privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage and apply OS device-driver updates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-apply-assign-uxsp</td>
<td>Assign OS device drivers UXSP to devices</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-apply-check-authentication</td>
<td>Check OS authentication</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-apply-check-compliance</td>
<td>Check OS device driver compliance</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-apply-perform-updates</td>
<td>Perform OS device driver updates</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-repository-delete-packages</td>
<td>Delete OS device driver update packages</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-osDriverUpdates-repository-download-packages</td>
<td>Download and import OS device driver update packages and refresh OS device driver UXSP catalog</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Users and groups privileges**

These privileges provide permissions to manage user accounts and groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>Default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-apply-saml-settings</td>
<td>Apply SAML settings</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-role-groups</td>
<td>Delete a role group</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-roles</td>
<td>Delete a role</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-delete-users</td>
<td>Delete a user</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-edit-account-settings</td>
<td>Modify account security settings</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-sec-modify-ldap-settings</td>
<td>Apply LDAP settings</td>
<td>lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Privilege name | Privilege description | Default roles
--- | --- | ---
lxc-sec-modify-role-groups | Modify a role group | lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-sec-modify-roles | Modify a role | lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-sec-modify-users | Modify a user | lxc-recovery, lxc-security-admin, lxc-supervisor

**Server configuration privileges**
These privileges provide permissions to provision or preprovision servers using Configuration Patterns.

### Privilege name | Privilege description | Default roles
--- | --- | ---
lxc-cp-edit-management-ip | Modify management IP addresses for chassis | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-edit-preferences | Set Configuration Patterns Preferences | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-manage-address-pools | Manage Address Pools | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-manage-patterns | Manage Patterns | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-manage-placeholders | Manage Placeholders | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-manage-profiles | Deploy patterns, deploy placeholder to chassis and manage profiles | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-cp-other-server-config | Reset local storage and apply Intel Optane DCPMM security operation | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor

**Service privileges**
These privileges provide permissions to define support contacts for each managed device, collect and send service files to Lenovo Support, set up automatic notification to service providers when certain serviceable events occur on specific devices, view service-ticket status and warranty information, and collect and forward service data.

### Privilege name | Privilege description | Default roles
--- | --- | ---
lxc-ss-alter-backup-credentials | Modify backup FFDC credentials | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-service-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-ss-call-home | Perform Call Home | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-ss-change-service-recovery-password | Change service recovery password | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-ss-change-service-tickets | Modify service tickets | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-ss-remove-service-tickets | Delete service tickets | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
lxc-ss-run-service-forwarders | Run service forwarders | lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-supervisor
Switch configuration privileges
These privileges provide permissions to configure switches and backup and restore switch configuration data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege name</th>
<th>Privilege description</th>
<th>default roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxc-netcfg-template-management</td>
<td>Create, modify, delete, and deploy switch-configuration templates, and delete a switch-configuration deployment</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-swirm-config-management</td>
<td>Backup, restore, delete, export, and import switch configuration-data files</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxc-swirm-port-management</td>
<td>Modify switch port status</td>
<td>lxc-admin, lxc-hw-admin, lxc-hw-manager, lxc-supervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating a custom role group
A role group is a set of roles and a set of users that are members of the same set of roles. The level of access that is granted to each user in the role group is based on the roles that are assigned to that role group. XClarity Administrator provides the following predefined role groups, which correspond to each of the predefined roles. You can also create custom role groups.

About this task
Each XClarity Administrator user must be a member of at least one role group.

The following role groups are predefined in XClarity Administrator.
- **LXC-ADMIN**. Includes the lxca-admin role.
- **LXC-RECOVERY**. Includes the lxc-recovery role.
- **LXC-SECURITY-ADMIN**. Includes the lxc-security-admin role.
- **LXC-SUPERVISOR**. Includes the lxc-supervisor role.
- **LXC-OPERATOR**. Includes the lxc-operator role.
- **LXC-FW-ADMIN**. Includes the lxc-fw-admin role.
- **LXC-OS-ADMIN**. Includes the lxc-os-admin role.
- **LXC-HW-ADMIN**. Includes the lxc-hw-admin role.
- **LXC-SERVICE-ADMIN**. Includes the lxc-service-admin role.
- **LXC-HW-MANAGER**. Includes the lxc-hw-manager role.

The following predefined roles are reserved and cannot be used to create new role groups or assigned to new users.
- lxc-sysrdr
- lxc-sysmgr

Procedure
To create a role group, complete the following steps.
Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security**.
Step 2. Click **Role Groups** under the Users and Groups section to display the Group Management page.
Step 3. Click the **Create** icon ( ) to create a role group. The Create New Role Group dialog is displayed.
Step 4. Enter a group name and description.
Note: Tip: For the group name, you can use letters, numbers, white space, underscore, dashes, and periods.

Step 5. Select one or more roles to assign to this role group.
Step 6. Select one or more users as members of this role group.
Step 7. Click Create. The new role group is added to the table on the Group Management page.

Results

The role group is displayed in the Role Groups table. The table shows the associated authorization roles and the members for each role group.

After you create a role group, you can perform the following actions on a selected role group:

- Add or remove roles that are assigned to this role group by clicking the Edit icon (-edit).
- Add or remove users as members of the role group (see “Adding and removing multiple users from a role group” on page 51).
• Export information about the role groups, including access permissions, by clicking All Actions ➤ Export as CSV.
• Delete the role group by clicking the Delete icon (Trash). You cannot delete predefined role groups.

After a role group is created, edited, or deleted, the change is immediately provisioned to each managed device.

Adding and removing multiple users from a role group
You can change membership in a role group by adding or removing multiple users.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to add and remove users from a role group.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➤ Security.
Step 2. Click Role Groups under the Users and Groups section to display the Group Management page.
Step 3. Click the Edit icon (Edit) modify the role group. The Edit Role Group dialog is displayed.
Step 4. Click the User List drop down list, and select the users to include or clear user to exclude from this role group.
Step 5. Click Save. The User List column displays the current user membership in the role group.

Managing access to devices
Access-control to devices is disabled by default and does not take effect until you enable it.

When devices are initially managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, a predefined set of role groups have permission to access the devices by default. This predefined set is empty by default until it is configured.

You change the role groups that can access specific managed devices. When permission is given to certain role groups, only users that are members of those role groups can see and act on those specific devices.

Controlling access to specific devices
When devices are initially managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, a predefined set of role groups have permission to access the devices by default. You change the role groups that can access specific managed devices. When permission is given to certain role groups, only users that are members of those role groups can see and act on those specific devices.

Before you begin
Only users with lxc-supervisor, lxc-security-admin, or lxc-recovery authority can perform this action.

About this task
Access control is set on individual devices. It is not set for containers, such as racks and resource groups.

For components in a chassis or enclosure, users must have at least read-only access to the chassis or enclosure to the view components in that chassis or enclosure. If users do not have at least read-only access to the chassis or enclosure, those users might see the components in some views but are not guaranteed to see them in all views.

Users with lxc-supervisor authority can view and take actions on all resources regardless of whether they are in a role group that has specifically been given access to that resource. You cannot remove access to any resources for the lxc-supervisor role group.
If a user is not a member of a role group that has access to a specific managed device, the user cannot see or act on that specific device. This includes launching the management controller web interface through Lenovo XClarity Administrator. For Flex and System x devices, users also cannot directly log in to a CMM or management controller for which they do not have access.

The default access-control settings are used to set access permissions on devices when they are initially managed by XClarity Administrator and when resetting access permissions for a specific device to the default settings. Changing the default access-control settings does not automatically change access permissions on devices that are already managed.

Important:

- If a user is a member of more than one role group, and the role groups are assigned to different devices, then the actions that the user is allowed to perform on each device might be different. For example, if the user is a member of default role groups LXC-FW-ADMIN and LXC-OS-ADMIN, and if LXC-FW-ADMIN is granted access to Server A but LXC-OS-ADMIN has not been granted access to Server A, then that user would be able to update the firmware on Server A but would not be able to deploy an operating system to Server A. If LXC-OS-ADMIN had been granted access to Server B but LXC-FW-ADMIN had not been granted access to server B, then that same user would be able to deploy an operating system to Server B but would not be able to update the firmware on Server B.

- When limiting access to a device that has a parent resource (such as a server or switch in a Flex chasis), a user must have at least read-only permissions to the parent resource to interact fully with the device. If a user has at least read-only access to the device but not the parent, the user will not able be see the device inventory views, but might be able to see about the device in some views, such as jobs and events.

For example, you can create a role group for the parent and assign that role group the lxc-operator role. Include all users who should be able to access any of the children (such as a server or switch in a Flex chasis), in that role group. Then, include that role group as one of the groups that has access to the parent.

**Procedure**

Complete the following procedures to control access to specific devices by associating role groups with those devices.

**Step 1.** From the main Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu, click Administration ➔ Security.

**Step 2.** Click Resource View in the left navigation pane. The Resource View page is displayed.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific devices. In addition, you can select a device type in the Resource Type drop-down menu, select a role group in the Role Groups drop-down menu, select a resource group in the Resource Groups drop-down menu, and enter text (such as a resource name or type) in the Filter field to list only those devices that meet the selected criteria.

**Step 3.** Select one or more devices to which you want to control access.

**Step 4.** Click the Edit icon (✏). The Edit Resource dialog is displayed with the target devices listed in the Resource Name field.

**Step 5.** From the Role Groups drop-down list, select the role groups for which you want to allow access to the target devices.

**Note:** If the device has a parent resource (for example, a server or switch in a Flex chasis), you can specify access for both the device (right column) and the parent resource (left column).

**Step 6.** Set Public Access to No. This means that only users that are members of the selected role groups can access the target devices.

**Step 7.** Click Save.
Step 8. After you finish assigning permissions, click the Disabled toggle to change Resource Access Control to enabled.

You can enable resource-access control at any time, either before or after configuring access to specific devices. When this setting is enabled, the configuration displayed in the table takes effect, including denying non-supervisor users access to any devices that do not have any groups configured to access them.

What to do next

You can also control access to devices by performing the following actions:

- Change the permissions to the default role groups and public access setting by clicking the Edit icon ( ) and then clicking Rest to Defaults.
- Change the default role group and public access setting (see Changing the default permissions.)
- Disable resource-access control by clicking the Enabled toggle to change Resource Access Control to disabled. This means that all role groups can access all managed devices.

Disabling resource-access control

You disable access control for all devices or specific devices so that all users can view and act on those devices.

About this task

Only users with lxc-supervisor, lxc-security-admin, or lxc-recovery authority can perform this action.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to disable resource-access control.

- For all managed devices
  1. From the main Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu, click Administration → Security.
  2. Click Resource View in the left navigation pane. The Resource View page is displayed.
  3. Click the Enabled toggle to change Resource Access Control to disabled.
- For specific managed devices
  1. From the main XClarity Administrator menu, click Administration → Security.
  2. Click Resource View in the left navigation pane. The Resource View page is displayed.
  3. You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific devices. In addition, you can select a device type in the Resource Type drop-down menu, select a role group in the Role Groups drop-down menu, select a resource group in the Resource Groups drop-down menu, and enter text (such as a resource name or type) in the Filter field to list only those devices that meet the selected criteria.
  4. Select one or more devices to which you want to change access.
  5. Click the Edit icon ( ). The Edit Resource dialog is displayed with the selected devices listed in the Resource Name field.
  6. Set Public Access to Yes. This means that all role groups can access the target devices regardless of the roles groups that are listed in the Role Groups drop-down list.
  7. Click Save.
Changing the default permissions

There are two settings that determine whether role groups can access devices when they are initially managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator: public access and role groups. The public-access setting determines whether all or only a specific set of role groups can access the target devices. By default, this setting is set to Yes, which means that all role groups can access the target devices. You can change the default behavior by changing the public-access setting to No and then selecting the set of role groups that can access the target devices.

About this task

Only users with lxc-supervisor, lxc-security-admin, or lxc-recovery authority can perform this action.

Users with the lxc-supervisor, lxc-security-admin, or lxc-recovery authority can access all managed devices. You cannot remove access to any device for these role groups.

The default access-control settings are used to set access permissions on devices when they are initially managed by XClarity Administrator and when resetting access permissions for a specific device to the default settings. Changing the default access-control settings does not automatically change access permissions on devices that are already managed.

Procedure

Complete the following procedures to change the default access controls.

Step 1. From the main XClarity Administrator menu, click Administration ➔ Security.

Step 2. Click Resource View in the left navigation pane. The Resource View page is displayed.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific devices. In addition, you can select a device type in the Resource Type drop-down menu, select a role group in the Role Groups drop-down menu, select a resource group in the Resource Groups drop-down menu, and enter text (such as a resource name or type) in the Filter field to list only those devices that meet the selected criteria.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Edit Default Resources. The Edit Default Resources dialog is displayed.

Step 4. From the Role Groups drop-down list, select the role groups that you want to define as the default set.

Step 5. Select the default Public Access setting.
  
  • Yes. When a device is initially managed, all role groups can access that device regardless of the role groups that are listed in the Role Groups drop-down list.
  
  • No. When a device is initially managed, only role groups that are listed in the Role Groups drop-down list can access that device by default.

Step 6. Click Save.

Implementing a secure environment

It is important that you evaluate the security requirements in your environment, understand all security risks, and minimize those risks. Lenovo XClarity Administrator includes several features that can help you secure your environment. Use the following information to help you implement the security plan for your environment.

About this task

Important: You are responsible for the evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls for your system environment. Implementing the security features that are described in this section does not secure your environment completely.
Consider the following information when you are evaluating the security requirements for your environment:

- The physical security of your environment is important; limit access to rooms and racks where systems-management hardware is kept.
- Use a software-based firewall to protect your network hardware and data from known and emerging security threats such as viruses and unauthorized access.
- Do not change the default security settings for the network switches and pass-thru modules. The manufacturing default settings for these components disable the use of unsecure protocols and enable the requirement for signed firmware updates.
- The management applications for the CMMs, baseboard management controllers, FSPs, and switches permit only signed firmware-update packages for these components to ensure that only trusted firmware is installed.
- Only the users who are authorized to update firmware components should have firmware-update authority.
- At a minimum, ensure that critical firmware updates are installed. After making any changes, always back up the configuration.
- Ensure that all security-related updates for DNS servers are installed promptly and kept up to date.
- Instruct your users to not accept any untrusted certificates. For more information, see Working with security certificates.
- Tamper-evident options are available for the Flex System hardware. If the hardware is installed in an unlocked rack or located in an open area, install the tamper-evident options to deter and identify intrusions. See the documentation that comes with your Flex System products for more information about the tamper-evident options.
- Where possible and practical, place the systems-management hardware in a separate subnet. Typically, only administrators should have access to the systems-management hardware, and no basic users should be given access.
- When you choose passwords, do not use expressions that are easy to guess, such as “password” or the name of your company. Keep the passwords in a secure place, and ensure that access to the passwords is restricted. Implement a password policy for your company.

Important: Always change the default user name and password. Strong password rules should be required for all users.

- Establish power-on passwords for users as a way to control who has access to the data and setup programs on the servers. See the documentation that comes with your servers for more information about power-on passwords.
- Use the various authorization levels that are available for different users in your environment. Do not allow all users to work with the same supervisor user ID.
- Ensure that your environment meets the following NIST 800-131A criteria to support secure communications:
  - Use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) over the TLS v1.2 protocol.
  - Use SHA-256 or stronger hashing functions for digital signatures and SHA-1 or stronger hashing functions for other applications.
  - Use RSA-2048 or stronger, or use NIST approved Elliptic Curves that are 224 bits or stronger.
  - Use NIST-approved symmetric encryption with keys at least 128 bits in length.
  - Use NIST-approved random-number generators.
  - Where possible, support Diffie-Hellman or Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman key-exchange mechanisms.

For more information about cryptography settings, see Configuring cryptography settings. For more information about NIST settings, see Implementing NIST SP 800-131A compliance.
Changing the user-account security settings

The user-account security settings control the password complexity, account lockout, and web session inactivity timeout. You can change the values of the settings.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to override the user-account security settings that are in place.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration → Security.

Step 2. Click Account Security Settings under the Users and Groups section to display the Users Management page.

Step 3. For each of the following setting that needs to change, select the new value.

Table 1. Account Security settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Password expiration period</td>
<td>The amount of time, in days, that a user can use a password before it must be changed. Smaller values reduce the amount of time for attackers to guess passwords. If set to 0, passwords never expire. The default is 90 days.</td>
<td>0 – 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This setting applies only when the user accounts are managed using the local authentication server. They are not used when the external authentication server is used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password expiration warning period</td>
<td>The amount of time, in days, before the password expiration date that users begin to receive warnings about the impending expiration of the user password. If set to 0, users are never warned. The default is 5 days.</td>
<td>0 – maximum password expiration setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This setting applies only when the user accounts are managed using the local authentication server. They are not used when the external authentication server is used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password reuse cycle</td>
<td>The minimum number of times that a user must enter a unique password when changing the password before the user can start to reuse passwords. If set to 0, users can reuse passwords immediately. The default is 5 occurrences.</td>
<td>0 – 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password change interval</td>
<td>The minimum amount of time, in hours, that must elapse before a user can change a password again after it was previously changed. The value specified for this setting cannot exceed the value specified for the password expiration period. If set to 0, users can change passwords immediately. The default is 24 hours.</td>
<td>0 – 1440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of login failures</td>
<td>The maximum number of times that a user can attempt to log in with an incorrect password before the user account is locked out. The number specified for the lockout period after maximum login failures determines how long the user account is locked out. Accounts that are locked cannot be used to gain access to the system even if a valid password is provided. If set to 0, accounts are never locked. The failed login counter is reset to zero after a successful login. The default is 20 occurrences.</td>
<td>0 – 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lockout period after maximum login failures</td>
<td>The minimum amount of time, in minutes, that must pass before a user that was locked out can attempt to log back in again. If set to 0, the account remains locked until an administrator explicitly unlocks it. A setting of 0 might make your system more exposed to serious denial of service attacks, where deliberate failed login attempts can leave accounts permanently locked. The default is 60 minutes. <strong>Tip:</strong> Any user with the role of Supervisor can unlock a user account. For more information, see Unlocking a user. <strong>Note:</strong> This setting applies only when the user accounts are managed using the local authentication server. They are not used when the external authentication server is used.</td>
<td>0 – 2880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web inactivity session timeout</td>
<td>The amount of time, in minutes, that a user session that is established with XClarity Administrator can be inactive before the user is logged out. If set to 0, the web session never expires. The default is 1440 minutes. <strong>Note:</strong> When changing this value, only user sessions that start after the setting is changed are affected.</td>
<td>0 – 1440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password length</td>
<td>The minimum number of characters that can be used to specify a valid password. The default is 8 characters.</td>
<td>8 – 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum active sessions for a specific user</td>
<td>The maximum number of active sessions for a specific user that is allowed at any given time. If set to 0, the number of allowed active sessions for a specific user is unlimited. The default is 3 sessions.</td>
<td>1 – 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force user to change password on first access</td>
<td>Determine if a user is required to change the password when the user logs in to XClarity Administrator for the first time. The default is to require a user to change the password the first time that the user logs in.</td>
<td>Yes or No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 4. Click **Apply**.
What to do next

When successfully saved, the new settings take effect immediately. If you change the setting for web inactivity session timeout, active sessions are affected.

If you change password policies, those policies are enforced the next time a user logs in or changes the password.

Configuring cryptography settings

Cryptographic management is composed of communication modes and protocols that control the way that secure communications are handled between Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the managed systems.

About this task

The cryptographic mode determines how secure communications are handled between XClarity Administrator and all managed systems. If secure communications are implemented, it sets the encryption-key lengths to be used.

Note: Regardless of the cryptography mode that you select, NIST-approved Digital Random Bit Generators are always used, and only 128-bit or longer keys are used for symmetric encryption.

When you change the cryptographic mode in the XClarity Administrator, the cryptographic mode for all CMMs and baseboard management controllers in the managed devices are changed to the same setting automatically. Consider the following implications of changing the cryptographic mode:

- If you switch from compatibility mode to NIST SP 800-131A mode and the current certificate authority on the managed CMMs and baseboard management controllers use RSA-2048/SHA-1 (the default), an RSA-2048/SHA-256 certificate is regenerated on each managed chassis and server. This causes a mismatch between the newly generated server certificates on the CMMs and baseboard management controllers and the server certificate that is stored in the XClarity Administrator trust store. To resolve this issue, go to the Chassis page and Servers page, and click All Actions ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificate for each device (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

- Not all Flex switches support NIST SP 800-131A mode. If a Flex switch does support NIST SP 800-131A mode, you might need to change the configuration for the switches through the Flex switch interface. For information about support for NIST SP 800-131A and about switching Flex switches between compatibility mode and NIST SP 800-131A mode, see the product documentation that is available for the Flex switches. For more information, see CMM Reset in the Flex Systems online documentation.

Procedure

To change the cryptography settings, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security.

Step 2. Choose one of the following the cryptographic modes to use for secure communications:

- **Compatibility.** This mode is the default. It is compatible with older firmware versions, browsers, and other network clients that do not implement strict security standards that are required for compliance with NIST SP 800-131A.

- **NIST SP 800-131A.** This mode is designed to comply with the NIST SP 800-131A standard. XClarity Administrator is designed to always use strong cryptography internally and, where available, to use strong cryptography network connections. However, in this mode, network connections using cryptography that is not approved by NIST SP 800-131A is not permitted, including rejection of Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificates that are signed with SHA-1 or weaker hash.

  If you select this mode:
– Event notifications might not be successfully pushed to some mobile-device subscriptions (see Forwarding events to mobile devices). External services, such as Android and iOS, present certificates that are signed with SHA-1, which is an algorithm that does not conform to the stricter requirements of NIST SP 800-131A mode. As a result, any connections to these services might fail with a certificate exception or a handshake failure.

For more information about NIST SP 800-131A compliance, see Implementing NIST SP 800-131A compliance.

Step 3. Choose the minimum TLS protocol version to use for client connections to other servers (such as the LDAP client). There are two options:

- **TLSv1.2**. Enforces TLS v1.2 or later cryptography protocols on both XClarity Administrator and all managed endpoints used.

Step 4. Choose the minimum TLS protocol version to use for server connections (such as the web server). There are two options:

- **TLSv1.2**. Enforces TLS v1.2 or later cryptography protocols on both XClarity Administrator and all managed endpoints used.

Step 5. Choose the minimum TLS protocol version to use for the XClarity Administrator operating-system deployment and OS device-driver updates. There are two options:

- **TLSv1.2**. TLS v1.2 and later can be used.
  
  Only operating systems with an installation process that supports TLS 1.2 and strong cryptographic algorithms can be deployed and updated through XClarity Administrator.

Step 6. Choose the devices to which you want to apply changes.

- **Apply to management server only**.
- **Apply to managed devices only**
- **Apply to management server and managed devices**

When you apply the cryptographic-settings changes to managed devices, XClarity Administrator provisions the new settings to all managed devices and attempts to resolve any new certificates on those devices.

Step 7. **Click Apply**.

Step 8. If you applied the cryptographic-settings changes to the management server, restart XClarity Administrator (see Restarting Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

**What to do next**

If you receive an alert that the server certificate is not trusted for a managed device, see Resolving an untrusted server certificate.

**Working with security certificates**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses SSL certificates to establish secure, trusted communications between XClarity Administrator and its managed devices (such as chassis and service processors in the System x servers) as well as communications with XClarity Administrator by users. By default, XClarity Administrator, CMMs, and baseboard management controllers use XClarity Administrator-generated certificates that are self-signed and issued by an internal certificate authority.

**About this task**

The default server certificate, which is uniquely generated in every instance of XClarity Administrator, provides sufficient security for many environments. You can choose to let Lenovo XClarity Administrator manage certificates for you, or you can take a more active role and customize or replace the server...
certificates. XClarity Administrator provides options for customizing certificates for your environment. For example, you can choose to:

- Generate a new server key and certificate that uses values that are specific to your organization.
- Generate a certificate signing request (CSR) that can be sent to your choice of certificate authority to create a signed certificate that can then be uploaded to XClarity Administrator trust store.
- Download the certificate to your local system so that you can import that certificate into your web browser’s list of trusted certificates.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides a number of services that accept incoming Transport Layer Security (TLS) connections. When a client, such as a managed device or a web browser, connects to one of these services, Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides its server certificate to authenticate itself to the client. The client should maintain a list of certificates that it trusts. If Lenovo XClarity Administrator’s server certificate is not included in the client’s list, the client disconnects from Lenovo XClarity Administrator to avoid exchanging any security sensitive information with an untrusted source.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator acts as a client when communicating with managed devices and external services. When Lenovo XClarity Administrator connects to a device or external service, the device or external service provides its server certificate to authenticate itself to Lenovo XClarity Administrator. Lenovo XClarity Administrator maintains a list of certificates that it trusts. If the trusted certificate that is provided by the managed device or external service is not listed, Lenovo XClarity Administrator disconnects from the managed device or external service to avoid exchanging any security sensitive information with an untrusted source.

The following certificates are used by Lenovo XClarity Administrator:

- **Trusted Certificates.** These certificates verify that Lenovo XClarity Administrator can trust a device or server (in most cases) when that Lenovo XClarity Administrator acts as a client to establish a secure connection to another device or server. For example, certificates in this trust store are used when establishing a secure connection to managed devices and trusted LDAP servers. Additionally, the Lenovo XClarity Administrator internal CA certificate as well as the CA certificate of a customized externally-signed server certificate (if one is installed) are present in this trust store to support internal Lenovo XClarity Administrator communication.

- **External Services Certificates.** These certificates verify that Lenovo XClarity Administrator can trust another Lenovo server or other external server only for specific external services. This trust store is used when connecting to Lenovo to look up warranty status information. It is also used to connect to the Apple and Google push-notification server if Lenovo XClarity Mobile push notifications are enabled for an iOS or Android device. Certificates in this trust store are not trusted when establishing connections for other services (such as LDAP) unless you also add them to the main Trusted Certificates trust store. Removing certificates from this trust store prevents successful operation of these services.

- **Internally-Signed Certificates.** During the initial setup of Lenovo XClarity Administrator, a unique key and self-signed certificate are generated. These are used as the default certificate authority, which can be managed on the Certificate Authority page in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator security settings. It is not necessary to regenerate this certificate unless the key has been compromised or if your organization has a policy that all certificates must be replaced periodically (see Regenerating or restoring the Lenovo XClarity Administrator internally-signed server certificate).

Also during the initial setup, a separate key is generated and a certificate is created that is signed by the internal certificate authority. This certificate used as the default Lenovo XClarity Administrator server certificate. It automatically regenerated each time Lenovo XClarity Administrator detects that the networking addresses (IP or DNS addresses) have changed to ensure that the certificate contains the correct addresses for the server. It can be customized and generated on demand (see Regenerating or restoring the Lenovo XClarity Administrator internally-signed server certificate).

If you do not install an externally-signed server certificate, it is recommended that you perform the following steps to avoid certificate error messages in your browser:
1. Download the internally-signed CA certificate using the download button on the Certificate Authority page and to install it into your web browser as a trusted root authority (see Importing the Certificate Authority certificate into a web browser).

2. Regenerate the server certificate, following the help guidance when deciding whether to use an IP address or a hostname as the Common Name (see Regenerating or restoring the Lenovo XClarity Administrator internally-signed server certificate).

- **Externally-Signed Certificates.** You can choose to generate a certificate signing request (CSR) for signing by your organization’s certificate authority or a third-party certificate authority. After the CSR is signed, you can import the full certificate chain and use it in place of the unique default internally signed certificates (see Installing a customized, externally signed server certificate).

- **OS Deploy Certificate.** A separate certificate is used by the operating-system deployment service to ensure that the operating-system installer can connect securely to deployment service during the operating-system installation process. The key and certificate that are used by this service are regenerated during every Lenovo XClarity Administrator boot. If the key has been compromised, you can regenerate it by restarting the management server.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports PKCS 1.5 RSA-2048/SHA-256 certificate signatures and ECDSA p256/SHA-256 signatures in all product configurations. Other algorithms such as SHA-1 stronger or SHA hashes might be supported depending on your configuration. Consider the selected cryptographic mode in Lenovo XClarity Administrator (see Configuring cryptography settings) and the capabilities of other software and devices in your environment. ECDSA certificates that are based on some elliptic curves (including p256), but not all elliptic curves, are supported on the Trusted Certificates page and in the signing chain of the Lenovo XClarity Administrator certificate but are not currently supported for use by the Lenovo XClarity Administrator server certificate.

**Note:** Only PKCS 1.5 RSA-2048/SHA-256 signatures are supported. RSA-PSS signatures are not supported at this time.

### Installing a customized, externally signed server certificate

You can choose to use a server certificate that was signed by a private or commercial certificate authority (CA). To use an externally signed server certificate, generate a certificate signing request and then upload the resulting server certificate to replace the existing certificate in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store that is used by the authentication, HTTPS, and CIM servers.

### Before you begin

Ensure that all managed devices have the latest firmware installed before starting any task that might impact connections between the managed devices. To upgrade firmware on managed devices, see Updating firmware on managed devices.

Ensure that XClarity Administrator is successfully communicating with all managed devices by clicking Hardware and then clicking the device type (Chassis or Server). A page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed devices of that type. If any device has a status of “Offline,” ensure that network connectivity is working between the management server and the device, and resolve untrusted server certificates if needed (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

### About this task

When you install a customized externally signed server certificate in XClarity Administrator or a baseboard management-controller or CMM, you must provide the certificate bundle that contains the entire CA signing chain.
When you install a customized server certificate in a chassis or server that is not managed by XClarity Administrator, install the certificate bundle on the CMM before installing it on all management controllers in the CMM.

When you install a customized server certificate to a managed chassis, you first add the CA signing chain to the XClarity Administrator trust store, install the server certificate on every management controller and CMM, and then upload the server certificate to XClarity Administrator.

**Tip:** If the new server certificate has not been signed by a trusted third party, the next time that you connect to XClarity Administrator, your browser displays a security message and dialog prompting you to accept the new certificate into the browser. To avoid the security messages, you can import a downloaded server certificate into your web browser’s list of trusted certificates. For more information about importing server certificates, see Importing the Certificate Authority certificate into a web browser.

**Deploying customized server certificates to Lenovo XClarity Administrator**

You can choose to generate a certificate signing request (CSR) for signing by your organization’s certificate authority or a third-party certificate authority. The CSR creates a full certificate chain that you can import and use in place of the unique default internally signed certificates.

**Procedure**

To generate and deploy a customized externally signed server certificate to Lenovo XClarity Administrator, complete the following steps.

1. **Create and download a certificate signing request (CSR) for XClarity Administrator.**
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➞ Security** to display the Security page.
   b. Click **Server Certificate** under the Certificate Management section to display the Server Certificate page.
   c. Click the **Generate Certificate Signing Request (CSR)** tab.
   d. Fill in the fields for the request.
      - Country or Region
      - State or Province
      - City or Locality
      - Organization
      - Organization Unit (optional)
      - Common Name

      **Attention:** Select a common name that matches the IP address or hostname that XClarity Administrator uses to connect to the managed device. Failure to select the correct value might result in connections that are not trusted.
   e. Customize the Subject Alternative Names (SANs) that are added to the X.509 “subjectAltName” extension when the CSR is generated.

      By default, XClarity Administrator automatically defines Subject Alternative Names (SANs) for the CSR based on the IP address and hostname that are discovered by the XClarity Administrator guest operating system’s network interfaces. You can customize, delete, or add to these SAN values.

      The name that you specify must be valid for the selected type:
      - **directoryName** (for example, cn=lxca-example,ou=dcg,dc=company,dc=com)
      - **dNSName** (for example, lxca-example.dcg.company.com)
      - **ipAddress** (for example, 192.0.2.0)
      - **registeredID** (for example, 1.2.3.4.55.6.5.99)
      - **rfc822Name** (for example, example@company.com)
uniformResourceIdentifier (for example, https://lxca-dev.dcg.company.com/example)

Note: All SANs that are listed in the table are validated, saved, and added to the CSR only after you generate the CSR in the next step.

f. Click Generate CSR File. The server certificate is displayed in the Certificate Signing Request dialog.
g. Click Save to File to save the server certificate to the host server.

Step 2. Provide the CSR to a trusted certificate authority (CA). The CA signs the CSR and responds with a server certificate.

Step 3. Upload the externally signed server certificate to XClarity Administrator. The certificate content must be a bundle containing the CA’s root certificate, any intermediate certificates, and the server certificate.
a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security to display the Security page.
b. Click Server Certificate under the Certificate Management section.
c. Click the Upload Certificate tab.
d. Click Upload Certificate to display the Upload Certificate dialog.
e. Specify a certificate bundle file in PEM, DER or PKCS7 format, or paste the certificate bundle in PEM format.
f. Click Upload to upload the server certificate and store the certificate in the XClarity Administrator trust store.

When the server certificate is uploaded, XClarity Administrator attempts to provision the new CA certificate to all managed devices. If the provisioning process succeeds, XClarity Administrator begins using the new server certificate immediately. If the process fails, error messages are provided that direct you to correct any problems manually before applying the newly imported server certificate. After the errors are corrected, complete the installation of the previously uploaded certificate.

Note: If XClarity Administrator was already using a certificate signed by the same root authority, the CA does not need to be sent to devices, and XClarity Administrator begins to use the certificate immediately.

After uploading a certificate in XClarity Administrator v1.1.0 and earlier, the web server restarted and automatically terminated all browser sessions. XClarity Administrator v1.1.1 and later begin using the new certificate without terminating existing sessions. Any new sessions are established using the new certificate. To see the new certificate in use, restart your web browser.

Deploying customized server certificates to managed devices
You can deploy customized server certificates to managed devices by uploading and installing the externally-signed certificate bundle using the CMM and management controller for those devices.

Before you begin

Ensure that the latest firmware is installed on all managed devices (see Updating firmware on managed devices).

When generating a certificate signing request (CSR) for custom certificates, ensure that you select a common name that matches the IP address or hostname that is used to identify the device. Failure to select the correct value might result in connections that are not trusted.

Ensure that you obtain a certificate bundle that contains the entire signing chain, from the end-server certificate to the root (base) certificate of the trusted CA that can be used to verify the complete certificate chain of trust.
Do not change the Lenovo XClarity Administrator server certificate while a managed device is “Offline.” You must repair the connection before modifying Lenovo XClarity Administrator, otherwise additional steps might be required to repair the connectivity issues (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

About this task

This section contains recommendations for ensuring continued successful communication between Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the managed devices. For detailed instructions about how to generate a CSR and import a signed certificate, see your device documentation.

If Lenovo XClarity Administrator is managing one or more chassis, rack servers, and tower servers, and the default Lenovo XClarity Administrator internally signed certificates are currently installed on Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the managed devices, you can deploy customized server certificate.

If the externally signed server certificate is installed on the device before the you attempt to manage the device by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, no additional steps are needed. To deploy a custom server certificate to devices that are managed under Lenovo XClarity Administrator management, you must perform one of the following steps to ensure continued connectivity between the management server and the managed devices.

Procedure

Complete one of the following options to deploy the customized externally signed server certificate to managed chassis or servers.

- If Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses a certificate that is signed by the same certificate authority as the managed devices, perform the steps in Deploying customized server certificates to Lenovo XClarity Administrator before installing the certificates on managed devices. Installing the Lenovo XClarity Administrator certificate chain from the same CA first ensures that the certificate chain is in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store and that Lenovo XClarity Administrator is able to trust the devices after the externally signed certificates are installed there.

- Add the externally signed certificates in the CA signing chains to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store.
  
  You must add the CA root certificate and all intermediate certificates, one at a time, to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store. The order does not matter. Each certificate must be installed once, so if all devices use the same CA and intermediate certificates, then the CA and each intermediate certificate must be installed in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store one time. If more than one CA or an intermediate CA is used, ensure that each unique CA root certificate or intermediate certificate that is used in the signing chain of a managed device is imported the following these steps.

  Note: Do not add the end, non-CA server certificates during these steps.

  Perform the following steps for each certificate in the bundle.

  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration → Security to display the Security page.
  2. Click Trusted certificates under Certificate Management in the left navigation.
  3. Click the Create icon ( ) to display the Add Certificate dialog.
  4. Specify a certificate file in PEM or DER format, or paste the certificate in PEM format.
  5. Click Create to create the certificate.

  After the CA signing chain is installed, Lenovo XClarity Administrator trusts connections to CIM servers on the CMM and management controller on which the externally signed server certificate is installed.

- Import the externally signed certificates into the managed devices.
**Note:** If the necessary certificates are not present in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store, connectivity is lost between Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the managed device. Perform the steps in Resolving an untrusted server certificate to repair the connection.

**Important:** This option involves temporary connectivity loss; therefore, one of the previous options is recommended.

**Regenerating or restoring the Lenovo XClarity Administrator internally-signed server certificate**

You can generate a new certificate authority or server certificate to replace current internally-signed certificates or to reinstate a Lenovo XClarity Administrator-generated certificate if XClarity Administrator currently uses a customized externally-signed server certificate. The new internally-signed server certificate is then used by the authentication, HTTPS, and CIM servers on the XClarity Administrator. It is also automatically provisioned to all managed devices.

**Before you begin**

If the XClarity Administrator internal CA certificate is installed in the trust store of the managed devices, there will be no connectivity disruption when the server certificate is regenerated.

If a new CA certificate is generated, the new CA certificate is automatically deployed to the trust store in each CMM and baseboard management controller in all managed chassis, rack servers, and tower servers to maintain trusted authentication-server connections. If an error occurs while deploying the CA root certificate, download it from the Certificate Authority page and import it manually into the trust store of any managed devices to which it was not successfully provisioned before generating a new server certificate.

If you plan to regenerate the CA certificate, reserve time to regenerate the CA, resolve any provisioning errors, and regenerate the server certificate within a short period of time.

After generating a new CA root certificate, communication errors might occur or you might not be able to log in to a device until after the server certificate is regenerated and signed.

**Important:** For XClarity Administrator v1.1.1 and earlier, you must import the CA root certificate into the trust store of each CMM and management controller. See the documentation for the CMM and management controller for more information about importing the CA root certificate.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to restore an internally-signed server certificate on XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** The server certificate that is currently in use on XClarity Administrator, whether internally-signed or externally-signed, remains in use until new server certificate is regenerated and signed.

**Step 1. Optional:** Generate a new CA root certificate.

a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security** to display the Security page.

b. Click **Certificate Authority** under the Certificate Management section.

c. Click **Regenerate Certificate Authority Root Certificate**.

If the CA key and certificate are successfully regenerated, then a dialog is displayed showing the status of jobs to provision that certificate as an LDAP trusted certificate to all CMMs and management controllers (for Converged, NeXtScale, and System x servers). This dialog as well as the job monitoring page shows the success or failure of each of those provisioning jobs.
If any of the provisioning jobs fail, complete the following steps to download the CA root certificate, then manually import the root certificate as a trusted LDAP certificate in any device for which the job failed.

Step 2. **Optional**: Download the CA root certificate to the host system and import it into your web browser.

   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security to display the Security page.
   
      b. Click Certificate Authority under the Certificate Management section.
   
      c. Click Download Certificate Authority Root Certificate. The current CA root certificate is displayed in the Certificate Authority Root Certificate dialog.
   
      d. Click Save to File to save the CA root certificate to the host system.
   
      e. Follow the instructions for your web browser and the web browser of other users who will access XClarity Administrator to import the certificate as a trusted root authority.

Step 3. Regenerate a new server certificate and sign the certificate with the new CA root certificate.

   
      b. Click the Regenerate Server Certificate tab.
   
      c. Fill in the fields in the Regenerate Server Certificate page:
         • Country or Region
         • State or Province
         • City or Locality
         • Organization
         • Organization Unit
         • Common Name
         • Not valid before date
         • Not valid before time
         • Not valid after date
         • Not valid after time
   
      d. Click Regenerate Certificate.
   
      e. If regenerating self-signed certificates on the managed CMMs and management controllers (for Converged, NeXtScale, ThinkSystem, and System x servers), after regenerating the certificate on each device, import the new device certificate into the XClarity Administrator trust store (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate). Alternatively, you can manually download the certificate from the device and import it into XClarity Administrator on the Trusted Certificates page.

For XClarity Administrator v1.1.0 and earlier, the web server restarts and automatically terminates all browser sessions after regenerating a certificate. For XClarity Administrator v1.1.1 and later, XClarity Administrator begins using the new certificate without terminating existing sessions. New sessions are established using the new certificate. To see the new certificate in use, restart your web browser.

Step 4. If regenerating self-signed certificates on the managed CMMs and management controllers (for Converged, NeXtScale, ThinkSystem, and System x servers), after regenerating the certificate on each device, import the new device certificate into the XClarity Administrator trust store (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate). Alternatively, you can manually download the certificate from the device and import it into XClarity Administrator on the Trusted Certificates page.

**Resolving an untrusted server certificate**

The server certificate that is used to establish a secure connection to a managed device can become untrusted. If the problem is due to a down-level version of the device CA root certificate or device self-signed certificate in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator trust store, XClarity Administrator can resolve the untrusted server certificate.
About this task

If a managed device becomes untrusted, XClarity Administrator prevents communication with that device, preventing you from performing management or inventory operations on that device.

Procedure
To resolve an untrusted server certificate for a managed device, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware**, and then click the device type (**Chassis**, **Server**, **Storage**, or **Switch**). A page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed devices of that type.

Step 2. Select a specific device in the “Offline” state.

Step 3. Click **All Actions → Security → Resolve Untrusted Certificates**.

Step 4. Click **Install Certificate**.

XClarity Administrator retrieves the current certificate from the target device. If that certificate is different from the trusted certificate for that device in the XClarity Administrator trust store, the new certificate is placed in the XClarity Administrator trust store, overriding the previous certificate for that device.

If this does not resolve the issue, ensure that network connectivity is working between XClarity Administrator and the device.

Downloading the server certificate

You can download a copy of the current server certificate, in PEM or DER format, to your local system. You can then import the certificate into your web browser or another applications (such as Lenovo XClarity Mobile or Lenovo XClarity Integrator).

Procedure
Complete the following steps to download the server certificate.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Security** to display the Security page.

Step 2. Click **Server Certificate** under the Certificate Management section. The Server Certificate page is displayed.

Step 3. Click the **Download Certificate** tab.

Step 4. Click **Download Certificate**.

Step 5. Click **Save as der** or **Save as pem** to save the server certificate as a DER or PEM file on your local system.

Importing the Certificate Authority certificate into a web browser

To avoid security warning messages from your web browser when you access Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you can download a copy of the current Certificate Authority (CA) certificate, in PEM or DER format, to your local system, and then import that certificate into your web browser’s list of trusted certificates.

About this task

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports PKCS 1.5 RSA-2048/SHA-256 certificate signatures and ECDSA p256/SHA-256 signatures in all product configurations. Other algorithms such as SHA-1 stronger or SHA hashes might be supported depending on your configuration. Consider the selected cryptographic mode in Lenovo XClarity Administrator (see Configuring cryptography settings) and the capabilities of other software and devices in your environment. ECDSA certificates that are based on some elliptic curves (including p256), but not all elliptic curves, are supported on the Trusted Certificates page and in the signing chain of the
Lenovo XClarity Administrator certificate but are not currently supported for use by the Lenovo XClarity Administrator server certificate.

**Note:** Only PKCS 1.5 RSA-2048/SHA-256 signatures are supported. RSA-PSS signatures are not supported at this time.

**Procedure**

To download the server certificate, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Security** to display the Security page.

**Step 2.** Click **Certificate Authority** under the Certificate Management section. The Certificate Authority page is displayed.

**Step 3.** Click **Download Certificate Authority Root Certificate**.

**Step 4.** Click **Save as der** or **Save as pem** to save the server certificate as a DER or PEM file on your local system.

**Step 5.** Import the downloaded certificate into the list of trusted root authority certificates for your browser.

- **Firefox:**
  1. Open the browser, and click **Tools ➔ Options ➔ Advanced**.
  2. Click the **Certificates** tab.
  3. Click **View certificates**.
  4. Click **Import**, and browse to the location where the certificate was downloaded.
  5. Select the certificate, and click **Open**.

- **Internet Explorer:**
  1. Open the browser and click **Tools ➔ Internet Options ➔ Content**.
  2. Click **Certificates** to see a list of all certificates that are currently trusted.
  3. Click **Import** to display the Certificate Import wizard.
  4. Complete the wizard to import the certificate.

**Adding and replacing a certificate revocation list**

A certificate revocation list is a list of certificates that have been revoked and are no longer trusted. A certificate might be revoked if it was incorrectly issued from by the CA or if its key is compromised, lost, or stolen.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to add a new certificate revocation list or to replace an existing certificate revocation list.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Security** to display the Security page.

**Step 2.** Click **Certificate Revocation Lists** under Certificate Management in the left navigation. The Certificate Revocation Lists page is displayed with a list of all certificate revocation lists.

**Step 3.** Click **Add / Replace CLR** to add a certificate revocation list, or select a certificate revocation list and click the **Add / Replace CLR** to replace the CRL.

**Step 4.** Specify a certificate revocation list file, in PEM or DER format, or paste the certificate in PEM format.

**Step 5.** Click **Create** to create the certificate revocation list.
Enabling encapsulation

When you manage Lenovo chassis and servers in Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to change the firewall rules for the devices so that incoming requests are accepted only from Lenovo XClarity Administrator. This is referred to as encapsulation. You can also enable or disable encapsulation on chassis and servers that are already managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

When enabled on devices that support encapsulation, Lenovo XClarity Administrator changes the device encapsulation mode to “encapsulationLite,” and changes the firewall rules on the device to limit incoming requests from only this Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

When disabled, the encapsulation mode is set to “normal”. If encapsulation was previously enabled on the devices, the encapsulation firewall rules are removed.

You can enable or disable encapsulation globally for all devices during the management process by selecting the Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices checkbox on the Discover and Manage New Devices page. The encapsulation is disabled by default.

Discover and Manage New Devices

You can also enable or disable encapsulation individually for specific managed devices at any time by navigating to the device summary page, selecting the device, and clicking Actions → Enable Encapsulation or Actions → Disable Encapsulation.

Attention: If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

Note: Encapsulation is not supported on switches, storage devices, and non-Lenovo chassis and servers.

Implementing NIST SP 800-131A compliance

If you must be compliant with NIST SP 800-131A, you can begin to work toward a fully compliant environment using Lenovo XClarity Administrator.
About this task

The National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-131A (NIST SP 800-131A) specifies the way that secure communications should be handled. The standard strengthens algorithms and increases key lengths to improve security. The NIST SP 800-131A standard requires that users be configured for strict enforcement of the standard.

Notes: The following Flex System components do not currently support NIST SP 800-131A. Communications between XClarity Administrator or the CMM and these components are not compliant:
• Flex System EN4023 10 Gb Scalable Switch
• Flex System EN6131 40 Gb Ethernet Switch
• Flex System FC3171 8 Gb SAN Switch
• Flex System FC5022 16 Gb SAN Scalable Switch
• Flex System IB6131 Infiniband Switch
• Flex System v7000 Storage Node

Note: When an SAML identity provider is used for authentication, XClarity Administrator uses SHA-1 to sign the signature in the metadata. Using the SHA-1 algorithm for digital signatures is not NIST SP 800-131A compliant.

Procedure

To implement NIST SP 800-131A compliance, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Ensure that your devices meet the following criteria:
• Use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) over the TLS v1.2 protocol.
• Use SHA-256 or stronger hashing functions for digital signatures and SHA-1 or stronger hashing functions for other applications.
• Use RSA-2048 or stronger, or use NIST approved Elliptic Curves that are 224 bits or stronger.
• Use NIST-approved symmetric encryption with keys at least 128 bits in length.
• Use NIST-approved random-number generators.
• Where possible, support Diffie-Hellman or Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman key-exchange mechanisms.

Step 2. Configure the cryptographic settings on Lenovo XClarity Administrator. There are two settings that are related to NIST SP 800-131A compliance:
• The *SSL/TLS mode* specifies the protocols that are to be used for secure communications. The XClarity Administrator supports a setting of **TLS 1.2 Server and Client** to restrict the cryptography protocol to TLS 1.2 on XClarity Administrator and all managed devices.
• If secure communications are implemented, the *cryptographic mode* sets the encryption key lengths that are to be used. You can set the cryptographic mode as **NIST SP 800-131A**. However, you might not be able to deploy some operating systems through XClarity Administrator because some operating-system installers do not support the restricted settings. To support operating system deployment, you can choose to allow an exception for operating-system deployment.

When you change any cryptographic settings, XClarity Administrator provisions the new settings to all managed devices and attempts to resolve any new certificates on those devices.

Note: You must manually restart XClarity Administrator after cryptographic settings are changed for the changes to take effect and to restore any lost services (see Restarting Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

For more information about these settings, see Configuring cryptography settings.
Step 3. Use a web browser that supports the TLS1.2 protocol and SHA-256 hashing functions, and enable those settings in your web browser.

Step 4. Use encrypted protocols for all communications. Do not enable unencrypted protocols, such as Telnet, FTP, SSH, and VNC for remote communications with XClarity Administrator managed devices.

Using VMware Tools

The VMware Tools package is installed in the virtual machine’s guest operating system when you install Lenovo XClarity Administrator in VMware ESXi-based environments. This package provides a subset of the VMware tools that support optimized virtual-appliance backup and migration while preserving application state and continuity.

For information about using the VMware Tools, see Using the VMware Tools Configuration Utility in the VMware vSphere Documentation Center website.

Configuring network access

When you initially set up Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you configure up to two network interfaces. In addition, you must specify which of those interfaces is to be used to deploy operating systems. After the initial setup, you can modify these settings.

Before you begin

Attention:

• Changing the XClarity Administrator IP address after managing devices might cause the devices to be placed in offline state in XClarity Administrator. Ensure that all devices are unmanaged before changing the IP address.

• You can enable or disable checking for duplicate IP addresses in the same subnet by clicking the Duplicate IP address checking toggle. It is disabled by default.

  When enabled, XClarity Administrator raises an alert if you attempt to change the IP address of XClarity Administrator or manage a device that has the same IP address as another device that is under management or another device found in the same subnet.

• If the network interface for the management network is configured to use the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), the management-interface IP address might change when the DHCP lease expires. If the IP address changes, you must unmanage the chassis, rack and tower servers, and then manage them again. To avoid this problem, either change the management interface to a static IP address, or ensure that the DHCP server configuration is set so that the DHCP address is based on a MAC address or that the DHCP lease does not expire.

• If you do not intend to use XClarity Administrator to deploy operating system or update OS device drivers, you can disable Samba and Apache servers by changing the network interface to use the discover and manage hardware only option. Note that the management server is restarted after changing the network interface

About this task

XClarity Administrator has two separate network interfaces (eth0 and eth1) that can be defined for your environment, depending on the network topology that you implement.

• When only one network interface (eth0) is present:
  – The interface must be configured to support the device discovery and management (such as server configuration and firmware updates). It must be able to communicate with the CMMs and Flex switches
in each managed chassis, the baseboard management controller in each managed server, and each RackSwitch switch.

- If you intend to acquire firmware and OS device-driver updates using XClarity Administrator, the network interface must be connected to the Internet, preferably through a firewall. Otherwise, you must manually import updates into the repository.
- If you intend to collect service data or use automatic problem notification (including Call Home), the interfaces must be connected to the Internet, preferably through a firewall.
- If you intend to deploy operating-system images and update OS device drivers, the interface must have IP network connectivity to the server network interface that is used to access the host operating system.

**Note:** If you implemented a separate network for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates, you can configure the second network interface to connect to that network instead of the data network. However, if the operating system on each server does not have access to the data network, configure an additional interface on the servers to provide connectivity from the host operating system to the data network for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates, if needed.

- When two network interfaces (eth0 and eth1) are present:
  - The first network interface (typically the Eth0 interface) must be connected to the management network and configured to support the device discovery and management (including server configuration and firmware updates). It must be able to communicate with the CMMs and Flex switches in each managed chassis, the management controller in each managed server, and each RackSwitch switch.
  - The second network interface (typically the eth1 interface) can be configured to communicate with an internal data network, a public data network, or both.
  - If you intend to acquire firmware and OS device-driver updates using XClarity Administrator, the interface that you use for the management network must be connected to the Internet, preferably through a firewall. Otherwise, you must import updates into the repository.
  - If you intend to collect service data or use automatic problem notification (including Call Home and Lenovo Upload Facility), at least one of the network interfaces must be connected to the Internet, preferably through a firewall.
  - If you intend to deploy operating-system images and update device drivers, you can choose to use either eth1 or eth0 interface. However, the interface that you use must have IP network connectivity to the server network interface that is used to access the host operating system.

**Note:** If you implemented a separate network for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates, you can configure the second network interface to connect to that network instead of the data network. However, if the operating system on each server does not have access to the data network, configure an additional interface on the servers to provide connectivity from the host operating system to the data network for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates, if needed.

- Other XClarity Administrator functions (including discovery and hardware management, server configuration, firmware downloads and updates, service-data collection, automatic problem notification, and warranty data retrieves) can be performed from either interface.

The following table shows possible configurations for the XClarity Administrator network interfaces based on the type of network topology that has been implemented in your environment. Use this table to determine how to define each network interface.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Network topology</th>
<th>Role of interface 1 (eth0)</th>
<th>Role of interface 2 (eth1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Converged network (management and data network with support for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates)</td>
<td>Management network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval • OS deployment • OS device-driver updates</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate management network with support for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates and data network</td>
<td>Management network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval • OS deployment • OS device-driver updates</td>
<td>Data network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate management network and data network with support for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates</td>
<td>Management network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
<td>Data network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate management network and data network without support for OS deployment and OS device-driver updates</td>
<td>Management network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
<td>Data network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management network only (OS deployment and OS device-driver updates is not supported)</td>
<td>Management network • Discovery and management • Server configuration • Firmware updates • Service data collection • Automatic problem notification (such as Call Home and Lenovo Update Facility) • Warranty data retrieval</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about XClarity Administrator network interfaces including IPv6 address limitations, see *Network considerations* in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
Procedure
To configure network access, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Network Access. The currently defined network settings are displayed.
- Network topology
- Eth0 IP settings
- Eth1 IP settings (if the Eth1 interface exists)
- Routing settings
- Hostname and domain for virtual appliance
- DNS search order

Step 2. Click Edit Network Access to display the Edit Network Access page.

Step 3. If you intend to deploy operating-systems and update OS device drivers using XClarity Administrator, choose the network interface to use for managing operating systems.
- If only one interface is defined for XClarity Administrator, choose whether that interface is to be used to discover and manage hardware only, or whether it is also to be used to manage operating systems.
- If two interfaces are defined for XClarity Administrator (Eth0 and Eth1), determine which interface is to be used to manage operating systems. If you choose “None”, you cannot deploy operating-system images or update OS device drivers to managed servers from XClarity Administrator.

Step 4. Modify the IP Settings.
   a. For the first interface, specify the IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both.
      - **IPv4**. You must assign an IPv4 address to the interface. You can choose to use a statically assigned IP address or obtain an IP address from a DHCP server.
      - **IPv6**. Optionally, you can assign an IPv6 address to the interface using one of the following assignment methods:
- Use statically assigned IP address
- Use stateful address configuration (DHCPv6)
- Use stateless address auto configuration

**Note:** For information about IPv6 address limitations, see [IPv6 configuration limitations](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

b. If a second interface is available, specify the IPv4 address, the IPv6 address, or both.

**Note:** The IP addresses that are assigned to this interface must be in a different subnet from the IP addresses that are assigned to the first interface. If you choose to use DHCP to assign IP addresses for both interfaces (Eth0 and Eth1), the DHCP server must not assign the same subnet for the IP addresses of the two interfaces.

- **IPv4.** You can choose to use a statically assigned IP address or obtain an IP address from a DHCP server.
- **IPv6.** Optionally, you can assign an IPv6 address to the interface using one of the following assignment methods:
  - Use statically assigned IP address
  - Use stateful address configuration (DHCPv6)
  - Use stateless address auto configuration

c. Specify the default gateway.

If you specify a default gateway, it must be a valid IP address and must use the same network mask (the same subnet) as the IP address for one of the network interfaces (Eth0 or Eth1). If you use a single interface, default gateway must be on the same subnet as network interface.

**Tip:** The default gateway must use the same network mask (the same subnet) as at least one enabled interface. Therefore, if you assign the default gateway to be on the same subnet as the second interface and then change the IP address assignment method or disable the second interface, the default gateway might not be reachable.

If either interface uses DHCP to obtain an IP address, the default gateway also uses DHCP.

d. Click **Save IP Settings**.

**Step 5.** Optionally, modify the advanced settings.

a. Click the **Advanced Routing** tab.

**Edit Network Access**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Route Type</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Mask/Pref Length</th>
<th>Gateway Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eth0</td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>IPv4</td>
<td>255.255.255.255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Specify one or more route entries in the **Advanced Route Settings** table to be used by this interface.

To define one or more route entries, complete the following steps.

1. Choose the interface.
2. Specify the route type, which can be a route to another host or to a network.
3. Specify the destination host or network address to which you are directing the route.
4. Specify the subnet mask for the destination address.
5. Specify the gateway address to which packets are to be addressed.

   c. Click **Save Advanced Routing**.

Step 6. Optionally, modify the DNS and proxy settings.

   a. Click the **DNS & Proxy** tab.

   ![Edit Network Access](image)

   b. Specify the hostname and domain name to be used for XClarity Administrator.

   c. Select the DNS operating mode. This can be **Static** or **DHCP**.

   **Note:** If you choose to use a DHCP server to obtain the IP address, any changes that you make to the **DNS Server** fields are overwritten the next time XClarity Administrator renews the DHCP lease.

   d. Specify the IP address of one or more Domain Name System (DNS) servers to be used, and the priority order for each.

   e. Specify whether to access the Internet using a direct connection or an HTTP proxy (if XClarity Administrator has access to the Internet).

   **Notes:** If using a HTTP proxy, ensure that the following requirements are met.
   • Ensure that the proxy server is set up to use basic authentication.
   • Ensure that the proxy server is set up as a non-terminating proxy.
   • Ensure that the proxy server is set up as a forwarding proxy.
   • Ensure that load balancers are configured to keep sessions with one proxy server and not switch between them.

   If you choose to use an HTTP proxy, complete the required fields:
   1. Specify the proxy server hostname and port.
2. Choose whether to use authentication, and specify the user name and password if required.
3. Specify the proxy test URL.
4. Click Text Proxy to verify that the proxy settings are configured and working correctly.
f. Click Save DNS & Proxy.

Step 7. Click Restart to restart the management server.
Step 8. Click Test Connection to verify the network settings.

---

**Setting the date and time**

You can set the date and time to be used for Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

You must use at least one (and up to four) Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to synchronize the time stamps for all events that are received from managed devices with XClarity Administrator.

**Tip:** The NTP server must be accessible over the management network (typically the Eth0 interface). Consider setting up the NTP server on the host where XClarity Administrator is running.

If you change the time on the NTP server, it might take a while for XClarity Administrator to synchronize with the new time.

**Attention:** The XClarity Administrator virtual appliance and its host must be set to synchronize to the same time source to prevent inadvertent time mis-synchronization between XClarity Administrator and its host. Typically, the host is configured to have its virtual appliances time-sync to it. If XClarity Administrator is set to synchronize to a different source than its host, you must disable the host time synchronization between XClarity Administrator virtual appliance and its host.

- For ESXi, following instructions on the VMware – Disabling Time Synchronization webpage.
- For Hyper-V, from Hyper-V Manager, right-click the XClarity Administrator virtual machine, and then click Settings. In the dialog, click Management > Integration Services in the navigation pane, and then clear Time synchronization.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to set the date and time for XClarity Administrator.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration → Date and Time. The Date and Time page is displayed. This page shows the current date and time for XClarity Administrator.

Step 2. Click Edit Date and Time to display the Edit Date and Time page.
Step 3. Fill in the date and time dialog.

1. Choose the time zone where the host for XClarity Administrator is located.
   If the selected time zone observes daylight saving time (DST), the time is automatically adjusted for DST.

2. Choose to use a 12-hour or 24-hour clock.

3. Specify the hostname or IP address for each NTP server within your network. You can define up to four NTP servers.

4. Select **Required** to enable NTP v3 authentication, or select **None** to use NTP v1 authentication between XClarity Administrator and the NTP servers within your network.
   You can use v3 authentication if the managed Flex System CMMs and baseboard management controllers have firmware that require v3 authentication, and if NTP v3 authentication is required between XClarity Administrator and one or more NTP servers within your network.

5. If you enabled NTP v3 authentication, set the authentication key and index for each applicable NTP server. You can specify an M-MD5 key, SHA1 key, or both. If both M-MD5 or SHA1 keys are specified, XClarity Administrator pushes either M-MD5 or SHA1 key to the managed Flex System CMMs and management controllers that support it. The XClarity Administrator uses the key to authenticate to the NTP server.
   - For the M-MD5 key, specify an ASCII string that includes only upper and lower case letters (a-z, A-Z), digits (0-9) and the following special characters @#.
For the SHA1 key, specify a 40-character ASCII string, including only 0–9 and a-f.

The specified key index and authentication key must match the key ID and password values that is set on the NTP server. For example, if the key index of the entered SHA1 key in the NTP server is 5, the specified key index of the XClarity Administrator SHA1 key is also 5. For information about setting the key ID and password, see your NTP server documentation.

You must specify the key for each NTP server that uses v3 authentication, even if two or more NTP servers use the same key.

If you enable v3 authentication but do not provide an authentication key and index for an NTP server, v1 authentication is used by default.

If you specified multiple NTP servers, the NTP servers must be either all v3-authenticated or all v1-authenticated. A mix of v3-authenticated or and v1-authenticated NTP servers was not supported.

If you specified multiple NTP servers with v3-authentication, the key indices must be unique if the keys are not the same. For example, NTP server 1 and 2 cannot have the SHA1 key index of 1 if the SHA1 keys are different in the NTP server 1 and 2. You must reconfigure one of the NTP servers to accept the key with a different key index than the other NTP server; otherwise, that last defined key that was associated with a key index will be configured for all NTP servers with the same key index.

Step 4. Click Save.

### Setting inventory preferences

You can set inventory preferences for managed devices, including the property to use to display the device name.

#### Procedure

Complete the following steps to set the inventory preferences for managed devices.

*Step 1.* From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Inventory Preferences. The Inventory Preferences page is displayed.

*Step 2.* Select the property to use for the device name that is displayed in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator user interface. You can select one of the following properties.

- **Predefined sequence (default)**
- **User-defined name**
- **DNS hostname**
- **Hostname**
- **IPv4 address**
- **Serial number**

If **Predefined sequence** is selected, the device name that is displayed is chosen based on the sequence of properties in the previous list. For example, if a device has a user-defined name, that name is displayed. If a device does not have a user-defined name, then the DNS host name is displayed. If a device does not have a user-defined name or DNS host name, the hostname is displayed.

**Note:** Selecting a value other than the default changes that the name that is displayed in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator user interface for all devices to the selected property. The user-defined name that is assigned to the device does not change.

*Step 3.* Optionally click **Enable** to choose to sort grids (tables) using the value that is selected for the device name.

*Step 4.* Select the rack numbering order preference, either top to bottom (for example, 1 – 52) or bottom to top (for example, 52 – 1).
**Note:** Changing the number order preference does not change the location of a device in the rack.

Step 5. Click **Apply**.

**What to do next**

You can set threshold preferences for raising an alert and event when a certain value, such as the life of an SSD in a ThinkSystem or ThinkServer server, exceeds a warning or critical level (see **Setting threshold preferences for generating alerts and events**).

---

**Setting threshold preferences for generating alerts and events**

You can set threshold preferences for raising an alert and event when a certain value, such as the life of an SSD in a ThinkSystem or ThinkServer server, exceeds a warning or critical level.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to forward specific service files to the service provider.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring ➔ Alerts** to display the Alerts page.

Step 2. Click the **Threshold Settings** icon to display the Threshold Settings dialog.

Step 3. Modify the warning or critical thresholds for the remaining life of SSDs in ThinkSystem and ThinkServer servers.

Remaining life of SSDs is calculated using vendor SMART counters. The default values are 30% for the warning threshold and 20% for the critical threshold.

Step 4. Select the **Enabled** toggle to generate an alert and event when each threshold is reached.

Step 5. Click **Apply**

---

**Setting up automatic problem notification to Lenovo Support (Call Home)**

You can create a service forwarder that automatically sends service data for any managed device to Lenovo Support using the Call Home when certain serviceable events, such as an unrecoverable memory, are received from specific managed devices so that the issue can be addressed. This service forwarded is named “Default Call Home.”

Lenovo is committed to security. When enabled, Call Home automatically contacts Lenovo to open a service ticket and sends in service data collected from a managed device when that device reports a hardware failure or when you choose to initiate a manual Call Home. Service data that you would typically upload manually to Lenovo Support is automatically sent to the Lenovo Support Center over HTTPS using TLS 1.2 or later; your business data is never transmitted. Access to service data in the Lenovo Support Center is restricted to authorized service personnel.

**Before you begin**

**Attention:** You must accept the Lenovo Privacy Statement before you can transfer data to Lenovo Support.

Ensure that all ports that are required by Lenovo XClarity Administrator (including ports that are required for Call Home) are available before you enable Call Home. For more information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Ensure that a connection exists to the Internet addresses that are required by Call Home. For information about firewalls, see Firewalls and proxy servers in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
If XClarity Administrator accesses the Internet through an HTTP proxy, ensure that the proxy server is configured to use basic authentication and is set up as a non-terminating proxy. For more information about setting up the proxy, see Configuring network access in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

About this task

A service forwarder defines information about where to send the service data files when a serviceable event occurs. You can define up to 50 service forwarders.

Note: For XClarity Administrator v2.3 and later, service requests are no longer routed directly to IBM. When Call Home is enabled, service requests are first routed to the Lenovo Support, and then forwarded to IBM, if appropriate for certain devices. New DNS names and IP addresses are required to use Call Home to route service requests to Lenovo Support in for XClarity Administrator v2.3.0 and later. The old DNS names and IP addresses are no longer required to use Call Home; however, they are needed to retrieve status for open service tickets that were submitted prior to updating to v2.3.0.

If a Call Home service forwarder is not configured, you can manually open a service ticket and send service files to the Lenovo Support Center by following the instructions on the New Service Request webpage. For information about collecting and downloading service files, see Downloading XClarity Administrator diagnostic files and Collecting and downloading diagnostic files for a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

If a Call Home service forwarder is configured but not enabled, you can manually open a service ticket using the Call Home function to collect and transfer service files to the Lenovo Support Center at any time. For more information, see Opening a service ticket in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

When a Call Home service forwarder is configured and enabled, XClarity Administrator automatically opens a service ticket and transfers service files to the Lenovo Support Center when a serviceable event occurs so that the issue can be addressed.

Note: When a Call Home service forwarder is enabled in Lenovo XClarity Administrator, Call Home is disabled on each managed device to avoid duplicate problem records from being created. If you intend to discontinue using XClarity Administrator to manage your devices or if you intend to disable Call Home in XClarity Administrator, you can re-enable Call Home on all managed devices from the XClarity Administrator in lieu of re-enabling Call Home for each individual device at a later time. For information about re-enabling Call Home on all managed devices when the service forwarder for Call Home is disabled, see Re-enabling call home on all managed devices in the XClarity Administrator online documentation. Although XClarity Administrator supports Call Home for ThinkAgile and ThinkSystem devices, the baseboard management controller for those devices does not include Call Home support. Therefore, you cannot enable or disable Call Home on those devices themselves.

Call home is suppressed for repeated events for any device if a service ticket is open for that event on that device. Call Home is also suppressed for similar events for any ThinkAgile and ThinkSystem device if a service ticket is open for an event on that device. ThinkAgile and ThinkSystem events are 16-characters strings in the following format xx<2_char_reading_type><2_char_sensor_type><xx<2_char_entity_ID>xxxxxx (for example, 806f010d0401ffff). Events are similar if they have the same reading type, sensor type, and entity ID. For example, if a service ticket is open for event 806f010d0401ffff on a specific ThinkAgile or ThinkSystem device, any events that occur on that device with event IDs like xx6f01xx04xxxxxx, where x is any alphanumeric character, are suppressed.

For information about viewing service tickets that were opened automatically by a Call Home service forwarder, see Viewing problem records and status in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to setup a service forwarded for Call Home.

- Setup Call Home for all managed devices (current and future):
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration → Service and Support**.
  2. Click **Call Home Configuration** in the left navigation to display the Call Home Configuration page.

3. (Optional) Specify the default Lenovo customer number to use when reporting problems with XClarity Administrator.

   **Tip:** You can find your customer number in the proof-of-entitlement email that you received when you purchased Lenovo XClarity Pro.

4. Fill in the contact and location information.

5. Select the preferred method of contact by Lenovo Support.

6. (Optional) Fill in the system information.

7. Click **Apply**.

   A Call Home service forwarder named “Default Call Home” is created for all managed devices using the specified contact information.

8. Enable and test the “Default Call Home” service forwarder.
a. Click **Service Forwarder** in the left navigation to display the Service Forwarders page.
b. Select **Enable** in the **Status** column for the “Default Call Home” service forwarder.
c. Select the “Default Call Home” service forwarder, and click **Test Service Forwarders** to generate a test event for the service forwarder and verify that XClarity Administrator is able to communicate with the Lenovo Support Center.

You can monitor the test progress by clicking **Monitoring ➔ Jobs** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar.

**Note:** The service forwarder must be enabled before it can be tested

• Setup Call Home for specific managed devices:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Service and Support**.
  2. Click **Service Forwarders** in the left navigation to display the Service Forwarders page.
  3. Click the **Create Service Forwarder** icon (🗹) to display the New Service Forwarder dialog.
  4. Click the **General** tab.

New Service Forwarder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>Specifics</th>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Call Home</td>
<td>[ ] SFTP</td>
<td>[ ] Lenovo Upload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Number of retries:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Minimum number of minutes between retries:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Requires Service Data Inspection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Select **Call Home** as the service forwarder:
b. Enter the name of the service forwarder and a description.
c. Specify the number of automatic-notification retries. The default is 2.
d. Specify the minimum number of minutes between retries. The default is 2.
e. (Optional) Click **Requires Service Data Inspection** if you want to inspect the service-data files before they are transferred, and optionally specify the e-mail address of the contact to be notified when service files must be inspected.

5. Click the **Specific** tab, and fill in the contact and system information.

**Tip:** To use the same contact and location information that is configured on the Call Home Configuration page, select **General Configuration** in the **Configuration** drop-down menu.

6. Click the **Devices** tab, and select the managed devices and resource groups for which you want this service forwarder to forward service files.

**Tip:** To forward service files for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all devices** checkbox.

7. Click **Create**. The service forwarder is added to the Service and Support page.
8. On the Service Forwarders page, select **Enable** in the **Status** column to enable the service forwarder.
9. Select the service forwarder, and click **Test Service Forwarders** to generate a test event for the service forwarder and verify that XClarity Administrator is able to communicate with the Lenovo Support Center.

You can monitor the test progress by clicking **Monitoring ➔ Jobs** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar.

**Note:** The service forwarder must be enabled before it can be tested.

**What to do next**

From the Service and Support page, you can also perform the following actions:

- If **Requires Service Data Inspection** is selected and a serviceable event was received from one of the managed devices that is associated with the service forwarder, you must inspect service files before the files are forwarded to the service provider. For more information, see Transferring diagnostic files to Lenovo Support in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Determine whether Call Home is enabled or disabled on a managed device by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation and verifying the state in the **Call Home Status** column.

  **Tip:** If “Unknown State” is displayed in the **Call Home Status** column, refresh the web browser to display the correct status.

- Define the support contact and location information for a specific managed device by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation, selecting the device, and then clicking the **Create Contact Profile** icon or **Edit Contact Profile** icon. The contact and location information for the managed device is included in the service ticket that Call Home sends to the Lenovo Support Center. If unique contact and location information is specified for a managed device, that information is included in the service ticket. Otherwise, general information that is specified for the XClarity Administrator Call Home configuration (on the **Call Home Configuration** page or **Service Forwarders** page) is used. For more information, see Lenovo Support Center. For more information, see Defining the support contacts for a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- View service tickets that have been submitted to the Lenovo Support Center by clicking **Service Ticket Status** in the left navigation. This page lists service tickets that have been opened automatically or manually by a Call Home service forwarder, the status, and service files that were transmitted to the Lenovo Support Center. For more information, see Viewing problem records and status in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Collect service data for a specific device by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation, selecting the device, and then clicking the **Collect Service Data** icon. For more information, see Collecting and downloading diagnostic files for a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Manually open a service ticket in the Lenovo Support Center, collect service data for a specific device, and send those files to the Lenovo Support Center by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation, selecting the device, and then clicking All Actions ➔ Perform Manual Call Home. If the Lenovo Support Center requires additional data, the Lenovo Support might instruct you to recollect service data for that device or for another device.

  For more information, see Opening a service ticket in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Re-enable Call Home on all managed devices by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation, and then clicking All Actions ➔ Enable Call Home on all devices.

When a Call Home service forwarder is enabled in Lenovo XClarity Administrator, Call Home is disabled on each managed device to avoid duplicate problem records from being created. If you intend to discontinue using XClarity Administrator to manage your devices or if you intend to disable Call Home in XClarity Administrator, you can re-enable Call Home on all managed devices from the XClarity Administrator in lieu of re-enabling Call Home for each individual device at a later time.
Setting up automatic problem notification to a preferred service provider

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to automatically send diagnostic files for a specific set of managed devices to your preferred service provider (including Lenovo Support using Call Home) when certain serviceable events are received from managed devices (such as an unrecoverable memory error) so that the issue can be addressed.

Before you begin

Attention: You must accept the Lenovo Privacy Statement before you can transfer data to Lenovo Support.

Ensure that all ports that are required by XClarity Administrator (including ports that are required for call home) are available before you setup a service forwarder. For more information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Ensure that a connection exists to the Internet addresses that are required by the service provider.

If you choose to use Lenovo Support, ensure that a connection exists to the Internet addresses that are required by Call Home. For information about firewalls, see Firewalls and proxy servers in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

If XClarity Administrator accesses the Internet through an HTTP proxy, ensure that the proxy server is set up as a non-terminating proxy. For more information about setting up the proxy, see Configuring network access in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

About this task

A service forwarder defines information about where to send the service data files when a serviceable event occurs. You can define up to 50 service forwarders.

For each service forwarder, you can choose to automatically transfer service data to Lenovo Support (called Call Home), to the Lenovo Upload Facility, or to another service provider using SFTP. For information about setting up a service forwarder for Call Home, see Setting up automatic problem notification to Lenovo Support (Call Home) and Setting up automatic problem notification to a preferred service provider. For information about setting up a service forwarder for the Lenovo Upload Facility, see Setting up automatic problem notification to the Lenovo Upload Facility in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

If a service forwarder is configured and enabled for SFTP, XClarity Administrator automatically transfers service files to the specified SFTP site for your preferred service provider.

Note: If multiple SFTP service forwarders are set up for the same device, only one of the service forwarders transfers service data. The address and port that is used depends on which service forwarder is triggered first.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to define and enable a service forwarder.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Service and Support. The Service and Support page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Service Forwarders in the left navigation to display the Service Forwarders page.

Step 3. Click the Create Service Forwarder icon (CREATE SERVICE FORWARDER) to display the New Service Forwarder dialog.
Step 4. Click the **General** tab.

**New Service Forwarder**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>Specifics</th>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☐ Call Home</td>
<td>☐ SFTP</td>
<td>☐ Lenovo Upload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Number of retries:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Minimum number of minutes between retries:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Requires Service Data Inspection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Select **SFTP** for the service forwarder:
2. Enter the name of the service forwarder and a description.
3. Specify the number of automatic-notification retries. The default is 2.
4. Specify the minimum number of minutes between retries. The default is 2.
5. (Optional) Click **Requires Service Data Inspection** if you want to inspect the service files before they are transferred, and optionally specify the e-mail address of the contact to be notified when service files must be inspected.

Step 5. Click the **Specific** tab, and fill in the following information:
- IP address and port number of the SFTP server
- User ID and password for authentication to the SFTP server

Step 6. Click the **Device** tab, and select the managed devices and resource groups for which you want this service forwarder to forward service data.

**Tip:** To forward service data for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all devices** checkbox.

Step 7. Click **Create**. The service forwarder is added to the Service and Support page

Step 8. On the Service and Support page, select **Enable** in the **Status** column to enable the service forwarder.

Step 9. To prevent serviceable events that are in the list of excluded events from automatically opening problem reports, select **No** next to the question **Do you want excluded events to open problem reports?**

Step 10. Select the service forwarder, and click **Test Service Forwarders** to generate a test event for the service forwarder and verify that XClarity Administrator is able to communicate with each service provider.

**Note:** The service forwarder must be enabled before it can be tested.

**What to do next**

From the Service and Support page, you can also perform the following actions:

- If **Requires Service Data Inspection** is selected and a serviceable event was received from one of the managed devices that is associated with the service forwarder, you must inspect and service files before
the files are forwarded to the service provider. For more information, see [Inspecting diagnostic files](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Modify the service-forwarder information by clicking **Service Forwarders** in the left navigation and clicking the **Edit Service Forwarder** icon ( ).
- Enable or disable a service provider by clicking **Service Forwarders** and selecting **Enable** or **Disable** in the **Status** column.
- Delete the service provider by clicking **Service Forwarders** and clicking the **Delete Service Forwarder** icon ( ).
- Define the support contact and location information for a specific managed device by clicking **Device Actions** in the left navigation, selecting the device, and then clicking the **Create Contact Profile** icon ( ) or **Edit Contact Profile** icon ( ). The contact and location information for the managed device is included in the problem record that call home creates in the Lenovo Support Center. If unique contact and location information is specified for a managed device, that information is included in the problem record. Otherwise, general information that is specified for the XClarity Administrator call-home configuration (on the **Call Home Configuration** page or **Service Forwarders** page) is used. For more information, see [Defining the support contacts for a device](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Collect service data for a specific device by clicking **Device Actions**, selecting the device, and then clicking the **Collect Service Data** icon ( ). For more information, see [Collecting and downloading diagnostic files for a device](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

For more information about these service and support tasks, see [Working with service and support](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

## Backing up and restoring system data and settings

You can use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to backup and restore system data and settings and imported files such as operating-system images, firmware updates, and OS device drivers.

### Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator

If you already have backup procedures in place for virtual hosts, ensure that your procedures include Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

**Attention:** Ensure that you notify all active users before you initiate the backup procedure. XClarity Administrator is quiesced during the procedure to prevent data from being modified. Therefore, you cannot access XClarity Administrator while the backup procedure is running.

Download the Certificate Authority certificate from the XClarity Administrator virtual appliance and import the certificate into your web browser (see [Importing the Certificate Authority certificate into a web browser](#)).

Ensure that all running jobs are complete and that there are no pending jobs. If jobs are running, you can choose to stop the running jobs and continue creating the backup.

Ensure that the DNS servers are set up correctly; otherwise SMTP and NTP might not work correctly after the backup is restored.

Ensure that there is enough disk space available in the management server for the backup. If not, free up disk space by deleting XClarity Administrator resources, including previous backups, that are no longer needed (see [Managing disk space](#)) or choose to create a new backup without including operating-system images, firmware updates, and OS device drivers.

Chapter 2. Administering Lenovo XClarity Administrator 87
About this task

Always back up XClarity Administrator after performing the initial setup and after making significant configuration changes, including:

- Before you update XClarity Administrator
- When you manage new chassis or rack servers
- When you add users to XClarity Administrator
- When you create and deploy new Configuration Patterns

Ensure that you back up XClarity Administrator on a regular basis.

It is recommended that you download backups to your local system. If the host operating system shuts down unexpectedly, you might not be able to authenticate with XClarity Administrator after the host operating system is restarted. To resolve this problem, restore XClarity Administrator from the last backup on your local system (see Restoring Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

Procedure

Complete the following steps to back up XClarity Administrator.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Back Up and Restore Data. The Back Up and Restore Data page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Back Up icon ( ). The Back Up Data and Settings dialog is displayed.

Step 3. Enter a description for this backup.

Step 4. Choose the location where you want to create the backup. This can be the local repository or a remote share.

The backup is created in the local repository by default. You can copy a backup from the local repository to a remote share by clicking the Copy Backup icon ( ).

If you choose a remote share, the backup is first created in the local repository. Then, the backup is copied to the selected remote share, and the local copy is deleted. For more information, see Managing remote shares.

Step 5. Optionally select to include operating-system images, firmware updates, and OS device drivers.

Step 6. Specify the encryption passphrase for the backup.

Attention: Record the encryption passphrase. The passphrase is needed to restore the backup to this or another XClarity Administrator instance. If you forget the passphrase, there is no way to recover it.

Step 7. Click Back Up to backup data and settings immediately, or click Schedule to schedule this backup to run at a later time.

Attention: If you choose to back up immediately, do not close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the process completes. Otherwise, the backup might not be generated.

Generating the backup might take a while. A progress bar shows the status of the job.

If you chose to create the backup on a remote share, you can monitor progress from the Jobs page (see Monitoring jobs).

If you schedule a backup, the management server is shut down temporarily during the backup process. After the management server comes back online, you can monitor the status of the backup process from the Jobs page.
Step 8. Log in to the XClarity Administrator to continue managing your devices.

What to do next

From the Back Up and Restore Data page, you can perform the following actions:

• Copy XClarity Administrator backups to or from a remote share clicking the **Copy Backup** icon ( ).
• Delete selected backups from the local repository or remote shares that are no longer needed by clicking the **Delete Backup** icon ( ).
• Restore system data and settings to this management server (see Restoring Lenovo XClarity Administrator).
• Import or export backups from the local system by clicking the **Import Backup** icon ( ) or **Export Backup** icon ( ), respectively.
• Push the selected backup to a new XClarity Administrator instance (see Migrating data and settings to another Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance).

Restoring Lenovo XClarity Administrator

You can use backed up data and settings to restore Lenovo XClarity Administrator to a previous state.

Before you begin

**Attention:** Ensure that you notify all active users before you initiate the backup procedure. XClarity Administrator is quiesced during the procedure to prevent data from being modified. Therefore, you cannot access XClarity Administrator while the backup procedure is running.

Download the Certificate Authority certificate from the XClarity Administrator virtual appliance and import the certificate into your web browser (see Importing the Certificate Authority certificate into a web browser).

Ensure that all running jobs are complete and that there are no pending jobs.

About this task

**Attention:**

• All changes since when the backup was created will be lost.
• To restore data, the virtual appliance is reset to its original clean state. All current settings, device inventory and files (operating-system images, firmware updates, and OS device drivers) are deleted before restoring data in the backup. Data and settings in the backup are not mixed with the virtual appliance’s current data and settings. If you choose not to restore device inventory, operating-system images, firmware updates, and OS device drivers, only the default XClarity Administrator data is present after the restore operation completes.

Restoring a backup does not delete backups in the XClarity Administrator instance.

Restoring a backup does not change data or settings on the managed devices. For example, if you unmanage a device and then restore a previous backup when the device was still managed on XClarity Administrator, you might have connectivity issues with that device after the restore operation is complete. Likewise, if you manage a device and then restore a previous backup when the device was still unmanaged, you might need to manually modify the device’s configuration to undo its managed status or use the **Force** option when trying to manage it in XClarity Administrator again.
You can restore a backup only in the same XClarity Administrator version that was used to create the backup.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to restore XClarity Administrator.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➤ Back Up and Restore Data**. The Back Up and Restore Data page is displayed.

**Step 2.** If you exported the backup package to your local system and deleted it from XClarity Administrator, complete the following steps.

a. From the Backup and Restore Data page, click the **Import Backup** icon ( ) to display the Import Backup dialog.

b. Click **Browse** to find the backup that you exported from a XClarity Administrator instance.

c. Click **Import** to upload the backup to the XClarity Administrator.

Importing the backup might take a while. A progress bar shows the status of the job.

**Attention:** If you close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the upload completes, the process might fail.

**d.** When the import is complete, specify the encryption passphrase for the backup.

**Note:** If you do not have the encryption passphrase, you will need to create a new backup in XClarity Administrator (see **Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator**).

**Step 3.** Select the backup to restore, and click the **Restore Backup** icon ( ). The Restore Data dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** Specify the encryption passphrase for the backup.

**Step 5.** Click **Confirm**.

**Step 6.** In the Confirm Data Restore dialog, verify that the information in the dialog is correct.

**Step 7.** In the Restore Options dialog, optionally choose to import operating-system images, firmware updates, OS device drivers, network settings, and device inventory.

**Attention:** Ensure that you carefully read all warning that are displayed in this dialog.

**Step 8.** Click **Confirm** to begin data restore.

Restoring the data and settings might take a while. A progress bar shows the status of the job.

When the restore process is complete, you are redirected to the login page.

**Attention:** If you close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the process completes, process might fail.

**Step 9.** Log in to the XClarity Administrator to continue managing your devices.

**Migrating data and settings to another Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance**

You can migrate the backed up system data and settings to a new Lenovo XClarity Administrator that is in the same or different network.

**Before you begin**
Attention: Ensure that you notify all active users before you initiate the backup procedure. XClarity Administrator is quiesced during the procedure to prevent data from being modified. Therefore, you cannot access XClarity Administrator while the backup procedure is running.

Download the Certificate Authority certificate from the XClarity Administrator virtual appliance and import the certificate into your web browser (see Managing disk space in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

Ensure that all running jobs are complete and that there are no pending jobs.

Backups in the source management server backup repository are not migrated to the target management server. Before migrating data and settings, export any backups you might need to your local system.

About this task

Attention: The target management server must be a new XClarity Administrator virtual appliance with the same version as the source management server and must be in the Initial Setup wizard, with no steps completed.

Any changes to the source management server after the backup was created is not migrated to the target management server.

Restoring a backup does not change data or settings on the managed devices. For example, if you unmanage a device and then restore a previous backup when the device was still managed on XClarity Administrator, you might have connectivity issues with that device after the restore operation is complete. Likewise, if you manage a device and then restore a previous backup when the device was still unmanaged, you might need to manually modify the device’s configuration to undo its managed status or use the Force option when trying to manage it in XClarity Administrator again.

You can restore a backup only in the same XClarity Administrator version that was used to create the backup. Install a new XClarity Administrator virtual appliance of the same version as the one you used to create your backup data package. Instructions vary based on the type of hypervisor and network setup in your environment. For more information, see Installing and setting up XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to restore XClarity Administrator.

Step 1. If the source and target XClarity Administrator are in the same network, complete the following steps.

   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Back Up and Restore Data. The Back Up and Restore Data page is displayed.
   
   b. Click the Push Backup icon ( ) to display the Push Data dialog.
   
   c. Specify the current IP address of the target XClarity Administrator.
   
   d. Click Continue to upload the backup to the target XClarity Administrator.

      Uploading the backup might take a while. A progress bar shows the status of the job.

      Attention: If you close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the upload completes, the package might not be uploaded.

Step 2. If the source and target XClarity Administrator are not in the same network, complete the following steps.
From the source XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Back Up and Restore Data**. From the Back Up and Restore Data page, click the **Export Backup** icon ( ) to export the backup to the local system.

Exporting the backup might take a while.

Copy the exported backup from the source management server to a system in the same network as the target management server.

From the Wizard page on the target XClarity Administrator, click the **Import Backup** icon ( ) to display the Import Data Package dialog.

Click **Browse** to find the backup that you exported from the source XClarity Administrator.

Click **Upload** to import the backup to the target XClarity Administrator.

Importing the backup might take a while. A progress bar shows the status of the job.

**Attention:** If you close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the upload completes, the process might fail.

### Step 3.
When the import is complete, specify the encryption passphrase for the backup.

**Note:** If you do not have the encryption passphrase, you will need to create a new backup in the source XClarity Administrator (see Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

### Step 4.
In the Confirm Data Restore dialog, verify that all information is correct.

### Step 5.
Click **Confirm** to begin loading system data and settings.

### Step 6.
In the Restore Options dialog, optionally choose to import operating-system images, firmware updates, OS device drivers, network settings, and device inventory.

**Attention:** Ensure that you carefully read all warning that are displayed in this dialog.

### Step 7.
If you chose to import network settings or device inventory, shut down the source management server from the source XClarity Administrator by clicking **Administration ➔ Shutdown Management Server ➔ Shutdown**.

Confirm that the source virtual appliance has shut down before continuing.

### Step 8.
On the target XClarity Administrator, click **Confirm** to begin loading data and settings from the package.

If you chose to import network settings, after migration is complete the IP addresses from the source XClarity Administrator are reassigned to the target XClarity Administrator.

**Attention:** If the source XClarity Administrator uses DHCP, you must bind the target XClarity Administrator MAC addresses to the corresponding source XClarity Administrator IP addresses on the DHCP server. Wait at least 15 minutes after the DHCP server is modified before continuing.

### Step 9.
Wait for the Load Data and Settings from Package progress bar to complete.

When the data-migration process is complete, you are redirected to the login page.

**Attention:** If you close or refresh the web browser tab or window before the upload completes, the process might fail.

### Step 10.
Log in to the target XClarity Administrator to continue managing your devices.
Managing disk space

You can manage the amount of disk space that is used by Lenovo XClarity Administrator by moving large data files that are not immediately needed to a remote share or by deleting resources that are no longer needed.

About this task

To determine how much disk space is currently being used, click Dashboard from the XClarity Administrator menu bar. The disk space usage on the repository and remote shares is listed in the XClarity Administrator Activity section.

Procedure

Complete one or more of the following steps to free up disk space by moving backup to a remote share and delete unneeded resources.

• Delete unneeded resources
  You can quickly delete files from the local repository that are no longer needed by completing the following steps.

  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Disk Cleanup to display the Disk Cleanup page.
  2. Select the files that you want delete. The section header identifies the amount of space that will be freed when the files are deleted.

    – Operating system related files
      You can delete OS Images, boot-option files, and software files.

    – Firmware updates
      You can delete payload files for all OS device drivers that are associated with UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) and individual device drivers that are in the Downloaded state.
      You can delete payload files for individual firmware updates that are in the Downloaded state and are not used in a firmware-compliance policy.
      You can delete payload files for management-server updates that are in the Downloaded state.

    – Service data files
      When service event occurs on a device, service data is collected automatically for that device. Service data is automatically captured for the management server every time an exception occurs in the XClarity Administrator. It is recommended that you periodically delete these archives if XClarity Administrator and the managed devices are running without issues.
      When management-server updates are successfully applied, the update files are automatically removed from the repository.

  3. Click Delete Selected.
  4. Review the list of files that you selected, and click Delete.

• Move XClarity Administrator backups to a remote share
  You can free up disk space that is available to the XClarity Administrator local repository by moving XClarity Administrator backups to a remote share. However, you cannot use the files directly on the remote share. To use the files, you must move them back to the XClarity Administrator local repository.
  For more information about remote shares, see Managing remote shares.

  Important: It is recommended that you download backups to your local system or copy backups to a remote share before deleting the backups in XClarity Administrator.
1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➞ Back Up and Restore Data** to display the Back Up and Restore Data page.

   **Back Up and Restore Data**

   - **Repository usage:** 0 KB of 50 GB

   The **Package location** column identifies whether the backup is stored, either locally in the XClarity Administrator local repository or on a remote share.

2. Select the backup, and click the **Copy Backup** icon ( ) to display the Copy Backup dialog.
3. Choose the remote share to store the backup.
4. Click **Copy**.
5. Monitor the copy progress on the Jobs page. When the copy is complete, select the backup again, and click the **Delete Backup** icon ( ) to display the Delete Backup dialog.
6. Select “Local” for the location.
7. Click **Delete**.

**Managing remote shares**

You can mount remote shares over SSH File System (SSHFS). You then can move Lenovo XClarity Administrator backups from the XClarity Administrator local repository to the remote shares to manage disk space that is available to XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

You must have **lxc-supervisor** authority to mount or unmount a remote share.

When using SSH public key authentication to mount a remote share, you must import the SSH public key for the remote server to XClarity Administrator.

**About this task**

**Note:** You cannot use the files directly on a remote share. To use the files, you must move them back to the XClarity Administrator local repository.

Currently, only SSHFS is supported.

**Procedure**

To add a remote share, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➞ Remote Share**. The Remote Share page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the Create ( ) icon to create a remote share. The Create Remote Share dialog is displayed.

**Step 3.** Specify the IP address of the remote server that hosts the remote share.
Step 4. Specify the stored credential to use to access the remote share.

**Tip:** To create a stored credential, see Managing stored credentials.

Step 5. Specify the mount point (local directory) on the management server to use for mounting the remote share.

**Important:** The path must start with “/mnt”.

Step 6. Specify the shared directory (remote server path) to mount as the remote share on the management server.

Step 7. If authentication is required, enable **SSH Key Authentication**.

Step 8. Click **Create**.

Step 9. If you chose to use SSH key authentication, select the remote share from the Remote Share page, and click the **Import** icon to import the SSH public key from the server that hosts the shared directory to XClarity Administrator.

**Notes:**
- If the SSH public key already exists, regenerating the key might cause you to lose connectivity to the existing remote share.
- You must have **lxc-supervisor** authority to regenerate an SSH key.

Step 10. From the Remote Share page, click the **Test** icon to verify the connection to the remote share.

**What to do next**
- Unmount the remote share by selecting the remote share and clicking the **Delete** icon.
- Move files to and from a remote share (see Managing disk space).

---

**Changing the language of the user interface**

You can change the language of the user interface after you are logged in.

**Procedure**

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator title bar, click the user-actions menu (ADMIN_USER), and then click **Change language**. Select the language that you want to display, and then click **Close**.

**Note:** The help system displays in the same language that is set for the user interface.

---

**Shutting down Lenovo XClarity Administrator**

When Lenovo XClarity Administrator shuts down, connectivity to Lenovo XClarity Administrator is lost.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that no jobs are currently running. Any jobs that are currently running are canceled during the shutdown process. To view the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to shut down Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Shut Down Management Server**.
A confirmation dialog is displayed with a list of jobs that are currently running. When you shut down Lenovo XClarity Administrator, the jobs are canceled.

Step 2. Click **Shut down**.

**What to do next**

To restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator after a shutdown, see Restarting Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

### Restarting Lenovo XClarity Administrator

You can restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator from the web interface or from the hypervisor after a shutdown.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that no jobs are currently running. Any jobs that are currently running are canceled during the restart process. To view the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

#### About this task

There are certain situations when you are required to restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator:

- When regenerating a server certificate
- When uploading a new server certificate

#### Procedure

Complete the following steps to restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

- Restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator from the web interface:
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➜ Shut Down Management Server**.
     
A confirmation dialog is displayed with a list of jobs that are currently running. When you restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator, the jobs are canceled.
  2. Click **Restart**.
     
When Lenovo XClarity Administrator shuts down, connectivity to Lenovo XClarity Administrator is lost.
  3. Wait a few minutes for Lenovo XClarity Administrator to restart, and then log in again.

- Restart Lenovo XClarity Administrator from the hypervisor after a shutdown:
  
  - **Microsoft Hyper-V**
    1. From the Server Manager Dashboard, click **Hyper-V**.
    2. Right-click the server, and click **Hyper-V Manager**.
    3. Right-click the virtual machine, and click **Start**. When the virtual machine is started, the IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are listed for each interface, as shown in the following example.

The XClarity Administrator eth0 management port uses a DHCP IP address by default. At the end of the XClarity Administrator boot process, you can choose to set a static IP address for the eth0 management port by entering 1 when prompted, as shown in the example below. The prompt is available for 150 seconds, until the login prompt is displayed. To proceed to the login prompt without delay, enter x at the prompt.

**Important:**
When changing the static IP address settings, you have a maximum of 60 seconds to enter the new settings. Ensure that you have the required IP information before continuing.

- For IPv4 settings, you must have the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address
- For IPv6 settings, you must have the IP address and prefix length

If you are not using a DHCP server, you can use a configuration file to specify the IP settings for the XClarity Administrator eth0 management port. That you want to use to access the XClarity Administrator. For more information, see the “What to do next” section below.

If you change the IP address settings from the console, XClarity Administrator is restarted to apply the new settings.

- No action is required to log in. Ignore the console login message. The console interface is not for customer use.
- You might see the message TCP: eth0: Driver has suspect GRO implementation, TCP performance may be compromised on the console. The performance of the virtual machine is not impacted, and you can ignore this warning.

Attention: Changing the IP address of the XClarity Administrator management port after managing devices might cause the devices to be placed in offline state in XClarity Administrator. If you choose to change the IP address after XClarity Administrator is up and running, ensure that all devices are unmanaged before changing the IP address.

---

VMware ESXi

1. Connect to the host through VMware vSphere Client.
2. Right-click the virtual machine, and click Power ➔ Power on.
3. Click the Console tab. When the virtual machine is started, the IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are listed for each interface, as shown in the following example.

The XClarity Administrator eth0 management port uses a DHCP IP address by default. At the end of the XClarity Administrator boot process, you can choose to set a static IP address for the eth0 management port by entering 1 when prompted, as shown in the example below. The prompt is available for 150 seconds, until the login prompt is displayed. To proceed to the login prompt without delay, enter x at the prompt.

Important:
- When changing the static IP address settings, you have a maximum of 60 seconds to enter the new settings. Ensure that you have the required IP information before continuing.
  - For IPv4 settings, you must have the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address
• For IPv6 settings, you must have the IP address and prefix length
  
  – If you are not using a DHCP server, you can use a configuration file to specify the IP settings for the XClarity Administrator eth0 management port. that you want to use to access the XClarity Administrator. For more information, see the "What to do next" section below.
  
  – If you change the IP address settings from the console, XClarity Administrator is restarted to apply the new settings.
  
  – No action is required to log in. Ignore the console login message. The console interface is not for customer use.
  
  – You might see the message TCP: eth0: Driver has suspect GRO implementation, TCP performance may be compromised on the console. The performance of the virtual machine is not impacted, and you can ignore this warning.

**Attention:** Changing the IP address of the XClarity Administrator management port after managing devices might cause the devices to be placed in offline state in XClarity Administrator. If you choose to change the IP address after XClarity Administrator is up and running, ensure that all devices are unmanaged before changing the IP address.

```
Lenovo XClarity Administrator  Version x.x.x
```

---

```
eth0  Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 2001:db8:65:12:34:56
     inet addr: 192.0.2.10  Bcast 192.0.2.55  Mask 255.255.255.0
     inet6 addr: 2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3/64 Scope:link

eth1  Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 2001:db8:64:23:45:67
     inet addr: 192.0.2.20  Bcast 192.0.2.130 Mask 255.255.255.0
     inet6 addr: 2001:db8:56ff:fe80:bea3/64 Scope:link
```

---

You have 150 seconds to change IP settings. Enter one of the following:

1. To set a static IP address for Lenovo XClarity virtual appliance eth0 port
2. To use a DHCP address for Lenovo XClarity virtual appliance eth0 port
3. To continue without changing IP settings
4. Log in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator (see Logging in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

**What to do next**

When Lenovo XClarity Administrator restarts, it recollects inventory for each managed device. Wait approximately 30-45 minutes, depending upon the number of managed devices, before attempting firmware updates, configuration pattern deployments, or operating-system deployments.
Chapter 3. Monitoring devices and activities

You can monitor your devices and activities though the dashboard, alerts and audit logs, and jobs logs.

Viewing a summary of your environment

The Dashboard displays the status of all managed devices, an overview of all provisioning-related tasks, an information about Lenovo XClarity Administrator resources and activities.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

Procedure

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Dashboard.
Step 2. Expand the hardware status, provisioning status, or the administrator activity section to obtain more information about each of these areas.

**Viewing a summary of your hardware status**

The Hardware Status area displays the status of all managed devices.

**Procedure**

To obtain more information about all of the devices of that type, click the number listed under the device type.

To view more information about only those devices of that type and status, click the icon or number beside each status icon.
- **Servers**. Displays the total number of servers (compute nodes, rack servers, and tower servers) that XClarity Administrator manages, and the number of servers with normal, warning, and critical status. For more information, see Viewing the status of a managed server.

- **Storage**. Displays the total number of storage devices that XClarity Administrator manages, and the number of storage devices with normal, warning, and critical status. For more information, see Viewing the status of storage devices.

- **Switches**. Displays the total number of RackSwitch and Flex System switches that XClarity Administrator manages, and the number of switches with normal, warning, and critical status. For more information, see Viewing the status of switches.

- **Chassis**. Displays the total number of Flex chassis that XClarity Administrator manages, and the number of Flex chassis with normal, warning, and critical status. For more information, see Viewing the status of a managed chassis.

- **Racks**. Displays the number of racks that are created in XClarity Administrator, and the number of racks with devices that have the normal, warning, and critical as their highest status. For more information, see Viewing the status of devices in a rack.

- **Resource groups**. Displays the number of resource groups that XClarity Administrator manages and the number of resource groups with devices that have the normal, warning, and critical as their highest status. For more information, see Viewing the status of devices in a resource group.

To customize the hardware resources that are displayed on the dashboard, click the **Customize** icon (⚙️). You can choose the device types that you want to show or hide. You can also choose whether to aggregate servers into a single summary, display separate summaries for each type of server (rack and tower, Flex System, ThinkServer, and NeXtScale servers), or omit specific types of servers.

### Select Resources to Show on Dashboard

- [x] Select All
- [x] Servers
- [x] Rack Servers (Aggregated)
- [x] Flex Servers (Aggregated)
- [x] ThinkServers (Aggregated)
- [x] High Density Servers (Aggregated)
- [x] Storage
- [x] Switches
- [x] Chassis
- [x] Racks
- [x] Resource Groups

---

**Viewing a summary of your provisioning status**

The Provisioning Status area provides a summary of all tasks that are associated with provisioning devices.

### Procedure

- **Configuration Patterns**. Displays details about the number of servers that have profiles, including the following statistics.

  **Note:** When the management server is not license compliant, all values are 0 (see Installing the full-function enablement license in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- The number of servers that are compliant with their server profile. You can click the number to display the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page with a list of compliant servers.

- The number of servers that are not compliant with their server profile. You can click the number to display the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page with a list of non-compliant servers.

- The number of devices for which compliance status is unknown. You can click the number to display the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page with a list of servers with unknown compliance.

  **Note:** Compliance status is unknown, typically after a partial profile deployment, when Lenovo XClarity Administrator did not collect the configuration information from the server. Refresh the server inventory or revisit the server-profile details page to force collecting configuration information from server.

- The number of servers that are assigned a server profile. You can click the number to display the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page with a list of servers with profiles.

- The number of servers that are not assigned a server profile. You can click the number to display the Configuration Patterns: Server Patterns page with a list of server patterns that can be deployed to servers without profiles.

- The number of server patterns that are currently being deployed.

To view trending data for configuration patterns, click **View Trending Data** (see Monitoring trends in provisioning status).

For more information about configuration patterns and server profiles, see Configuring servers using configuration patterns.

- **Operating System Images.** Displays details about operating-system deployments, including the following statistics.

  **Note:** When the management server is not license compliant, all values are 0 (see Installing the full-function enablement license in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

  - The number of OS images in the repository. You can click the number to display the Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images page with a list of operating systems.

  - The number of current OS deployments that are in progress. You can click the number to display the Deploy Operating Systems: Deploy OS Images page with a list devices for which an operating system is being installed.

- **Firmware Updates.** Displays details about firmware updates, including the following statistics.

  - The number of devices that are compliant. You can click the number to display the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page with a list of compliance devices.

  - The number of devices that are not compliant. You can click the number to display the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page with a list of non-compliance devices.

  - The number of devices that do not have an assigned firmware-compliance policy. You can click the number to display the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page with a list of devices without a compliance policy.

    From this page, you can assign each device a firmware-compliance policy by selecting a policy from the **Assigned Compliance Policy** column.

    - The number of devices for which updates are not supported. You can click the number to display the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page with a list of devices for which updates are not supported.

    - The number of updates that are in progress.

    - The number of devices with pending firmware. You can click the number to display the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page with a list of devices for which updates are pending activation.

To view trending data for firmware updates, click **View Trending Data** (see Monitoring trends in provisioning status).
For more information about firmware updates and compliance policies, see Updating firmware on managed devices.

**Viewing a summary of Lenovo XClarity Administrator activity**

The XClarity Administrator Activity area displays information about active jobs, active sessions, and system resources in XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

- **Jobs.** Displays the number of active jobs that are currently in progress. For more information about jobs, see Monitoring jobs.
- **Active Sessions.** Displays the user ID and IP address for each active XClarity Administrator session. For more information about users, see Managing user accounts.
- **Resource Usage.** Displays the processor usage, memory usage, and disk capacity on the host system and remote files shares. For more information about system resources, see Monitoring system resources.

**Monitoring system resources**

You can determine the processor usage, memory usage, and disk capacity on the host system from the Dashboard page.

**Before you begin**

The following minimum requirements must be met for the virtual machine. Depending on the size of your environment and your use of Configuration Patterns, additional resources might be required for optimal performance.

- Two virtual microprocessors
- 8 GB of memory
- 192 GB of storage for use by the XClarity Administrator virtual appliance.
- Display with a minimum resolution of 1024 pixels in width (XGA)

The following table lists the minimum recommended virtual-machine configurations for a given number of devices. Keep in mind that if you run the minimum configuration, you might experience longer than expected completion times for management tasks. For initial deployment tasks such as firmware updates and server configuration, you might need to increase the VM resources temporarily.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Managed Devices</th>
<th>Virtual CPU/Memory Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 - 100 devices</td>
<td>2 vCPUs, 8 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 - 200 devices</td>
<td>4 vCPUs, 10 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 - 400 devices</td>
<td>6 vCPUs, 12 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 - 600 devices</td>
<td>8 vCPUs, 16 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600 - 800 devices</td>
<td>10 vCPUs, 20 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 – 1,000 devices</td>
<td>12 vCPUs, 24 GB RAM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- A single XClarity Administrator instance can support a maximum of 1,000 devices.
- For the latest recommendations and additional performance considerations, see the [XClarity Administrator: Performance Guide (White paper)](http://example.com).

Chapter 3. Monitoring devices and activities 103
• Depending on the size of your managed environment and the pattern of use in your installation, you might need to add resources to maintain acceptable performance. If you frequently see processor usage in the system resources dashboard displaying high or very high values, consider adding 1-2 virtual processor cores. If your memory usage persists above 80% at idle, consider adding 1-2 GB of RAM. If your system is responsive at a configuration as defined in the table, consider running the VM for a longer period to assess system performance.

• For information about how to free up disk space by deleting XClarity Administrator resources that are no longer needed, see Managing disk space.

Procedure

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard**.

The host-system resource usage is listed in the XClarity Administrator Activity section.

**Processor**

The usage measurement indicates the number of XClarity Administrator processes that are simultaneously accessing the processors on the host.

**Tip:** The usage measure might occasionally spike to High or Very High. If the usage remains at these level for more than 30 minutes, check the jobs log to see if long running jobs are in progress (see Monitoring jobs).

The total-capacity measurement indicates the number of processors that are available on the host.

**Memory**

The usage measurement indicates the amount of memory that is currently in use by XClarity Administrator.

The total-capacity measurement indicates the total amount of available memory on the host.

**User Data**

The usage measurement indicates the amount of disk space that is currently in use by XClarity Administrator on the host system.

The total-capacity measurement indicates the total amount of space (used and unused) that is allocated for user data, such as operating systems and firmware updates.

For more information about managing disk space, see Managing disk space.

**Attention:** If the allocated resources are insufficient to handle the current number of managed devices with good performance, consider increasing the resource allocation. For information about recommended
Monitoring trends in provisioning status

Lenovo XClarity Administrator regularly collects provisioning status, including compliance and active jobs for firmware updates and configuration patterns, for all managed devices so that you can monitor trends over a period of time.

About this task

You must have lxc_admin or lxc-supervisor authority to view trend data.

The following data is collected:

- **Firmware updates**
  - **Devices compliant.** Number of devices that are compliant with their assigned firmware-compliance policy
  - **Devices non-compliant.** Number of devices that are not compliant with their assigned firmware-compliance policy
  - **Devices without policies.** Number of devices that do not have an assigned firmware-compliance policy
  - **Devices not supported for updates.** Number of devices for which firmware updates are not supported
  - **Updates in progress.** Number of devices for which firmware updates are in progress

- **Configuration patterns**
  - **Servers with profiles.** Number of devices that have an assigned server profile
  - **Servers without profiles.** Number of devices that do not have an assigned server profile
  - **Servers compliant.** Number of devices that are compliant with their assigned server profile
  - **Servers non-compliant.** Number of devices that are not compliant with their assigned server profile
  - **Server patterns in progress.** Number of devices for which configuration-pattern updates are in progress

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to view trends in provisioning status.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard** to display the Dashboard page.

**Step 2.** Click the **Trending Data** link to display the Threshold Settings dialog.

**Step 3.** Clear or select the data that you want to view.

**Step 4.** Select the time period that you want to view.

  - **24 hours.** Displays data for the last 24 hours. Each data point is an average over a 1-hour period.
  - **1 month.** Displays data for the last 30 days. Each data point is an average over a 24-hour period.

The trend data is shown as a graph over the selected time period.
Placing devices in maintenance mode

When a device is in maintenance mode, Lenovo XClarity Administrator excludes all events and alerts for that device from all pages on which events and alerts are displayed. Excluded alerts are still logged but are hidden from view.

About this task
Only events and alerts that were generated for a device while the device is in maintenance mode are excluded. Events and alerts were generated before the device was placed in maintenance mode are displayed.

Placing a managed device in maintenance and then back in service might cause inventory for that device to be out of date. If you see abnormalities, manually refresh the inventory from the device page by selecting the device and clicking All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Refresh Inventory.

Procedure
Complete one of the following steps to place devices in maintenance mode.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Service and Support. The Service and Support page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Endpoint Actions in the left navigation to display the Endpoint Actions page.

Step 3. Select one or more devices to place in maintenance mode.

Step 4. Click Actions ➔ Maintenance to display the Maintenance mode dialog.

Step 5. Select the date and time for taking the device out of maintenance mode and placing back in service.

Select Indefinitely if you do not want the device placed back in service.

Step 6. Click Confirm. The maintenance column in the table changes to Yes for that device.

What to do next
When you are done with maintenance on the device, you can put the device back in service by selecting the device and clicking Actions ➔ Maintenance, and then clicking Turn off maintenance in the dialog. If you do not manually place the device back in service mode, it is placed in service mode automatically after the specified end date and time expires.

Working with alerts
Alerts are hardware or management conditions that require investigation and user action. Lenovo XClarity Administrator polls the managed devices asynchronously and displays alerts that are received from those devices.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

About this task
Typically, when an alert is received, a corresponding event is stored in the event log. It is possible to have an alert without a corresponding event in the event log (even if the log wraps). For example, events that occur before you manage a chassis are not displayed in the event log. However, the alerts for the chassis are displayed in the alert log because Lenovo XClarity Administrator polls the CMM after the chassis has been managed.

Viewing active alerts
You can view a list of all active hardware and management alerts.

About this task
Note: Alerts for Lenovo Storage devices are presented only in English, even when the locale for Lenovo XClarity Administrator is set to another language. Use an external translation system to translate the messages manually, if needed.
Procedure

Complete one of these procedures to view the active alerts.

- To view only alerts for managed devices (known as hardware alerts):
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator title bar, click the Status pull-down to display a summary of hardware and management alerts.
  2. Click the With Hardware Alerts tab to see a summary of alerts for each managed device.
  3. Hover the cursor over a device that is listed under that tab to display a list of alerts for that device.
  4. Click the All Hardware Alerts link to display the Alerts page with a filtered list of all hardware alerts.

- To view only alerts from Lenovo XClarity Administrator (known as management alerts):
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator title bar, click the Status pull-down to display a summary of hardware and management alerts.
  2. Click the With Management Alerts tab to see a summary of all CMM and Lenovo XClarity Administrator alerts.
3. Hover the cursor over a device that is listed under that tab to display a list of alerts for that device.
4. Click the **All Management Alerts** link to display the Alerts page with a filtered list of all CMM and Lenovo XClarity Administrator alerts.

   • To view all alerts in Lenovo XClarity Administrator, click **Monitoring ➔ Alerts** from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar. The Alerts page is displayed with a list of all active alerts.

   ![Alerts Page](image)

   **Alerts**

   Alerts indicate hardware or management conditions that need investigation and user action.

   ![Alerts Table](image)

   - To view alerts for a specific device:
     1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware**, and then click a device type. A page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed devices of that type. For example, click **Hardware ➔ Servers** to display the Servers page.
     2. Click a specific device to display the Summary page for the device.
     3. Under Status and Health, click **Alerts** to display a list of all alerts associated with that device.

   **Notes:** The Serviceability column might show “Not Available” if:
   - The alert on the device occurred before Lenovo XClarity Administrator started managing it
   - The event log has wrapped, and the event associated with that alert is no longer in the event log.
Results

From the Alerts page, you can perform the following actions:

- Refresh the list of alerts by clicking the Refresh icon ( ).
  
  **Tip:** If new alerts are detected, the alerts log refreshes automatically every 30 seconds.

- View information about a specific alert (including an explanation and user action) and about the device that is the source of the alert (such as the Universally Unique Identifier) by clicking the link in the Alert column. A dialog with information about the alert properties and details is displayed.

  **Note:** If the explanation and recovery actions for an alert are not displayed under the Details tab, go to [Lenovo Flex System online documentation](https://www.lenovo.com/us/en/xclarity), and search for the alert ID (for example, FQXHMSE0004G). The website always provides the most up-to-date information.

- By default, excluded alerts do not influence the health status of managed devices. You can allow excluded alerts to influence the health status of managed devices from the Alerts page by clicking the toggle to enable **Excluded alerts influence health status for all devices**.

- You can set threshold preferences for raising an alert and event when a certain value, such as the life of an SSD in a ThinkSystem or ThinkServer server, exceeds a warning or critical level (see Setting threshold preferences for generating alerts and events).

- Export the alerts log by clicking the Export as CSV icon ( ).

  **Note:** The timestamps in the exported log use the local time that is specified by the web browser.

- Exclude specific alerts from all pages on which alerts are displayed (see Excluding alerts).
• Narrow the list of alerts that are displayed on the current page:
  – Show or hide alerts of a specific severity by clicking the following icons:
    – Critical alerts icon (×)
    – Warning alerts icon (⚠)
    – Informational alerts icon (ℹ)
  – Show only alerts from specific sources. You can choose one of the following options from the drop-down list:
    – All Alert Sources
    – Hardware Events
    – Management Events
    – Service Center Events
    – Customer Serviceable Events
    – Non-serviceable Events
  – Show only alerts with a specific date and time. You can choose one of the following options from the drop-down list:
    – All Dates
    – Previous two hours
    – Previous 24 hours
    – Past Week
    – Past Month
  – List only alerts that contain specific text by entering the text in the Filter field.
  – Sort the alerts by column by clicking a column heading.

Excluding alerts

If there are specific alerts that are of no interest to you, you can exclude the alerts from all pages on which alerts are displayed. Excluded alerts are still in the log but are hidden from all pages on which alerts are displayed, including log views and device status.

About this task

Excluded alerts are hidden for all users, not just the user that set the configuration.

You can place devices in maintenance mode, so that all events and alerts for those devices are excluded (see Placing devices in maintenance mode).

Restriction: Only users with administrative authority can exclude or restore alerts.

Important: If you exclude status alerts, device status on the device summary and detailed pages does not change.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to exclude alerts from the alerts log.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➞ Alerts. The Alerts page is displayed.

Step 2. Select the alerts to be excluded, and click the Exclude alerts icon (Cancel). The Exclude Alerts dialog is displayed.

Step 3. Select one of the following options:
  • Exclude selected alerts from all systems. Excludes the selected alerts from all managed devices.
  • Exclude alerts only from systems in the scope of the instance selected. Excludes the selected alerts from managed devices to which the selected alerts apply.
Step 4.  Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

When you exclude alerts, Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates exclusion rules based on information that you provide. You can view a list of exclusion rules and excluded alerts from the Alerts page by clicking the **Show Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts** icon. In the Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts dialog, click the **Exclusion Rules** tab to view the list of exclusion rules or click the **Excluded Alerts** tab to view the list of excluded alerts.

**Excluded Alerts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exclusion Rules</th>
<th>Excluded Alerts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Use the Remove button to remove exclusion rules and restore excluded alerts to the alert list.

By default, excluded alerts do not influence the health status of managed devices. You can allow excluded alerts to influence the health status of managed devices from the Alerts page by clicking the toggle to enable **Show Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts**.

You can restore alerts that have been excluded in the alerts log by removing the appropriate exclusion rule. To remove an exclusion rule, click the **Show Excluded Alerts** icon to display the Excluded Alerts dialog, select the exclusion rules or excluded alert to restore, and click **Remove**.

**Resolving an alert**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides information about the appropriate actions to perform to resolve an alert.

**Procedure** Complete the following steps to resolve an alert.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring → Alerts** to display the Alerts page.

**Step 2.** Locate the alert in the alerts log.

**Step 3.** Click the link in the **Alert** column to view information about the alert (including an explanation and recovery actions) and properties for the device that is the source of the alert (such as the Universally Unique Identifier).

**Step 4.** Complete the recovery actions that are listed under the **Details** tab to resolve the alert. The following example illustrates recovery actions for an event.

Change the security policy setting on the referenced managed chassis to match the current security policy on the management server.

To change the security policy on the chassis, open a command-line interface session on the Chassis Management Module (CMM) and run one of the following commands:

- To change the security policy level to Secure:

  ```
  security -p secure -T mm[p]
  ```
• To change the security policy level to Legacy:
  
  \texttt{security \ -p legacy \ -T mm[p]}

\textbf{Note:} If the explanation and recovery actions for an alert are not displayed under the \textbf{Details} tab, go to \textit{Lenovo Flex System online documentation}, and search for the alert ID (for example, FQXMSE0004G). The website always provides the most up-to-date information.

If you follow the recommended actions and the problem persists, contact Lenovo Support.

\section*{Acknowledging alerts}

When an active alert is acknowledged, the alert is listed on pages on which alerts are displayed but does not affect the severity status for the applicable device.

\section*{Procedure}

Complete the following steps to acknowledge an alert.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Step 1.} From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click \textbf{Monitoring \rightarrow Alerts}. The Alerts page is displayed.
  
  \item \textbf{Step 2.} Select the alerts to be acknowledged.
  
  \item \textbf{Step 3.} Click the \textbf{Acknowledge alerts} icon (\texttt{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}).
\end{itemize}

\section*{What to do next}

\begin{itemize}
  \item You can view a list of acknowledged alerts from the Alerts page by clicking the \textbf{Show Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts} icon (\texttt{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}) to display the Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts dialog, and then clicking the \textbf{Acknowledged alerts} tab.
  
  \item You can remove the acknowledge for an active alert by clicking the \textbf{Show Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts} icon (\texttt{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}) to display the Excluded/Acknowledged Alerts dialog, clicking the \textbf{Acknowledged alerts} tab, select the alerts, and then click the \textbf{Remove acknowledgement} icon (\texttt{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}).
\end{itemize}

\section*{Working with events}

From Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you have access to an event log and an audit log.

\subsection*{Learn more:}

\texttt{XClarity Administrator: Monitoring}

\subsection*{About this task}

The \textit{event log} provides a historical list of all hardware and management events.

The \textit{audit log} provides a historical record of user actions, such as logging in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator, creating a new user, and changing a user password. You can use the audit log to track and document authentication and controls in IT systems.

\section*{Monitoring events in the event log}

The \textit{event log} provides a historical list of all hardware and management events.

\subsection*{About this task}

The event log contains informational and non-informational events. The number of each of these events varies until the maximum of 50,000 events is reached in the event log. At that point, there is a maximum of
25,000 informational and 25,000 non-information events. For example, there are 0 events in the event log initially. Assume events are received so that 20,000 informational events and 30,000 non-informational events are received. When the next event is received, the oldest informational event is discarded even if a non-informational event is older. Eventually, the log balances out so that there are 25,000 of each type of event.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator sends an event when the event log reaches 80% of the minimum size and another event when the sum of the event and audit logs reaches 100% of the maximum size.

**Tip:** You can export the event log to ensure that you have a complete record of all hardware and management events. To export the event log, click the **Export as CSV** icon ( açısq ).

**Procedure**

To view the event log, click **Monitoring ➔ Event Logs** from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, and click the **Event Log** tab. The Event Log page is displayed.

The **Serviceability** column identifies whether the device requires service. This column can contain one of the following values:

- **Not required.** The event is informational and does not require service.
- **User.** Take appropriate recovery action to resolve the issue.
  
  To view information about a specific event, click the link in the **Event** column. A dialog is displayed with information about the properties for the device that sent the event, details about the event, and recovery actions.

- **Support.** If Call Home is enabled on Lenovo XClarity Administrator, the event is typically submitted to Lenovo Support Center unless an open service ticket for the same event ID already exists for the device.
  
  If Call Home is not enabled, it is recommended that you manually open a service ticket to resolve the issue (see **Opening a service ticket** in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation).

**Results**
From the Event Log page, you can perform the following actions:

- View the source of the event by clicking the link in the **Source** column.
- Refresh the list of events by clicking the **Refresh** icon (⟳).

**Tip:** The event log refreshes automatically every 30 seconds if new events are detected.

- Clear all events in the event log by selecting **All Actions ➔ Clear event log**.
- View details about a specific event by clicking the link in the **Event** column and clicking the **Details** tab.
- Export the event log by clicking the **Export as CSV** icon (_chart
diagram
tab).  

**Note:** The timestamps in the exported log use the local time that is specified by the web browser.
- Exclude specific events from all pages on which events are displayed (see **Excluding events**).
- Narrow the list of hardware and management events that are displayed on the current page:
  - Show or hide events of a specific severity by clicking the following icons from the drop-down list:
    - **Critical events** icon (≡)
    - **Warning events** icon (⚠️)
    - **Informational events** icon (ℹ️)
  - Show only events from specific sources. You can choose one of the following options from the drop-down list:
    - All Alert Sources
    - Hardware Events
    - Management Events
    - Serviceable Events
    - Customer Serviceable Events
    - Non-serviceable Events
  - Show only events with a specific date and time. You can choose one of the following options:
    - All Dates
    - Previous 2 hours
    - Previous 24 hours
    - Past Week
    - Past Month
    - Custom
  - If you select **Custom**, you can filter hardware and management events that were raised between a custom start date and the current date.
  - List only events that contain specific text by entering the text in the **Filter** field.
  - Sort the events by column by clicking on a column heading.

**Monitoring events in the audit log**

The **audit log** provides a historical record of user actions, such as logging in to Lenovo XClarity Administrator, creating a new user, and changing a user password. You can use the audit log to track and document authentication and controls in IT systems.

**About this task**

The audit log can contain a maximum of 50,000 events. When the maximum size is reached, the oldest event in the log is discarded and the new event is added to the log.
XClarity Administrator sends an event when the audit log reaches 80% of the maximum size and another event when the sum of the event and audit logs reaches 100% of the maximum size.

**Tip:** You can export the audit log to ensure that you have a complete record of all audit events. To export the audit log, click the **Export as CSV** icon.

**Procedure**

To view the audit log, click **Monitoring → Event Logs** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar, and click the **Audit Log** tab. The Audit Log page is displayed.

**Results**

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- View the source of the audit event by clicking the link in the **Source** column.
- Refresh the list of audit events by clicking the **Refresh** icon.
  
  **Tip:** The event log refreshes automatically every 30 seconds if new events are detected.
- View details about a specific audit event by clicking the link in the **Event** column and then clicking the **Details** tab.
- Export the audit log by clicking the **Export as CSV** icon.

  **Note:** The timestamps in the exported log use the local time that is specified by the web browser.
- Exclude specific audit events from all pages on which events are displayed (see Excluding events).
- Narrow the list of audit events that are displayed on the current page:
  - Show or hide events of a specific severity by clicking the following icons:
– Critical events icon (.alibaba)
– Warning events icon (huang)
– Informational events icon (blue)
– Show only events with a specific date and time. You can choose one of the following options from the drop-down list:
  – All Dates
  – Previous 2 hours
  – Previous 24 hours
  – Past Week
  – Past Month
  – Custom

If you select Custom, you can filter hardware and management events that were raised between a custom start date and the current date.

– List only events that contain specific text by entering the text in the Filter field.
– Sort the events by column by clicking on a column heading.

Resolving an event

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides information about the appropriate actions to perform to resolve an event.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to resolve an event.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➔ Event Logs to display the Logs page.

Step 2. Click the Event Log tab.

Step 3. Locate the event in the events log.

Step 4. Click the link in the Event column to view information about that event (including an explanation and recovery actions) and about the device that is the source of the event.

Step 5. Click the Details tab.

Step 6. Complete the recovery actions under the Details tab to resolve the event.

Note: If the explanation and recovery action for an event are not displayed, go to Lenovo Flex System online documentation, and search for the event title. The website always provides the most up-to-date information.

If you follow the recommended actions and the problem persists, contact Lenovo Support.

Excluding events

If there are specific events that are of no interest to you, you can exclude the events from all pages on which events are displayed. Excluded events are still in the log but are hidden from all pages on which events are displayed.

About this task

Excluded events are hidden for all users, not just the user that set the configuration.

You can place devices in maintenance mode, so that all events and alerts for those devices are excluded (see Placing devices in maintenance mode).
Restriction: Only users with administrative authority can exclude or restore events.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to exclude events from the event logs.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➔ Event Logs, and click the Event Log tab. The Event Logs is displayed.

Step 2. Select the events to be excluded, and click the Exclude events icon (📁). The Exclude Events dialog is displayed.

Step 3. Select one of the following options:
- **Exclude selected events from all systems.** Excludes the selected events from all managed devices.
- **Exclude events only from systems in the scope of the instance selected.** Excludes the selected events from managed devices to which the selected events apply.

Step 4. Click Save.

What to do next
When you exclude events, Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates exclusion rules based on information that you provide.

- View a list of exclusion rules and excluded events from the Logs page by clicking the Show Excluded Events icon (🗑️). In the Excluded Events dialog, click the Exclusion Rules tab to view the exclusion rules, or click the Excluded Events tab to view excluded events.

Excluded Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exclusion Rules</th>
<th>Excluded Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Use the Remove button to remove exclusion rules and restore excluded events to the event log.

- Restore events that have been excluded in the event log by removing the appropriate exclusion rule. To remove an exclusion rule, click the Show Excluded Events icon (🗑️) to display the Excluded Events dialog, select the exclusion rules to restore, and click Remove Exclusions.

- Prevent serviceable events that are in the list of excluded events from automatically opening problem reports by clicking Administration ➔ Service and Support from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, clicking the Service Forwarders tab, and then selecting No next to the question Do you want excluded events to open problem reports?.

Forwarding events
You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward events to mobile devices and to connected applications that you have in your environment for aggregating and monitoring hardware status and runtime issues for your hardware environment.
Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

Forwarding events to syslog, remote SNMP manager, email, and other event services

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward events to connected applications that you have in your environment for aggregating and monitoring hardware status and runtime issues for your hardware environment. You can define the scope of events to be forwarded based on device, event class, event severity, and component.

About this task

Lenovo XClarity Administrator can forward events for one or more devices. For audit events, you can choose to forward all audit events or none. You cannot forward specific audit events. For hardware and management events, you can choose to forward events for one or more severities (critical, warning, and informational) and for one or more components (such as disk drives, processors, and adapters).

Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses event forwarders to forward events. An event forwarder includes information about the protocol to use, the recipient, the devices to monitor, and the events to forward. After you create and enable an event forwarder, Lenovo XClarity Administrator starts monitoring for incoming events based on the filter criteria. When a match is found, the associated protocol is used to forward the event.

The following protocols are supported:

- **Azure Log Analytics.** Lenovo XClarity Administrator forwards the monitored events to over the network to Microsoft Azure Log Analytics.
- **Email.** Lenovo XClarity Administrator forwards the monitored events to one or more email addresses using SMTP. The email contains information about the event, the host name of the source device, and links to the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface and Lenovo XClarity Mobile app.
- **FTP.** Forwards monitored events over the network to an FTP server.
- **REST.** Lenovo XClarity Administrator forwards the monitored events over the network to a REST Web Service.
- **SNMP.** Lenovo XClarity Administrator forwards the monitored events over the network to a remote SNMP manager. SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 traps are supported.
  
  For information about the management information base (MIB) file that describes the SNMP traps Lenovo XClarity Administrator generates, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- **Syslog.** Lenovo XClarity Administrator forwards the monitored events over the network to a central log server where native tools can be used to monitor the syslog.

You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, **Switches** is included on the **Events** tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the **All Systems** checkbox to select all devices.

**Note:** Events are not delivered if, for example, connectivity between Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the event forwarder is down or if the port is blocked.
Setting up event forwarding to Azure Log Analytics

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to Azure Log Analytics.

About this task

You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

Note: For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, Switches is included on the Events tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the All Systems checkbox to select all devices.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for Azure Log Analytics.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➞ Event Forwarding. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Event Forders tab.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ). The General tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Select Azure Log Analytics as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:

- Enter the name and optional description for the event forwarder.
- Enter the primary key for the Azure Log Analytics interface.
- Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
- Optional: If authentication is required, select one of the following authentication types:
  - Basic. Authenticates to the specified server using the specified user ID and password.
  - None. No authentication is used.

Step 5. Click Output Format to choose the output format of the event data to be forwarded. The information varies for each type of event forwarder.

The following example output format is the default format for Azure Log Analytics recipients. All words between double square brackets are the variables that are replaced with actual values when an event is forwarded. The available variables for Azure Log Analytics recipients are listed in the Output Format dialog.

```
{"Msg": "[[EventMessage]]", "EventID": "[[EventID]]", "Serialnum": 
"[[EventSerialNumber]]", "SenderUUID": "[[EventSenderUUID]]", "Flags": 
"[[EventFlags]]", "UserID": "[[EventUserName]]", "LocalLogID": 
"[[EventLocalLogID]]", "DeviceName": "[[DeviceFullPathName]]", "SystemName": 
"[[SystemName]]", "Action": "[[EventAction]]", "FailFRUs": 
"[[EventFailFRUs]]", "Severity": "[[EventSeverity]]", "SourceID": 
"[[EventSourceUID]]", "SourceLogSequence": "[[EventSourceLogSequenceNumber]]", 
"FailSNs": "[[EventFailSerialNumbers]]", "FailFRUUIDs": 
"[[EventFailFRUUIDs]]", "EventClass": "[[EventClass]]", "ComponentID": 
"[[EventComponentUUID]]", "Mtm": "[[EventMachineTypeModel]]", "MsgID": 
"[[EventMessageID]]", "SequenceNumber": "[[EventSequenceID]]", "TimeStamp": 
"[[EventTimeStamp]]", "Args": "[[EventMessageArguments]]", "Service": 
"[[EventService]]", "CommonEventID": "[[CommonEventID]]", "EventDate": 
"[[EventDate]]", "EventSource": "[[EventSource]]", "DeviceSerialNumber": 
"[[DeviceSerialNumber]]", "DeviceIPAddress": "[[DeviceIPAddress]]"},
```
You can click **Reset to defaults** to change the output format back to the default fields.

**Step 6.** Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.

**Step 7.** Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.

**Step 8.** Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.

**Step 9.** Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

**Step 10.** Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.

**Step 11.** Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

- **Match by event category.**
  1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events.**
  2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events.**
  3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events.**
  4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events.**
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I,FQXHMEM0214I).

- **Match by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event category.**
  1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events.**
  2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events.**
  3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events.**
  4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events.**
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

**Step 12.** Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.

**Step 13.** Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.

**Step 14.** **Optional:** Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.

1. Use the **Scroll left** icon (←) and **Scroll right** icon (→), and **Day, Week, and Month** buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.
2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.
3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.

4. Click **Create** to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

**Tip:**
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking **Edit Entry**.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting **Show Scheduler Summary**. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking **Delete Entry**.

Step 15. Click **Create**.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

**Event Forwarding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Generate Test Event]</td>
<td>![All Actions]</td>
<td>Filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Notification Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x880 Critical</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP ITOA</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Insight</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 16. Select the new event forwarder, click **Generate Test Event**, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate Azure Log Analytics server.

**What to do next**

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.

- Refresh the list of event forwarders by clicking the **Refresh** icon.
- View details about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the **Name** column.
- Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the **Name** column.
- Delete the event forwarder by clicking the **Delete** icon.
- Suspend event forwarding (see Suspending event forwarding).

**Setting up event forwarding to an email service using SMTP**

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to an email service using SMTP.
Before you begin

To forward email to a web-based email service (such as Gmail, Hotmail, or Yahoo), your SMTP server must support forwarding web mail.

Before setting up an event forwarder to a Gmail web service, review information in Setting up event forwarding to a Gmail SMTP service Setting up event forwarding to syslog, remote SNMP manager, or email in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

About this task

You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

Note: For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, Switches is included on the Events tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the All Systems checkbox to select all devices.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for email using SMTP.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Event Forders tab.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ). The General tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Select Email as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:

- Enter the name, destination host, and optional description for the event forwarder.
- Enter the port to use for forwarding events. The default is 25.
- Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
- Enter the email address for each recipient. Separate multiple email addresses by using a comma.

To send the email to the support contact that is assigned for the device, select Use Support Contact Email(s) (see Defining the support contacts for a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

- Optional: Enter the email address for the sender of the email (for example, john@company.com).

If you do not specify an email address, the sender address is LXCA.<source_identifier>@<smtp_host> by default.

If you specify only the sender domain, the format of the sender address is <LXCA_host_name>@<sender_domain> (for example, XClarity1@company.com).

Notes:

- If you set up your SMTP server to require a hostname to forward emails, and you do not set up a hostname for XClarity Administrator, it is possible that the SMTP server might reject forwarded events. If XClarity Administrator does not have a hostname, the event is forwarded with the IP address. If the IP address cannot be obtained, “localhost” is sent instead, which might cause the SMTP server to reject the event.
– If you specify the sender domain, the source does not identify in the sender address. Instead, information about the source of the event is included in the body of the email, including system name, IP address, type/model, and serial number.

– If the SMTP server accepts only emails that were sent by a registered user, the default sender address (LXCA.<source_identifier>@<smtp_host>) is rejected. In this case, you must specify at least a domain name in the From address field.

• Optional: To establish a secure connection to the SMTP server, select the following connection types:
  – SSL. Use the SSL protocol while communicating.
  – STARTTLS. Uses TLS to form a secure communication over an unsecure channel.

If one of these connection types is selected, LXCA attempts to download and import the SMTP server’s certificate to its truststore. You are asked to accept adding this certificate to the truststore.

• Optional: If authentication is required, select one of the following authentication types:
  – Regular. Authenticates to the specified SMTP server using the specified user ID and password.
  – NTLM. Uses the NT LAN Manager (NTLM) protocol to authentication to the specified SMTP server using the specified user ID, password, and domain name.
  – OAuth2. Uses the Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) protocol to authenticate to the specified SMTP server using the specified user name and security token. Typically, the user name is your email address.

  Attention: The security token expires after a short time. It is your responsibility to refresh the security token.

  – None. No authentication is used.

Step 5. Click Output Format to choose the output format of the event data to be forwarded in the email body and the format of the email subject. The information varies for each type of event forwarder.

The following example output format is the default format for email recipients. All words between double square brackets are the variables that are replaced with actual values when an event is forwarded. The available variables for the email recipients are listed in the Output Format dialog.

Email subject
  [[DeviceName]]-[[EventMessage]]

Email body
  Alert: [[EventDate]] [[EventMessage]]

  Hardware Information:
  Managed Endpoint: [[DeviceHardwareType]] at [[DeviceIPAddress]]
  Device name: [[DeviceName]]
  Product name: [[DeviceProductName]]
  Host name: [[DeviceHostName]]
  Machine Type: [[DeviceMachineType]]
  Machine Model: [[DeviceMachineModel]]
  Serial Number: [[DeviceSerialNumber]]
  DeviceHealthStatus: [[DeviceHealthStatus]]
  IPv4 addresses: [[DeviceIPV4Addresses]]
  IPv6 addresses: [[DeviceIPV6Addresses]]
  Chassis: [[DeviceChassisName]]
  DeviceBays: [[DeviceBays]]

  LXCA is: [[ManagementServerIP]]

  Event Information:
  Event ID: [[EventID]]
You can click **Reset to defaults** to change the output format back to the default fields.

**Step 6.** Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.

**Step 7.** Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.

**Step 8.** Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.

**Step 9.** Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

Tip To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

**Step 10.** Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.

**Step 11.** Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

- **Match by event category.**
  1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events**.
  2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events**.
  3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events**.
  4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I, FQXHMEM0214I).

- **Match by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event category.**
  1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events**.
  2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events**.
  3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events**.
  4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.
Step 12. Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.

Step 13. Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.

Step 14. **Optional**: Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.

1. Use the **Scroll left** icon (◀) and **Scroll right** icon (▶), and **Day**, **Week**, and **Month** buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.
2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.
3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.
4. Click **Create** to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

**Tip:**
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking **Edit Entry**.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting **Show Scheduler Summary**. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking **Delete Entry**.

Step 15. Click **Create**.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

**Event Forwarding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Icon" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Generate Test Event** | **All Actions** ▼ | **Filter** |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Notification Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x880 Critical events</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP ITOA</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled ▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Insight</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled ▼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 16. Select the new event forwarder, click **Generate Test Event**, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate email service.

**What to do next**

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.
• Refresh the list of event forwarders by clicking the **Refresh** icon ((enabled).
• View details about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the **Name** column.
• Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the **Name** column.
• Delete the event forwarder by clicking the **Delete** icon (disabled).
• Suspend event forwarding (see Suspending event forwarding).

**Setting up event forwarding to a Gmail SMTP service**

You can setup Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward monitored events to a web-based email service, such as Gmail.

Use the following configuration examples to help you set up your event forwarder to use the Gmail SMTP service.

**Note:** Gmail recommends using the OAUTH2 authentication method for the most secure communication. If you choose to use regular authentication, you will receive an email indicating that an application tried to use your account without using the latest security standards. The email includes instructions for configuring your email account to accept these types of applications.

For information about configuring a Gmail SMTP server, see [https://support.google.com/a/answer/176600?hl=en](https://support.google.com/a/answer/176600?hl=en).

**Regular authentication using SSL on port 465**

This example communicates with the Gmail SMTP server using the SSL protocol over port 465, and authenticates using a valid Gmail user account and password.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>smtp.gmail.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARTTLS</td>
<td>Clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>Regular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Valid Gmail email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Gmail authentication password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Address</td>
<td>(optional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regular authentication using TLS on port 587**

This example communicates with the Gmail SMTP server using the TLS protocol over port 587, and authenticates using a valid Gmail user account and password.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>smtp.gmail.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td>Clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARTTLS</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>Regular</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Value
--- | ---
User | Valid Gmail email address
Password | Gmail authentication password
From Address | (optional)

**OAuth2 authentication using TLS on port 587**

This example communicates with the Gmail SMTP server using the TLS protocol over port 587, and authenticates using a valid Gmail user account and security token.

Use the following example procedure to obtain the security token.

1. Create a project in the Google Developers Console, and retrieve the client ID and client secret. For more information, see the [Google Sign-In for Websites webpage](#) website.
   a. From a web browser, open the [Google APIs webpage](#).
   b. Click **Select a project ➔ Create a project** from the menu on that webpage. The New Project dialog is displayed.
   c. Type a name, select **Yes** to agree to the license agreement, and click **Create**.
   d. On the **Overview** tab, use the search field to search for “gmail.”
   e. Click **GMAIL API** in the search results.
   f. Click **Enable**.
   g. Click the **Credentials** tab
   h. Click **OAuth consent screen**.
   i. Type a name in the **Product name shown to users** field, and click **Save**.
   j. Click **Create credentials ➔ OAuth client ID**.
   k. Select **Other**, and enter a name.
   l. Click **Create**. The OAuth client dialog is displayed with your client ID and client secret.
   m. Record the client ID and client secret for later use.
   n. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

2. Use the **oauth2.py** Python script to generate and authorize a security token by entering the client ID and client secret that was generated when you created the project.

   **Note:** Python 2.7 is required to complete this step. You can download and install Python 2.7 from the [Python website](#).  
   a. From a web browser, open the [gmail-oauth2-tools webpage](#).
   b. Click **Raw**, and then save the content as a file name **oauth2.py** on your local system.
   c. Run the following command a terminal (Linux) or a command line (Windows):

   ```
   py oauth2.py --user=<your_email> --client_id=<client_id> --client_secret=<client_secret> --generate_oauth2_token
   ```

   For example

   ```
   py oauth2.py --user=jon@gmail.com
   --client_id=884243132302-458olfqjebpuvdmvdack6elip8ki63.apps.googleusercontent.com
   --client_secret=3tnYxG8E1bT2m00zqnilTsZk --generate_oauth2_token
   ```

   This command returns a URL that you must use to authorize the token and retrieve a verification code from the Google website, for example:

   To authorize token, visit this url and follow the directions:
Enter verification code:

d. From a web browser, open the URL that was returned in the previous step.

e. Click **Allow** to agree to this service. A verification code to returned.

f. Enter the verification code in the **oauth2.py** command.

The command returns the security token and refreshes token, for example:

```
Refresh Token: 1/K8lPGx6UQQajj7tQQYKq8mVG8lVvGIVzHqzxFIMeYEQMEudVRK5jSpoR3OzcRFq6
Access Token: ya29.CjHXAsyoH9GuCZutg1Dxm1SGSqKrUkJoIH14SGMnlj2rwp3gZmK75rGDCQx_KN-34f
Access Token Expiration Seconds: 3600
```

**Important:** The security token expires after a period of time. You can use the **oauth2.py** Python script and the refresh token to generate a new security token. It is your responsibility to generate the new security token and update the event forwarder in Lenovo XClarity Administrator with the new token.

3. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, set up event forwarder for email using the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>smtp.gmail.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td>Clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARTTLS</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>OAUTH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Valid Gmail email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Token</td>
<td>Security token</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Address</td>
<td>(optional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Setting up event forwarding to an FTP server

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to an FTP server.

**About this task**

You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

**Note:** For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, **Switches** is included on the **Events** tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the **All Systems** checkbox to select all devices.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for an FTP server.
Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring ➞ Event Forwarding**. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Event Forwarders** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Create** icon ( ). The **General** tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Select **FTP** as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:

- Enter the name, destination host, and optional description for the event forwarders.
- Enter the port to use for forwarding events. The default is 21.
- Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
- **Optional**: Specify the sequence of characters to be removed from the file content.
- Enter the file-name format to use for the file that contains the forwarded event. The default format is `event_{[EventSequenceID]}.txt`.

**Note**: Each file contains information for a single event.

- Enter the path on the remote FTP server where the file is to be uploaded.
- Choose the character encoding, either **UTF-8** or **Big5**. This is UTF-8 by default.
- Select the authentication type. This can be one of the following values.
  - **Anonymous**. (default) No authentication is used
  - **Basic**. Authenticated to the FTP server using the specified user ID and password.

Step 5. Click **Output Format** to choose the output format of the event data to be forwarded. The information varies for each type of event forwarders.

The following example output format is the default format for FTP recipients. All words between double square brackets are the variables that are replaced with actual values when an event is forwarded. The available variables for FTP recipients are listed in the Output Format dialog.

```
Alert: [[EventDate]] [[EventMessage]]

Hardware Information:
Managed Endpoint: [[DeviceHardwareType]] at [[DeviceIPAddress]]
Device name: [[DeviceName]]
Product name: [[DeviceProductName]]
Host name: [[DeviceHostName]]
Machine Type: [[DeviceMachineType]]
Machine Model: [[DeviceMachineModel]]
Serial Number: [[DeviceSerialNumber]]
DeviceHealthStatus: [[DeviceHealthStatus]]
IPv4 addresses: [[DeviceIPV4Addresses]]
IPv6 addresses: [[DeviceIPV6Addresses]]
Chassis: [[DeviceChassisName]]
DeviceBays: [[DeviceBays]]
LXCA: [[ManagementServerIP]]

Event Information:
Event ID: [[EventID]]
Common Event ID: [[CommonEventID]]
Event Severity: [[EventSeverity]]
Event Class: [[EventClass]]
Sequence ID: [[EventSequenceID]]
Event Source ID: [[EventSourceUUID]]
Component ID: [[EventComponentUUID]]
Serial Num: [[EventSerialNumber]]
MTM: [[EventMachineTypeModel]]
```
You can click **Reset to defaults** to change the output format back to the default fields.

**Step 6.** Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.

**Step 7.** Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.

**Step 8.** Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.

**Step 9.** Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

**Step 10.** Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.

**Step 11.** Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

- **Match by event category.**
  1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events**.
  2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events**.
  3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events**.
  4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I,FQXHMEM0214I).

- **Match by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event category.**
  1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events**.
  2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events**.
  3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events**.
  4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

**Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

**Step 12.** Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.

**Step 13.** Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.

**Step 14.** **Optional:** Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.
1. Use the Scroll left icon (⇦) and Scroll right icon (⇨), and Day, Week, and Month buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.

2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.

3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.

4. Click Create to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

Tip:
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking Edit Entry.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting Show Scheduler Summary. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking Delete Entry.

Step 15. Click Create.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

**Event Forwarding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Generate Test Event]</td>
<td>![All Actions]</td>
<td>![Filter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x880 Critical events</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP ITOA</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Insight</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 16. Select the new event forwarder, click Generate Test Event, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate FTP server.

**What to do next**

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.

- Refresh the list of event forwarders by clicking the Refresh icon (⟳).
- View details about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the Name column.
- Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the Name column.
- Delete the event forwarder by clicking the Delete icon (Trash).
• Suspend event forwarding (see Suspend event forwarding).

**Setting up event forwarding to a REST Web Service**

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to a REST Web Service.

**About this task**

You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

**Note:** For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, **Switches** is included on the **Events** tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the **All Systems** checkbox to select all devices.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for a REST Web Service.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring ➞ Event Forwarding**. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Event Forwarders** tab.

**Step 3.** Click the **Create** icon ( ). The General tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** Select **REST** as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:

- Enter the resource path on which the forwarder is to post the events (for example, /rest/test).
- Select the protocol to use for forwarding events. This can be one of the following values:
  - HTTP
  - HTTPS
- Select the REST method. This can be one of the following values:
  - PUT
  - POST
- Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
- **Optional:** If authentication is required, select one of the following authentication types:
  - **Basic.** Authenticates to the specified server using the specified user ID and password.
  - **None.** No authentication is used.

**Step 5.** Click **Output Format** to choose the output format of the event data to be forwarded. The information varies for each type of event forwarder.

The following example output format is the default format for REST Web Service recipients. All words between double square brackets are the variables that are replaced with actual values when an event is forwarded. The available variables for REST Web Service recipients are listed in the Output Format dialog.

```json
{"msg":"
[EventMessage]
","eventID":"
[EventID]
","serialnum":"
[EventSerialNumber]
","senderUUID":"
[EventSenderUUID]
","flags":"
[EventFlags]
","userid":"
[EventUserName]
","localLogID":"
[EventLocalLogID]
","systemName":"
[DeviceFullPathName]
","action":"
[EventActionNumber]
","failFRUNumbers":"
[EventFailFRUs]
","severity":"
[EventSeverityNumber]
","sourceID":"
[EventSourceUUID]
","sourceLogSequence":"
[EventSourceLogSequenceNumber]
","failFRUSNs":"
[EventFailSerialNumbers]
", "failFRUUUIDs":"
[EventFailFRUUUIDs]
"}
```
Step 6. Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.

Step 7. Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.

Step 8. Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.

Step 9. Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

Step 10. Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.

Step 11. Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

- **Match by event category.**
  1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events**.
  2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events**.
  3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events**.
  4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I,FQXHMEM0214I).

- **Match by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event category.**
  1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events**.
  2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events**.
  3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events**.
  4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events**.
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

Step 12. Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.

Step 13. Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.

Step 14. **Optional:** Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.
1. Use the **Scroll left** icon (◀) and **Scroll right** icon (▶), and **Day**, **Week**, and **Month** buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.

2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.

3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.

4. Click **Create** to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

**Tip:**
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking **Edit Entry**.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting **Show Scheduler Summary**. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking **Delete Entry**.

Step 15. Click **Create**.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

**Event Forwarding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="This page is a list of all remote event recipients. You can define up to 20 unique recipients." /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Generate Test Event" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="All Actions" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Notification Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x880 Critical events</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP ITOA</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Insight</td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 16. Select the new event forwarder, click **Generate Test Event**, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate REST Web Service.

**What to do next**

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.

- Refresh the list of event forwarders by clicking the **Refresh** icon (🔍).
- View details about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the **Name** column.
- Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the **Name** column.
- Delete the event forwarder by clicking the **Delete** icon (🗑️).
• Suspend event forwarding (see Suspending event forwarding).

Setting up event forwarding to a remote SNMPv1 or SNMPv3 manager
You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to a remote SNMPv1 or SNMPv3 manager.

About this task
You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

Note: For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, Switches is included on the Events tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the All Systems checkbox to select all devices.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for a remote SNMPv1 or SNMPv3 manager.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➞ Event Forwarding. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Event Forwarders tab.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ). The General tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Select SNMPv1 or SNMPv3 as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:

• Enter the name and destination host for the event forwarder.
• Enter the port to use for forwarding events. The default is 162.
• Optional: Enter additional information, including the description, contact name, and location.
• Select the SNMP version. This can be one of the following values.
  – SNMPv1. If this version is selected, specify the community password that is sent with every SNMP request to the device.
  – SNMPv3. This is the default version and is recommended for enhanced security. If SNMPv3 is selected, optionally specify the user ID, authentication type and password, and privacy type and password.

If the SNMPv3 trap receiver requires the engine ID for the XClarity Administrator instance, you can find the engine ID by performing the following steps:

1. Ensure that the connection parameters (username, authProtocol, authPassword, privProtocol, privPassword) match the ones set in XClarity Administrator.
2. Using your preferred software (such as snmpwalk), perform an SNMP GET request on the XClarity Administrator server using one of the following OIDs:
   – EngineID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1.1.0
   – EngineBoots : 1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1.2.0
• Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
• Optional: If trap authentication is needed, enter the user ID and authentication password. The same user ID and password must be entered in the remote SNMP manager to which the traps are forwarded.
• Select the authentication protocol that is used by the remote SNMP manager to verify the trap sender. This can be one of the following values:
  – **SHA.** Uses the SHA protocol to authentication to the specified SNMP server using the specified user ID, password, and domain name.
  – **None.** No authentication is used
• If trap encryption is needed, enter the privacy type (encryption protocol) and password. This can be one of the following values. The same protocol and password must be entered in the remote SNMP manager to which the traps are forwarded.
  – **AES**
  – **DES**
  – **None**

**Step 5.** Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.
**Step 6.** Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.
**Step 7.** Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.
**Step 8.** Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.
**Step 9.** Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.
**Step 10.** Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

  • **Match by event category.**
    1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events.**
    2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events.**
    3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events.**
    4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events.**
    5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
    6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I,FQXHMEM0214I).

  • **Exclude by event category.**
    1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events.**
    2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events.**
    3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events.**
    4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events.**
    5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
    6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

  • **Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

**Step 11.** Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.
**Step 12.** Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.
Step 13. **Optional:** Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.

1. Use the **Scroll left** icon (◀) and **Scroll right** icon (▶), and **Day, Week, and Month** buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.
2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.
3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.
4. Click **Create** to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

**Tip:**
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking **Edit Entry**.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting **Show Scheduler Summary**. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking **Delete Entry**.

Step 14. Click **Create**.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

**Event Forwarding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Info" /> <img src="Image" alt="Edit" /> <img src="Image" alt="Remove" /> <img src="Image" alt="Generate Test Event" /></td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="All Actions" /></td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Filter" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image" alt="x880 Critical events" /></td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image" alt="SAP ITOA" /></td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Log Insight" /></td>
<td>Syslog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 15. Select the new event forwarder, click **Generate Test Event**, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate remote SNMP manager.

**What to do next**

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.

- Refresh the list of event forwarders by clicking the **Refresh** icon (🔄).
- View details about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the **Name** column.
• Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the **Name** column.

• Delete the event forwarder by clicking the **Delete** icon (🗑️).

• Suspend event forwarding (see Suspending event forwarding).

• Download the MIB file that contains information about SNMP traps by clicking the **Create** icon (🗂️), and then clicking **Download MIB File** on the General tab of New Event Forwarding dialog.

*lenovoMgrAlert.mib* file

This management information base (MIB) file describes the SNMP traps that Lenovo XClarity Administrator generates. You can compile this MIB file in any SNMP trap manager so that the SNMP traps that are sent from Lenovo XClarity Administrator can be rendered meaningfully.

For Lenovo XClarity Administrator v1.3 and later, you can download the MIB file from the web interface by clicking **Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding** from the menu bar, clicking the **Create** icon (🗂️), selecting **SNMP** for the event-forwarder type, and then clicking **Download MIB File** at the bottom of the dialog.

You can also use the following links to download the MIB file for your Lenovo XClarity Administrator version.

- lenovoMgrAlert_v300.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v280.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v270.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v260.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v250.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v240.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v230.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v220.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v210.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v200.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v190.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v180.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v170.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v160.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v150.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v140.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v131.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v130.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v122.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v121.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v120.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v111.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v110.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v103.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v102.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v101.mib
- lenovoMgrAlert_v100.mib

The following objects are included in all outgoing SNMP traps. Additional objects might be included in some SNMP traps. All objects are described in the MIB file.

**Note:** This list might differ for earlier releases of Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

- mgrTrapSystemName
- mgrTrapDateTime
- mgrTrapAppId
- mgrTrapTxtId
- mgrTrapSysContact
- mgrTrapSysLocation
- mgrTrapID
- mgrTrapSeverity
- mgrTrapEvtID
• mgrTrapMsgID
• mgrTrapMsgText
• mgrTrapEventClass
• mgrTrapUserId
• mgrTrapService
• mgrTrapUuid
• mgrTrapSN
• mgrTrapMtm
• mgrTrapSrcLoc
• mgrTrapSrcName
• mgrTrapSrcIP
• mgrTrapFailFRUs
• mgrTrapFailSNs

Setting up event forwarding to a syslog
You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to forward specific events to a syslog.

About this task
You can create and enable up to 20 event forwarders to send events to specific recipients.

If XClarity Administrator is rebooted after event forwarders are configured, you must wait for the management server to regenerate internal data before events are forwarded correctly.

*Note:* For XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, **Switches** is included on the **Events** tab in the New Event Forwarder and Change Event Forwarder dialogs. If you upgraded to 1.2.0 or later from an earlier release, remember to update your event forwarders to include or exclude RackSwitch events as appropriate. This is necessary even if you selected the **All Systems** checkbox to select all devices.

**Procedure**
Complete the following steps to create an event forwarder for a syslog.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click *Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding*. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Event Forders** tab.

**Step 3.** Click the **Create** icon ( ). The **General** tab of New Event Forwarder dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** Select **Syslog** as the event-forwarder type, and fill in the protocol-specific information:
- Enter the name, destination host, and optional description for the event forwarder.
- Enter the port to use for forwarding events. The default is 514.
- Select the protocol to use for forwarding events. This can be one of the following values.
  - UDP
  - TCP
- Enter the time-out period (in seconds) for the request. Default is 30 seconds.
- Optionally select the format for the timestamp in the syslog. This can be one of the following values.
  - Local time. The default format, for example Fri Mar 31 05:57:18 EDT 2017.
  - GMT time. International standard (ISO8601) for dates and times, for example 2017-03-31T05:58:20-04:00.

**Step 5.** Click **Output Format** to choose the output format of the event data to be forwarded. The information varies for each type of event forwarder.
The following example output format is the default format for sylog recipients. All words between double square brackets are the variables that are replaced with actual values when an event is forwarded. The available variables for sylog recipients are listed in the Output Format dialog.

```
<8[[SysLogSeverity]]>> [[EventTimeStamp]] [appl=LXCA service=[[EventService]] severity=[[EventSeverity]]
class=[[EventClass]] appladdr=[[LXCA_IP]] user=[[EventUserName]] src=[[SysLogSource]] uuid=[[UUID]]
me=[[DeviceSerialNumber]] resourceIP=[[DeviceIPAddress]] systemName=[[DeviceFullPathName]]
seq=[[EventSequenceID]] EventID=[[EventID]] CommonEventID=[[CommonEventID]]
```

You can click **Reset to defaults** to change the output format back to the default fields.

**Step 6.** Click the **Allow Excluded Events** toggle to either allow or prevent excluded event from being forwarded.

**Step 7.** Select **Enable this event forwarder** to activate event forwarding for this event forwarder.

**Step 8.** Click **Next** to display the **Devices** tab.

**Step 9.** Select the devices and groups that you want to monitor for this event forwarder.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

**Step 10.** Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.

**Step 11.** Select the filters to use for this event forwarder.

- **Match by event category.**
  1. To forward all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Include All Audit events.**
  2. To forward all warranty events, select **Include Warranty events.**
  3. To forward all health-status-change events, select **Include Status Change events.**
  4. To forward all health-status-update events, select **Include Status Update events.**
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to forward.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude from forwarding. Separate IDs by using a comma (for example, FQXHMEM0214I,FQXHMEM0214I).

- **Match by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event category.**
  1. To exclude all audit events regardless of the status level, select **Exclude All Audit events.**
  2. To exclude all warranty events, select **Exclude Warranty events.**
  3. To exclude all health-status-change events, select **Exclude Status Change events.**
  4. To exclude all health-status-update events, select **Exclude Status Update events.**
  5. Select the event classes and serviceability level that you want to exclude.
  6. Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to forward. Separate IDs by using a comma.

- **Exclude by event code.** Enter IDs for one or more events that you want to exclude. Separate multiple IDs by using a comma.

**Step 12.** Select each component and severities for which you want events to be forward.

**Step 13.** Click **Next** to display the **Scheduler** tab.
Step 14. Optional: Define the times and days when you want the specified events to be forwarded to this event forwarder. Only events that occur during the specified time slot are forwarded.

If you do not create a schedule for the event forwarder, events are forwarded 24x7.

1. Use the Scroll left icon (◀) and Scroll right icon (▶), and Day, Week, and Month buttons to find the day and time that you want to start the schedule.
2. Double-click the time slot to open the New Time Period dialog.
3. Fill in the required information, including the date, start and end times, and whether the schedule is to be reoccurring.
4. Click Create to save the schedule and close the dialog. The new schedule is added to the calendar.

**Tip:**
- You can change the time slot by dragging the schedule entry to another time slot in the calendar.
- You can change the duration by selecting the top or bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change the end time by selecting the bottom of the schedule entry and dragging it to the new time in the calendar.
- You can change a schedule by double-clicking the schedule entry in the calendar and clicking Edit Entry.
- You can view a summary of all schedule entries by selecting Show Scheduler Summary. The summary includes the time slot for each entry and which entries are repeatable.
- You can delete a schedule entry from the calendar or scheduler summary by selecting the entry and clicking Delete Entry.

Step 15. Click Create.

The event forwarder is listed in the Event Forwarding table.

### Event Forwarding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Monitors</th>
<th>Push Services</th>
<th>Push Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This page is a list of all remote event recipients. You can define up to 20 unique recipients.

- **Name**: x880 Critical events
  - **Notification Method**: Syslog
  - **Status**: Enabled
- **Name**: SAP ITOA
  - **Notification Method**: Syslog
  - **Status**: Enabled
- **Name**: Log Insight
  - **Notification Method**: Syslog
  - **Status**: Enabled

Step 16. Select the new event forwarder, click **Generate Test Event**, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the appropriate syslog.

### What to do next

From the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event forwarder.

- **Refresh** the list of event forwarders by clicking the **Refresh** icon (🔄).
- **View details** about a specific event forwarder by clicking the link in the **Name** column.
• Change the event-forwarder properties and filter criteria by clicking the event-forwarder name in the **Name** column.

• Delete the event forwarder by clicking the **Delete** icon (삭제).

• Suspend event forwarding (see **Suspending event forwarding**).

### Suspending event forwarding

You can suspend event forwarding by disabling the event forwarder. Suspending event forwarding stops the monitoring of incoming events. Events that are received while monitoring is suspended are not forwarded.

#### About this task

The disabled state is not persistent. If the management node is restarted, all event forwarders become enabled.

#### Procedure

Complete the following steps to disable the forwarding of events.

1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring ➔ Forwarding Events**. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.

2. Select **Disable** in the **Status** column for each event forwarder that you want to suspend.

### Forwarding events to mobile devices

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to push event notifications to mobile devices

#### Before you begin

The following requirements must be met to forward events to mobile devices:

• Ensure that a valid DNS server is configured to allow Lenovo XClarity Administrator to connect to the Apple or Google push servers. This can be configured by clicking the **Administration ➔ Network Access ➔ Edit Network Access** and then clicking the **Internet Settings** tab (see **Configuring network access**).

• Ensure that all required ports for event management are open on the network and firewalls. For information about port requirements, see [Port availability](#) in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

#### About this task

When the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app is installed on a mobile device, you can enable each connected Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance to push event notifications to that mobile device. When push notifications are enabled for a specific instance, a subscription is created in Lenovo XClarity Administrator for that mobile device.

You can define the events that are pushed to the mobile device by assigning predefined or customized global event filters for each Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance. The predefined global event filters are enabled by default. Lenovo XClarity Administrator starts monitoring for incoming events based on the filter criteria. When a match is found, the event is forwarded to the mobile device.

For more information about Lenovo XClarity Mobile and supported mobile devices, see **Using the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app**.

#### Procedure

To set up push notifications to that mobile device, complete the following steps from the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app on your mobile device.
Step 1. Enable push notifications:
- You can enable push notifications when you create a connection to a Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance. Push notifications are enabled by default.
- You can enable push notifications on existing connections by enabling one or more event filters.

Step 2. Assign global event filters to specify which events are to be forwarded to the mobile device:

**Note:** You can add or remove global filters from the subscription only from the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app. You can create global filters only from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface. For information about creating customized global event filters, see Creating event filters for mobile devices and WebSockets.

1. Tap **Settings ➔ Push notifications**. A list of Lenovo XClarity Administrator connections is displayed.
2. Tap the Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance to display a list of push filters.
3. Enable the event filters for the events that you want pushed to the mobile device for the Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance.
4. Tap **Touch to generate test push notification** to verify that the event notifications are pushed correctly.

**Results**

You can manage subscriptions from the Event Forwarding page in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface. Click **Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding** to display the Event Forwarding page.

- You can change the device notification service properties from the **Push Service** tab on the Event Forwarding page by clicking the link for the push notification service (Google or Apple) in the **Name** column to display the Change Push Notification dialog, and then click the **Properties** tab.
You can enable and disable subscriptions:

– Enable or disable all subscriptions for a specific device notification service from the **Push Service** tab on the Event Forwarding page by selecting the **ON** or **OFF** state in the table for the device notification service.

– Enable or disable all subscriptions for a specific device from the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app by tapping **Settings ➔ Push notification**, and then enabling or disabling Enabled push notification.

– Enable or disable a specific subscription from the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app by tapping **Settings ➔ Push notification**, tapping a Lenovo XClarity Administrator connection, and enabling at least one event filter or disabling all event filters.

• You can generate a test event for all subscriptions for a specific mobile service from the **Push Service** tab on the Event Forwarding page by selecting the mobile service and clicking **Generate Test Event**.

• You can view a list of current subscriptions. From the **Push Service** tab on the Event Forwarding page, click the link for the applicable device notification service (Android or iOS) in the **Name** column to display the Change Push Notification dialog, and then click the **Subscriptions** tab. The device ID identifies each subscription.

**Tips:**

– The device ID is the first and last 6 digits of the push registration ID. You can find the push registration ID from the Lenovo XClarity Mobile app by tapping **Settings ➔ About ➔ Push registration ID**.

– If you are logged in as a user with one of the following roles, all subscriptions are displayed; otherwise, subscriptions for only the logged-in user are displayed.
  – lxc-admin
  – lxc-supervisor
  – lxc-security-admin
  – lxc-sysmgr

• You can view the list of event filters that are assigned to the subscription from the **Subscriptions** tab on the Change Push Notification dialog by expanding the **Filter list** in the **Event Filters** column for the subscription.
You can create event filters for a specific subscription from the Subscriptions tab on the Change Push Notification dialog by selecting the subscription, and click the Create icon ( ).

**Note:** These event filters apply to only a specific subscription and cannot be used by other subscriptions.

You can also edit or remove an event filter by selecting the event filter and clicking the Edit icon ( ) or Remove icon ( ), respectively.

You can determine the status of the last attempted push for a specific subscription from the Subscriptions tab on the Change Push Notification dialog. The Time Stamp column indicates the date and time of the last push. The Status indicates whether the push notification was successfully delivered to the push service. No status is available regarding whether the push notification was successfully delivered to the device from the service. If the delivery to the push service failed, the Status column provides additional information about the failure.

You can generate a test event for a specific subscription from the Subscriptions tab on the Change Push Notification dialog by selecting the subscription and clicking Generate Test Event.

You can remove a subscription from the Subscriptions tab on the Change Push Notification dialog by selecting the subscription, and clicking the Remove icon ( ).

### Forwarding events to WebSocket services

You can configure Lenovo XClarity Administrator to push event notifications to WebSocket services.

**About this task**

The WebSocket subscriptions are not stored persistently in Lenovo XClarity Administrator. When Lenovo XClarity Administrator is rebooted, the WebSocket subscribers must subscribe again.

**Procedure**

To push event notification to a WebSocket service, complete the following steps.

- **Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.
- **Step 2.** Click the Push Services tab.
- **Step 3.** Click the link for the WebSocket Service in the Name column. The Change Push Notification dialog is displayed.
- **Step 4.** Click the Subscriptions tab.
- **Step 5.** Click the Create icon ( ).
Step 6. Enter the IP address of the destination host.
Step 7. Click Create.
Step 8. Select the new subscription, click Generate Test Event, and then verify that the events are forwarded correctly to the WebSocket service.

Results

From the Subscriptions tab on the Change Push Notification dialog, you can perform the following actions on a selected WebSocket subscription:

- Refresh the list of WebSocket services by clicking the Refresh icon ( ).
- Delete subscriptions by selecting the subscriptions and clicking the Delete icon ( ).
- Determine the status of the last attempted push for a specific subscription by viewing the content of the Status column. If the attempt failed, this column contains a message that describes the error.

From the Properties tab on the Change Push Notification dialog, you can perform the following actions:

- Change the WebSocket service properties, including the connection idle time, maximum buffer size, maximum number of subscribers, and the register time-out period.
- You can reset the WebSocket service to the default settings by clicking Restore Defaults.
- Suspend pushing event notifications to all subscriptions for the WebSocket service by setting the State to Off.

From the Push Service tab on the Event Forwarding page, you can generate a test event for all WebSocket subscriptions by selecting the WebSocket service and clicking Generate Test Event.

Creating event filters for mobile devices and WebSockets

You can create global events filters that can be used in one or more subscriptions for mobile devices and WebSockets. You can also create event filters that are unique to a subscription.

Before you begin

You must have supervisor authority to create event filters.

You can create up to 20 global event filters.

About this task

The following global event filters are predefined:

- **Match All Critical.** This filter matches all critical events that are generated by any managed device or by XClarity Administrator.
- **Match All Warning.** This filter matches all warning events that are generated by any managed device or by XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

To create a global event filter, complete the following steps.

- Create a global event filter that can be used by any subscription.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring → Event Forwarding. The Event Forwarding page is displayed.
  2. Click the Push Filters tab.
3. Click the **Create** icon (Create). The **General** tab of New Push Filter dialog is displayed.
4. Specify the name and option description for this event filter.
5. Click **Next** to display the **Systems** tab.
6. Select the devices that you want to monitor.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

7. Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.
8. Select the components and severities for which you want events to be forwarded.

**Tip:**
- To forward all hardware events, select **Match all events**.
- To forward audit events, select **Include All Audit events**.
- To forward warranty events, select **Include Warranty events**.
9. Click **Create**.

- Create an event filter for a specific subscription:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitoring ➔ Event Forwarding**. The New Event Forwarding page is displayed.
  2. Click the **Push Filters** tab.
  3. Select the link for the type of mobile device (Android or iOS) in the Name column of the table. The Change Push Notification dialog is displayed.
  4. Click the **Subscriptions** tab to display a list of active subscriptions.
  5. Select the subscription, and click the **Create** icon (Create). The **General** tab of New Event Filter dialog is displayed.
  6. Specify the name and option description for this event filter.
  7. Click **Next** to display the **Systems** tab.
  8. Select the devices that you want to monitor.

**Tip** To forward events for all managed devices (current and future), select the **Match all systems** checkbox. If you do not select the **Match all systems** checkbox, ensure that the selected devices do not have a DUMMY-UUID in the UUID column. A Dummy-UUID is assigned to devices that have not yet recovered after a restart or are not discovered completely by the management server. If you select a device with a Dummy-UUID, event forwarding works for this device until the moment when the device is fully discovered or recovered and the Dummy-UUID changes to its real UUID.

9. Click **Next** to display the **Events** tab.
10. Select the components and severities for which you want events to be forwarded.

**Tip:**
- To forward all hardware events, select **Match all events**.
- To forward audit events, select **Include All Audit events**.
- To forward warranty events, select **Include Warranty events**.
11. Click **Create**.

**What to do next**
From the Push Filters tab on the Event Forwarding page, you can perform the following actions on a selected event filter:

- Refresh the list of event filters by clicking the Refresh icon (Refresh).
- View details about a specific event filter by clicking the link in the Name column.
- Change the event filter properties and filter criteria by clicking the Edit icon (Edit).

Delete the event filter by clicking the Delete icon (Delete).

---

**Working with jobs**

Jobs are longer running tasks that are performed against one or more devices. You can schedule certain jobs to run only one time (immediately or at later time), on a reoccurring basis, or when a specific event occurs.

Jobs run in the background. You can see the status of each job from the jobs log.

**Monitoring jobs**

You can view a log of all jobs that are started by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. The jobs log includes jobs that are running, completed, or have errors.

**About this task**

Jobs are longer running tasks that are performed against one or more devices. For example, if you deploy an operating system to multiple servers, each server deployment is listed as a separate job.

Jobs run in the background. You can see the status of each job from the jobs log.

The jobs log contains information about each job. The log can contain a maximum of 1000 jobs or 1 GB. When the maximum size is reached, the oldest jobs that completed successfully are deleted. If there are no jobs that completed successfully in the log, the oldest jobs that completed with warnings are deleted. If there are no jobs that completed successfully or with warnings in the log, the oldest jobs that completed with errors are deleted.

**Procedure**

Complete one of the following steps to display the jobs log.

- From the XClarity Administrator title bar, click Jobs to display a summary of jobs that are running, completed, and have errors.
From this pull down, you can click the following tabs:

- **Errors.** Displays a list of all jobs that have errors associated with them.
- **Warnings.** Displays a list of all jobs that have warnings associated with them.
- **Running.** Displays a list of all jobs that are currently in progress.
- **Completed.** Displays a list of all jobs that are completed.

Hover over a job entry in the pull down to get more information about the job, including the status, progress, and user that created the job.

- From the XClarity Administrator title bar, click **Jobs**, and click the **View All Jobs** link to display the Jobs Status page.
- From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitor → Jobs** and click the **Job Status** tab to display the Jobs Status page.

**What to do next**

The Jobs page is displayed with a list of all jobs for XClarity Administrator.
From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Create job schedules by clicking the **Scheduled Jobs** tab (see Scheduling jobs).
- View more information about a specific job by clicking the job description in the **Jobs** column. A dialog is displayed with a list of subtasks (subjobs) and their targets, a summary of the subtasks including any necessary actions, and log details including the severity and timestamp for each message. You can choose to hide or show logs for child tasks.
- For scheduled jobs, view information about the job schedule by clicking the “this” link under the job description in the **Jobs** column.
- Change the number of jobs that are displayed per page. The default is 10 jobs. You can display 25, 50, or all jobs.
- Narrow the list of jobs that are displayed:
  - List only jobs from a specific source by clicking **Job Types** and choosing from the following options.
    - **All Job Types**
    - **Service**
    - **Management**
    - **Configuration**
    - **Firmware**
    - **Health**
    - **Power**
    - **Remote Access**
    - **System ID**
    - **OS Images**
    - **OS Deployment**
    - **OS Profile Export**
    - **Custom**
    - **Inventory**
    - **Unknown**
  - List only scheduled jobs that are associated with a specific schedule type by clicking **Schedule Types** and choosing from the following options.
    - **All Schedule Types**
– One Time
– Recurring
– Triggered

– Hide or show jobs that have errors or warnings by clicking the Hide error/warning jobs icon (都有自己).
– Hide or show jobs that are currently running by clicking the Hide running jobs icon (有自己).
– Hide or show jobs that are completed by clicking the Hide completed jobs icon (有自己).
– List only jobs that contain specific text by entering the text in the Filter field.
– If filtering is applied to the page, remove the filter by clicking the Show All Jobs icon (有自己).
– Sort the jobs by column by clicking a column heading.

• Export the jobs list as a CSV file by clicking the Export as CSV icon (有自己).

  Note: The timestamps in the exported log use the local time that is specified by the web browser.
• Cancel running jobs or subtasks by selecting one or more running jobs or subtasks and clicking the Stop icon (有自己).

  Note: It might take several minutes to cancel the job.
• Delete completed jobs or subtasks from the jobs log by selecting one or more completed jobs or subtasks and clicking the Delete icon (有自己).

• Export information about specific jobs by selecting the jobs and clicking the Export as CSV icon (有自己).
• Refresh the jobs log by clicking the Refresh icon (有自己).

Scheduling jobs
You can create schedules in Lenovo XClarity Administrator to run certain tasks at specific times.

About this task
You can schedule the following types of jobs:
• Simple tasks, such as powering off and rebooting
• Collecting service data for specific devices
• Refreshing the firmware-update and OS device-driver catalogs from the Lenovo website
• Refreshing the XClarity Administrator updates catalog from the Lenovo website
• Downloading firmware from the Lenovo website
• Updating firmware and OS device drivers on managed devices
• Backing up XClarity Administrator data and settings
• Backing up and restoring switch configuration data

You can schedule jobs to run:
• Only one time (immediately or at a later time)
• On a recurring basis
• When a specific event occurs

Procedure
To create and schedule a job, complete the following steps.
• For complex tasks, such as updating firmware and collecting service data, create the job from the current the task page or dialog.
1. Click **Schedule** to create a schedule for running this task. The Schedule New Job dialog is displayed.
2. Enter a name for the job.
3. Specify when the job is to be run. The available options depend on the type of job. Some jobs cannot be recurring or triggered by an event
   - **One Time.** These jobs run only one time. Specify the date and time when you want this job to run.
   - **Recurring.** These jobs run more than one time. Specify the when and how often you want this job to run.
   - **Triggered by Event.** These jobs run when a specific event occurs.
     a. Specify the date and time when you want this job to run, and click **Next**.
     b. Select the event to trigger the job.
4. Click **Create Job**.
   - For simple tasks, such as powering on and rebooting, create the job schedule from the Jobs page.
     1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Monitor ➔ Jobs**, and click the **Scheduled Job** tab to display the Scheduled Jobs page.
     2. Click the **Create** icon ( ) to display the Schedule New Jobs dialog.
     3. Enter a name for the job.
     4. Specify when the job is to be run.
       - **One Time.** These jobs run only one time.
         a. Specify the date and time when you want this job to run, and click **Next**.
         b. Select managed devices on which the job is to run.
       - **Recurring.** These jobs run more than one time.
         a. Specify the when and how often you want this job to run.
         b. Select managed devices on which the job is to run.
       - **Triggered by Event.** These jobs run when a specific event occurs.
         a. Specify the date and time when you want this job to run, and click **Next**.
         b. Select managed devices on which the job is to run, and click **Next**.
         c. Select the event to trigger the job.
5. Click **Create**.

**What to do next**

The Scheduled Jobs tab is displayed with a list of all job schedules in XClarity Administrator.

**Jobs**
From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- View information about all active and completed jobs for a specific job schedule by clicking the link in the Job column.
- Narrow the list of job schedules that are displayed by a specific schedule type by clicking Schedule Types and choosing from the following options:
  - All Schedule Types
  - One Time
  - Recurring
  - Triggered
- Hide or show only job schedules that are in a specific state by clicking one of the following icons:
  - All scheduled jobs that are active by clicking the Active icon (✓).
  - All scheduled jobs that are not active by clicking the Paused icon (■).
  - All scheduled jobs that already ran and are not scheduled to run again by clicking the Ended icon (⋮).
- List only scheduled jobs that contain specific text by entering the text in the Filter field.
- Sort the scheduled jobs by column by clicking a column heading.
- View when the job ran last by looking at the Last Run column. View the status of the last run job by clicking the “Job Status” link in that column.
- View when the job is scheduled to run next by looking at the Next Run column. View a list of all future dates and times by clicking the “More” link in that column.
- Immediately run the job that is associated with the schedule by clicking the Run icon (▶).
- Disable or enable a job schedule by clicking the Pause icon (■) or Activate icon (✓) respectively.
- Copy and then modify a job schedule by clicking the Copy icon (cópia).
- Edit a job schedule by clicking the Edit icon (✏).
- Delete one or more selected job schedules by clicking the Delete icon (廻).
- Export information about specific job schedules by selecting the schedules and clicking the Export as CSV icon (蠃).
- Refresh the list of job schedule by clicking the All Actions ➔ Refresh.

Adding a resolution and comments to a job

You can add a resolution and comments to a completed job, regardless of the success or error state. You can do this for a parent job and for subtasks in the job.

Procedure

Complete one of the following steps to add a resolution and comments to a job.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitor ➔ Jobs, and click the Job Status tab to display the Jobs Status page.

Step 2. Click the link for the job in the Job column to display the job details.

Step 3. Click the Notes icon (‧) to display the Notes dialog.

From this dialog, you can see a history of all notes and resolutions that were added to the job. You can clear the history by clicking Clear All Records.

Step 4. Choose one of the following resolutions.
- No Changes
- Investigating
- Resolved
- Aborted

Step 5. Add a remark in the **Note** field.
Step 6. Click **Apply**.

On the Job Status page, the resolution is displayed in the **Status** column for that job.

---

**Viewing relationships between jobs and events**

A *flow diagram* is a graphical view that shows relationships between activities (including jobs and events) that are manually initiated by a user or automatically initiated by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. The flow diagram helps to identify problems by illustrating the sequence of actions that were initiated and events that were generated, when they generated, and what caused them to be generated.

**Before you begin**

Activity flows are disabled by default. You must enable activity flows before flows can be generated for an activity. You can view flows only for activities that occur when Activity Flow is enabled.

**Attention:** Activity flows increase memory usage by XClarity Administrator. It is recommended that you do not enable activity flows if memory usage by XClarity Administrator is already high.

**About this task**

The following example illustrates a flow diagram. The sequence of events flow from left to right. Each node in the flow represents a single activity and includes the activity description, date, and status. You can hover the cursor over the node title to view additional information about the activity.

The style of the lines between the nodes indicates the certainty of relationship between nodes.
- Solid lines represent a high certainty.
- Long-dashed lines represent a medium certainty.
- Short-dashed lines represent a low certainty.
Procedure

Complete the following steps to view the flow diagram for a specific activity.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Monitoring ➜ Activities flow to display the Activities flow page.

Step 2. Enable activity flows by selecting Enable Activities Flow.

Step 3. In the Activities section, select the job or event.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific activities. In addition, you can select a status type, activities type, date, enter a custom filter, or enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field, and to list only those activities that meet the selected criteria.
Step 4. Click **Generate Flow Diagram** to display the flow diagram in the Flow Diagram section.

**What to do next**

From this page you can perform the following actions:

- View additional information about each activity in the flow diagram by hovering the cursor over the activity.
- Export related flow for the selected activities to a CSV file clicking the Actions ➔ Export to CSV.
Chapter 4. Management considerations

There are several alternatives to choose from when managing devices. Depending on the devices being managed, you might need multiple management solutions running at the same time.

For a list of hardware that Lenovo XClarity Administrator can manage, see Supported hardware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Consider the following factors that are related to the management of devices by XClarity Administrator:

• a device can be managed by only one instance of Lenovo XClarity Administrator.
• You cannot use the following management software to manage devices that XClarity Administrator currently manages:
  – Flex System Manager
  – IBM Fabric Manager
  – IBM Systems Director

However, you can use other management software (such as IBM device Manager or Microsoft Systems Center Operations Manager) in tandem with XClarity Administrator to monitor managed devices (see Using another management software in tandem with Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

• You can discover and manage Flex Power Systems compute nodes and Flex System v7000 Storage Node. Using XClarity Administrator, you can view properties and status. Additionally for storage devices, you can also power on and off a storage device, virtually reseat the storage controllers, and launch the management module. However, you must use other management alternatives to take any management-related actions on the devices, such as updating or configuring the device.
  – Use the Flex Power Systems Hardware Management Console to manage Flex Power Systems compute nodes. You can use the Power Systems Hardware Management Console to manage these devices even if you are also managing that chassis in which the devices are installed using XClarity Administrator.
  – Use either the management controller web interface or the command-line interface (CLI) that is provided with the Flex System v7000 Storage Node to manage that device.
  – LAN-over-USB is used when updating firmware. XClarity Administrator automatically enables the LAN-over-USB interface.
  – Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) is used to perform management operations on System x M4 and ThinkServer servers. Disabling IMPI prevents XClarity Administrator from managing these servers.

Comparison between Flex System Manager and Lenovo XClarity Administrator

Lenovo XClarity Administrator is an optimized hardware manager for Flex System servers. It is also designed to integrate with industry leaders in virtualization management, such as VMware vSphere and Microsoft System Center.

The following table compares the features and functions that are available with the Flex System Manager and with the XClarity Administrator.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Flex System Manager</th>
<th>Lenovo XClarity Administrator</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide a graphical representation of all supported managed devices.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator is a virtual appliance. Therefore, it can leverage VMware High Availability and Hyper-V clustering for failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support failover of the management server</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator manages Converged, NeXtScale, and System x servers. XClarity Administrator manages the hardware only. It does not require the installation of agents on the rack or tower servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage rack and tower servers</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>XClarity Administrator manages Converged, NeXtScale, and System x servers. XClarity Administrator manages the hardware only. It does not require the installation of agents on the servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Flex System servers</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Both Flex System Manager and XClarity Administrator manage Flex System servers. Flex System Manager requires the use of agents installed in the servers to discover, inventory, and manage the server and installed operating system. XClarity Administrator manages the hardware only. It does not require the installation of agents on the servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Flex Power Systems servers</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>If you are managing a chassis that contains both Flex System servers and Flex Power Systems servers:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use XClarity Administrator to manage the Flex System servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the Flex Power Systems Hardware Management Console (HMC) to manage the Flex Power Systems servers. For information about managing a Flex Power Systems server from the HMC, see the Flex System p270 Compute Node Planning and Implementation Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing RackSwitch switches</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator manages RackSwitch switches. XClarity Administrator manages the hardware only. It does not require the installation of agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage storage devices, such as the Flex System v7000 Storage Node or external devices</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>If a Flex System v7000 Storage Node is installed in a managed chassis, it is displayed in the graphical chassis view, and you can view properties and status for the storage device. However, management of the storage device must be done through the management controller web interface or command-line interface for the storage device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3. Functional comparison between Flex System Manager and XClarity Administrator (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Flex System Manager</th>
<th>Lenovo XClarity Administrator</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage virtual addressing for servers</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>On Flex System Manager, you can define virtual address ranges and allocate those virtual addresses to managed servers using IBM Fabric Manager (IFM). You can choose to configure IFM to distribute an address to a server through the CMM (called push mode), or to distribute the address directly in response to server request (called pull mode). XClarity Administrator uses a different approach to define virtual address through Configuration Patterns. Managed servers pull the virtual-address information from XClarity Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update firmware for managed devices</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>Flex System Manager updates firmware and device drivers. XClarity Administrator updates the firmware. Devices drivers are updated through your normal operating-system update processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrally manage configurations for managed chassis and servers.</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>Both management applications support the use of configuration patterns to manage configurations for managed chassis and servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploy operating systems to managed servers</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>Both management applications support the deployment of operating systems to managed servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage virtualized resources</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator can be used with Lenovo XClarity Integrator options (previously known as Upward Integration Modules or UIMs) to integrate with virtualization managers. For more information about Lenovo XClarity Integrator options, see Lenovo XClarity Integrator online documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script management functions</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator includes both REST APIs and Microsoft PowerShell cmdlets to provide scripting capabilities for management functions. For more information about support for REST APIs and Microsoft PowerShell, see Scripting XClarity Administrator management functions in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Migrating from Flex System Manager

If you are planning to manage a chassis with Lenovo XClarity Administrator and that chassis is managed by a Flex System Manager, review these considerations to transition the chassis to XClarity Administrator management successfully.

Depending on your configuration, transitioning from management by Flex System Manager to management by XClarity Administrator might be disruptive to your running workloads. Therefore, consider doing the transition during a maintenance window to minimize downtime with running workloads.

To ensure that XClarity Administrator can manage a chassis that was previously managed by Flex System Manager, complete the following steps:

1. Optional: Prepare the chassis to be removed from management by Flex System Manager. If you are using IBM Fabric Manager (IFM) to virtualize addresses, modify IFM to use push mode to distribute
virtual addresses through the CMM. If you are using IFM in pull mode and Flex System Manager is
powered off, the virtual addresses will no longer be available after the next restart of the compute node.

**Note:** IFM supports the concept of a standby node. In the event of a hardware failure, IFM assigns the
virtual address of the failed compute node to the standby node so that it can automatically take over the
workload from the failed node. XClarity Administrator does not support the concept of a standby node.
Therefore, if you have implemented the standby node, you must devise a different strategy for
continuous availability when there is a failed compute node.

Remember that if virtual addresses are changed, you must adjust infrastructure services as well. For
example:

- If the World Wide Port Name (WWPN) is changed for a compute node, adjust SAN zoning and LUN
  mapping.
- If the MAC address for a port is changed, adjust the MAC-to-IP address binding in the DHCP server
  or clustering software.
- IFM can configure a virtual boot-target WWN. If you do not migrate correctly, you might lose the
  ability to start our operating system.

2. Remove the chassis from management by the Flex System Manager.

3. Manage the chassis from XClarity Administrator. For information about managing a chassis, see
   [Managing chassis](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

4. Remove any agents that were installed on devices that are managed by the Flex System Manager. The
   XClarity Administrator implements an agentless management approach. Therefore, you do not need to
   install agents on managed compute nodes. Although the installed agents have no effect on XClarity
   Administrator management functions, you can choose to remove those agents and reclaim the space on
   the compute node.

---

**Using another management software in tandem with Lenovo XClarity Administrator**

You can use other management software (such as IBM device Manager or Microsoft Systems Center
Operations Manager) in tandem with Lenovo XClarity Administrator to monitor devices that XClarity
Administrator manages.

**Attention:** Extra care must be taken when using multiple management tools to manage your devices to
prevent unforeseen conflicts. For example, submitting power-state changes using another tool might conflict
with configuration or update jobs that are running in XClarity Administrator.

**Flex System devices**

If you intend to use another management software to monitor your managed devices, and if that
management software uses SNMPv3 or IPMI communication, you must prepare your environment by
performing the following steps for each managed CMM:

1. Log in to the management controller web interface for the chassis using the `RECOVERY_ID` user name and
   password.
2. If the security policy is set to **Secure**, change the user authentication method.
   a. Click **Mgt Module Management → User Accounts**.
   b. Click the **Accounts** tab.
   c. Click **Global login settings**.
   d. Click the **General** tab.
   e. Select **External first, then local authentication** for the user authentication method.
   f. Click **OK**.
3. Create a new local user with the correct SNMP or IPMI settings from the management controller web
   interface.
4. If the security policy is set to Secure, log out and then log in to the management controller web interface using the new user name and password. When prompted, change the password for the new user.

You can now use the new user as an active SNMP or IPMI user.

**Note:** If you unmanage and then manage the chassis again, this new user account becomes locked and disabled. In this case, repeat these steps to create a new user account.

**ThinkSystem, ThinkServer and System x devices**

If you intend to use another management software to monitor your managed devices, create a new local user with the correct SNMP or IPMI settings from the IMM interface. Ensure that you grant SNMP or IPMI privileges, depending on your needs.
Chapter 5. Managing resource groups

You can use resource group in Lenovo XClarity Administrator to create logical set of managed devices that you can view collectively and act on.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Resource groups

About this task

There are three types of resource groups:

- **Static.** Customized group of specific devices.
- **Dynamic.** Rule-based group of devices (for example, all servers of a specific type). This group contains a dynamic list of devices based on a set of inventory properties.

Actions cannot be performed on a resource group; however, you can select all devices in the group, and perform actions collectively on all selected devices.

Viewing the status of devices in a resource group

You can view the status of all managed devices in a resource group.

About this task

The following status icons are used to indicate the overall health of all devices the resource group. The overall health of the group indicates the device with the highest severity in the group.

- **Critical** icon
- **Warning** icon
- **Normal** icon

Procedure

Complete the following steps to view the status of devices in a resource group.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard.** The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of all managed devices and other resources, including resource groups.
Step 2. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➞ Resource Groups. The All Resource Groups page is displayed.

The All Resource Groups page lists each resource group, including the name of the group, the number of managed devices that are in the group, and the status of the device with the highest severity in the group.

All Resource Groups

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Create a new resource group (see Creating a dynamic resource group and Creating a static resource group)
- Edit group membership by selecting a group and clicking the Edit icon ( 
- Edit group properties by selecting the group and clicking All Actions ➞ Edit properties.
- Remove a resource group by selecting a group and clicking the Delete icon ( )
**Note:** Removing a group only removes the group definition. It does not affect the devices in the group.

- Export detailed information about all devices in one or more resource groups to a CSV file clicking the **Export** icon (".

**Step 3.** From the All Resource Groups page, click the name in the **Groups** column to display the list of devices in that group.

**All Resource Groups > e-Commerce (static)**

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Add or remove devices in a static resource group by clicking the **Edit** icon (".
- Display detailed information about a specific device in the resource group by clicking the device name in the **Device Name** column.
- Export detailed information about all devices in one or more resource groups to a CSV file clicking the **Export** icon (".

---

**Viewing the members of a resource group**

You can view detailed information about the resource groups including group members.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to view group membership.

- To view all groups of which a device is a member.
  1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware** and then click the device type to display the all-devices page.

     Hover over the group lists in the **Groups** column to list the groups of which the device is a member.
2. Click the link for the device name in the first column. The summary page for that device is displayed, including a list of resource groups of which the device is a member.
• To view the members of a group.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Dashboard. The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of the all managed devices and other resources, including racks.

2. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware → Groups. The Resource Groups page is displayed.

This page lists the total number of members and the number of member of each device type in the group.
3. From the All Resource Groups page, click the name in the Groups column to display the resource group details. This page lists each device that is a member of the resource group.

Creating a dynamic resource group

You can create a resource group for a dynamic set of managed devices based on a set of criteria.

About this task

You can create a dynamic resource group using one or more of the following criteria for each device type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Chassis</th>
<th>Dense chassis</th>
<th>Servers</th>
<th>Flex System switch</th>
<th>RackSwitch switch</th>
<th>Storage device</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
### Criteria Chassis Dense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Chassis</th>
<th>Dense chassis</th>
<th>Servers</th>
<th>Flex System switch</th>
<th>RackS-switch</th>
<th>Storage device</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 address*</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 address</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine type</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall health state</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processor cores</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product name</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-defined name</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (v2.1.0 and later)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For IPv4 addresses, you can specify a single address or a range of addresses, separated by dash or using an asterisk as wildcard (for example, 192.0.2.5 – 192.0.2.46 or 192.0.2.*).

### Procedure

To create and populate a dynamic resource group, complete the following steps:

1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Resource Groups**. The All Resource Groups page is displayed.
2. Click the **Create** icon (_create_ ) to create an empty group. The Create Empty Group dialog is displayed.
3. Select **Dynamic Group** to group of devices based on a set of criteria.
4. Click **Create**. The Edit Dynamic Group dialog is displayed.
5. **Add criteria for this dynamic group.**
   - Select the operator to use for the group set. This can be one of the following values:
     - **AND.** Members must satisfy all specified values.
     - **OR.** Members must satisfy one or more of the specified values.
   - Click **Create Criteria** to add and a new criteria rule to the set.
   - Click **Create Criteria Set** to add a subset of criteria rules.
**Note:** New criteria and criteria sets are always added to the bottom of the list.

Step 6. Click **Apply** to save the group criteria and create the group, or click **Preview** to see what devices are included in the group using the current criteria without creating the group.

**What to do next**

- You can see which resource groups a device belongs from the **Groups** column on the all-devices pages and the device summary pages.
- You can modify the criteria for the dynamic group by selecting the resource group and clicking the **Edit** icon (✏️).
- You can modify resource-group properties by clicking **All Actions → Edit properties**.

---

**Creating a static resource group**

You can create a resource group that contains a customized set of managed devices.

**Procedure**

To create and populate a static resource group, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Resource Groups**. The Resource Groups page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Create** icon (➕) to create an empty group. The Create Empty Group dialog is displayed.

Step 3. Specify the group name and optional description.

Step 4. Select **Static Group** to create a group of explicitly defined devices.

Step 5. Click **Create**. The Edit Static Group page is displayed. **All Resource Groups > e-Commerce > Edit Static Group**

---

**e-Commerce**

Choose one or more devices to add to the group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None-avail</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.49.17...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.240.51.213</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.51.21...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-bt-906</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.72.90...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-bt-901</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.72.21...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boulder Chassis</td>
<td>Chassis</td>
<td>10.243.1.141, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale REWE RSL</td>
<td>Chassis</td>
<td>10.240.75.92, f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-bt-046</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.72.88,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chs-414-00-001</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>10.240.50.81,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 6. Select the devices that you want to add to the group from the **All available devices not in group** list, and click the **Add** icon (➕) to move the selected devices to the **Contents of group** list.

**Notes:**

- You can sort the lists to make it easier to find specific devices by clicking on the column headers. In addition, you can select a device type from the **Filter By** drop-down list, select a chassis from the drop-down list, or enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to list only those devices that meet the selected criteria.
- If you choose to move a chassis to the group, the devices in the chassis are not automatically added to the group. To add all chassis components to the group, select **Chassis ➔ <chassis_name>**.
name> in the Show drop-down menu to list all components in the specified chassis, select the checkbox next to the Device Name column heading to select all devices, and then click the Add icon (>>) to move the selected devices to the Contents of group list.

What to do next

- You can see which resource groups a device belongs from the Groups column on the all-devices pages and the device summary pages.
- You can add or remove a device from a static resource group from the all-devices pages and the device details pages by clicking All Actions – Groups – Add to Group or All Actions – Groups – Remove from Group.

**Note:** You can add and remove devices only from static resource groups. You cannot remove them from dynamic groups.
- You can modify resource-group properties by clicking All Actions – Edit properties.

Removing a resource group

You can remove a resource group from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**About this task**

Deleting a group only deletes the group definition. It does not affect the devices in that group.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to remove a resource group.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware – Resource Groups. The All Resource Groups page is displayed.

The All Resource Groups page lists each resource group, including the name of the group, the number of managed devices that are in the group, and the status of the device with the highest severity in the group.

**All Resource Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Members</th>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e-Commerce</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Static</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2 chassis 6 servers 2 switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical,Warning devices</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>1 chassis 124 servers 40 switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Select the resource group to be removed.

**Step 3.** Click the Delete icon (x).

**Step 4.** Click Delete.
Modifying resource-group properties

You can modify the properties for a specific resource group.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify the resource-group properties.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Resource Groups** to display the All Resource Groups page.

Step 2. Select the resource group to be updated.

Step 3. Click **All Actions ➔ Edit Properties** to display the Edit Group Properties dialog.

Step 4. Change the following information, as needed.
- Group name
- Description

Step 5. Click **Save**.

**Note:** When you change these properties, there might be a short delay before the changes appear in the XClarity Administrator web interface.
Chapter 6. Managing racks

You can use racks in Lenovo XClarity Administrator to group your managed devices to reflect the physical rack setup in your datacenter.

Before you begin

After moving a node from one chassis to another, wait 5 to 10 minutes before attempting to edit the racks in XClarity Administrator that contains the chassis.

When you move a device out of a rack, the rack name and lowest rack unit values are cleared in device inventory. The room and location values are not cleared.

About this task

This procedure describes how to create and populate a single rack with managed devices and fillers interactively.

If you must add many devices to racks, or edit many racks, consider using a spreadsheet to perform a bulk import or implementing a PowerShell script to automate the task. For more information about using the bulk-import, see Managing chassis and Managing servers. For information about PowerShell scripts, see PowerShell (LXCAPSTool) toolkit in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

XClarity Administrator recognizes rack properties that are defined in a manageable device. When you manage that device, XClarity Administrator sets the system properties for that device and updates the rack view. If the rack does not exist in XClarity Administrator, a new rack is created and the device is added to the new rack.

Notes:

- System x3500 M5 servers, NeXtScale nx360 M5 servers, ThinkServer SD350 servers, and tower servers are not supported in rack view.
- System x3850 X5 scalable-complex systems, you must add each node (server) to the rack individually.
- Demo hardware is not persistent in rack views when XClarity Administrator is restarted.

Procedure

To create and populate racks, complete the following steps.

- Create and populate a single rack with managed devices.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Racks. The All Racks page is displayed.
     The All Racks page shows each rack as a thumbnail image with the name of the rack, the number of managed devices that are in the rack, and the status of the device with the highest severity.
     Notes: You can filter the racks by severity by clicking the following icons in the toolbar. You can also enter a rack name in the Filter field to further filter the racks that are displayed.
     - Critical alerts icon
     - Warning alerts icon
     - Normal alerts icon
2. Click the **Create** icon (>Create) to create an empty rack. The Create Empty Rack dialog is displayed.

3. Fill in the dialog with the rack name, height, location, and room.

**Notes:**
- The rack name can include only the upper and lower case letters, numbers, and the following special characters: period (.), dash (-), and underscore (_).
- The location can be a maximum of 23 characters.

4. Click **Create**. A thumbnail image for the new rack is added to the All Racks page.

5. Double-click the thumbnail image for the rack. The rack-view page is displayed with an empty rack image and properties for that rack.

6. Click **Edit Rack** to display the Edit Rack page.
7. Add all appropriate managed devices and fillers to the graphical view:

**Note:** Only managed devices that are in an Online state can be added to the rack.

- Click the **Chassis** tab to view a list of managed chassis that have not been added to a rack. Drag and drop a managed chassis to the desired location in the rack to add the chassis to the rack.
- Click the **Server Enclosures** tab to view a list of managed rack-servers and multi-node server enclosures that have not been added to a rack. Drag and drop a rack server or server enclosures into the rack at the desired location to add the rack server to the rack.
- Click the **RackSwitch** tab to view a list of managed RackSwitch switches that have not been added to a rack. Drag and drop a RackSwitch switch into the rack at the desired location to add the switch to the rack.
- Click the **Storage** tab to view a list of various storage devices. Drag and drop the appropriate storage device into the rack at the desired location to add the storage device to the rack.
- Click the **Fillers** tab to view a list of various fillers. Drag and drop the appropriate filler into the rack at the desired location to add the filler to the rack.

A filler is any device that is in the rack that is not managed by XClarity Administrator. The following fillers are available:

- Generic fillers
- Generic rack switches
- Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage controllers and enclosures
- Partner storage controllers and enclosures (such as IBM, NetApp, and EMC)

- The location, room, rack, and lowest rack unit properties are updated for the device when you add or remove devices from a rack.
- You can sort the list of devices on each tab by using the **View by** drop-down list. In addition, you can enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the devices that are displayed.
- You can remove managed devices and fillers from the rack by dragging and dropping the objects outside the rack.

8. Click **Save** to save the rack configuration.

The configuration process might take several minutes to complete. During configuration, the rack and location information is pushed to the CMM or baseboard management controller for the managed devices.
9. Customize the fillers that you added to the rack by clicking the filler and then clicking **Edit Properties**. In the Edit Properties dialog, you can specify a name, lowest rack unit (LRU), and a URL to use to launch the management user interface for that device.

**Tip:** After the rack configuration is saved, you can launch the management user interface for a filler by clicking the filler in the rack and then clicking the **Launch URL** link.

- Create and populate racks using a bulk-import file.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.
  2. Click **Bulk Import**. The Bulk Import wizard is displayed.

---

**Import Data File**

**Step 1:** Download the template file in **Excel** or in **CSV** format

**Step 2:** Enter information in the template file then save as CSV format

**Step 3:** Upload the CSV file for processing

![](template.csv)

3. Click the **in Excel** or **in CSV** link on the Import Data File page to download the template bulk-import file in Excel or CSV format.

**Important:** The template file might change from one release to the next. Ensure that you always use the latest template.

4. Fill in the data worksheet in the template file, and save the file in CSV format.

**Tip:** The Excel template includes a **Data** worksheet and a **Readme** worksheet. Use the **Data** worksheet to fill in your device data. The **Readme** worksheet provides information about how to fill in each field on the **Data** worksheet (including which fields are required) and sample data.

**Important:**

- Devices are managed in the order that is listed in the bulk-import file.
- XClarity Administrator uses rack-assignment information that is defined in the device configuration when the device is managed. If you change the rack assignment in XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator updates the device configuration. If you update the device configuration after the device is managed, the changes are reflected in XClarity Administrator.
- It is recommended but not required to explicitly create a rack in the spreadsheet before assigning the rack to a device. If a rack is not explicitly defined and the rack does not already exist in XClarity Administrator, the rack-assignment information that is specified for a device is used to create the rack with a default height of 52U.
  
  If you want to use another height for the rack, you must explicitly define the rack in the spreadsheet before assigning it to a device.

To define your racks in the bulk-import file, complete the following required columns.

- (Columns A) Specify “rack” for the device type.
- (Columns V) Specify the rack name.
- (Column X) Specify rack height. The following rack heights are supported: 6U, 12U, 18U, 25U, 37U, 42U, 45U, 46U, 48U, 50U, and 52U.

The following figure shows an example bulk-import file with racks defined.
5. From the Bulk Import wizard, enter the name of the CSV file to upload file for processing. You can click **Browse** to help you find the file.

6. Click **Upload** to upload and validate the file.

7. Click **Next** to display the Input Summary page with a list of rack and other devices to be managed, and review the summary of racks and other devices that you want to manage.

8. Click **Next** to display the Device Credentials page. Click on each tab, and optionally specify global settings and credentials to use for all devices of a specific type. The devices that will use the global settings and credentials are listed on right side of each tab.

9. Click **Manage**. The Monitoring Results page is displayed with information about the management status of each device in the bulk-import file.

   A job is created for the management process. If you close the Bulk-Import wizard, the management process continues running in the background. You can monitor the status of the management process from the jobs log. For information about the jobs log, see “Monitoring jobs” on page 149.

**What to do next**

You can change the rack numbering order preference (see Setting inventory preferences).

---

**Viewing the status of devices in a rack**

For each rack, you can view the status of all managed devices in the rack.

**Procedure**

Complete the one or more of the following action to view the status of all devices in a rack.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard**. The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of the all managed devices and other resources, including racks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Rack name</td>
<td>Lowest rack unit</td>
<td>Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rack</td>
<td>Rack_01</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rack</td>
<td>Rack_02</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You can use the same bulk-import file to manage devices and add those devices to a rack (see Managing systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation).
Step 2. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Racks**. The Racks page is displayed.

The Racks page shows each rack as a thumbnail image with the name of the rack, the number of managed devices that are in the rack, and the status of the device with the highest severity.

**Notes:** You can sort the list by rack name, number of devices in the rack, or by severity to make it easier to find specific racks. Sorting is ordered from left to right, top to bottom. In addition, you can filter the racks by severity by clicking on the following icons in the toolbar or enter a rack name in the **Filter** field to further filter the racks that are displayed.

- **Critical alerts** icon
- **Warning alerts** icon
- **Normal alerts** icon

All Racks

Step 3. From the All Racks page, click the rack name or double-click a rack thumbnail to display the graphical view and properties for that rack.
The **rack view** is a graphical view of the front rack that shows each device in the rack, including chassis, rack servers, top-of-rack switches, and fillers. A status icon on each device indicates the current status of that device.

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Add or remove devices in the rack by clicking **Edit Rack**.
  
  **Note:** When you change the components in the rack, there might be a short delay before the information appears in the XClarity Administrator interface.

- Modify device and filter properties (including the name, location, and URL to launch the management web interface) by clicking the device or filler, and then clicking the **Edit Properties** in the device summary pane.

- View the management controller web interface for a device or filler by clicking the device or filler, and then clicking the **Launch URL** link in the device summary pane.

**All Racks** > Rack 1

---

**Step 4.** Display a summary or detailed status for a device or component:

- Click a device or component in the rack to display the status summary and properties and status for the device or component.

- Double-click a device to display the device details page.

**Procedure**

You can change the rack numbering order preference (see Setting inventory preferences).

---

**Removing a rack**

You can remove a rack from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to remove a rack.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Racks**. The All Racks page is displayed.
The All Racks page shows each rack as a thumbnail image with the name of the rack, the number of managed devices that are in the rack, and the status of the device with the highest severity.

**Notes:** You can sort the list by rack name, number of devices in the rack, or by severity to make it easier to find specific racks. Sorting is ordered from left to right, top to bottom. In addition, you can filter the racks by severity by clicking on the following icons in the toolbar or enter a rack name in the Filter field to further filter the racks that are displayed.

- **Critical alerts** icon
- **Warning alerts** icon
- **Normal alerts** icon

**All Racks**

Step 2. Select the thumbnail for the rack to be removed.

Step 3. Click the **Remove** icon.

Step 4. Click **Remove**.

**Results**

The thumbnail for the rack is removed from the All Racks page, and all devices that were in the rack are now available for inclusion in other rack on the Edit Racks page.
Chapter 7. Managing chassis

Lenovo XClarity Administrator can manage several types of systems, including the Flex System chassis.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Discovery

Before you begin

Note: Chassis components (such as CMMs, Flex compute nodes, and Flex switches) are discovered and managed automatically when you manage the chassis that contains them. You cannot discover and managed chassis components separate from the chassis.

Before managing chassis, ensure that the following conditions are met:

• Review the management considerations before managing a device. For information, see Management considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

• Certain ports must be available to communicate with the CMM for the chassis being managed. Ensure that these ports are available before you attempt to manage a chassis. For more information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

• Ensure that the minimum required firmware is installed on each chassis that you want to manage using XClarity Administrator. For information about firmware requirements, see Supported firmware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

• Ensure that the Number of simultaneous active sessions for LDAP users setting in the CMM is set to 0 (zero) for the chassis. You can verify this setting from the CMM web interface by clicking Mgmt Module Management ➞ User Accounts, click Global Login Settings, and then click the General tab.

• Ensure that there are at least three TCP command-mode sessions set for out-of-band communication with the CMM. For information about setting the number of sessions, see tcpcmdmode command in the CMM online documentation.

• To discover a chassis that is on a different subnet from XClarity Administrator, ensure that one of the following conditions are met:
  – Ensure that you enable multicast SLP forwarding on the top-of-rack switches, as well as the routers in your environment. See the documentation that was provided with your specific switch or router to determine whether multicast SLP forwarding is enabled and to find procedures to enable it if it is disabled.
  – If SLP is disabled on the endpoint or on the network, you can use DNS discovery method instead by manually adding a service record (SRV record) to your domain name server (DNS), for XClarity Administrator for example.

    _lxca._tcp.labs.lenovo.com service = 0 0 443 fvt-xhmc3.labs.lenovo.com.

Then, enable DNS discovery on the CMM from the management web interface, by clicking Mgt Module Management ➞ Network Protocol, clicking the DNS tab, and selecting Use DNS to discover Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Notes:

– The CMM must be running a firmware level dated May 2017 to support automatic discovery using DNS.

– If there are multiple XClarity Administrator instances in your environment, the chassis is discovered only by the instance that is the first to respond to the discovery request. The chassis is not discovered by all instances.
Consider implementing either IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for all CMMs and Flex switches that are managed by XClarity Administrator. If you implement IPv4 for some CMMs and Flex switches and IPv6 for others, some events might not be received in the audit log (or as audit traps).

**Attention:** If you intend to manage CMMs that are running a firmware level of Flex stack release 1.3.2.1 2PET12K through 2PET12Q, that have been running more than three weeks, and that are in a dual-CMM configuration, you must virtually reset the CMMs before updating firmware using XClarity Administrator.

**Important:** If you intend to use other management software in addition to Lenovo XClarity Administrator to monitor your chassis, and if that management software uses SNMPv3 communication, you must first create a local CMM user ID that is configured with the appropriate SNMPv3 information and then log in to the CMM using that user ID and change the password. For more information, see Using management software other than the XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

**About this task**

XClarity Administrator can automatically discover chassis in your environment by probing for manageable systems that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator. To discover chassis that are in other subnets, specify an IP address or range of IP addresses, or import information from a spreadsheet.

After the chassis are managed by XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator polls each managed chassis periodically to collect information, such as inventory, vital product data, and status. You can view and monitor each managed chassis and perform management action (such as configuring system information, network setting, and failover). For chassis that are in protected mode, management actions are disabled.

Chassis are managed using **XClarity Administrator managed authentication**.

By default, devices are managed using XClarity Administrator managed authentication to log in to the devices. When managing rack servers and Lenovo chassis, you can choose to use local authentication or managed authentication to log in to the devices.

- **When local authentication** is used for rack servers, Lenovo chassis, and Lenovo rack switches, XClarity Administrator uses a stored credential to authenticate to the device. The stored credential can be an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server.

  You must create a stored credential in XClarity Administrator that matches an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server before managing the device using local authentication (see Managing stored credentials in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

  **Note:** RackSwitch devices support only stored credentials for authentication. XClarity Administrator user credentials are not supported.

- **Using managed authentication** allows you to manage and monitor multiple devices using credentials in the XClarity Administrator authentication server instead of local credentials. When managed authentication is used for a device (other than ThinkServer servers, System x M4 servers, and switches), XClarity Administrator configures the device and its installed components to use the XClarity Administrator authentication server for centralized management.

  When managed authentication is enabled, you can manage devices using either manually-entered or stored credentials (see Managing user accounts and in the XClarity Administrator online documentation). The stored credential is used only until XClarity Administrator configures the LDAP settings on the device. After that, any change to the stored credential has no impact the management or monitoring of that device.

  **Note:** When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.
- If a local or external LDAP server is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, user accounts that are defined in the authentication server are used to log in to XClarity Administrator, CMMs and baseboard management controllers in the XClarity Administrator domain. Local CMM and management controller user accounts are disabled.

- If an SAML 2.0 identity provider is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, SAML accounts are not accessible to managed devices. However, when using an SAML identity provider and an LDAP server together, if the identity provider uses accounts that exist in the LDAP server, LDAP user accounts can be used to log into the managed devices while the more advanced authentication methods that are provided by SAML 2.0 (such as multifactor authentication and single sign-on) can be used to log into XClarity Administrator.

- When managed authentication is enabled for ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers:
  - Baseboard management-controller firmware supports up to five LDAP user roles. XClarity Administrator adds these LDAP user roles to the servers during management: lxc-supervisor, lxc-sysmgr, lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, and lxc-os-admin.
  - Users must be assigned to at least one of the specified LDAP user roles to communicate with ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers.
  - Management-controller firmware does not support LDAP users with the same username as local user of the server.

- For ThinkServer and System x M4 servers, the XClarity Administrator authentication server is not used. Instead, an IPMI account is created on the device with the prefix “LXCA_” followed by a random string. (The existing local IPMI user accounts are not disabled.) When you unmanage a ThinkServer server, the “LXCA_” user account is disabled, and the prefix “LXCA_” is replaced with the prefix “DISABLED_”. To determine whether a ThinkServer server is managed by another instance, XClarity Administrator checks for IPMI accounts with the prefix “LXCA_”. If you choose to force management of a managed ThinkServer server, all the IPMI accounts on the device with the “LXCA_” prefix are disabled and renamed. Consider manually clearing IPMI accounts that are no longer used.

In XClarity Administrator v2.4 and later, if you use manually-entered credentials, XClarity Administrator automatically creates a stored credential and uses that stored credential to manage the device.

**Notes:** When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.

- Each time you manage a device using manually-entered credentials, a new stored credential is created for that device, even if another stored credential was created for that device during a previous management process.

- When you unmanage a device, XClarity Administrator does not delete stored credentials there were automatically created for that device during the management process.

A device can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device on the initial XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator. If an error occurs during the unmanagement process, you can select the **Force management** option during management on the new XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** When scanning the network for manageable devices, XClarity Administrator does not know whether a device is already managed by another manager until after it attempts to manage the device.

During the management process, XClarity Administrator performs the following actions:

- Logs in to the chassis using the provided credentials.
- Collects inventory for all components in each chassis, such as the CMM, compute nodes, storage devices, and Flex switches.
Note: Some inventory data is collected after the management process completes. The chassis is in the Pending status until all inventory data is collected. You cannot perform certain tasks on a managed device (such as deploying a server pattern) until all inventory data is collected for that device and the chassis is no longer in the Pending state.

- Configures the settings for the NTP server so that all managed devices use the NTP server from XClarity Administrator.
- Assigns the last-edited firmware-compliance policy to the chassis.
- For Lenovo Flex devices, optionally configures the devices firewall rules so that incoming requests are accepted from only XClarity Administrator.
- Exchanges security certificates with the CMM, copying the CMM security certificate into the XClarity Administrator trust store and sending the XClarity Administrator CA security certificate to the CMM. The CMM loads the certificate into the CMM trust store and distributes it to the compute-node service processors for inclusion in their trust stores.
- Configures managed authentication. The settings for the CMM LDAP client are changed to use XClarity Administrator as the authentication server, and the Global Login Settings in the CMM are changed to External Authentication Server Only. For more information about managed authentication, see Managing the authentication server.
- Creates the recovery user account (RECOVERY_ID). For more information about the RECOVERY_ID account, see Managing the authentication server.

Attention: When managing a chassis, the XClarity Administrator changes the maximum number of simultaneous Secure TCP Command Mode connections to 15 and sets the maximum number of simultaneous Legacy TCP Command Mode connections to 0. This overrides settings that you might have already set on the CMM.

Note: XClarity Administrator does not modify the security settings or cryptographic settings (cryptographic mode and the mode used for secure communications) during the management process. You can modify the cryptographic settings after the chassis is managed (see Configuring cryptography settings).

Procedure

Complete one of the following procedures to discover and manage your chassis using XClarity Administrator.

- Discover and manage a large number of chassis and other devices using a bulk-import file (see Managing systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- Discover and manage chassis that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware → Discover and Manage New Devices. The Discover and Manage New Devices page is displayed.
Discover and Manage New Devices

If the following list does not contain the device that you expect, use the Manual Input option to discover the device. For more information about why a device might not be automatically discovered, see the Cannot discover a device help topic.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the chassis that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the chassis that are displayed. You can change the columns that are displayed and the default sort order by clicking the Customize Columns icon.

Use the browser refresh button to discover all manageable devices in the XClarity Administrator domain. Discovery might take several minutes.

2. Click the Refresh icon to discover new devices.
3. Click the Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices checkbox to change the firewall rules on all devices during the management process so that incoming requests are accepted from only XClarity Administrator.

Encapsulation can be enabled or disabled on specific devices after they are managed.

**Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

4. Select one or more chassis that you want to manage.
5. Click Manage Selected.
6. Choose to use XClarity Administrator managed authentication or local authentication for this device. Managed authentication is selected by default. To use local authentication, clear Managed Authentication.

**Note:** Managed and local authentication are not supported for ThinkServer and System x M4 servers.

7. Choose the type of credentials to use for the device and specify the appropriate credentials:
   - Use manually entered credentials
     - Specify the local user ID and password with lxc-supervisor authority for authenticating to the CMM.
     - (Optional) Specify a new password for the CMM user account if the password is currently expired on the device.
Use stored credentials
Select the stored credential with lxc-supervisor authority to use for this managed device. You can add stored credentials by clicking Manage Stored Credentials.

Note: If you choose to use local authentication, you must select a stored credential to manage the device.

Tip: It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

For more information about normal and stored credentials, see Managing user accounts and Managing stored credentials.

8. Specify the recovery password if managed authentication is selected.
A recovery account (RECOVERY_ID) is created on the CMM, and all local user accounts are disabled. If there is a problem with XClarity Administrator, and it stops working for some reason, you cannot log in to the CMM using normal user accounts. However, you can log in using the RECOVERY_ID account.

Note:
- The recovery password is required if you choose to use managed authentication and is not allowed if you if you choose to use local authentication.
- You can choose to use a local recovery account or stored recovery credentials. In either case, the user name is always RECOVERY_ID.
- Ensure that the password follows the security and password policies for the device. Security and password policies might vary.
- Ensure that you record the recovery password for future use.

For more information about the recovery ID, see Managing the authentication server.

9. Click Change to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

Notes:
- You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
- If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

10. Click Manage.
A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the progress.

When the process is complete, the dialog displays the number of devices in the chassis and the chassis status.

Note: Some inventory data is collected after the management process completes. The chassis is in the Pending status until all inventory data is collected. You cannot perform certain tasks on a managed device (such as deploying a server pattern) until all inventory data is collected for that device and the chassis is no longer in the Pending state.

11. When the process is complete, click OK.
The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.

If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the Force management option.
- If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.
**Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the **Force management** option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.
- If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

12. If this is a new chassis, click **Continue to Chassis Configuration** to validate and change management network settings for the entire chassis (including compute nodes and Flex switches) and to configure the compute node information, local storage, I/O adapters, boot targets, and firmware settings by creating and deploying server patterns. For more information, see Modifying the management-IP settings for a chassis and Configuring servers using configuration patterns.

- Discover and manage chassis that are not on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator by manually specifying IP addresses.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➤ Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.

2. Click the **Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices** checkbox to change the firewall rules on all devices during the management process so that incoming requests are accepted from only XClarity Administrator.

Encapsulation can be enabled or disabled on specific devices after they are managed.

**Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

3. Select **Manual Input**.

4. Specify the network addresses of the chassis that you want to manage:

   - Click **Single System**, and enter a single IP address domain name, or fully-qualified domain name (FQDN).

     **Note:** To specify an FQDN, ensure that a valid domain name is specified on Network Access page (see Configuring network access).

   - Click **Multiple Systems**, and enter a range of IP addresses. To add another range, click the **Add** icon (➕). To remove a range, click the **Remove** icon (➖).

5. Click **OK**.

6. Choose to use XClarity Administrator managed authentication or local authentication for this device. Managed authentication is selected by default. To use local authentication, clear **Managed Authentication**.

   **Note:** Managed and local authentication are not supported for ThinkServer and System x M4 servers.

7. Choose the type of credentials to use for the device and specify the appropriate credentials:

   - **Use manually entered credentials**

     - Specify the local user ID and password with **lxc-supervisor** authority for authenticating to the CMM.
- (Optional) Specify a new password for the CMM user account if the password is currently expired on the device.

- **Use stored credentials**
  Select the stored credential with **lxc-supervisor** authority to use for this managed device. You can add stored credentials by clicking **Manage Stored Credentials**.

  **Note:** If you choose to use local authentication, you must select a stored credential to manage the device.

  **Tip:** It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

  For more information about normal and stored credentials, see **Managing user accounts** and **Managing stored credentials**.

8. Specify the recovery password if managed authentication is selected.
   A recovery account (**RECOVERY_ID**) is created on the CMM, and all local user accounts are disabled. If there is a problem with XClarity Administrator, and it stops working for some reason, you cannot log in to the CMM using normal user accounts. However, you can log in using the **RECOVERY_ID** account.

   **Note:**
   - The recovery password is required if you choose to use managed authentication and is not allowed if you choose to use local authentication.
   - You can choose to use a local recovery account or stored recovery credentials. In either case, the user name is always **RECOVERY_ID**.
   - Ensure that the password follows the security and password policies for the device. Security and password policies might vary.
   - Ensure that you record the recovery password for future use.

   For more information about the recovery ID, see **Managing the authentication server**.

9. Click **Change** to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

   **Notes:**
   - You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
   - If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see **Changing the default permissions**.

10. Click **Manage**.
    A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. Monitor the progress to ensure that the process completes successfully.

    When the process is complete, the dialog is displayed the number of devices in the chassis and the chassis status.

    **Note:** Some inventory data is collected after the management process completes. The chassis is in the Pending status until all inventory data is collected. You cannot perform certain tasks on a managed device (such as deploying a server pattern) until all inventory data is collected for that device and the chassis is no longer in the Pending state.

11. When the process is complete, click **OK**.
    The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.
If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the **Force management** option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

**Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the **Force management** option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.
- If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

12. If this is a new chassis, click **Continue to Chassis Configuration** to validate and change management network settings for the entire chassis (including compute nodes and Flex switches) and to configure the compute node information, local storage, I/O adapters, boot targets, and firmware settings by creating and deploying server patterns. For more information, see Modifying the management-IP settings for a chassis and Configuring servers using configuration patterns.

### What to do next

- Discover and manage additional devices.
- Deploy operating-system images to the servers that do not already have an operating system installed. For more information, see Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers.
- Update firmware on devices that are not in compliance with current policies (Updating firmware on managed devices).
- Add the newly managed devices to the appropriate rack to reflect the physical environment (see Managing racks).
- Monitor hardware status and details (see Viewing the status of a managed server).
- Monitor events and alerts (see Working with events and Working with alerts).

### Viewing the status of a managed chassis

You can view a summary and detailed status for the managed chassis and their installed components from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Learn more:**

- XClarity Administrator: Inventory
- XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

**About this task**

The following status icons are used to indicate the overall health of the device. If the certificates do not match, “(Untrusted)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Untrusted). If there is a connectivity issue or a connection to the device is not trusted, “(Connectivity)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Connectivity).

- **Critical**
- **Warning**
Procedure

Complete the following steps to view the status for a managed chassis.

- View detailed information about the chassis by clicking the Details link or by clicking Actions ➔ Views ➔ Details.
- Launch the CMM web interface for the chassis by clicking the IP address link (see Launching the CMM web interface for a chassis).
- Modify information (such as support contact, location, and description) by clicking Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties.
- Modify the management IP settings for the entire chassis, including compute nodes and Flex switches, by clicking Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Management IP addresses.
- Export detailed information about one or more chassis to a single CSV file by selecting the chassis and clicking Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory.

**Note:** You can export inventory data for a maximum of 60 devices at one time.

**Tip:** When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.

- Resolve issues that might arise between the Lenovo XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the CMM in the chassis by selecting a chassis and clicking Actions ➔ Security ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificates.

**Viewing the details of a managed chassis**

You can view the detailed information about the managed chassis from Lenovo XClarity Administrator, including the firmware levels, IP addresses, and universally unique identifier (UUID).

Learn more:

- XClarity Administrator: Inventory
- XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

**About this task**

The system-level air temperature is measured by a physical sensor at the front of the server. This temperature represents inlet air temperature for the server. Note that the air temperature that is reported by XClarity Administrator and the CMM might differ if the temperature is captured at different points in time.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to view the details for a managed chassis.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Chassis. The Chassis page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed chassis.
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the chassis that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a chassis name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the chassis that are displayed.

### Chassis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chassis</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Type-Model</th>
<th>Serial Number</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
<th>Firmware (CMM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SN#Y034BG51X0</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>10.240.49.15...</td>
<td>Critical,Warn...</td>
<td>8721-HC1</td>
<td>KQ2Y32M</td>
<td>IBM Flex Sys...</td>
<td>1AON20C / 1...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN#Y010BG4470</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>10.243.0.76...</td>
<td>8721-HC1</td>
<td>23DVG01</td>
<td>IBM Chassis...</td>
<td>1AON015 / 1...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 2. Click the chassis name in the Chassis column. The status summary page for that chassis is displayed, showing the chassis properties and components that are installed in the chassis.
Step 3. Complete one or more of the following actions:

- Click **Summary** to view a summary of the chassis, including system information and installed components (see Viewing the status of a managed chassis).

- Click **Inventory Details** to view details about the chassis components, including:
– Firmware levels for all components in the chassis.
– Details of the CMM, such as the hostname, IPv4 address, IPv6 address, and MAC addresses.
– Asset details of the chassis and CMM installed in the chassis, including name, universally unique identifier (UUID), and location.

• Click Alerts to display the list of current alerts for this chassis (see Working with alerts).
• Click Event Log to display the list of events for this chassis (see Monitoring events in the event log).
• Click Jobs to display a list of jobs associated with the chassis (see Monitoring jobs).
• Click Light Path to display the current status of the chassis LEDs, including Location, Fault, and Information. This is the equivalent of looking at the front panel of the chassis.
• Click Power and Thermal to display details about power and air flow.

Tip: Use the refresh button on your web browser to collect the latest power and thermal data. Collecting data might take several minutes.
• Click Feature on Demand Keys to access information that is needed to order a Feature on Demand key and other agentless information (see Viewing Features on Demand keys).

What to do next

In addition to displaying summary and detailed information about a chassis, you can perform the following actions:

• View a chassis in graphical rack or chassis view by clicking Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View or Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Chassis View.
• Launch the CMM web interface by clicking the IP address link (see Launching the CMM web interface for a chassis).
• Modify information (such as support contact, location and description) by clicking Edit Properties (see Modifying the system properties for a chassis).
• Modify the management IP settings for the entire chassis, including compute nodes and Flex switches, by clicking All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Management IP addresses (see Modifying the management-IP settings for a chassis).
• Export detailed information about the chassis to a CSV file clicking the Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory.

Notes:
– For more information about inventory data in the CSV file, see the GET /chassis/<UUID_list> in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
– When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.

• Unmanage a chassis (see Unmanaging a chassis).
• Enable or disable firewall rule changes on a chassis that limit incoming requests only from XClarity Administrator by selecting the chassis and clicking Actions ➔ Security ➔ Enable Encapsulation or Actions ➔ Security ➔ Disable Encapsulation.

The global encapsulation setting is disabled by default. When disabled, the device encapsulation mode is set to “normal” and the firewall rules are not changed as part of the management process.

The global encapsulation setting is disabled by default. When disabled, the device encapsulation mode is set to “normal” and the firewall rules are not changed as part of the management process.

When the global encapsulation setting is enabled and the device supports encapsulation, XClarity Administrator communicates with the device during the management process to change the device
encapsulation mode to “encapsulationLite” and to change the firewall rules on the device to limit incoming requests to those only from XClarity Administrator.

**Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

- Resolve issues that might arise between the XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the CMM in the chassis by selecting a chassis and clicking **Actions ➔ Security ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificates** (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

### Backing up and restoring CMM-configuration data

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not include built-in backup functions for CMM-configuration data. Instead, use the backup functions that are available for your managed CMM.

Use the management web interface or the command-line interface (CLI) to back up and restore the CMM.

- **Back up CMM configuration data**
  - From the management web interface, click **Mgt Module Management ➔ Configuration ➔ Backup Configuration**. For more information, see Saving a CMM configuration through the web interface in the Flex Systems online documentation.
  - From the CLI, use the **write** command. For more information, see CMM write command in the Flex Systems online documentation

- **Restore CMM configuration data**
  - From the management web interface, click **Mgt Module Management ➔ Configuration ➔ Restore Configuration from File**. For more information, see Restoring a CMM configuration through the web interface in the Flex Systems online documentation.
  - From the CLI, use the **read** command. For more information, see CMM read command in the Flex Systems online documentation.

**Note:** **Tip:** You can find additional information about backing up and restoring chassis components in the PureFlex and Flex System Backup and Restore Best Practices Guide.

### Launching the CMM web interface for a chassis

You can launch the CMM web interface for a specific chassis from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to launch a CMM web interface.

**Note:** Launching this CMM web interface from XClarity Administrator using the Safari web browser is not supported.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Chassis** to display the Chassis page.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the chassis that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a chassis name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the chassis that are displayed.
Chassis

Step 2. Click the link for the chassis in the Chassis column. The status summary page for that chassis is displayed.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Launch ➔ Management Web Interface. The CMM web interface is started.

Tip: You can also click the IP address to launch the CMM.

Step 4. Log on to the CMM web interface using your XClarity Administrator user credentials.

Modifying the system properties for a chassis

You can modify the system properties for a specific chassis.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify the system properties.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Chassis to display the Chassis page.

Step 2. Select the chassis to be updated.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties to display the Edit dialog.

Step 4. Change the following information, as needed.

- Server name
- Support contact
- Description

Note: The location, room, rack, and lowest rack unit properties are updated by XClarity Administrator when you add or remove devices from a rack in the web interface (see Managing racks).

Step 5. Click Save.

Note: When you change these properties, there might be a short delay before the changes appear in the XClarity Administrator web interface.

Modifying the management-IP settings for a chassis

You can modify the management-IP settings for the entire chassis, including compute nodes, storage devices, and Flex switches.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify the management-IP settings.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Chassis to display the Chassis page.
Step 2. Select the chassis.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Management IP Addresses to display the Chassis and Components IP Settings page.

Step 4. Change the following global settings, as needed.

- Choose to enable or disable IPv4 addresses.
  If you enable IPv4 addresses, specify the following settings. IPv4 global settings are applied to a component when its IPv4 address is updated.
  - (Optional) Choose to obtain IP addresses using statically assigned IP addresses.
  - Specify the subnet mask and gateway address.
- Specify the following settings for IPv6 addresses. IPv6 global settings are applied to a component when its IPv6 address is updated.
  - (Optional) Choose to obtain IP addresses using statically assigned IP addresses.
  - Specify the prefix length and gateway address.
- Choose to enable or disable DNS servers.
  If you enable DNS servers:
  - Choose the DNS server search preference.
  - Enter the IP addresses to use for the DNS search order.
  - Enter the domain name.

Step 5. Change the following CMM IP settings.

- Enter the hostname and IP address for the CMM.
- Click Auto-Generate IP addresses to create IP addresses for the compute nodes, storage devices, and Flex switches using the CMM IP address as the starting point.

Step 6. Enter the hostname and IP addresses for each compute node in the chassis.

Step 7. Enter the hostname and IP addresses for each storage device in the chassis.

Step 8. Enter the IP addresses for each Flex switch in the chassis.

Step 9. Click Save. A dialog box displays with a summary of the network settings.

Step 10. Click Apply.

All existing components in the chassis are updated to the specified global settings. When the update is complete, the dialog displays the settings that were changed.

**Note:** When you change this information, there might be a short delay before the information appears in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator interface.

Step 11. Click Close.

---

**Configuring CMM failover**

When you install a second CMM in a chassis, the second CMM is automatically configured as a standby CMM by default. If the primary CMM fails, the IP address for the standby CMM changes to the same IP address that was used for the primary CMM, and standby CMM takes over the management of the chassis. However, you can perform more advanced failover configuration from the management controller web interface for the chassis.

**About this task**

For example, you can choose to:
• Disable the network interface for the standby CMM to prevent failover.
• Enable the network interface for the standby CMM, and allow IP addresses to swap between the two CMMs during failover.
• Enable the network interface for the standby CMM, and prevent the IP addresses from swapping between the two CMMs during failover.

For more information about CMM advanced failover capabilities, see the advfailover command in the CMM online documentation.

Procedure
To enable swappable IP address for the primary and standby CMMs, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the management controller web interface for the chassis, click Mgt Module Management ➙ Network ➙ Ethernet to display the Ethernet Configuration page.

Step 2. Select either IPv4 and IPv6 for your system.

Step 3. Under Configure IP address, select the option to use a static IP address. Repeat for the other protocol.

Step 4. Click Mgt Module Management ➙ Properties ➙ Advanced Failover, and enable the advance failover option.

Step 5. Select Swap Management Module IP address.

Step 6. Perform test scenarios to verify that the failover works correctly and that Lenovo XClarity Administrator can connect to primary and backup CMMs.

Restarting a CMM
You can restart a Chassis Management Module (CMM) from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Procedure
Complete the following procedure to restart a chassis.

Note: When the CMM is restarted, all existing network connections to the CMM are lost temporarily.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click Hardware ➙ Chassis. The Chassis page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed chassis.

Step 2. Click the chassis name in the Chassis column to display the graphical chassis view.

Step 3. Click the CMM graphic to display the in the CMM Summary page.

   Tip: You can also click Table View, and then click the CMM name in the Name column to display the CMM Summary page.
Step 4. Click Actions ➞ Power Actions ➞ Restart.
Step 5. Click Restart Immediately.

This operation might take a few minutes to complete, and you might need to refresh the page to see the results.

Virtually reseating a CMM

You can simulate removing and reinserting a Chassis Management Module (CMM) in a chassis,

About this task

During the virtual reseat, all existing network connections to the CMM are lost, and the power state of the CMM changes.

Attention: Before performing a virtual reseat, ensure that you have saved all user data on the CMM.

Procedure

Perform the following steps to virtually reseat a CMM.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu, click Hardware ➞ Chassis. The Chassis page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed chassis.

Step 2. Click the chassis name in the Chassis column to display the graphical chassis view.

Step 3. Click the CMM graphic to display the in the CMM Summary page.

Tip: You can also click Table View, and then click the CMM name in the Name column to display the CMM Summary page.
Step 4. Click Actions ➞ Service ➞ Virtual Reseat.

Step 5. Click Virtual Reseat.

Resolving expired or invalid stored credentials for a chassis

When a stored credential becomes expired or inoperable on a device, the status for that device is shown as “Offline.”

Procedure

To resolve an expired or invalid stored credential for a chassis.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➞ Chassis. The Chassis page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed chassis.

Step 2. Click the Power column header to group all offline chassis at the top of the table.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the chassis that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a chassis name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the chassis that are displayed.
Step 3. Select the chassis to be resolved.

Step 4. Click All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Edit Stored Credentials.

Step 5. Change the password for the stored credential or select another stored credential to use for the managed device.

Note: If you managed more than one device using the same stored credentials and you change the password for the stored credentials, that password change affects all devices that are currently using the stored credentials.

Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure

If a chassis is being managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, and XClarity Administrator fails, you can restore the management functions and the local user accounts for a CMM until the management node is restored or replaced.

Procedure

Complete one of the following procedures to restore management on a CMM.

- If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password and the Force management option (see Managing chassis).

- Reset the CMM to factory defaults by pressing the pinhole button on the CMM using a paperclip for at least 10 seconds. For more information about resetting the CMM, including important notices, see CMM Reset in the Flex Systems online documentation.

- Reset the CMM configuration using the following steps:

  1. Through an SSH session, open a management command-line interface for the chassis, and log in with the RECOVERY_ID account.

     Note: The password for the RECOVERY_ID account was set when you selected the chassis for management on the Management Domain page. For more information about central account management, see Managing chassis.

     If this is the first time that you have used the RECOVERY_ID account to log in to the CMM, you must change the password.

  2. If you are prompted, type the new password for the RECOVERY_ID account.

  3. Restore the CMM configuration by performing one of the following steps:

     - If you are running CMM firmware release June 2015 or later, run the following command:

       `read -f unmanage -T mm[p]`

       For more information, see the read command in the CMM online documentation.
If you are running CMM firmware release earlier than June 2015, run the following commands in the order shown:

a. `env -T mm[p]`

b. `ssicfg -client disabled -tc1 remove`

c. `accescfg -am local`

d. `ldapcfg -i1 -p1 -rd "" -usa "" -gsa "" -lpa ""`

e. `ntp -en disabled -i 0.0.0.0 -v3en disabled`

f. `cimsub -clear all`

g. `fsmcm -off`

The `fsmcm` command disables XClarity Administrator user-account management and allows you to use local CMM user accounts to authenticate to the CMM and any management processor that is installed in the chassis.

After you run the `fsmcm -off` command, the `RECOVERY_ID` account is removed from the CMM user registry. When you run the `fsmcm -off` command, the CMM CLI session terminates. You can now authenticate to the CMM and other chassis components by using local CMM credentials, and use local CMM credentials to access the CMM web interface or CLI for the chassis until user management by XClarity Administrator is restored.

For more information, see the `fsmcm command in the CMM online documentation`.

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the chassis again (see Managing chassis). All information about the chassis (such as network settings) is retained.

## Unmanaging a chassis

You can remove a chassis from management by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. This process is called unmanaging. After the chassis is unmanaged, you can log in to the CMM for the chassis by using the local CMM user accounts.

### Before you begin

You can enable XClarity Administrator to automatically unmanage devices (including Flex System chassis, Flex System and rack switches, Flex System servers, System x servers, ThinkAgile, and ThinkSystem servers) that are offline for a specific amount of time. This is disabled by default. To enable the automatic unmanagement of offline devices, click **Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices** from the XClarity Administrator menu, and then click **Edit** next to **Unmanage offline devices is Disabled**. Then, select **Enable unmanage offline devices** and set the time interval. By default, devices are unmanaged after being offline for 24 hours.

Before you unmanage a chassis, ensure that there are no active jobs running against any devices that are installed in the chassis.

When Call Home is enabled in XClarity Administrator, Call Home is disabled on all managed chassis and servers to avoid duplicate problem records from being created. If you intend to discontinue using XClarity Administrator to manage your devices, you can re-enable Call Home on all managed devices from the XClarity Administrator in lieu of re-enabling Call Home for each individual device at a later time (see **Re-enabling call home on all managed devices** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

### About this task

When you unmanage a chassis, XClarity Administrator performs the following actions:

- Clears the configuration used for centralized user management.
• Removes the CMM security certificate from the XClarity Administrator trust store.
• If Encapsulation is enabled on the device, configures the devices firewall rules to the settings before the device was managed.
• Removes access to the NTP server from the CMM.
• Removes the CIM subscriptions to the CMM from the XClarity Administrator configuration so that XClarity Administrator no longer receives events from that chassis.

When you unmanaged a chassis, XClarity Administrator retains certain information about the chassis. That information is reapplied when you manage the same chassis again.

When you unmanage a chassis, events that were sent from the chassis components are discarded. You can retain these events by forwarding the events to an external repository, such as a syslog (see Forwarding events).

Tip: All demo devices that are optionally added during initial setup are nodes in a chassis. To unmanage the demo devices, unmanage the chassis using the Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable option.

Procedure
To unmanage a chassis, complete the following steps.
Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware → Chassis to display the Chassis page.
Step 2. Select one or more chassis from the lists of managed chassis.
Step 3. Click Unmanage Chassis. The Unmanage dialog is displayed.
Step 4. Optional: Select Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable.
   Important: When unmanaging demo hardware, ensure that you select this option.
Step 5. Click Unmanage. The Unmanage dialog shows the progress of each step in the unmanagement process.
Step 6. When the unmanagement process is complete, click OK.

What to do next
After the unmanage process is completed, you can log in to the CMM using the local CMM user accounts. If you do not remember the user names or passwords for any local CMM user accounts, reset the CMM to factory defaults to log in to the CMM. For information about resetting the CMM to factory defaults, see CMM Reset in the Flex Systems online documentation in the CMM product documentation.

Recovering a chassis that was not unmanaged correctly
If a chassis was not unmanaged correctly, you must recover the chassis before you can remanage it.

Procedure
Complete one of the following procedures to restore management on a CMM.
• If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password and the Force management option (see Managing chassis).
• Reset the CMM to factory defaults by pressing the pinhole button on the CMM using a paperclip for at least 10 seconds. For more information about resetting the CMM, including important notices, see CMM Reset in the Flex Systems online documentation.
• Reset the CMM configuration using the following steps:
1. Through an SSH session, open a management command-line interface for the chassis, and log in with the `RECOVERY_ID` account.

   **Note:** The password for the `RECOVERY_ID` account was set when you selected the chassis for management on the Management Domain page. For more information about central account management, see Managing chassis.

   If this is the first time that you have used the `RECOVERY_ID` account to log in to the CMM, you must change the password.

2. If you are prompted, type the new password for the `RECOVERY_ID` account.

3. Restore the CMM configuration by performing one of the following steps:
   - If you are running CMM firmware release June 2015 or later, run the following command:
     
     ```bash
     read -f unmanage -T mm[p]
     ```
     For more information, see the [read command in the CMM online documentation](#).
   - If you are running CMM firmware release earlier than June 2015, run the following commands in the order shown:
     a. `env -T mm[p]`
     b. `sslcfg -client disabled -tc1 remove`
     c. `accseccfg -am local`
     d. `ldapcfg -i1 -p1 -rd "" -usa "" -gsa "" -lpa ""`
     e. `ntp -en disabled -i 0.0.0.0 -v3en disabled`
     f. `cimsbuf -clear all`
     g. `fsmcm -off`

     The `fsmcm` command disables XClarity Administrator user-account management and allows you to use local CMM user accounts to authenticate to the CMM and any management processor that is installed in the chassis.

     After you run the `fsmcm -off` command, the `RECOVERY_ID` account is removed from the CMM user registry. When you run the `fsmcm -off` command, the CMM CLI session terminates. You can now authenticate to the CMM and other chassis components by using local CMM credentials, and use local CMM credentials to access the CMM web interface or CLI for the chassis until user management by XClarity Administrator is restored.

     For more information, see the [fsmcm command in the CMM online documentation](#).

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the chassis again (see Managing chassis). All information about the chassis (such as network settings) is retained.
Chapter 8. Managing servers

Lenovo XClarity Administrator can manage several types of systems, including ThinkAgile, ThinkSystem, Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, System x®, and ThinkServer® servers.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Discovery

Before you begin

Note: Flex compute nodes are discovered and managed automatically when you manage the chassis that contains them. You cannot discover and managed Flex compute nodes independent of the chassis.

You can discover and manage Flex Power Systems compute nodes; however, you can use XClarity Administrator only to view properties and status for those servers. You must use other management alternative (such as Flex System Manager or Flex Power Systems Hardware Management Console) to take any management-related actions on the devices, such as updating firmware or configuring the device. You cannot use the Flex System Manager management node and the XClarity Administrator to manage compute nodes in the same chassis.

Note: If you have a managed chassis that contains both Flex System and Flex Power System compute nodes, and you cannot log in to the Flex Power System compute nodes directly, see Cannot log in to managed Flex Power System compute nodes in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Before managing servers, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- Review the management considerations before managing a device. For information, see Management considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- Certain ports must be available to communicate with devices. Ensure that all required ports are available before you attempt to manage servers. For information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- Ensure that the minimum required firmware is installed on each server that you want to manage using XClarity Administrator. For information about firmware requirements, see Supported firmware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- Ensure that CIM over HTTPS is enabled on the device.
  1. Log in to the management web interface for the server using the RECOVERY_ID user account.
  2. Click IMM Management → Security.
  3. Click the CIM Over HTTPS tab, and ensure that Enable CIM Over HTTPS is selected.
- For ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers, ensure that IPMI over LAN is enabled. IPMI over LAN is disabled by default on these servers and must be manually enabled before the servers can be managed. To enable IPMI over LAN using TSM, click Settings → IPMI Configuration. You might need to restart the server to activate the change.
- If the device’s server certificate is signed by an external certificate authority, ensure that the certificate authority certificate and any intermediate certificates are imported into the XClarity Administrator trust store (see Deploying customized server certificates to managed devices).
- To discover a server that is on a different subnet from XClarity Administrator, ensure that one of the following conditions are met:
  - Ensure that you enable multicast SLP forwarding on the top-of-rack switches, as well as the routers in your environment. See the documentation that was provided with your specific switch or router to determine whether multicast SLP forwarding is enabled and to find procedures to enable it if it is disabled.
If SLP is disabled on the endpoint or on the network, you can use DNS discovery method instead by manually adding a service record (SRV record) to your domain name server (DNS), for XClarity Administrator for example _lxca_tcp.labs.lenovo.com service = 0 0 443 fvt-xhmc3.labs.lenovo.com.

Then, enable DNS discovery on the baseboard management console from the management web interface, by clicking IMM Management ➔ Network Protocol ➔ DNS tab, and selecting Use DNS to discover Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Notes:

- The management controller must be running a firmware level dated May 2017 or later to support automatic discovery using DNS.
- If there are multiple XClarity Administrator instances in your environment, the server is discovered only by the instance that is the first to respond to the discovery request. The server is not discovered by all instances.

To discover and manage ThinkServer servers, ensure that the following requirements are met. For more information, see Cannot discover a device and Cannot manage a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- The hostname of the server must be configured using a valid hostname or IP address if you want XClarity Administrator to discover the servers automatically.
- The network configuration must allow SLP traffic between XClarity Administrator and the server.
- Unicast SLP is required.
- If you want XClarity Administrator to automatically discover ThinkServer servers, multicast SLP is required. In addition, SLP must be enabled on the ThinkServer System Manager (TSM).
- If ThinkServer servers are on a different network than XClarity Administrator, ensure that the network is configured to allow inbound UDP through port 162 so that XClarity Administrator can receive events for those devices.

For ThinkAgile, ThinkSystem, Converged, Flex System. NeXtScale, and System x servers, if you remove, replace, or configure any adapters in the server, restart the server at least once to update the new adapter information in the baseboard management controller and XClarity Administrator reports (Powering on and off a server).

- When performing management actions on a server, ensure that the server is either powered off or powered on to the BIOS/UEFI Setup or to a running operating system. (You can boot to BIOS/UEFI Setup from the Servers page in XClarity Administrator by clicking All Actions ➔ Power Actions ➔ Restart to BIOS/UEFI Setup.) If server is powered on without an operating system, the management controller continuously resets the server in an attempt to find an operating system.
- Ensure that all UEFI_Ethernet_* and UEFI_Slot_* settings are enabled in the server UEFI Settings. To verify the settings, restart the server and when the prompt <f1> Setup is displayed, press F1 to start the Setup utility. Navigate to System Settings ➔ Devices and I/O Ports ➔ Enable / Disable Adapter Option ROM Support, and then locate the Enable / Disable UEFI Option ROM(s) section to verify that the settings are enabled.

Note: If supported, you can also use the Remote Console feature in the baseboard management interface to review and modify the settings remotely.

System x3950 X6 servers must be managed as two 4U enclosures, each with its own baseboard management controller.

About this task

XClarity Administrator can automatically discover rack and tower servers in your environment by probing for manageable devices that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator. To discover rack and tower
servers that are in other subnets, specify an IP address or range of IP addresses, or import information from a spreadsheet.

**Important:** For System x3850 and x3950 X6 servers, you must manage each server in the scalable rack environment.

After the servers are managed by XClarity Administrator, Lenovo XClarity Administrator polls each managed server periodically to collect information, such as inventory, vital product data, and status. You can view and monitor each managed server and perform management actions (such as configuring system settings, deploying operating-system images, and powering on and off).

By default, devices are managed using XClarity Administrator managed authentication to log in to the devices. When managing rack servers and Lenovo chassis, you can choose to use local authentication or managed authentication to log in to the devices.

- **When local authentication** is used for rack servers, Lenovo chassis, and Lenovo rack switches, XClarity Administrator uses a stored credential to authenticate to the device. The stored credential can be an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server.
  
  You must create a stored credential in XClarity Administrator that matches an active user account on the device or a user account in an Active Directory server before managing the device using local authentication (see Managing stored credentials in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

  **Note:** RackSwitch devices support only stored credentials for authentication. XClarity Administrator user credentials are not supported.

- **Using managed authentication** allows you to manage and monitor multiple devices using credentials in the XClarity Administrator authentication server instead of local credentials. When managed authentication is used for a device (other than ThinkServer servers, System x M4 servers, and switches), XClarity Administrator configures the device and its installed components to use the XClarity Administrator authentication server for centralized management.
  
  - When managed authentication is enabled, you can manage devices using either manually-entered or stored credentials (see Managing user accounts and in the XClarity Administrator online documentation). The stored credential is used only until XClarity Administrator configures the LDAP settings on the device. After that, any change to the stored credential has no impact the management or monitoring of that device.

  **Note:** When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.

  - If a local or external LDAP server is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, user accounts that are defined in the authentication server are used to log in to XClarity Administrator, CMMs and baseboard management controllers in the XClarity Administrator domain. Local CMM and management controller user accounts are disabled.

  - If an SAML 2.0 identity provider is used as the XClarity Administrator authentication server, SAML accounts are not accessible to managed devices. However, when using an SAML identity provider and an LDAP server together, if the identity provider uses accounts that exist in the LDAP server, LDAP user accounts can be used to log into the managed devices while the more advanced authentication methods that are provided by SAML 2.0 (such as multifactor authentication and single sign-on) can be used to log into XClarity Administrator.

  - When managed authentication is enabled for ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers:

    - Baseboard management-controller firmware supports up to five LDAP user roles. XClarity Administrator adds these LDAP user roles to the servers during management: **lxc-supervisor, lxc-sysmgr, lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, and lxc-os-admin.**
Users must be assigned to at least one of the specified LDAP user roles to communicate with ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers.

- Management-controller firmware does not support LDAP users with the same username as local user of the server.

- For ThinkServer and System x M4 servers, the XClarity Administrator authentication server is not used. Instead, an IPMI account is created on the device with the prefix “LXCA_” followed by a random string. (The existing local IPMI user accounts are not disabled.) When you unmanage a ThinkServer server, the “LXCA_” user account is disabled, and the prefix “LXCA_” is replaced with the prefix “DISABLED_”. To determine whether a ThinkServer server is managed by another instance, XClarity Administrator checks for IPMI accounts with the prefix “LXCA_”. If you choose to force management of a managed ThinkServer server, all the IPMI accounts on the device with the “LXCA_” prefix are disabled and renamed. Consider manually clearing IPMI accounts that are no longer used.

In XClarity Administrator v2.4 and later, if you use manually-entered credentials, XClarity Administrator automatically creates a stored credential and uses that stored credential to manage the device.

**Notes:** When managed authentication is enabled for a device, you cannot edit stored credentials for that device using XClarity Administrator.

- Each time you manage a device using manually-entered credentials, a new stored credential is created for that device, even if another stored credential was created for that device during a previous management process.

- When you unmanage a device, XClarity Administrator does not delete stored credentials there were automatically created for that device during the management process.

A device can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device on the initial XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator. If an error occurs during the unmanagement process, you can select the **Force management** option during management on the new XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** When scanning the network for manageable devices, XClarity Administrator does not know whether a device is already managed by another manager until after it attempts to manage the device.

**Note:** When scanning the network for manageable devices, XClarity Administrator does not know whether a ThinkServer device is already managed; therefore, managed ThinkServer devices might appear in the list of manageable devices.

During the management process, XClarity Administrator performs the following actions:

- Logs in to the server using the provided credentials.
- Collects inventory for each server.

**Note:** Some inventory data is collected after the management process completes. You cannot perform certain tasks on a managed server (such as deploying a server pattern) until all inventory data is collected for that server and the server is no longer in the Pending state.

- Configures settings for the NTP server so all managed devices use the same NTP server configuration that is configured on XClarity Administrator.

- (System x and NeXtScale servers only) Assigns the last-edited firmware-compliance policy to the server.

- (Lenovo System x and NeXtScale servers only) Optionally configures the devices firewall rules so that incoming requests from only XClarity Administrator are accepted.

- (System x and NeXtScale servers only) Exchanges security certificates with the management controller, copying the CIM server certificate and the LDAP client certificate from the management controller into the
XClarity Administrator trust store and sending the XClarity Administrator CA security certificate and LDAP trust certificates to the management controller. The management controller loads the certificates into the management-controller trust store so that the management controller can trust connections to the LDAP and CIM servers on the XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** If the CIM server certificate or LDAP client certificate does not exist, it is created during the management process.

- Configures managed authentication, if applicable. For more information about managed authentication, see Managing the authentication server.
- Creates the recovery user account (RECOVERY_ID), when applicable. For more information about the RECOVERY_ID account, see Managing the authentication server.

**Note:** The XClarity Administrator does not modify the security settings or cryptographic settings (cryptographic mode and the mode used for secure communications) during the management process. You can modify the cryptographic settings after the server is managed (see Configuring cryptography settings).

**Important:** If you change the IP address of a server after the server is managed by XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator recognizes the new IP address and continue to manage the server. however, XClarity Administrator does not recognize the IP address change for some servers. If XClarity Administrator shows that the server is offline after the IP address was changed, manage the server again using the **Force Management** option.

**Procedure**

To manage your rack and tower servers using XClarity Administrator, complete one of the following procedures.

- Discover and manage a large number of tower and rack servers and other devices using a bulk-import file (see [Managing systems](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- Discover and manage rack and tower servers that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage New Devices page is displayed.
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the servers that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed. You can change the columns that are displayed and the default sort order by clicking the **Customize Columns** icon.

Use the browser refresh button to discover all manageable devices in the XClarity Administrator domain. Discovery might take several minutes.

2. Click the **Refresh** icon to discover new devices.

3. Click the **Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices** checkbox to change the firewall rules on all devices during the management process so that incoming requests are accepted from only XClarity Administrator.

Encapsulation can be enabled or disabled on specific devices after they are managed.

**Note:** When the management network interface is configured to use the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and when encapsulation enabled, managing a rack server can take a long time.

**Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

4. Select one or more servers that you want to manage.

5. Click **Manage Selected**. The Manage dialog is displayed.

6. Choose to use XClarity Administrator managed authentication or local authentication for this device. Managed authentication is selected by default. To use local authentication, clear **Managed Authentication**.

7. Choose the type of credentials to use to authenticate to the device and specify the appropriate credentials:

   - **Use manually entered credentials**
     - Specify the user ID and password for the authenticating to the server.
     - *(Optional)* Set a new password for the specified user name if the password is currently expired on the device.

   - **Use stored credentials**
     Select the stored credential to use for this managed device. You can create a new stored credential by clicking **Create New**.

     **Note:** If you choose to use local authentication, you must select a stored credential to manage the device.

It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

For more information about normal and stored credentials, see Managing user accounts and Managing stored credentials.

8. Specify the recovery password if managed authentication is selected.

   When a password is specified, the recovery account (RECOVERY_ID) is created on the server, and all local user accounts are disabled. If there is a problem with XClarity Administrator, and it stops working for some reason, you cannot log in to the management controller using normal user accounts. However, you can log in using the recovery account.
Notes:
- The recovery password is optional if you choose to use managed authentication and is not allowed if you choose to use local authentication.
- You can choose to use a local recovery account or stored recovery credentials. In either case, the user name is always RECOVERY_ID.
- Ensure that the password follows the security and password policies for the device. Security and password policies might vary.
- Ensure that you record the recovery password for future use.
- The recovery account is not supported for ThinkServer and System x M4 servers.
For more information about the recovery ID, see Managing the authentication server.
9. Click Change to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

Notes:
- You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
- If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.
10. Click Manage.
A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the progress.
11. When the process is complete, click OK.
The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.
If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the Force management option.
- If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

Note: If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the Force management option.
- If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.
- If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

Attention: Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

- Discover and manage rack and tower servers that are not on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator by manually specifying IP addresses.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.
2. Click the Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices checkbox to change the firewall rules on all devices during the management process so that incoming requests are accepted from only XClarity Administrator.
Encapsulation can be enabled or disabled on specific devices after they are managed.

Note: When the management network interface is configured to use the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and when encapsulation enabled, managing a rack server can take a long time.
Attention: If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a
device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish
communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and
Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.


4. Specify the network addresses of the servers that you want to manage:
   - Click Single System, and enter a single IP address domain name, or fully-qualified domain name
     (FQDN).
     
     Note: To specify an FQDN, ensure that a valid domain name is specified on Network Access page
     (see Configuring network access).
   - Click Multiple Systems, and enter a range of IP addresses. To add another range, click the Add
     icon ( ). To remove a range, click the Remove icon ( ).

5. Click OK. The Manage dialog is displayed

6. Choose to use XClarity Administrator managed authentication or local authentication for this device.
   Managed authentication is selected by default. To use local authentication, clear Managed
   Authentication.

7. Choose the type of credentials to use to authenticate to the device and specify the appropriate
   credentials:
   - Use manually entered credentials
     - Specify the user ID and password for the authenticating to the server.
     - (Optional) Set a new password for the specified user name if the password is currently expired
       on the device.
   - Use stored credentials
     Select the stored credential to use for this managed device. You can create a new stored
     credential by clicking Create New.

     Note: If you choose to use local authentication, you must select a stored credential to manage the
     device.

   It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account
   with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other
   future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed
   without managed authentication).

   For more information about normal and stored credentials, see Managing user accounts and
   Managing stored credentials.

8. Specify the recovery password if managed authentication is selected.

   When a password is specified, the recovery account (RECOVERY_ID) is created on the server, and all
   local user accounts are disabled. If there is a problem with XClarity Administrator, and it stops
   working for some reason, you cannot log in to the management controller using normal user
   accounts. However, you can log in using the recovery account.

   Notes:
   - The recovery password is optional if you choose to use managed authentication and is not allowed
     if you if you choose to use local authentication.
   - You can choose to use a local recovery account or stored recovery credentials. In either case, the
     user name is always RECOVERY_ID.
– Ensure that the password follows the security and password policies for the device. Security and password policies might vary.
– Ensure that you record the recovery password for future use.
– The recovery account is not supported for ThinkServer and System x M4 servers.
For more information about the recovery ID, see Managing the authentication server.

9. Click **Change** to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

**Notes:**
– You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
– If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

10. Click **Manage**.

A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the progress.

11. When the process is complete, click **OK**.

The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.

If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the **Force management** option.
– If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

**Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the **Force management** option.
– If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.
– If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

**What to do next**

• Discover and manage additional devices.
• Configure the system information, local storage, I/O adapters, boot topics, and firmware settings by creating and deploying server patterns (see Configuring servers using configuration patterns).
• Deploy operating-system images to servers that do not already have an operating system installed (see Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers).
• Update firmware on devices that are not in compliance with current policies (see Updating firmware on managed devices).
• Add the devices to the appropriate rack to reflect the physical environment (see Managing racks).
• Monitor hardware status and details (see Viewing the status of a managed server).
• Monitor events and alerts (see Working with events and Working with alerts).
• Resolve stored credentials that have become expired or invalid (see Managing stored credentials).
Viewing the status of a managed server

You can view a summary and detailed status for the managed servers and their installed components from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Learn more:

• XClarity Administrator: Inventory
• XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

About this task

The following status icons are used to indicate the overall health of the device. If the certificates do not match, “(Untrusted)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Untrusted). If there is a connectivity issue or a connection to the device is not trusted, “(Connectivity)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Connectivity).

• (X) Critical
• (!) Warning
• (,) Pending
• (,) Informational
• (,) Normal
• (,) Offline
• (,) Unknown

A device can be in one of the following power states:

• On
• Off
• Shutting down
• Standby
• Hibernate
• Unknown

Procedure

To view the status for a managed server, complete one or more of the following actions.

• From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Dashboard. The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of all managed devices and other resources.
From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack and tower servers, and compute nodes).

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the **All Systems** drop-down list, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field, and click the status icons to list only those servers that meet the selected criteria.

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- View detailed information about the server and its components (see Viewing the details of a managed server).
- View a server in graphical rack or chassis view clicking **All Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View** or **All Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Chassis View**.
– Launch the management controller web interface for the server by clicking the IP address link (see Launching the management controller interface for a server).
– Remotely manage the server (see Using remote control to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers).
– Power the server on and off (see Powering on and off a server).
– Modify system information by selecting a server and clicking All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties.
– Refresh inventory by selecting a server and clicking All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Refresh Inventory.
– Export detailed information about one or more servers to a single CSV file by selecting the servers and clicking All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory.

**Note:** You can export inventory data for a maximum of 60 devices at one time.

**Tip:** When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.
– Unmanage a server (see Unmanaging a rack or tower server).
– Reset the local storage adapters to their default manufacturing settings by clicking All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Reset Local Storage to Defaults.
– Change the Location LED state on a server to on, off, or blinking by selecting the server and clicking All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Toggle Location LED State, selecting the state, and clicking Apply.

**Note:** The Location LED on ThinkServer servers can be on or off. Blinking is not supported.
– Virtually reseat the server (see Virtually reseating a server in a Flex System chassis).
– Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking the Exclude events icon (️) (see Excluding events).
– Restart the server using a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) by clicking All Action ➔ Service ➔ Trigger NMI.
– Enable or disable firewall rule changes on a server that limit incoming requests only from XClarity Administrator by selecting the server and clicking All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Enable Encapsulation or All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Disable Encapsulation. The global encapsulation setting is disabled by default. When disabled, the device encapsulation mode is set to “normal” and the firewall rules are not changed as part of the management process. When the global encapsulation setting is enabled and the device supports encapsulation, XClarity Administrator communicates with the device during the management process to change the device encapsulation mode to “encapsulationLite” and to change the firewall rules on the device to limit incoming requests to those only from XClarity Administrator.

**Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see lenovoMgrAlert.mib file and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.
– (Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, System x, and ThinkSystem servers only) Resolve issues that might arise between the XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the baseboard management controller in the server by selecting a server and clicking All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificates (see Resolving untrusted server certificate).
– Resolve expired or invalid stored credentials for a device in the group (see Resolving expired or invalid stored credentials for a server).
– Add or remove a server from a static resource group by clicking All Actions ➔ Groups ➔ Add to Group or All Actions ➔ Groups ➔ Remove from Group.
**Viewing the details of a managed server**

You can view detailed information about the managed servers from Lenovo XClarity Administrator, including the firmware levels, server name, and universally unique identifier (UUID).

**Learn more:**
- XClarity Administrator: Inventory
- XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

**About this task**

CPU usage is a measurement of the aggregated C-state residency. It is measured as a percentage of the used and maximum C0 residency, per second.

Memory usage is a measurement of the aggregated read/write volumes of all memory channels. This is calculated as a percentage of the used and maximum memory bandwidth that is available, per second.

The system-level air temperature is measured by a physical sensor at the front of the server. This temperature represents inlet air temperature for the server. Note that the air temperature that is reported by XClarity Administrator and the CMM might differ if the temperature is captured at different points in time.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to view the details for a managed server.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the **All Systems** drop-down list and enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

**Servers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Num/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/B:</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ite-cc-1295u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ite-cc-1352u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ite-ib-1749</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x240 Compute N...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ite-cc-872u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Click the link for the server in the **Server** column. The status summary page for that server is displayed, showing the server properties and a list of components that are installed in that server.
Note: For System x and NeXtScale servers, the LAN over USB address is listed on this page; however, you cannot change that address from the XClarity Administrator. Instead, you must use the baseboard-management-controller interface for the server. For more information, see “Accessing the IMM2 using the LAN over USB interface” in the product documentation for the server. You can find the product documentation for your server in the BladeCenter online documentation.

Step 3. Complete one or more of the following actions:

- Click Summary to view a summary of the server, including system information and installed components (see Viewing the status of a managed server).
• Click **Inventory Details** to view details about the server components, including:
  – Firmware levels for the server and management controller.
  – Management-module network details, such as the hostname, IPv4 address, IPv6 address, and MAC addresses.
  – Asset details, including server name, universally unique identifier (UUID), and location.
  – Components details, including CPUs, memory, drives, and expansion cards.

**Notes:**

– All IP addresses for the server are listed. The IP address for the management controller port is listed first. If the management controller IP address is available, it is used to connect to the server.
– If data is not available for a specific adapter, some fields for the adapter (such as product name) might be empty.
– If a new adapter was installed in the server, the server must be rebooted for the adapter to show up in the inventory.
– For some add-in cards, the Feature on Demand (FoD) information is displayed under the device name.
– You can hover over links in the Type column to get to get more information about specific components, such as Intel Optain DCPMM memory.

• Click **Alerts** to display the list of current alerts for this server (see Working with alerts).

  **Note:** You can set threshold preferences for raising an alert and event when a certain value, such as the life of an SSD in a ThinkSystem or ThinkServer server, exceeds a warning or critical level (see Setting threshold preferences for generating alerts and events).

• Click **Event Log** to display the list of events for this server (see Monitoring events in the event log).

• Click **Jobs** to display a list of jobs associated with the server (see Monitoring jobs).

• Click **Light Path** to display the current status of the server LEDs, including Location, Fault, and Information. This is the equivalent of looking at the front panel of the server.

• Click **Power and Thermal** to display details about power use and air temperature.

  **Tip:** Use the refresh button on your web browser to collect the latest power and thermal data. Collecting data might take several minutes.

• Click **Configuration** to view configuration information for the server, including local storage, I/O adapters, SAN boot settings, and firmware settings (see Configuring servers using configuration patterns).

• Click **Feature on Demand Keys** to view a list of Feature on Demand keys that are currently installed on the managed server (see Viewing Features on Demand keys).

**What to do next**

In addition to displaying summary and detailed information about a server, you can perform the following actions:

• View the rack or chassis that is associated with the server by clicking rack or chassis name from the Summary page.

• View a server in graphical rack or chassis view clicking **All Actions → Views → Show in Rack View** or **All Actions → Views → Show in Chassis View**.

• Launch the management controller web interface for the server by clicking the **IP address** link (see Launching the management controller interface for a server).
• Remotely access the server (see Using remote control to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers).

• Power the server on and off (see Powering on and off a server).

• Modify system information by selecting a server and clicking **Edit Properties**.

• Refresh inventory by selecting a server and clicking **Actions → Inventory → Refresh Inventory**.

• Export detailed information about the server to a CSV file clicking the **Actions → Inventory → Export Inventory**.

**Notes:**

– For more information about inventory data in the CSV file, see the **GET /nodes/<UUID_list>** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

– When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.

• Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking the **Actions → Service Reset → Exclude events** (see Excluding events).

• Restarting the server using a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) by clicking **Actions → Service → Trigger NMI**

• Change the Location LED state on a server to on, off, or blinking by selecting the server and clicking **Actions → Service → Toggle Location LED State**, selecting the state, and clicking **Apply**.

  **Note:** The Location LED on ThinkServer servers can be on or off. Blinking is not supported.

• Enable or disable firewall rule changes on a server that limit incoming requests only from XClarity Administrator by selecting the server and clicking **Actions → Security → Enable Encapsulation** or **Actions → Security → Disable Encapsulation**. The global encapsulation setting is disabled by default. When disabled, the device encapsulation mode is set to “normal” and the firewall rules are not changed as part of the management process.

  When the global encapsulation setting is enabled and the device supports encapsulation, XClarity Administrator communicates with the device during the management process to change the device encapsulation mode to “encapsulationLite” and to change the firewall rules on the device to limit incoming requests to those only from XClarity Administrator.

  **Attention:** If encapsulation is enabled and XClarity Administrator becomes unavailable before a device is unmanaged, necessary steps must be taken to disable encapsulation to establish communication with the device. For recovery procedures, see **lenovoMgrAlert.mib file** and Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

• (non-ThinkServer servers only) Resolve issues that might arise between the Lenovo XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the management controller in the server by selecting a server and clicking **Actions → Security → Resolve Untrusted Certificates** (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

**Backing up and restoring server-configuration data**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not include built-in backup functions for server-configuration data. Instead, use the backup functions that are available for your managed server.

• **Converged, Flex System, System x, ThinkSystem, and NeXtScale servers**
  
  – Back up server-configuration data
    
    Use the management web interface or CLI to back up the firmware.
    
    – From the IMM web interface, click **IMM Management → IMM Configuration**.
    
    – From the CLI, use the **backup** command.
For more information about backing up servers using the IMM, see the Integrated Management Module II online documentation.

Use tools that are provided by the operating system to back up applications that are running on the server. For more information, see the documentation that came with your operating system.

For Flex System compute devices, ensure that you back up the settings for options that are installed on the compute nodes. You can back up all compute node settings, including the option settings, using the Advanced Setup Utility (ASU). For information about ASU, see Advanced Settings Utility (ASU) website.

– Restore server-configuration data

Use the management web interface or the CLI to restore the firmware. For more information about restoring servers through the BMC, see Integrated Management Module II online documentation.

Use the documentation that is provided with the operating system and any applications that are running on the server to restore the software that is installed on the server.

– From the IMM web interface, click IMM Management ➔ IMM Configuration.
– From the CLI, use the restore command.

Note: Tip: You can find additional information about backing up and restoring chassis components in the PureFlex and Flex System Backup and Restore Best Practices Guide.

• ThinkServer servers The restore procedures vary for each type of ThinkServer servers. See the product documentation that is provided with your server for information about restoring the device.

Using remote control

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, you can open a remote-control session to a managed server as if you were at a local console. You can use the remote-control session to perform operations such as powering on or off the server, and logically mounting a local or remote drive.

Using remote control to manage ThinkSystem or ThinkAgile servers

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, you can open a remote-control session to a managed ThinkSystem or ThinkAgile server as if you were at a local console. You can use the remote-control session to perform power operations and logically mount a local or network drive.

About this task

You can launch a remote-control session to a single ThinkSystem or ThinkAgile server from XClarity Administrator.

To open a remote-control session to a server, the server must be in the Online or Normal state. If a server has any other access state, the remote-control session cannot connect to the server. For more information about viewing the server status, see Viewing the details of a managed server.

For more information about using the remote console and media features, see your ThinkSystem or ThinkAgile server documentation.

Encapsulation must be disabled on the server.

Note: For the ThinkSystem and ThinkAgile servers, a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) with Java WebStart support is not required.

Procedure

To open a remote-control session to a specific server, complete the following steps.
Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the **All Systems** drop-down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

Step 2. Select the server to which you want to open a remote-control session.

Step 3. Click the **Remote Control** icon (/gif).

Step 4. Accept any security warnings from your web browser.

**What to do next**

If the remote-control session does not open successfully, see **Remote control issues** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

**Using remote control to manage ThinkServer and NeXtScale sd350 M5 servers**

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, you can open a remote-control session to managed ThinkServer and NeXtScale sd350 M5 servers as if you were at a local console. You can use the remote-control session to perform power and reset operations, logically mount a local or network drive on the server, and capture screen shots and record video.

**Before you begin**

- Remote control for these servers requires a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) with Java WebStart support. The following JREs are supported.
  - Oracle JRE 7 (see [Oracle Java download website](http://download.oracle.com/))
  - Oracle JRE 8, which requires a paid license (see [Oracle Java download website](http://download.oracle.com/))
  - Adopt OpenJDK 8 with the IcedTea-Web v1.8 plugin (see the [Adopt OpenJDK website](http://www.adoptopenjdk.net), [IcedTea-Web website](http://icedteaweb.org), and [IcedTea-Web usage website](http://icedteaweb.org))

- Remote control requires that a Features on Demand key for ThinkServer System Manager Premium Upgrade is installed on ThinkServer servers. For more information about FoD keys that are installed on your servers, see **Viewing Features on Demand keys**.

**About this task**

You can launch a remote-control session to a single ThinkServer server from XClarity Administrator.

To open a remote-control session to a server, the server must be in the Online or Normal state. If a server has any other access state, the remote-control session cannot connect to the server. For more information about viewing the server status, see **Viewing the details of a managed server**.

For more information about using the ThinkServer remote console and media features, see your ThinkServer server documentation.

**Procedure**

To open a remote-control session to a specific server, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the All Systems drop-down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

Step 2. Select the server to which you want to open a remote-control session.

Step 3. Click the Remote Control icon.

Step 4. Accept any security warnings from your web browser.

What to do next

If the remote-control session does not open successfully, see Remote control issues in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Using remote control to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, you can open a remote-control session to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers as if you were at a local console.

Before you begin

XClarity Administrator: Remote control

- Remote control for these servers requires a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) with Java WebStart support. The following JREs are supported.
  - Oracle JRE 7 (see Oracle Java download website)
  - Oracle JRE 8, which requires a paid license (see Oracle Java download website)
  - Adopt OpenJDK 8 with the IcedTea-Web v1.8 plugin (see the Adopt OpenJDK website, IcedTea-Web website, and IcedTea-Web usage website)
- You can launch a remote-control session on servers running the following operating systems (either 32-bit or 64-bit):
  - Microsoft Windows 7
  - Microsoft Windows 8
  - Microsoft Windows 10
- Remote control requires that a Features on Demand key for remote presence is installed on Converged, NeXtScale, and System x servers. If the FoD key is not detected on a server, the remote-control session displays the Missing activation key message for that server when displaying the list of available servers. You can determine whether remote presence is enable, disabled, or not installed on a server from the Servers page (see Viewing the status of a managed server). For more information about FoD keys that are installed on your servers, see Viewing Features on Demand keys.
- The user account that is used to start the remote-control session must be a valid user account that has been defined in the XClarity Administrator authentication server. The user account must also have sufficient user authority to access and manage a server.
- Review the security, performance and keyboard considerations before opening a remote-control session. For more information about these considerations, see Remote control considerations.
- The Remote Control dialog uses the locale and display language settings that are defined for the operating system on your local system. If your local system runs on Windows, see the Java website for information about how to change the locale setting. To change the display language, install a localized copy of Windows or install a language pack from the Windows website.

About this task
You can start multiple remote-control sessions from Lenovo XClarity Administrator. Each session can manage multiple servers.

To open a remote-control session to a server, the server must be in the Online or Normal state. If a server has any other access state, the remote-control session cannot connect to the server. For more information about viewing the server status, see Viewing the details of a managed server.

You can open an untargeted remote-control session by clicking Provisioning ➔ Remote Control from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar. Then, accept any security warnings from your web browser.

**Note:** For Flex System x280, x480, and x880 compute nodes, you can start a remote-control session to only the primary node. If you attempt to start a remote-control session to a non-primary node in a multi-node system, the remote-control dialog starts, but no video is displayed.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to open a remote-control session to a specific Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x server.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Servers. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the All Systems drop-down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

**Step 2.** Select the server to which you want to open a remote-control session.

**Step 3.** Click the Remote Control icon ( ).

**Step 4.** Accept any security warnings from your web browser.

**Step 5.** Optionally, choose to save the Remote Control icon to your desktop. You can use this icon to launch a remote-control session without logging in to the XClarity Administrator web interface.

**Step 6.** When you are prompted, select one of the following connection modes:

- **Single-user mode.** Establishes an exclusive remote-control session with the server. All other remote-control sessions to that server are blocked until you disconnect from the server. This option is available only if there are no other remote-control sessions established to the server.

- **Multi-user mode.** Allows multiple remote-control sessions to be established with the same server. XClarity Administrator supports up to six concurrent remote-control sessions to a single server.

**Step 7.** When you are prompted, choose whether to save a shortcut to the remote-control session on your local system.

If you save the shortcut, you can then use this shortcut to open a remote-control session to the specified server without having to launch it from the XClarity Administrator web interface. However, your local system must have access to XClarity Administrator to validate the user account with the XClarity Administrator authentication server.

The shortcut contains a link that opens an empty remote-control session to which you can manually add servers.

**Results**

The Remote Control window is displayed.
The thumbnail area displays thumbnails of all server sessions that are currently managed through the remote-control session.

You can display multiple server sessions and move between server sessions by clicking a thumbnail, which displays the server console in the video session area. If you are accessing more servers than fit in the thumbnail area, click the Scroll right icon (>>) and Scroll left icon (<<) to scroll to additional server thumbnails. Click the All sessions icon (≡) to see a list of all open server sessions.

From the thumbnail area, click the Add server icon (+) to add a new server to the list of servers that you are managing. For more information about adding a session, see Adding a server console to remote-control session. You can control whether the thumbnail area is displayed and how often the thumbnails are refreshed from the Thumbnail page. For more information about thumbnail settings, see Setting remote-control preferences.

What to do next

If the remote-control session does not open successfully, see Remote control issues in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

From the Remote Control dialog, you can perform the following actions:

- Add a session to other servers to the current remote-control session (see Adding a server console to remote-control session).
- Hide or show the thumbnail area by clicking the Toggle Thumbnails icon (≡).
• Display the remote-control session as a window or full screen by clicking the **Screen** icon ( ![Screen Icon] ) and then clicking **Toggle on full screen** or **Toggle off full screen**.

• Use Ctrl, Alt, and Shift keys in a remote-control session (see Using Ctrl, Alt, and Shift keys).

• Define custom key sequences, known as softkeys (see Defining softkeys).

• Take a screen capture of the currently selected server session, and save that screen capture in a variety of formats by clicking the **Screen** icon ( ![Screen Icon] ), and then clicking **Screenshot**.

• Mount remote media (such as CD, DVD, or USB device, disk image, or CD (ISO) image) to the selected server, or move a mounted device to another server (see Mounting or moving remote media).

• Upload images to a server from remote media (see Uploading an image to the server).

• Power the server on or off from a remote console (see Powering on and off a server from a remote control session).

• Change remote-control preferences (see Setting remote-control preferences).

**Remote control considerations**

Be aware of security, performance, and keyboard considerations that are related to accessing managed servers using a remote-control session.

**Security considerations**

The user account that is used to start the remote-control session must be a valid user account that has been defined in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator authentication server. The user account must also have sufficient user authority to access and manage a server.

By default, multiple remote-control sessions can be established to a server. However, when you start a remote-control session, you have the option to start the session in single-user mode, which establishes an exclusive session with the server. All other remote-control sessions to that server are blocked until you disconnect from the server.

**Note:** This option is available only if there are currently no other remote-control sessions established to the server.

To use Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140, you must enable it manually by completing the following steps on your local system:

1. Find the provider name of the FIPS 140 certified cryptographic provider that is installed on your local system.

   **Tip:** For more information about FIPS 140 compliance, see the [FIPS 140 Compliant Mode for SunJSSE website](#).

2. Edit the file `$JAVA_HOME/lib/security/java.security`.

3. Modify the line that includes `com.sun.net.ssl.internal.ssl.Provider` by appending the provider name of your FIPS 140 certified cryptographic provider. For example, change:

   ```
   security.provider.4=com.sun.net.ssl.internal.ssl.Provider
   ```

   to:

   ```
   security.provider.4=com.sun.net.ssl.internal.ssl.Provider SunPKCS11-NSS
   ```

**Performance considerations**

If a remote-control session becomes slow or unresponsive, close all video and remote media sessions that you have established with the selected server to reduce the number of open server connections. In addition, you might increase performance by changing the following preferences. For more information, see Setting remote-control preferences.

• **KVM**
– Decrease the percentage of video bandwidth that is used by the application. The image quality of the remote-control session will be reduced.
– Decrease the percentage of frames that are refreshed by the application. The refresh rate of the remote-control session will be reduced.

• **Thumbnails**
  – Increase the thumbnail refresh interval rate. The application will refresh thumbnails at a slower rate.
  – Turn off the display of thumbnails completely.

The size of the remote-control session window and the number of active sessions might affect workstation resources, such as memory and network bandwidth, which can influence performance. The remote-control session uses a soft limit of 32 open sessions. If more than 32 sessions are open, performance might be severely degraded, and the remote-control session might become unresponsive. You might see performance degradation with fewer than 32 open sessions if resources, including network bandwidth and local memory, are not sufficient.

**Keyboard considerations**
The remote-control session supports the following keyboard types:
• Belgian 105-key
• Brazilian
• Chinese
• French 105-key
• German 105-key
• Italian 105-key
• Japanese 109-key
• Korean
• Portuguese
• Russian
• Spanish 105-key
• Swiss 105-key
• UK 105-key
• US 104-key

For information about keyboard preferences, see Setting remote-control preferences.

**Adding a server console to remote-control session**
You can add one or more servers consoles to the current remote-control session.

**Procedure**
To add one or more servers consoles to the current remote-control session, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the **New Session** icon ( ).

A dialog is displayed with a list of available chassis and rack servers that are managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator and that your user account has permission to manage.

**Tip:** If no servers are shown in the list, see Remote control issues in the XClarity Administrator online documentation for procedures to potentially resolve the issue.

Step 2. Select one or more servers to which you want to connect.

You can filter the servers that are displayed by selecting a system type from the **Type** drop-down list and entering text (such as a system name or enclosure name) in the **Filter** field.
You can select Select all to select all server in the list.

Step 3. **Optional:** Select Single-user mode to open an exclusive session to each selected server.

If you select this option, all other remote-control sessions to the selected servers are blocked until you disconnect from the selected servers. This option is available only if there are no other remote-control sessions established to the selected servers.

If you do not select this option, the multi-user mode is used by default.

Step 4. Click Connect.

**Powering on and off a server from a remote control session**

You can power on and off a server from a remote-control session.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to power on and off a server.

Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the thumbnail for the server that you want to power on or off.

Step 2. Click the Power icon ( ), and then click one of the following power actions:

- Power on
- Power Off Normally
- Power Off Immediately
- Restart Normally
- Restart Immediately
- Trigger NMI
- Restart to System Setup (Lenovo Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers only)

**Tip:** The Power icon is green if the server is currently powered on.

**Defining softkeys**

You can define your own custom key sequences, called softkeys, for the current remote-control session.

**Before you begin**

To display the current list of softkey definitions, click the Keyboard icon ( ).

Softkey definitions are stored on the system from which you started the remote-control session. Therefore, if you launch the remote-control session from another system, you have to define the softkeys again.

You can choose to export user settings (which includes softkeys) from the User Settings tab on the Preferences dialog. For more information, see Importing and exporting user settings.

**Note:** If you use an international keyboard and define softkeys that require the Alternate Graphics key (AltGr), ensure that the operating system on the workstation that you use to invoke the remote-control application is the same type of operating system as the one on the server that you are remotely accessing. For example, if the server is running Linux, ensure that you invoke the remote-control session from a workstation that is running Linux.

**Procedure**

Complete the following procedure to add a softkey.
Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the Keyboard icon (🖥), and then click Add softkey. The Softkey Programmer tab on the Preference dialog is displayed.

Step 2. Click **New**.

Step 3. Type the key sequence that you want to define.

Step 4. Click **OK**. The new softkey is added to the softkey list.

**Using Ctrl, Alt, and Shift keys**

Some operating systems intercept certain keys instead of passing them to the remote server. You can use the sticky key buttons to send keystrokes directly to the server that you are managing.

**Procedure**

To send a Ctrl or Alt key combinations, click **Ctrl** or **Alt** in the toolbar, place the cursor in the video session area, and press a key on the keyboard.

For example, to send a Ctrl+Alt+Del key combination, complete the following steps:
1. Click **Ctrl** in the toolbar.
2. Click **Alt** in the toolbar.
3. Left-click anywhere inside the video session area.
4. Press the Delete key on the keyboard.

**Note:** If mouse-capture mode is enabled, press the left Alt key to move the cursor outside of the video session area. Although mouse-capture mode is disabled by default, you can enable it from the Toolbar page (see Setting remote-control preferences).

When you click **Ctrl**, **Alt**, or **Shift** in the toolbar to make the key active, the key remains active until you press a keyboard key or click the button again.

**Mounting or moving remote media**

You can use the remote-media feature to mount remote media (such as a CD, DVD, or USB device, disk image, or CD (ISO) image) that is on the local system to the selected server. You can also upload an image to the local storage that is available on the baseboard management-controller (BMC).

**Before you begin**

Only one user at a time can mount and upload data to the local storage on the management controller. Other users are prevented from accessing the local storage on the management controller while it is mounted or while data is being uploaded to the local storage.

On a server that is running the Linux operating system, mounting more than one ISO image is not supported.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to mount or move remote media.

Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the Remote Media icon (🚀).

Step 2. Click one of the following actions:

- **Mount remote media**
  
  This action makes local media resources available to the currently selected server. A media resource can be mounted to only one server at a time within a single remote-control session.
  
  When you click **Mount remote media**, the following options are available:
Select an image to be mounted. The image is available for the currently selected server until you unmount the device or close the remote-control session. Multiple images can be mounted to a single server, and each image can be mounted to multiple servers.

Select a drive, such as a CD, DVD, or USB device, that is to be mounted. The device is available to the currently selected server until you unmount the drive or close the remote-control session. Multiple devices can be mounted to a single server, but each device can be mounted to only one server at a time.

Note: If you select a drive, be sure to unmount the drive before you remove media from the drive.

Upload the image to the IMM. Use this option to store an image in local storage on the management controller for the selected server. The image remains on the management controller even if you end the remote-control session or if the server is restarted.

You can store approximately 50 MB of data on the management controller.

You can upload multiple images to the management controller provided that the total space that is used for all images is less than 50 MB.

Each image that is uploaded to the management controller is automatically mounted to the server. After you have uploaded an image to the management controller, you can also move that uploaded image to the management controller for a different server. When you move the image, the previously uploaded image is removed from the current server and uploaded to a selected server.

- Move remote media

This action moves a previously mounted media resource between servers.

Complete the following steps to make a resource available to a server:

1. Select one or more resources.
2. Click Add to move the resources to the Selected Resources list.
3. Click Mount to mount the resources for use by the server. The remote-control session defines a device for the resource and maps that device to a mount point for the currently selected server. You have the option to write-protect the mounted media.

Uploading an image to the server

You can upload an image to the local storage that is available on the baseboard management-controller (BMC) for the selected server.

About this task

The image remains on the management controller even if you end the remote-control session or if the server is restarted.

You can store approximately 50 MB of data on the management controller.

You can upload multiple images to the management controller provided that the total space that is used for all images is less than 50 MB.

Each image that is uploaded to the management controller is automatically mounted to the server. After you have uploaded an image to the management controller, you can also move that uploaded image to the management controller for a different server. When you move the image, the previously uploaded image is removed from the current server and uploaded to a selected server.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to upload an image to the server.
Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the Remote Media icon ( ).
Step 2. Click Mount remote media.
Step 3. Click Upload the image to the IMM.

Importing and exporting user settings
You can choose to import or export user settings for the current remote-control session.

About this task
When you export user settings, all user settings for the current remote-control session are stored in a properties file on your local system. You can copy this properties file to another system and import those settings into the remote-control application to use the settings.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to import or export user settings for the current remote-control session.

Step 1. From the Remote Control window, click the Preference icon ( ).
Step 2. Click the User Settings tab.
Step 3. Click Import to import settings from an exported file, or click Export to save the all current user settings in a properties file on the local system.

Setting remote-control preferences
You can modify preference settings for the current remote-control session.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to modify remote-control preferences.

Step 1. To modify the remote control preferences, click the Preferences icon ( ). All changes take effect immediately.

- **KVM**
  - **Percentage of Video Bandwidth.** Increasing the bandwidth improves the quality in the appearance of the remote-control session but might affect the performance of the remote-control session.
  - **Percentage of Frames Refreshed.** Increasing the frame-refresh percentage increases how often the remote-control session is updated but might affect the performance of the remote-control session.
  - **Keyboard type.** Select the type of keyboard that you are using for the remote-control session. The keyboard type that you select must match the keyboard settings in the local system and match the keyboard settings on the remote host.

  **Note:** If you select an international keyboard and you need to enter key combinations that require the Alternate Graphics key (AltGr), ensure that the operating system on the workstation that you use to invoke the remote-control session is the same type of operating system as the one on the server that you want to remotely access. For example, if the server is running Linux, ensure that you invoke the remote-control application from a workstation that is running Linux.

  - **Scale image to window.** Select this option to scale the video image that is received from the server to the size of the video session area.

- **Security**
- **Prefer single-user mode connections.** Specify whether single-user mode connections is the default choice when connecting to a server. When a connection is made in single-user mode, only one user can be connected to a server at a time. If this box is not selected, the default function is to connect to the server in multi-user mode.

- **Require (secure) tunneling connections.** Select this option to access a server through the management node. You can use this option to access a server from a client that is not on the same network as the server.

  **Note:** The remote-control application always attempts to connect directly to the server from the local system where remote control was launched. If you select this option, the remote-control application accesses the server through Lenovo XClarity Administrator if the client workstation cannot access the server directly.

- **Toolbar**

  **Note:** Click **Restore defaults** to restore all settings on this page to the default settings

  - **Pin the toolbar to the window.** By default, the toolbar is hidden above the remote-control session window and displays only when you move your mouse pointer over it. If you select this option, the toolbar is pinned to the window and is always displayed between the thumbnail panel and the remote-control session window.

  - **Show keyboard buttons.** Specify whether to display the keyboard-button icons (CapsLock, NumLock, and ScrollLock) on the toolbar.

  - **Show power control.** Specify whether to display the power-control options on the toolbar.

  - **Show sticky key buttons.** Specify whether to display the sticky-key button icons (Ctrl, Alt, and Delete) on the toolbar.

  - **Hide local mouse pointer.** Specify whether to display the local mouse pointer when you position the cursor in the server session that is currently displayed in the video session area.

  - **Enable mouse-capture mode.** By default, mouse-capture mode is disabled. This means that you can freely move the cursor in and out of the video session area. If you enable mouse-capture mode, you must press the left Alt key before you can move the cursor out of the video session area. If mouse-capture mode is enabled, you can specify whether to use the Ctrl+Alt keys to exit mouse-capture mode. The default is to use the left Alt key.

  - **Specify toolbar background opacity.** Lowering the opacity percentage displays more of the video session area through the toolbar background.

    **Note:** This option is available only when the toolbar is not pinned to the window.

- **Thumbnails**

  - **Show thumbnails.** Select this option to show the thumbnail area in the remote-control session.

  - **Specify thumbnail refresh interval.** Decreasing the interval for refreshing thumbnails increases how often the server thumbnails are updated.

- **General**

  - **Debug mode.** Specify whether to set debug mode for the remote-control application. The settings determine the granularity of events that are logged in the log files. By default, only severe events are logged. For more information about log-file locations, see Viewing remote-control logs and traces.

  - **Inherit system appearance settings.** This setting changes the appearance to match color schemes that are configured for the local server (running Windows). You must restart the remote-control application for these settings to take effect.
- **Create desktop icon.** This setting creates a desktop icon on your local system so that you can start the remote-control application directly from your system. You must still have access to the management software from your system.

- **Synchronize with management server.** This setting ensures that the server data that is displayed in the remote-control application matches the server data that is displayed from management software.

**Viewing remote-control logs and traces**

When you start a remote-control session, log files are created. The types of events that are logged in these files are based on the debug mode, which is set from **General** tab on the Preferences dialog. You can use these log files to resolve issues.

**Procedure**

Remote-control log files are stored in the following locations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Log directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows 7 and 8</td>
<td>%USERPROFILE%\lenovo\remoteaccess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example: C:\Users\win_user\lenovo\remoteaccess</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about collecting diagnostic files and sending files to Lenovo Support, see *Working with service and support* in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

**Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers**

You can manage access to operating systems on the managed servers.

**Before you begin**

You must have **lxc-os-admin**, **lxc-supervisor**, **lxc-admin** or **lxc-hw-admin** authority to manage and deploy device drivers and to perform power actions on managed servers from the Windows Driver Updates pages.

**About this task**

Before Lenovo XClarity Administrator can update OS device drivers on a managed system, you must provide information to access the host operating system, including the OS IP address and stored administrator credential for accessing the host operating system. For more information about updating OS device drivers, see *Updating Windows device drivers on managed servers*.

XClarity Administrator uses stored credentials to authenticate with the host operating system. For more information about creating stored credentials in XClarity Administrator, see *Managing stored credentials*.

**Tip:** XClarity Administrator does not automatically validate the information that you specify on this page.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to modify the operating-system properties.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Access** to display the Manage OS Access page.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the **All Systems** drop-down list and enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.
Manage OS Access

To manage a server’s operating system, provide the OS IP address and choose a corresponding user account from the stored credentials list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>OS Hostname or IP Address</th>
<th>OS Credential</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server_01</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
<td>192.0.2.0</td>
<td>04 Administrator</td>
<td>Windows Server 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server_02</td>
<td>Warning (Untrusted)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
<td>192.0.2.1</td>
<td>05 Administrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server_03</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
<td>192.0.2.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 2. Select the servers to be updated.

Step 3. Click **Edit OS information** icon ( ) to display the Edit OS information dialog.

**Edit OS Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>OS Hostname or IP Address</th>
<th>OS Credential</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server_01</td>
<td>192.0.2.0</td>
<td>04 Administrator</td>
<td>Windows Server 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server_02</td>
<td>192.0.2.1</td>
<td>05 Administrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 4. For each target server, specify the following information:
- IP address or host name of the host operating system
- (Optional) Stored credential for accessing the host operating system
- (Optional) Description of the host operating system

Step 5. Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

You can perform the following actions for managing operating-system access.

- Clear operating-system information (IP address, credentials, and description) by selecting the server, and clicking the **Remove OS Information** icon ( ).
- Test the authentication on Windows servers by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Windows Driver Updates: Apply**, selecting the target server, and then clicking **Check Authentication**.
- View deployment information for the operating system on a specific server by hovering over the server name.

**Note:** Deployment information is available only for operating systems that were successfully deploying by the XClarity Administrator instance. Deployment information is not available for failed deployments and for deployments there were performed by other means, including another XClarity Administrator instance.

**Viewing Features on Demand keys**

You can view a list of Features on Demand keys that are currently installed on the managed servers.

**About this task**
You cannot purchase, install, or manage Features on Demand key from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface. For information about acquiring and installing Features on Demand keys, see Features on Demand in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to display a list of FoD keys that are installed in a specific managed server.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click Hardware ➔ Servers. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack and tower servers and compute nodes).

Step 2. Click the server name in the Server column. The status summary page for that server is displayed, showing the server properties and a list of components that are installed in that server.

Step 3. Click Inventory Details under General in the left navigation, and expand each hardware component section to view the FoD unique IDs for those components.

Step 4. Click Features on Demand keys under Configuration in the left navigation to view information about all FoD keys that are installed on the server.

Managing energy and temperature

You can monitor and manage the power consumption and temperature of Converged, NeXtScale, System x, and ThinkServer servers, and improve energy efficiency using Lenovo XClarity Energy Manager.

Learn more: Lenovo XClarity Energy Manager

About this task
XClarity Administrator is a standalone user interface that you can use to monitor and manage the power consumption and temperature of supported servers, including:

- Monitoring energy consumption, estimating the power demand, and reallocating power to servers as needed.
- Monitoring the temperature and cooling capacity of servers.
- Sending notifications when certain events occur or when thresholds are exceeded.
- Limiting the amount of energy that a device consumes using policies.
- Optimizing energy efficiency by monitoring real-time inlet temperatures, identifying low-usage servers based on out-of-band power data, measuring power rangers for different server models, and evaluating how servers accommodate new workloads based on the availability of resources.
- Reducing the power consumption to a minimum level to prolong service time during an emergency power event (such as a data-center power failure).

For more information about how to download, install, and use XClarity Administrator, see Lenovo XClarity Energy Manager website.

Powering on and off a server

You can power on and off a server from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Before you begin

- For Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) v7 and later, restarting the operating system from a graphical mode suspends the server by default. Before you can perform the Restart Normally or Restart Immediately actions from XClarity Administrator, you must manually configure the operating system to change the behavior of the power button to power off. For instructions, see the Red Hat Data Migration and Administration Guide: Changing behavior when pressing the power button in graphical target mode.
- For SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES), powering off the operating system requires you to enter the root password on the SLES session. Before you can perform the Power Off Normally or Power Off Immediately actions from XClarity Administrator, you must manually power off the server using the local SLES interface and select the Remember authentication option when you enter the password, or check your security policy to see if mandatory authentication can be disabled.
- When enabled, the Wake-on-LAN boot option can interfere with XClarity Administrator operations that power off the server, including firmware updates if there is a Wake-on-LAN client in your network that issues “Wake on Magic Packet” commands.
- The power action Restart to System Setup restarts the server and then opens the BIOS/UEFI Startup utility in a remote-control session rather than a normal operating-system boot.
- The power actions Power Off Normally and Power Off Immediately depend on the configurations of the operating system that is installed on the device and work only if the operating system is configured to support them.
- You can restart the device with non-maskable interrupt (NMI) by clicking All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Trigger NMI.

Procedure

Complete the following procedure to power on or off a server.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click Hardware ➔ Servers. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

Step 2. Select the server.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Power Actions, and then click one of the following power actions:

- Power On powers on the device.
• **Power Off Normally** shuts down the operating system and powers off the device.
• **Power Off Immediately** powers off the device.
• **Restart Normally** shuts down the operating system and restarts the device.
• **Restart Immediately** restarts the device.
• **Restart to System Setup** restarts the device to BIOS/UEFI (F1) Setup. This is supported for non-ThinkServer servers that are supported without limitations.
• **Restart Management Controller** restarts the BMC.
• **Restart immediately and attempt PXE Network Boot** restarts the server immediately and boots the server to the Preboot Execution Environment (PXE) network. This is supported for Lenovo Flex System, System x, and ThinkSystem servers.

**Note:** PXE-boot related UEFI settings must be configured on the server.

---

**Virtually reseating a server in a Flex System chassis**

You can simulate removing and reinserting a server in a Flex System chassis by restarting the server using a non-maskable interrupt (NMI).

**About this task**

During the virtual reseat, all existing network connections to the server are lost, and the power state of the server changes. Before performing a virtual reseat, ensure that you have saved all user data.

**Attention:**

- Do not perform a virtual reseat unless you are instructed by Lenovo Support.
- Performing a virtual reseat might result in the loss of data. Before reseating the server, perform necessary operations to protect user data.
- Instead of performing a virtual reseat, consider powering off the server. For information about power actions, see Powering on and off a server).

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to virtually reseat a server in a Flex System chassis.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the server that you want to reseat. In addition, you can select a device type from the **All Devices** drop-down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

---

**Servers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Number/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/B:</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ltc-cc-1295u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltc-cc-1352u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltc-bl-1749</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x240 Compute N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltc-cc-872u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Step 2. Select the server in the table.
Step 3. Click **All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Virtual Reseat**.
Step 4. Click **Virtual Reseat**.

---

**Launching the management controller interface for a server**

You can launch the management controller web interface for a specific server from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

To access ThinkSystem SR635 SR655 servers through XClarity Administrator, a user must have **lxc-supervisor, lxc-sysmgr, lxc-admin, lxc-fw-admin, or lxc-os-admin** authority (see Managing the authentication server).

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to launch the management controller interface for a server.

**Note:** Launching any management controller interface from Lenovo XClarity Administrator using the Safari web browser is not supported.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers** to display the Servers page.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can select a system type from the **All Systems** drop-down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

**Servers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Number/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/B:</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lxe-cs-1295u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxe-cs-1352u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxe-bt-1749</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x240 Compute N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxe-cs-372u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Cor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Click the link for the server in the **Server** column. The status summary page for that server is displayed.

**Step 3.** Click **All Actions ➔ Launch ➔ Management Web Interface**. The management controller web interface for the server is started.

**Tip:** You can also click the IP address in the **IP Addresses** column to launch the management controller interface.

**Step 4.** Log in to the management controller interface using your XClarity Administrator user credentials.

**What to do next**
Modifying the system properties for a server

You can modify the system properties for a specific server.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify the system properties.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers** to display the Servers page.

Step 2. Select the server to be updated.

Step 3. Click **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties** to display the Edit dialog.

Edit Properties: ite-bt-210

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Defined Name</th>
<th>ite-bt-210</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Contact</td>
<td>Fred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>NC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room</td>
<td>8-1W-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack</td>
<td>C10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowest Rack Unit</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 4. Change the following information, as needed.
- User-defined name for the server
- Support contact
- Description

**Note:** The location, room, rack, and lowest rack unit properties are updated by XClarity Administrator when you add or remove devices from a rack in the web interface (see Managing racks).

Step 5. Click **Save**.

**Note:** When you change these properties, there might be a short delay before the changes appear in the XClarity Administrator web interface.

Resolving expired or invalid stored credentials for a server

When a stored credential becomes expired or inoperable on a device, the status for that device is shown as “Offline.”

Procedure

To resolve expired or invalid stored credentials for a server.
Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

**Servers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Name/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/B:</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lite-cc-1295u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-cc-1352u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-bl-1749</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x240 Compute N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-cc-872u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 2. Click the **Power** table column header to group all offline server at the top of the table.

In addition, you can select a system type from the All Systems drop-down list and enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

Step 3. Select the server to be resolved.

Step 4. Click **All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Edit Stored Credentials**.

Step 5. Change the password for the stored credential or select another stored credential to use for the managed device.

**Note:** If you managed more than one device using the same stored credentials and you change the password for the stored credentials, that password change affects all devices that are currently using the stored credentials.

---

**Recovering a failed server after deploying a server pattern**

If a server fails after you deploy a server pattern, you can recover the server by unassigning the profile from the failed server and then reassigning that profile to a standby server.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to recover the failed server that uses Lenovo XClarity Administrator managed authentication.

Step 1. Identify the failed server.

Step 2. Unassign the server profile from the failed server (see Deactivating a server profile).

**Attention:** The failed server must be powered off to deactivate the assigned virtual addresses before you re-assign the profile. When you unassign the server profile, select **Power off server** on the Unassign Server Profile dialog to power off the failed server (see Powering on and off a server).

Step 3. Assign the server profile to a standby server (see Activating a server profile).

Step 4. Activate the profile by either powering on the standby server if it is currently powered off or by restarting the standby server if it is currently powered on (see Powering on and off a server).

Step 5. Migrate the VLAN settings on the attached switches to the standby server.

Step 6. Ensure that the failed server is powered off.
Step 7. Replace or repair the failed server. If you repair the server, perform the following steps to ensure that the newly repaired server is reset to default settings:

a. Reset the BMC to factory defaults by using the management web interface for the server. For information about resetting the BMC, see Recovering ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server management after a management server failure by resetting the management controller.

b. Clear the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) information, including any I/O adapter virtual addresses by using the UEFI menus. For information, see the UEFI documentation.

---

**Recovering boot settings after server pattern deployment**

If one or more servers do not start after you deployed a new server pattern to those servers, the problem might be that the boot settings were overwritten with the default boot settings that are in the server pattern. For operating systems that are installed in UEFI mode, restoring the default settings might require additional configuration steps to restore the boot configuration.

**Procedure**

Complete the following manual recovery procedure for each affected server to restore the original boot settings.

- For a server with Red Hat Enterprise Linux installed:
  1. If you are accessing the server remotely, establish a remote-control session to the server (see Using remote control to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers).
  2. Restart the server by clicking **Tools → Power → On**. When the UEFI splash screen for the server is displayed in the Remote Control session, press F1 to display the Setup Utility.
  3. Select **Boot Manager**.
  4. Select **Add Boot Option**.
  5. Select **UEFI Full Path Option**.
  6. From the list that is displayed, select the entry that includes SAS.
  7. Select **EFI**.
  8. Select **redhat**.
  9. Select **grub.efi**.
  10. Select the **Input the Description** field.
  11. Type Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
  12. Select **Commit Changes**.
  13. Make Red Hat Enterprise Linux the first option in the Boot Order, and remove all other options in the Boot Order.
  14. Press Escape, and then select **Save changes then exit this menu**.
  15. Press Escape, and then select **Exit the Configuration Utility and Reboot**. The compute node restarts.

- For a server with Microsoft Windows Server 2008 installed:
  1. Power on the server, and when prompted, press F1 to enter setup.
  2. Select **Boot Manager**.
  3. Select **Boot from File**.
5. Select EFI.
6. Select Microsoft.
7. Select Boot.
8. Select bootmgfw.EFI.

**Note:** For more information, see RETAIN tip 5079636.

---

### Recovering rack or tower server management after a management server failure

If a rack or tower server is being managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, and if XClarity Administrator fails, you can restore the management functions until the XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced.

**About this task**

To recover management for a Flex System server, see Recovering management with a CMM after a management server failure.

### Recovering rack or tower server management after a management server failure by force management

You can recover server management by managing the server again using the force-management option.

**Procedure**

If the replacement Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password and the Force management option (see Managing servers).

### Recovering a System x or NeXtScale M4 server that was not unmanaged correctly by using the management controller

You can recover management of a System x or NeXtScale M4 server by using the baseboard management-controller (BMC).

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to recover server management of a server that uses Lenovo XClarity Administrator managed authentication.

**Step 1.** Log in to the management-controller web interface using the user account and password that you created before the server was managed by XClarity Administrator.

**Step 2.** Clear SNMP trap settings.

a. Click the IMM Management ➔ Network.

b. Click the SNMP tab.

c. Click the Communities tab,

d. Locate the community entry for the previous XClarity Administrator, for example.
   - LXCA IP address: 10.240.198.84
   - LXCA host: LXCA_maqCBIt86d
   - Community 2:
     - Community name: LXCA_maqCBIt86d
     - Access type: Trap
     - Allow specific hosts to receive traps on this community: 10.240.198.84
e. Remove the value in the fields for the community entry.
f. Click Apply.

Step 3. Clear the user accounts.
   a. Click the IMM Management ➔ Users.
   b. Click the User Accounts tab.
   c. Delete all user accounts that are XClarity Administrator, including user accounts with the following prefixes:
      • DISABLE_*
      • LXCA_*
      • OBSOLETE_*
      • SNMPCFGUSER

What to do next

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the System x or NeXtScale server again (see Managing servers). All information about the server (such as network settings, server policies, and firmware compliance policies) is retained.

Recovering ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server management after a management server failure by resetting the management controller

You can recover management of a ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server by resetting the baseboard management-controller in the server to factory defaults.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to recover management of a server that uses Lenovo XClarity Administrator managed authentication.

Step 1. If Encapsulation is enabled on the device, connect to the target management controller from a system that is configured to use the IP address of the failed XClarity Administrator virtual appliance.

Step 2. Reset the management controller to the factory defaults.
   a. Log in to the management controller web interface for the server using the recovery user account and password that you created before the server was managed by XClarity Administrator.
   b. Click the IMM Management tab.
   c. Click IMM Reset to factory defaults.
   d. Click OK to confirm the reset action.

Important: After the BMC configuration is complete, the BMC is restarted. If this is a local server, your TCP/IP connection is broken and you must reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity.

Step 3. Log on to the management controller web interface for the server again.

   • The BMC is initially configured to attempt to obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. If it cannot, it uses the static IPv4 address 192.168.70.125.
   • The IMMBMC is set initially with a user name of USERID and password of PASSWORD (with a zero). This default user account has Supervisor access. Change this user name and password during your initial configuration for enhanced security.
Step 4. Reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity. For more information, see the Integrated Management Module II online documentation.

What to do next

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the server again (see Managing servers). All information about the server (such as network settings, server policies, and firmware compliance policies) is retained.

If the server was configured using Configuration Patterns, you can deactivate and then re-activate the server profile that was assigned to the server to apply the configuration (see Working with server profiles).

Recovering ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server management after a management server failure by using cimcli

You can recover management of a ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server by using the cimcli utility to clear the CIM subscriptions.

Before you begin

OpenPegasus with the cimcli utility must be installed on a system that has network access to the target server. For information about downloading, configuring, and compiling OpenPegasus, see the OpenPegasus Release RPMs for Linux website.

Note: For Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server 7 and later, OpenPegasus source and binary RPMs are included as part of the Red Hat distribution. The top-pegasus-test.x86_64 package includes the cimcli utility.

About this task

After the server is recovered, you can manage the server again. All information about the server (such as network settings, server policies, and firmware compliance policies) is retained.

Procedure

Complete the following steps from a server that uses Lenovo XClarity Administrator managed authentication and on which OpenPegasus is installed to recover server management.

Step 1. If Encapsulation is enabled on the device:
   a. Connect to the target server from a system that is configured to use the IP address of the failed XClarity Administrator virtual appliance.
   b. Disable Encapsulation by opening an SSH session to the device and running the following command:

```
encaps lite off
```

Step 2. Run the following commands to determine the CIM instances for CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML, CIM_Indicationfilter and CIM_IndicationSubscription.

```
cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
-s ni CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML

-cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
-s ni CIM_Indicationfilter

-cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
-s ni CIM_IndicationSubscription
```

where, <IP_address>, <user_ID> and <password> are the IP address, user ID and password for the management controller. For example:
Step 3. Run following command to delete each the CIM instance for CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML, CIM_IndicationFilter and CIM_IndicationSubscription, one at a time.

```bash
$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n/root/interop -s ni CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML
CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML.creationclassname="CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML",
name="Lenovo:lxca_10.243.5.191:handler",
systemcreationclassname="CIM_ComputerSystem",
name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"

$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n/root/interop s ni CIM_IndicationFilter
CIM_IndicationFilter.creationclassname="CIM_IndicationFilter",
name="Lenovo:lxca_10.243.5.191:Filter",systemcreationclassname="CIM_ComputerSystem",
name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"

$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n/root/interop s ni CIM_IndicationSubscription
name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"

where, `<IP_address>`, `<user_ID>` and `<password>` are the IP address, user ID and password for the management controller, and `<cim_instance>` is the information returned for each CIM instance in the previous step, surrounded by single quotes. For example:

```bash
$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n/root/interop di 'CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML.creationclassname="CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML",
name="Lenovo:lxca_10.243.5.191:handler",systemcreationclassname="CIM_ComputerSystem",
name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"

$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n/root/interop di 'CIM_IndicationFilter.creationclassname="CIM_IndicationFilter",
name="Lenovo:lxca_10.243.5.191:Filter",systemcreationclassname="CIM_ComputerSystem",
name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"

name="FC3058CADF8B11D48C9B9B1B1B1B1B57"
```

What to do next

After Lenovo XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the System x or NeXtScale server again (see Managing servers). All information about the server (such as network settings, server policies, and firmware compliance policies) is retained.
Recovering ThinkServer server management after a management server failure by using the management controller interface

You can recover management of a ThinkServer server from the management controller interface.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to recover the server management.

Step 1. Log in to the management controller web interface for the server as an administrator (see Launching the management controller interface for a server).

Step 2. Remove the IPMI accounts created by Lenovo XClarity Administrator by selecting Users in the main menu and then removing all the user accounts with the “LXCA_” prefix.

Alternatively, you can rename the account user name, and remove the “LXCA_” prefix.

Step 3. Remove SNMP trap destinations by selecting PEFF Management in the main menu, click the LAN Destination tab, and remove the entry that points to the IP address of the XClarity Administrator instance.

Step 4. Verify you have valid NTP settings by selecting NTP Settings in the main menu, and then either configuring the date and time manually or providing a valid NTP server address.

Unmanaging a rack or tower server

You can remove a rack or tower server from management by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. This process is called unmanaging.

Before you begin

You can enable XClarity Administrator to automatically unmanage devices (including Flex System chassis, Flex System and rack switches, Flex System servers, System x servers, ThinkAgile, and ThinkSystem servers) that are offline for a specific amount of time. This is disabled by default. To enable the automatic unmanagement of offline devices, click Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices from the XClarity Administrator menu, and then click Edit next to Unmanage offline devices is Disabled. Then, select Enable unmanage offline devices and set the time interval. By default, devices are unmanaged after being offline for 24 hours.

Before you unmanage a rack or tower server, ensure that there are no active jobs running against the server.

If you want to remove the server pattern and any virtual addresses on the rack or tower server, deactivate the server profile before unmanaging the server (see Deactivating a server profile).

When Call Home is enabled in XClarity Administrator, Call Home is disabled on all managed chassis and servers to avoid duplicate problem records from being created. If you intend to discontinue using XClarity Administrator to manage your devices, you can re-enable Call Home on all managed devices from the XClarity Administrator in lieu of re-enabling Call Home for each individual device at a later time (see Re-enabling call home on all managed devices in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

About this task

When you unmanage a rack or tower server, Lenovo XClarity Administrator performs the following actions:

• Clears the configuration used for centralized user management.
• Removes the baseboard-management-controller security certificate from the XClarity Administrator trust store.
• Removes access to the NTP server from the management controller.
If Encapsulation is enabled on the device, configures the devices firewall rules to the settings before the device was managed.

- Removes the CIM subscriptions to the XClarity Administrator configuration so that XClarity Administrator no longer receives events from the rack or tower server.
- Disables Call Home on the rack or tower server if Call Home is currently enabled on XClarity Administrator.
- Discards events that were sent from the rack or tower server. You can retain these events by forwarding the events to an external repository, such as a syslog (see Forwarding events).

When you unmanaged a rack or tower server, XClarity Administrator retains certain information about the server. That information is reapplied when you manage the same rack or tower server again.

**Important:** If you unmanaged a ThinkServer server and then manage that server using another XClarity Administrator instance, information about the server is lost.

**Tip:** All demo devices that are optionally added during initial setup are nodes in a chassis. To unmanage the demo devices, unmanage the chassis using the **Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable** option.

**Procedure**

To unmanage a rack or tower server, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click the **Hardware ➔ Servers** to display the Servers page.

**Step 2.** Select one or more rack or tower servers to be unmanaged.

**Step 3.** Click **Unmanage.** The Unmanage dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** **Optional:** Select **Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable.**

  **Important:** When unmanaging demo hardware, ensure that you select this option.

**Step 5.** Click **Unmanage.** The Unmanage dialog shows the progress of each step in the unmanagement process.

**Step 6.** When the unmanagement process is complete, click **OK.**

**Recovering a rack or tower server that was not unmanaged correctly**

If a Converged, NeXtScale, System x, or ThinkServer server was not unmanaged correctly, you must recover the server before you can remanage it.

**Recovering a rack or tower server that was not unmanaged correctly by force management**

You can recover server management by managing the server again using the force-management option.

**Procedure**

If the replacement Lenovo XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password and the **Force management** option (see Managing servers).

**Recovering a System x or NeXtScale M4 server that was not unmanaged correctly by using the management controller**

You can recover System x or NeXtScale M4 server management by using the management controller.

**Procedure**
Complete the following steps to recover server management.

Step 1. Log in to the management-controller web interface using the user account and password that you created before the server was managed by XClarity Administrator.

Step 2. Clear SNMP trap settings.
   a. Click the IMM Management ➔ Network.
   b. Click the SNMP tab.
   c. Click the Communities tab,
   d. Locate the community entry for the previous XClarity Administrator, for example.
      • LXCA IP address: 10.240.198.84
      • LXCA host: LXCA_maqCBIt86d
      • Community 2:
        • Community name: LXCA_maqCBIt86d
        • Access type: Trap
        • Allow specific hosts to receive traps on this community: 10.240.198.84
   e. Remove the value in the fields for the community entry.
   f. Click Apply.

Step 3. Clear the user accounts.
   a. Click the IMM Management ➔ Users.
   b. Click the User Accounts tab.
   c. Delete all user accounts that are XClarity Administrator, including user accounts with the following prefixes:
      • DISABLE_*
      • LXCA_*
      • OBSOLETE_*
      • SNMPCFGUSER

Step 4. Manage the server using Lenovo XClarity Administrator.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.
   c. Click Single System, enter the IP address of the server that you want to manage, and click OK.
   d. Specify the user ID and password for the authenticating to the server.
   e. Click Manage.

      A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. Monitor the progress to ensure that the process completes successfully.
   f. When the process is complete, click OK.

Recovering a ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server that was not unmanaged correctly by resetting the management controller to factory defaults

You can recover ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server management by resetting the baseboard management-controller (BMC) in the server to factory defaults.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to recover server management.
Step 1. If Encapsulation is enabled on the device, connect to the target management controller from a system that is configured to use the IP address of the failed XClarity Administrator virtual appliance.

Step 2. Reset the management controller to the factory defaults.
   a. Log in to the management controller web interface for the server using the recovery user account and password that you created before the server was managed by XClarity Administrator.
   b. Click the IMM Management tab.
   c. Click IMM Reset to factory defaults.
   d. Click OK to confirm the reset action.

   **Important:** After the BMC configuration is complete, the BMC is restarted. If this is a local server, your TCP/IP connection is broken and you must reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity.

Step 3. Log on to the management controller web interface for the server again.
   - The BMC is initially configured to attempt to obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. If it cannot, it uses the static IPv4 address 192.168.70.125.
   - The IMMBMC is set initially with a user name of USERID and password of PASSWORD (with a zero). This default user account has Supervisor access. Change this user name and password during your initial configuration for enhanced security.

Step 4. Reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity. For more information, see the Integrated Management Module II online documentation.

Step 5. Manage the server using Lenovo XClarity Administrator.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➞ Discover and Manage New Devices. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.
   c. Click Single System, enter the IP address of the server that you want to manage, and click OK.
   d. Specify the user ID and password for the authenticating to the server.
   e. Click Manage.

   A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. Monitor the progress to ensure that the process completes successfully.
   f. When the process is complete, click OK.

Step 6. If the server was configured using Configuration Patterns, re-activate the server profile that was assigned to the server.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➞ Server Profiles. The Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page is displayed.
   b. Select the server profile, and click the Deactivate server profile icon ( ).
   c. Click Power off the ITE to power off the server. When the server is powered back on, virtual address assignments revert back to the burned in defaults.
   d. Click Deactivate. The state of the profile changes to “Inactive” in the Profile Status column.
   e. Select the server profile again, and click the Activate server profile icon ( ).
   f. Click Activate to activate the server profiles on the server. The state of the profile changes to “Active” in the Profile Status column.
Step 7. If a compliance policy was assigned to the server, reassign the compliance policy.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click ** Provisioning → Apply/Activate.** The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed with a list of managed devices.
   b. Select the appropriate policy for the server from the drop-down menu in the **Assigned Policy** column.

Recovering a ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x M5 or M6 server that was not unmanaged correctly by using the cimcli

You can recover ThinkSystem, Converged, NeXtScale, or System x server management by using the cimcli to clear the CIM subscriptions.

**Before you begin**

OpenPegasus with the cimcli utility must be installed on a system that has network access to the target server. For information about downloading, configuring, and compiling OpenPegasus, see the [OpenPegasus Release RPMs for Linux website](#).

**Note:** For Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server 7 and later, OpenPegasus source and binary RPMs are included as part of the Red Hat distribution. The `top-pegasus-test.x86_64` package includes the cimcli utility.

**About this task**

After the server is recovered, you can manage the server again. All information about the server (such as network settings, server policies, and firmware compliance policies) is retained.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps from a server that uses Lenovo XClarity Administrator managed authentication and on which OpenPegasus is installed to recover server management.

**Step 1.** If Encapsulation is enabled on the device:
   a. Connect to the target server from a system that is configured to use the IP address of the failed XClarity Administrator virtual appliance.
   b. Disable Encapsulation by opening an SSH session to the device and running the following command:

      ```
      encaps l it e o f f
      ```

**Step 2.** Run the following commands to determine the CIM instances for CIM_LISTENEDestinationCIMXML, CIM_IndicationFilter and CIM_IndicationSubscription.

```
cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
   -s ni CIM_LISTENEDestinationCIMXML

cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
   -s ni CIM_IndicationFilter

cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop
   -s ni CIM_IndicationSubscription
```

where, `<IP_address>`, `<user_ID>` and `<password>` are the IP address, user ID and password for the management controller. For example:

```
$ cimcli -l 10.243.6.68 -u ADMIN -p PASSWORD -n /root/interop
   -s ni CIM_LISTENEDestinationCIMXML

CIM_LISTENEDestinationCIMXML.creationclassname="CIM_LISTENEDestinationCIMXML",
   name="Lenovo:LXCA_10.243.5.191:Handler",
   systemcreationclassname="CIM_ComputerSystem",
   systemname="FC3058CADF8B11D048C9B9B1B1B1B57"
```
Step 3. Run following command to delete each the CIM instance for CIM_ListenerDestinationCIMXML, CIM_Indicationfilter and CIM_IndicationSubscription, one at a time.

cimcli -l <IP_address> -u <user_ID> -p <password> -n /root/interop -s di ' <cim_instance> ' where, <IP_address>, <user_ID> and <password> are the IP address, user ID and password for the management controller, and <cim_instance> is the information returned for each CIM instance in the previous step, surrounded by single quotes. For example:

```
```

```
```

```
```

Step 4. Manage the server using Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Discover and Manage New Devices.** The Discover and Manage page is displayed.

b. Select **Manual Input.**

c. Click **Single System,** enter the IP address of the server that you want to manage, and click **OK.**

d. Specify the user ID and password for the authenticating to the server.

e. Click **Manage.**

A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. Monitor the progress to ensure that the process completes successfully.

f. When the process is complete, click **OK.**
Recovering a ThinkServer server management that was not unmanaged correctly by using the management controller interface

You can recover management of a ThinkServer server by using the management controller web interface.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to recover the server management.

Step 1. Log in to the management controller web interface for the server as an administrator (see Launching the management controller interface for a server).

Step 2. Remove the IPMI accounts created by Lenovo XClarity Administrator by selecting Users in the main menu and then removing all the user accounts with the “LXCA_” prefix.

   Alternatively, you can rename the account user name, and remove the “LXCA_” prefix.

Step 3. Remove SNMP trap destinations by selecting PEF Management in the main menu, click the LAN Destination tab, and remove the entry that points to the IP address of the XClarity Administrator instance.

Step 4. Verify you have valid NTP settings by selecting NTP Settings in the main menu, and then either configuring the date and time manually or providing a valid NTP server address.
Chapter 9. Managing storage devices

Lenovo XClarity Administrator can manage several types of storage, including Lenovo Storage, Nimble, and Flex System storage systems.

Learn more: XClarity Administrator: Discovery

Before you begin

Attention: Review the storage-management considerations before managing a storage device. For information, see Storage management considerations.

Note: Flex System storage devices are discovered and managed automatically when you manage the chassis that contains them. You cannot discover and manage Flex System storage devices independent of the chassis.

Review the management considerations before managing a device. For information, see Management considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Certain ports must be available to communicate with devices. Ensure that all required ports are available before you attempt to manage storage devices. For information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Ensure that the minimum required firmware is installed on each storage device that you want to manage using XClarity Administrator. For information about firmware requirements, see Supported firmware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Important: Ensure that the following requirements are met before discovering and managing rack storage devices (other than ThinkSystem DE series). For more information, see Cannot discover a device and Cannot manage a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- The network configuration must allow SLP traffic between XClarity Administrator and the rack storage device.
- Unicast SLP is required.
- Multicast SLP is required if you want XClarity Administrator to discover the Lenovo Storage devices automatically. In addition, SLP must be enabled on the rack storage device.
- Multicast UDP is required if you want XClarity Administrator to discover Nimble storage devices and retrieve basic information. To verify that your network configuration allows multicast UDP traffic, use any client that is capable of browsing for mDNS or DNS-SD services (such as a “zeroconf” or “avahi-browse” client) to ensure that it can find the Nimble storage devices. The client must be run on a system in the same subnet as the XClarity Administrator instance.

Note: Discovering and managing devices using bulk import does not require multicast UDP.

About this task

XClarity Administrator can automatically discover storage devices in your environment by probing for manageable devices that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator. To discover storage devices that are in other subnets, specify an IP address or range of IP addresses, or import information from a spreadsheet.
After the storage devices are managed by XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator polls each managed storage device periodically to collect information, such as inventory, vital product data, and status. You can view and monitor each managed storage device and perform management actions (such as configuring system settings, updating firmware, and powering on and off).

A device can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device on the initial XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator. If an error occurs during the unmanagement process, you can select the **Force management** option during management on the new XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** When scanning the network for manageable devices, XClarity Administrator does not know whether a device is already managed by another manager until after it attempts to manage the device.

- Management of Flex System storage devices by XClarity Administrator is limited. You can view status and detailed information for the storage devices, power on and off the storage device, virtually reseat the storage device, and launch the CMM for the chassis in which the storage device is installed. However, to perform other actions on a storage device (such as updating or configuring the storage device), you must use the management controller web interface or the command-line interface (CLI) for the storage device.
- You can use Flex System Manager to manage Flex System storage devices. However, you cannot use Flex System Manager and XClarity Administrator to manage storage devices in the same chassis at the same time.
- For more information about using the management controller web interface for Flex System storage devices, see [Flex System Storage product documentation](#).

**Procedure**

Complete one of the following procedures to manage your Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage systems using XClarity Administrator.

- Discover and manage a large number of storage devices and other types of devices using a bulk-import file (see **Managing systems** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- Discover and manage storage devices that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage New Devices page is displayed.
Discover and Manage New Devices

If the following list does not contain the device that you expect, use the Manual Input option to discover the device. For more information about why a device might not be automatically discovered, see the Cannot discover a device help topic.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the storage devices that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the storage systems that are displayed. You can change the columns that are displayed and the default sort order by clicking the Customize Columns icon.

Use the browser refresh button to discover all manageable devices in the XClarity Administrator domain. Discovery might take several minutes.

2. Click the Refresh icon to discover new devices.
3. Select one or more storage devices that you want to manage.
4. Click Manage Selected. The Manage dialog is displayed.
5. Specify the user ID and password for authenticating to the storage device.

Tip: It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

6. Click Change to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

Notes:
- You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
- If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

7. Click Manage.

A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the progress.

8. When the process is complete, click OK.

The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.
If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the **Force management** option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

  **Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the **Force management** option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.

- If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

- Discover and manage storage devices that are not on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator by manually specifying IP addresses.

  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.
  2. Select **Manual Input**.
  3. Specify the network addresses of the storage devices that you want to manage:
     - Click **Single System**, and enter a single IP address domain name, or fully-qualified domain name (FQDN).
       **Note:** To specify an FQDN, ensure that a valid domain name is specified on Network Access page (see Configuring network access).
     - Click **Multiple Systems**, and enter a range of IP addresses. To add another range, click the **Add** icon (>Create<). To remove a range, click the **Remove** icon (Delete).
  4. Click **OK**.
  5. Specify the user ID and password for authenticating to the storage device.

    **Tip:** It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

  6. Click **Change** to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

**Notes:**

- You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
- If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

  7. Click **Manage**.

    A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the progress.

  8. When the process is complete, click **OK**.

    The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.
If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the Force management option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

  **Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the Force management option.

- If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.

- If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

**What to do next**
- Discover and manage additional devices.
- Update firmware on devices that are not in compliance with current policies (see Updating firmware on managed devices).
- Add the new devices to the appropriate rack to reflect the physical environment (see Managing racks).
- Monitor hardware status and details (see Viewing the status of storage devices).
- Monitor events and alerts (see Working with events and Working with alerts).

**Storage management considerations**

Before managing a storage device, review the following important considerations.

For information about port requirements, see Port availability in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

**Important:** Ensure that the following requirements are met before discovering and managing rack storage devices (other than ThinkSystem DE series). For more information, see Cannot discover a device and Cannot manage a device in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- The network configuration must allow SLP traffic between XClarity Administrator and the rack storage device.
- Unicast SLP is required.
- Multicast SLP is required if you want XClarity Administrator to discover the Lenovo Storage devices automatically. In addition, SLP must be enabled on the rack storage device.
- Multicast UDP is required if you want XClarity Administrator to discover Nimble storage devices and retrieve basic information. To verify that your network configuration allows multicast UDP traffic, use any client that is capable of browsing for mDNS or DNS-SD services (such as a “zeroconf” or “avahi-browse” client) to ensure that it can find the Nimble storage devices. The client must be run on a system in the same subnet as the XClarity Administrator instance.

  **Note:** Discovering and managing devices using bulk import does not require multicast UDP.

For Lenovo Storage devices, the system-level air temp is measured by the temperature sensor closest to the mid-plane of the system and reflects the ambient temperature after the airflow passes through the drives. Note that the air temperature that is reported by XClarity Administrator and the management controller might differ if the temperature is captured at different points in time.
For some storage devices, SNMP traps are in English only.

**Viewing the status of storage devices**

You can view a summary and detailed status for the managed storage devices from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Learn more:**
- XClarity Administrator: Inventory
- XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

**About this task**

The following status icons are used to indicate the overall health of the device. If the certificates do not match, “(Untrusted)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Untrusted). If there is a connectivity issue or a connection to the device is not trusted, “(Connectivity)” is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Connectivity).

- (×) Critical
- (⚠️) Warning
- (⚠️) Pending
- (ℹ️) Informational
- (🟢) Normal
- (⚪️) Offline
- (❔) Unknown

**Procedure**

To view the status for a managed storage device, complete one or more of the following actions.

- From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard**. The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of all managed storage devices and other resources.
From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Storage**. The Storage page is displayed with a tabular view of all storage devices that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the storage devices that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field and click the status icons to list only those storage devices that meet the selected criteria.

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- View detailed information about the storage device and its components (see Viewing the details of a storage device).
- View a storage device in graphical rack or chassis view by clicking **All Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View** or **All Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Chassis View**.
- Launch the management controller web interface for the storage device by clicking the **IP address** link (see Launching the management controller interface for a storage device).
- Power the storage controller in the storage device on and off (see Powering on and off a storage device).

- Modify system information by selecting a storage device and clicking **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties**.

- Refresh inventory by selecting a storage device and clicking **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Refresh Inventory**.

- Export detailed information about one or more storage devices to a single CSV file by selecting the storage devices and clicking **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory**.

  **Note:** You can export inventory data for a maximum of 60 devices at one time.

  **Tip:** When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.

- Unmanaged the storage device (see Unmanaging a Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage system).

- (Flex System storage devices only) Virtually reseat the storage controller in the storage device (see Virtually reseating storage controllers in a Flex System storage device).

- Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking the **Exclude events** icon ( ). (see Excluding events).

- Resolve issues that might arise between the Lenovo XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the CMM in the chassis where the storage device is installed by selecting a storage device and clicking **All Actions ➔ Security ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificates** (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

- Add or remove a storage device from a static resource group by clicking **All Actions ➔ Groups ➔ Add to Group** or **All Actions ➔ Groups ➔ Remove from Group**.

---

**Viewing the details of a storage device**

You can view detailed information about managed storage devices from Lenovo XClarity Administrator, including the IP address, product name, serial number, and details about each canister.

**About this task**

**Learn more:**

- [XClarity Administrator: Inventory](#)

- [XClarity Administrator: Monitoring](#)

For Lenovo Storage devices, the system-level air temp is measured by the temperature sensor closest to the mid-plane of the system and reflects the ambient temperature after the airflow passes through the drives. Note that the air temperature that is reported by Lenovo XClarity Administrator and the management controller might differ if the temperature is captured at different points in time.

**Procedure**

To view the details of a specific managed storage device, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Storage**. The Storage page is displayed with a tabular view of all storage devices that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific storage devices. In addition, enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the storage devices that are displayed.
Step 2. Click the storage device name in the Storage column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that storage device.

Step 3. Complete one or more of the following actions:

- Click Summary to view a summary of the server and its installed components, including system information and installed devices (see Viewing the status of storage devices).
- Click Inventory Details to view details about the storage device components, including:
- Firmware levels for the storage device.
- Details of the management-controller network, such as the hostname, IPv4 address, IPv6 address, and MAC addresses.
- Asset details of the storage device.
- Details about each canister in the storage device.

**Tip:** If an expansion node, such as the Flex System Storage Expansion Node or the Flex System PCIe Expansion Node is installed in the chassis and connected to a storage device, inventory details for the expansion node is displayed as well.

- Click **Alerts** to display alerts in the alerts list that are related to the storage device (see Working with alerts).
- Click **Event Log** to display the events in the event log that are related to the storage device.
- Click **Jobs** to display a list of jobs that are associated with the storage device (see Monitoring jobs).
- Click **Light Path** to display the current state of each LED on the storage device.
- Click **Power and Thermal** to display the power and thermal characteristics for the storage device.

**Tip:** Use the refresh button on your web browser to collect the latest power and thermal data. Collecting data might take several minutes.

### What to do next

In addition to displaying summary and detailed information about a storage device, you can perform the following actions:

- View a storage device in graphical rack or chassis view by clicking **Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View** or **Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Chassis View**.
- Export detailed information about the storage device to a CSV file clicking the **Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory**.

**Notes:**

- For more information about inventory data in the CSV file, see the GET /storage/<UUID_list> REST API in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.
- Launch the management controller web interface for the storage device by clicking the **IP address** link (see Launching the management controller interface for a storage device).
- Power a storage controller in the storage device on and off (see Powering on and off a storage device).
- Virtually reseat the storage controller in the storage device (see Virtually reseating a server in a Flex System chassis).
- Modify system information by selecting a storage device and clicking **Edit Properties**.
- Refresh inventory by selecting a storage device and clicking **Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Refresh Inventory**.
- Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking the **Actions ➔ Service Reset ➔ Exclude Events** (see Excluding events).
- Resolve issues that might arise between the Lenovo XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the CMM in the chassis where the storage device is installed by selecting a storage device and clicking **Actions ➔ Service ➔ Resolve Untrusted Certificates** (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).
Backing up and restoring storage-configuration data

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not include built-in backup functions for storage-configuration data. Instead, use the backup functions that are available for your managed storage device.

See the product documentation that is provided with your storage device for information about recovering the device.
• For Flex System storage devices, see Flex System Storage product documentation.
• For Lenovo Storage devices, see the Lenovo Storage S2200/S3200 product documentation.
• For Lenovo ThinkSystem storage devices, see the ThinkSystem Storage product documentation.
• For Nimble Storage devices, see Nimble Storage InfoSight website.

Powering on and off a storage device

You can power on and off a storage device from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

About this task

For Flex System storage devices, when a storage controller is powered off, data is first stored on the internal drive and the storage device enters a standby state. In standby state, volumes that are provided by the storage device are no longer accessible.

To power on a ThinkSystem DM Series storage device, ensure that storage controller that is used for management is online and that its IP address is able to communicate directly to the service processor of the powered-off storage controller over the external network.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to power on and off a managed storage device.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Storage. The Storage page is displayed with a tabular view of all storage devices that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific storage device. In addition, enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the storage devices that are displayed.

Step 2. Select the storage device to be powered on or off.

Step 3. Click All Actions, and then click one of the following power actions:
• Power On Controller A
• Power On Controller B
• Power off Controller A
• Power off Controller B
• Restart Controller A
• Restart Controller B

Virtually reseating storage controllers in a Flex System storage device

You can perform a virtual reseat, which simulates the removal and reinsertion of a storage controller (canister) in the storage device bay.

About this task

During the virtual reseat, all existing network connections to the storage device are lost, and the power state of the storage device changes. Before performing a virtual reseat, ensure that you have saved all user data.

Procedure

Complete the following steps virtually reseat a storage controller.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➞ Storage. The Storage page is displayed with a tabular view of all storage devices.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific storage devices. In addition, enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the storage devices that are displayed.

Storage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All Actions</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>Chassis</th>
<th>Drive Bays</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enclosure 11</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On (left canister) On (right canister)</td>
<td>SNY034BG16F03V</td>
<td>11-14</td>
<td>10.240.72.89, 0.0.0....</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE2000H</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On (left controller) On (right controller)</td>
<td>SNY034BG16F03V</td>
<td>35 Installed / 36 Total</td>
<td>10.240.43.109, 10....</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 2. Select the Flex System storage device.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➞ Service, and then click Virtual Reseat Controller A or Virtual Reseat Controller B.

Step 4. Click Virtual Reseat.

Launching the management controller interface for a storage device

You can launch the management controller web interface for the chassis in which the storage device is installed from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

To launch a management controller web interface, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➞ Storage. The Storage page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed storage devices.
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific storage devices. In addition, enter text (such as a device name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the storage devices that are displayed.

**Storage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>Chassis</th>
<th>Drive Bays</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enclosure 11</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On (left canister)</td>
<td>SN#Y034BG16F03V</td>
<td>11-14</td>
<td>10.240.72.69, 0.0.0....</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE2000H</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On (left controller)</td>
<td>SN#Y034BG16F03V</td>
<td>35 Installed / 36 Total</td>
<td>10.240.43.109, 10....</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Select the storage device.

**Step 3.** Click **Actions ➔ Launch ➔ Management Web Interface**. The management controller web interface is started.

**Step 4.** Log in to the management controller interface.

**Note:** For Flex System storage devices, use the XClarity Administrator user credentials.

## Modifying the system properties for a storage device

You can modify the system properties for a specific storage device.

**Procedure**

To modify the system properties, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Storage** to display the Storage page.

**Step 2.** Select the storage device to be updated.

**Step 3.** Click **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties** to display the Edit dialog.

**Step 4.** Change the following information, as needed.

- **Name**
- **Support contact**
• Description

Note: XClarity Administrator updates the location, room, rack, and lowest rack unit properties when you add or remove devices from a rack in the web interface (see Managing racks).

Step 5. Click Save.

Note: When you change these properties, there might be a short delay before the changes appear in the XClarity Administrator web interface.

---

Recovering management of a rack storage device after a management server failure

If a rack storage device was not unmanaged correctly, you must recover the storage device before you can remanage it. You can recover management by clearing specific parts of the storage-device configuration that was previously set by Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

Complete one of the following steps to recovery a rack storage device.

• If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the Force management option (see Managing storage devices).
• Remove all user accounts with the prefix “LXCA_” and optionally remove user accounts with the prefix “SYSMGR_” and type “SNMPv3” from the storage device.

What to do next

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the storage device again (see Managing storage devices). All information about the storage device (such as system properties) is retained.

---

Recovering management of a Lenovo ThinkSystem DE Series storage device after a management server failure

If a Lenovo ThinkSystem DE series storage device was not unmanaged correctly, you must recover the storage device before you can remanage it. You can recover management by clearing specific parts of the storage-device configuration that was previously set by Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

Complete one of the following steps to recovery a Lenovo ThinkSystem DE Series storage device.

• If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the Force management option (see Managing storage devices).
• Remove the “LXCA_REMOTE_MANAGMENT_VERIFICATION” key-pair register from the storage device key-pair API.

What to do next

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the storage device again (see Managing storage devices). All information about the storage device (such as system properties) is retained.
Unmanaging a Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage system

You can remove a Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage system from management by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. This process is called unmanaging.

Before you begin

Before you unmanage a Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage system, ensure that there are no active jobs running against the switch.

About this task

When you unmanaged a storage device, Lenovo XClarity Administrator retains certain information about the storage device. That information is reapplied when you manage the same storage device again.

Tip: All demo devices that are optionally added during initial setup are nodes in a chassis. To unmanage the demo devices, unmanage the chassis using the Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable option.

Procedure

To umanage a Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage system, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➤ Storage to display the Storage page.

Step 2. Select one or more Lenovo Storage or Nimble storage systems from the lists of managed switch.

Step 3. Click Unmanage. The Unmanage dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Optional: Select Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable.

Important: When unmanaging demo hardware, ensure that you select this option.

Step 5. Click Unmanage. The Unmanage dialog shows the progress of each step in the unmanagement process.

Step 6. When the unmanagement process is complete, click OK.

Recovering a rack storage device that was not unmanaged correctly

If Lenovo XClarity Administrator is managing a rack storage device, and if XClarity Administrator fails, you can recover the management functions until the management server is restored or replaced. You can recover system management by clearing specific parts of the storage-device configuration that was previously set by XClarity Administrator.

Procedure

Complete one of the following steps to recovery a rack storage device.

• If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the Force management option (see Managing storage devices).

• Remove all user accounts with the prefix “LXCA_” and optionally remove user accounts with the prefix “SYSMGR_” and type “SNMPv3” from the storage device.

What to do next

After XClarity Administrator is restored or replaced, you can manage the storage device again (see Managing storage devices). All information about the storage device (such as system properties) is retained.
Chapter 10. Managing switches

Lenovo XClarity Administrator can manage network switches.

Learn more:

- XClarity Administrator: Discovery
- XClarity Administrator: Managing switches

Before you begin

Attention: Review the switch management considerations before managing a switch. For information, see Switch management considerations.

Note: Flex switches are discovered and managed automatically when you manage the chassis that contains them. You cannot discover and managed Flex switches independent of a chassis.

Certain ports must be available to communicate with the switches. Ensure that all required ports are available before you attempt to manage a switch. For information about ports, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Ensure that the minimum required firmware is installed on each switch that you want to manage using XClarity Administrator. For information about firmware requirements, see Supported firmware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Ensure that you create stored credentials in XClarity Administrator before you manage rack switches. XClarity Administrator uses only stored credentials to authenticate to the rack switches. The stored credential must match an active user account on the device. You can create stored credentials from the management dialogs or from the Stored Credentials page. For more information, see Managing stored credentials.

Management using loopback interfaces is supported for all RackSwitch devices. Ensure that XClarity Administrator has connectivity to the loopback interface, either by adding a static route or advertising the address via a routing protocol. Note that routing cannot be performed between the management port and any data ports (including loopback).

About this task

XClarity Administrator can automatically discover RackSwitch switches in your environment by probing for manageable devices that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator. To discover switches that are in other subnets, specify an IP address or range of IP addresses, or import information from a spreadsheet.

Note: If you upgraded from XClarity Administrator v2.0 to v2.1, the upgrade process converted the manual credential to individual stored credentials for all managed rack switches. Manual credential are not supported for rack switches in XClarity Administrator v2.1 and later.

After the switches are managed by XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator polls each managed switch periodically to collect information, such as inventory, vital product data, and status. You can view and monitor each managed switch and perform management tasks such as launching the management console, and powering on and off.

If the XClarity Administrator looses communication with the switch (for example, due to power loss or network failure or if the switch is offline) while collecting inventory during the management process, the
management completes successfully; however, some inventory information might be incomplete. Either wait for the switch to come online and for XClarity Administrator to poll the switch for inventory or manually collect inventory on the switch from the Switches page by selecting the switch and clicking All Actions → Inventory → Refresh inventory.

**Note:** Switches can be stacked. A **stacked switch** is a group of switches that operate as a single network switch. The stack includes a **master switch** and one or more **member switches**. For Flex switches, you can view and monitor each switch in the stack and collect diagnostic data; however, you cannot perform management tasks (such as firmware updates and server configuration) on any stacked switch. These XClarity Administrator management tasks are disabled for all stacked switches, including the master switch. You can update firmware on the stacked switch directly from master switch CLI. For RackSwitch switches you can view and monitor only the master switch information. The member switches are not discovered by XClarity Administrator.

Management tasks are also disabled for Flex switches that are in protected mode.

A device can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device on the initial XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator. If an error occurs during the unmanagement process, you can select the **Force management** option during management on the new XClarity Administrator.

**Note:** When scanning the network for manageable devices, XClarity Administrator does not know whether a device is already managed by another manager until after it attempts to manage the device.

When a switch is managed either directly using SSH or indirectly through a CMM, the switch is identified as managed by XClarity Administrator, necessary configuration is performed for interaction, and inventory is collected.

**Procedure**

Complete one of the following procedures to manage your RackSwitch switches using XClarity Administrator.

- Discover and manage a large number of switches and other devices using a bulk-import file (see Managing systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- Discover and manage RackSwitch switches that are on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage New Devices page is displayed.
Discover and Manage New Devices

If the following list does not contain the device that you expect, use the Manual Input option to discover the device. For more information about why a device might not be automatically discovered, see the Cannot discover a device help topic.

Manual Input  Bulk Import

Enable encapsulation on all future managed devices Learn More

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed. You can change the columns that are displayed and the default sort order by clicking the Customize Columns icon ( ).

Use the browser refresh button to discover all manageable devices in the XClarity Administrator domain. Discovery might take several minutes.

2. Select one or more switches that you want to manage.
3. Click Manage Selected.
4. Specify the stored credentials for authenticating to the switches.

Tip:
- Click Manage Stored Credentials to create and managed stored credentials in XClarity Administrator (see Managing stored credentials).
- It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

5. (Switches running ENOS only) If set, specify the “enable” password that is used to enter Privileged Exec Mode on the switch.

When you manage a RackSwitch switch running ENOS, access to Privileged Exec Mode on the switch is required. This is used by XClarity Administrator when issuing the “enable” command to the switch. By default, there is no password set for this command on the switch. However, if the switch administrator configured a password for this command for added security, it must be specified for XClarity Administrator to manage the switch successfully.

6. Optional: (Switches running ENOS only) Choose whether to enable HTTPS on the switch by clicking Advanced and then selecting Enable HTTPS. This is enabled by default.

Notes:
- For switches running CNOS, HTTPS must be enabled on the switch before management (see Switch management considerations).
– If you choose not to enable HTTPS, the current setting on the switch is used.
– When the switch is ununmanaged, XClarity Administrator restores HTTPS to the original setting.

7. Optional: Choose whether to replace the NTP configuration on the switch with the NTP configuration and time zone settings that are defined for Lenovo XClarity Administrator by clicking Advanced and then selecting Configure NTP clients to use the NTP settings from the management server. This is enabled by default.

**Notes:**
– If you choose not to replace the NTP configuration and time zone, the timestamp for log entries and events might become out of synch between the managed switch and the management server.
– When the switch is ununmanaged, XClarity Administrator restores NTP configuration and time zone to the original settings.

8. Click **Change** to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

**Notes:**
– You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
– If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

9. Click **Manage**.

A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the job progress.

10. When the process is complete, click **OK**.

The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.

If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the **Force management** option.

– If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

  **Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the **Force management** option.

– If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.

– If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

• Discover and manage RackSwitch switches that are not on the same IP subnet as XClarity Administrator by manually specifying IP addresses:

1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Discover and Manage New Devices**. The Discover and Manage page is displayed.

2. Select **Manual Input**.

3. Specify the network addresses of the switches that you want to manage:

   – Click **Single System**, and enter a single IP address domain name, or fully-qualified domain name (FQDN).
**Note:** To specify an FQDN, ensure that a valid domain name is specified on Network Access page (see Configuring network access).

- Click **Multiple Systems**, and enter a range of IP addresses. To add another range, click the **Add** icon (▲). To remove a range, click the **Remove** icon (▼).

4. Click **OK**.

5. Specify the stored credentials for authenticating to the switches.

**Tip:**
- Click **Manage Stored Credentials** to create and managed stored credentials in XClarity Administrator (see Managing stored credentials).
- It is recommended to use a supervisor or administrator account to manage the device. If an account with lower level authority is used, management might fail, or management might succeed but other future XClarity Administrator operations on the device might fail (particularly if the device is managed without managed authentication).

6. (Switches running ENOS only) If set, specify the “enable” password that is used to enter Privileged Exec Mode on the switch.

When you manage a RackSwitch switch running ENOS, access to Privileged Exec Mode on the switch is required. This is used by XClarity Administrator when issuing the “enable” command to the switch. By default, there is no password set for this command on the switch. However, if the switch administrator configured a password for this command for added security, it must be specified for XClarity Administrator to manage the switch successfully.

7. Optional: (Switches running ENOS only) Choose whether to enable HTTPS on the switch by clicking **Advanced** and then selecting **Enable HTTPS**. This is enabled by default.

**Notes:**
- For switches running CNOS, HTTPS must be enabled on the switch before management (see Switch management considerations).
- If you choose not to enable HTTPS, the current setting on the switch is used.
- When the switch is ununmanaged, XClarity Administrator restores HTTPS to the original setting.

8. Optional: Choose whether to replace the NTP configuration on the switch with the NTP configuration and time zone settings that are defined for Lenovo XClarity Administrator by clicking **Advanced** and then selecting **Configure NTP clients to use the NTP settings from the management server**. This is enabled by default.

**Notes:**
- If you choose not to replace the NTP configuration and time zone, the timestamp for log entries and events might become out of synch between the managed switch and the management server.
- When the switch is ununmanaged, XClarity Administrator restores NTP configuration and time zone to the original settings.

9. Click **Change** to change the role groups that are to be assigned to the devices.

**Notes:**
- You can select from a list of role groups that are assigned to the current user.
- If you do not change the role groups, the default role groups are used. For more information about the default role groups, see Changing the default permissions.

10. Click **Manage**.

A dialog is displayed that shows the progress of this management process. To ensure that the process completes successfully, monitor the job progress.
11. When the process is complete, click OK.

The device is now managed by XClarity Administrator, which automatically polls the managed device on a regular schedule to collect updated information, such as inventory.

If management was not successful due to one of the following error conditions, repeat this procedure using the Force management option.

– If the managing XClarity Administrator failed and cannot be recovered.

**Note:** If the replacement XClarity Administrator instance uses the same IP address as the failed XClarity Administrator, you can manage the device again using the RECOVERY_ID account and password (if applicable) and the Force management option.

– If the managing XClarity Administrator was taken down before the devices were unmanaged.

– If the devices were not unmanaged successfully.

**Attention:** Devices can be managed by only one XClarity Administrator instance at a time. Management by multiple XClarity Administrator instances is not supported. If a device is managed by one XClarity Administrator, and you want to manage it with another XClarity Administrator, you must first unmanage the device from the original XClarity Administrator, and then manage it with the new XClarity Administrator.

**What to do next**

- Discover and manage additional devices.
- Add the newly managed devices to the appropriate rack to reflect the physical environment (see Managing racks).
- Monitor hardware status and details (see Viewing the status of switches).
- Monitor events (see Working with events).

**Switch management considerations**

Before managing a switch, review the following important considerations.

For information about port requirements, see Port availability in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

RackSwitch devices can be managed using either a management port or one of the data ports. RackSwitch devices running CNOS can be managed only on interfaces that belong to either “management” or “default” VRF.

**Note:** Managing RackSwitch devices using IPv6 link local through a data port or management port is not supported.

**XClarity events and SNMP trap configuration**

When a RackSwitch device running ENOS (any version) is managed, the SNMP trap source is set to the interface that has the IP address that is used for management.

When a RackSwitch device running CNOS v10.8.1 or later is managed, the SNMP trap source VRF is checked and changed to match the port that is used for management.

For RackSwitch devices running CNOS earlier than v10.8.1, XClarity Administrator requires the SNMP trap source to be the VRF that is connected to the port that is used for management. The default value “all” allows either management or data ports to be used. If the switch configuration does not use the default value, it must be changed to match the port that is used for management.
• If the management port is used for management, set the SNMP trap source VRF to “all” or “management.”
• If one of the data ports is used for management, set the SNMP trap source VRF to “all” or “default.”

**RackSwitch switches running CNOS**

HTTPS must be enabled for management, and SLP must be enabled for discovery.

**Note:** HTTPS is enabled by default on CNOS. If you changed the default configuration of restApi (using the `feature restApi http` command), you can change it back to HTTPS using the `feature restApi` command. To check the current status, use the `display restApi server` command. The output reflects the current status. If the port number is followed by “(HTTP)”, it means HTTPS is disabled. Otherwise, the port should be 443.

When a RackSwitch device is unmanaged, XClarity Administrator might not restore the “prefer” option to the value that it was before the device was managed depending on the CNOS firmware version.

**RackSwitch switches running ENOS**

• If RackSwitch switches are on a different network than XClarity Administrator, the network must be configured to allow inbound UDP through ports 161 and 162 so that XClarity Administrator can receive events and manage those devices.
• SSH must be enabled for management, and SLP must be enabled for discovery. HTTPS is optional; however, must be enabled to launch the switch web interface.
• Depending on the firmware version of the RackSwitch switch, you might need to enable multicast SLP forwarding and SSH on each RackSwitch switch manually using the following commands before the switch can be discovered and managed by XClarity Administrator. For more information, see the Rack switches in the System x online documentation.
  - `ip slp enable`
  - `ssh enable`
• When a RackSwitch switch is managed, XClarity Administrator modifies the following configuration settings. Changing these settings on a managed switch might disrupt connectivity and prevent management actions from performing correctly. When a RackSwitch switch is unmanaged, the configuration settings are restored to their original values (before management).
  - `snmp-server access 32`
  - `snmp-server group 16`
  - `snmp-server notify 16`
  - `snmp-server target-parameters 16`
  - `snmp-server target-address 16`
  - `snmp-server trap-source <IP interface>`
  - `snmp-server user 16`
  - `snmp-server version <v3only or v1v2v3>`
  - `ntp enable`
  - `ntp primary-server <hostname or IP address> MGT`
  - `ntp secondary-server <hostname or IP address> MGT`
  - `ntp interval 1500`
  - `ntp offset 500`
  - `access https enable`

You can use XClarity Administrator to modify the following configuration settings by modifying the support contact information, name, or location properties for the switch. The location is modified when adding the switch to a rack.
  - `hostname "<device_name>"`
  - `snmp-server location "Location:<location>,Room:<room>,Rack:<rack>,LRU:<lru>"`
  - `snmp-server contact "<contact_name>"`
Viewing the status of switches

You can view the status of all switches that Lenovo XClarity Administrator manages.

Learn more:

- XClarity Administrator: Inventory
- XClarity Administrator: Monitoring

About this task

The following status icons are used to indicate the overall health of the device. If the certificates do not match, "(Untrusted)" is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Untrusted). If there is a connectivity issue or a connection to the device is not trusted, "(Connectivity)" is appended to the status of each applicable device, for example Warning (Connectivity).

- Critical
  - One or more temperature sensors are in the failure range.
  - Fan modules or fans are not working correctly, as follows:
    - RackSwitch G8124-E: One or more fans are running at less than or equal to 100 RPM.
    - RackSwitch G8052: Fewer than three fan modules are in good state. If the fans in that module are running at more than 500 RPM, a fan module is considered good.
    - RackSwitch G8264, G8264CS, G8332, G8272: Fewer than four fan modules are in good state. If the fans in that module are running at more than 500 RPM, a fan module is considered good.
    - RackSwitch G8296: Fewer than three fan modules are in good state. If the fans in that module are running at more than 480 RPM, a fan module is considered good.
    - RackSwitch G7028, G7052: Fewer than three fan modules are in good state. If the fans in that module are running at more than 500 RPM, a fan module is considered good.
  - One power supply is off.

- Warning
  - One or more temperature sensors are in the warning range.
  - A panic dump exists in flash.

- Pending

- Informational

- Normal
  - All temperature sensors are in the normal range.
  - All fan modules or fans are working correctly.
  - Both power supplies are on.
  - No panic dump in flash.

- Offline

- Unknown

A device can be in one of the following power states:

- On
- Off
- Shutting down
- Standby
- Hibernate
- Unknown

Procedure
To view the status for a managed switch, complete one or more of the following actions:

- From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Dashboard**. The dashboard page is displayed with an overview and status of the all managed switches and other resources.

- From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed switches. You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field and click the status icons to list only those switches that meet the selected criteria.

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- View detailed information about the switch (see Viewing the details of a switch).
- View a Flex switch in graphical rack or chassis view by clicking All Actions → Views → Show in Rack View or All Actions → Views → Show in Chassis View.
- View a RackSwitch switch in graphical rack view by clicking All Actions → Views → Show in Rack View.
- Launch the management controller web interface for the switch by clicking the IP address link (see Launching the management controller interface for a switch).
- Launch the switch SSH console (see Launching a remote SSH session for a switch).
- Power the switch on and off (see Powering on and off a switch).
- (RackSwitch switches only) Modify system information by selecting a switch and clicking All Actions → Inventory → Edit Properties.
- Refresh inventory by selecting a server and clicking All Actions → Inventory → Refresh Inventory.
- Export detailed information about one or more switches to a single CSV file by selecting the switches and clicking All Actions → Inventory → Export Inventory (see Excluding events).
  
  **Note:** You can export inventory data for a maximum of 60 devices at one time.

**Tip:** When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.
- Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking the Exclude events icon (_exclude_events) (see Excluding events).
- (Flex switches only) Resolve issues that might arise between the XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the CMM in the chassis where the switch is installed by selecting a switch and clicking All Actions → Security → Resolve Untrusted Certificates (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).
- Add or remove a switch from a static resource group by clicking All Actions → Groups → Add to Group or All Actions → Groups → Remove from Group.

---

**Viewing the details of a switch**

You can view detailed information about a managed switch from Lenovo XClarity Administrator, including the firmware levels and IP addresses.

**Learn more:**
- [XClarity Administrator: Inventory](#)
- [XClarity Administrator: Monitoring](#)

**Procedure**

To view the details of a specific switch that is managed by XClarity Administrator, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware → Switches. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed.
Step 2. Click the switch in the **Switches** column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that switch.

Step 3. Complete one or more of the following steps to view detailed inventory information:

**Note:** Some details might not be available for all switches.

- Click **Summary** to view a summary of the switch, including system information and firmware (see Viewing the status of storage devices).
- Click **Inventory Details** to view details about the switch components, including:
  - Firmware levels for the switch
Details of the management-controller network, such as the hostname, IPv4 address, IPv6 address, and MAC addresses

Asset details of the switch

- Click **I/O Connectivity** to display connectivity details for the selected switch and the associated network adapters that are installed in switch.
- Click **Alerts** to display alerts in the alerts list that are related to the switch (see Working with alerts).
- Click **Event Log** to display the events in the event log that are related to the switch (see Working with events).
- Click **Configuration Files** to backup and restore the switch configuration (see Backing up and restoring switch-configuration data).
- Click **Deployment History** to view information about switch-configuration templates that have been deployed to switch (see Viewing switch-configuration deployment history).
- Click **Jobs** to display configuration-data files for the switch (see Monitoring jobs).
- Click **Ports** to display the status and configuration of all ports in a managed switch, and to enable or disable switch ports.

**Note:** For Flex switches, click the **Refresh** icon (🔄) to collect the current port data. Collecting data might take several minutes.

- Click **Light Path** to display the current state of each LED on the switch.
- Click **Power and Thermal** to display information about temperature, power supplies, and fans.

**Tip:** To collect the latest power and thermal data, use the refresh button on your web browser. Collecting data might take several minutes.

### What to do next

In addition to displaying summary and detailed information about a switch, you can perform the following actions:

- View a Flex switch in graphical rack or chassis view by clicking **Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View** or **Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Chassis View**.
- View a RackSwitch switch in graphical rack view by clicking **Actions ➔ Views ➔ Show in Rack View**.
- Launch the management controller web interface for the switch by clicking the **IP address** link (see Launching the management controller interface for a switch).
- Launch the switch SSH console (see Launching a remote SSH session for a switch).
- Power the switch on and off (see Powering on and off a switch).
- (RackSwitches only) Modify system information by selecting a switch and clicking **Edit Properties**.
- Export detailed information about the switch to a CSV file by clicking the **Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Export Inventory**.

**Notes:**

- For more information about inventory data in the CSV file, see the `GET /switches/<UUID_list>` REST API in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- When importing a CSV file into Microsoft Excel, Excel treats text values that contain only numbers as numeric values (for example, for UUIDs). Format each cell as text to correct this error.

- Exclude events that are of no interest to you from all pages on which events are displayed by clicking **Actions ➔ Service Reset ➔ Excluded Events** (see Excluding events).
- Resolve issues that might arise between the XClarity Administrator security certificate and the security certificate of the RackSwitch or the CMM in the chassis where the Flex System switch is installed by selecting a switch and clicking **Actions → Security → Resolve Untrusted Certificates** (see Resolving an untrusted server certificate).

**Powering on and off a switch**

You can power on and off and restart a Flex System or RackSwitch switch from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to power on or off a managed switch.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

**Switches**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Switch</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Name/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/Bay</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lenovo-vtep</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.136.10, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Rack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 01</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.48.157,10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 03</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.158,10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Select the switch to be powered on or off or restarted.

**Step 3.** Click **All Actions**, and then click one of the following power actions:

- **Power on** (Flex System switches only)
- **Power Off** (Flex System switches only)
- **Restart**. The switch is restarted after all currently running operations are complete. Operations that are started while the switch is restarting are rejected.

**Enabling and disabling switch ports**

You can enable or disable specific ports on a RackSwitch or Flex System switch.

**Procedure**

To enable or disable switch ports, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware → Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.
Step 2. Click the switch in the **Switches** column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that switch.

Step 3. Click **Ports** in the left navigation to display the status and configuration of all ports in the switch:

**Note:** For Flex switches, click the **Refresh** icon ( gắng) to collect the current port data. Collecting data might take several minutes.

Step 4. Select the port, and then click the **Enable** icon ( güç) or **Disable** icon ( güç).

**Backing up and restoring switch-configuration data**

You can use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to back up and restore configuration data for your RackSwitch and Flex System switches. You can also export switch-configuration files to your local system and import switch-configuration files into XClarity Administrator.
Backing up switch-configuration data

You can back up configuration data for a Flex System or RackSwitch switch. When backing up a switch, the configuration data is imported into Lenovo XClarity Administrator from the target switch as a switch-configuration file.

Procedure

To back up configuration data for a managed switch, complete the following steps.

• For a single switch:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.
     
     You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

     2. Click the switch in the **Switches** column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that switch.

     3. Click **Configuration** to view the configuration files for the switch.

     4. Click **Back up configuration data** icon (_imgs) to back up the switch configuration.

     5. (Optional) Specify a name for the switch-configuration file.

        For CNOS devices, the file name can contain alphanumeric characters and the following special characters: underscore (_), hyphen (-) and period (.). For ENOS switches, the file name can contain alphanumeric characters and any special characters.

        If a file name is not specified, the following default name is used: “<switch_name>_<IP_address>_<timestamp>.cfg.”

     6. (Optional) Add a comment that describes the backup.

     7. Click **Back up** to back up with switch-configuration data immediately or click **Schedule** to schedule this backup to run at a later time.

        If you chose to schedule a backup, you can select **Overwrite** to back up the switch-configuration data into the same file at each job run, overwriting its contents. If you choose not to overwrite file, the file names of subsequent backups are appended with a unique number (for example, MyBackup_33.cfg).

        **Note:** When scheduling a backup, you cannot choose dynamic file names or comments for each scheduled job.

• For multiple switches:
1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

2. Select one or more switches.

3. Click **All Actions ➔ Configuration ➔ Backup configuration file**.

4. (Optional) Specify a name for the switch-configuration file.
   - For CNOS devices, the file name can contain alphanumeric characters and the following special characters: underscore (_), hyphen (-) and period (.). For ENOS switches, the file name can contain alphanumeric characters and any special characters.
   - If a file name is not specified, the following default name is used: “<switch_name>_<IP_address>_<timestamp>.cfg.”

5. (Optional) Add a comment that describes the backup.

6. Click **Back up** to back up with switch-configuration data immediately or click **Schedule** to schedule this backup to run at a later time.
   - If you chose to schedule a backup, you can select **Overwrite** to back up the switch-configuration data into the same file at each job run, overwriting its contents. If you choose not to overwrite file, the file names of subsequent backups are appended with a unique number (for example, MyBackup_33.cfg).

   **Note:** When scheduling a backup, you cannot choose dynamic file names or comments for each scheduled job.

**What to do next**

When the backup process is complete, the switch-configuration file is added to the **Configuration Files** tab on the switch details page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions on selected switch-configuration file:

- Restore the switch configuration by selecting the switch-configuration file and clicking the **Restore configuration data** icon.
- Delete switch configuration files from XClarity Administrator by clicking the **Delete** icon.
- Export switch-configuration files to your local system by selecting the files and clicking the **Export configuration file** icon.
- Import switch-configuration files to XClarity Administrator by clicking the **Import configuration file** icon.

**Restoring switch-configuration data**

You can restore configuration data that has been backed up or imported into Lenovo XClarity Administrator for a Flex System or RackSwitch switch. The switch-configuration file is downloaded from XClarity Administrator to the target switch, and the configuration takes effect automatically.

Configuration files are associated with a specific switch. You can restore a configuration file only on the switch with which it is associated. You cannot use a configuration file that was backed up for one switch to restore the configuration on another switch.

**Procedure**

To restore configuration data on a managed switch, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

**Switches**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Switch</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Name/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/Bay</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lenovo-vtep</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.136.10, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Rack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 01</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.48.157, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 03</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.48.158, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2.** Click the switch in the **Switches** column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that switch.

**Switches > lenovo-vtep Details - Summary**

**Switch:** lenovo-vtep  
**User Defined Name:** lenovo-vtep  
**Status:** Critical  
**Power:** On  
**IP Addresses:** 10.240.136.10  
10.240.2.129  
192.168.1.5  
**Groups:**  
**Device name:** lenovo-vtep  
**Product name:** Lenovo RackSwitch G8332  
**Rack Name / Unit:** Totem pole / Unit 39  
**Part number:** BAC-00095-00  
**Serial number:** Y01BCM417021  
**Description:** 32*40 GbE QSFP+  
**Firmware:** 8.4.6  
**Panic dump:** No  
**Uptime:** 103 days, 17:24:08.00  
**Reset reason:** 1  
**Apply Pending:** No  
**Save Pending:** No  
**Memory Utilization:** 24.1%(Total : 4096608208 B, Free : 3105370112 B)  
**CPU Utilization:** 37%

**Step 3.** Click **Configuration Files** to view the configuration files for the switch.  
**Step 4.** Select the configuration file that you want to restore on the switch, and click **Restore configuration data** icon ( ). The Restore dialog is displayed.
Step 5. (Switches running CNOS only) Choose whether to restart the switch after the restore operation completes.

If you choose not to restart the switch automatically, you must manually restart the CNOS switch to activate the restored configuration data. If you wait too long and a save operation occurs (for example, if a port is enabled or disabled), the restore operation is aborted and the running configuration data is used.

Step 6. Click Restore to restore with configuration data on the switch immediately, or click Schedule to schedule this restore job to run at a later time.

**Note:** Take care when scheduling a recurring restore jobs. If your switch resets to an earlier configuration, check the Scheduled Jobs page for scheduled restore jobs.

**Exporting and importing switch-configuration files**

You can export switch-configuration files to your local system and import switch-configuration files into Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

To back up configuration data for a managed switch, complete the following steps.

- **Export switch-configuration files**
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➤ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

     You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

- **Import switch-configuration files**
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➤ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.
You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

### Procedure

#### Step 1.
From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed.

**Switches**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Switch</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Name/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/Bay</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lenovo-vtep</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.138.10, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Rack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 01</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.48.157, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module 03</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>10.240.48.158, 10.10...</td>
<td>Totem pole / Unit...</td>
<td>Not Applicable...</td>
<td>Lenovo Flex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Click the switch in the **Switches** column. The Summary page is displayed, showing the properties and a list of components that are installed in that switch.

3. Click **Configuration** to view the configuration files for the switch.

4. Click **Import configuration file** icon ( ) to back up the switch configuration.

5. Enter the switch-configuration file name or click **Browse** to find the boot file that you want to import.

6. **Optional**: Enter a description for the switch-configuration file.

7. Click **Import**.

   If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded before the upload completes, the import fails.

---

### Launching the management controller interface for a switch

You can launch the management controller web interface for a RackSwitch or Flex System switch running ENOS from Lenovo XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to launch the management controller interface for a switch.

**Note**: Launching any management controller web interface from XClarity Administrator using the Safari web browser is not supported.

**Step 1.**

From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.
Step 2. Select the switch, and click All Actions ➔ Launch ➔ Management Web Interface. The management controller web interface for the switch is displayed.

**Tip:** You can also launch the management controller interface by clicking the IP address link in the IP Address column, and on the switch summary and switch details pages.

Step 3. Log in to the management controller interface.

**Tip:** For Flex switches, use your XClarity Administrator user credentials. For XClarity Administrator switches, use the switch credentials.

### Launching a remote SSH session for a switch

You can launch a remote SSH session for a managed RackSwitch or Flex switch from Lenovo XClarity Administrator. From the remote SSH session, you can use the command-line interface to perform management tasks that are not provided by XClarity Administrator.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that the switch is configured to enable SSH. For RackSwitch switches, SSH is enabled when the switch is managed by XClarity Administrator. For Flex switches, SSH is typically enabled by default. If not enabled, SSH must be enabled before the switch is managed by XClarity Administrator.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to launch a remote SSH session for a managed switch.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Hardware ➔ Switches. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all switches that are installed in managed chassis.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switches that you want to manage. In addition, enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field to further filter the switches that are displayed.
Step 2. Select the switch to launch an SSH session.

Step 3. Click **All Actions ➔ Launch ➔ SSH Console**.

Step 4. If required, log in to the switch using your user ID and password.

### Modifying the system properties for a switch

You can modify the system properties for a specific Flex System or RackSwitch switch.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to modify the system properties.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Switches** to display the Switches page.

Step 2. Select the switch to be updated.

Step 3. Click **All Actions ➔ Inventory ➔ Edit Properties** to display the Edit dialog.

**Edit Properties: Test-G8264-15**

Some of the information below will be saved on the device and some will be saved in IBM Networking Operating System RackSwitch G8294 inventory. It might take a few minutes for your updates to appear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Test-G8264-15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Contact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack</td>
<td>Rackswitch rack test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowest Rack Unit</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 4. Change the following information, as needed.
- Switch name
- Support contact
- Description

**Note:** The location, room, rack, and lowest rack unit properties are updated by XClarity Administrator when you add or remove devices from a rack in the web interface (see Managing racks).
Step 5. Click **Save**.

**Note:** When you change these properties, there might be a short delay before the changes appear in the XClarity Administrator web interface.

---

**Resolving expired or invalid stored credentials for a switch**

When a stored credential becomes expired or inoperable on a device, the status for that device is shown as “Offline.”

**Procedure**

To resolve an expired or invalid stored credential for a switch, complete the following steps.

1. **Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➞ Switches**. The Switches page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed switches.
2. **Step 2.** Click the **Power** column header to group all offline switches at the top of the table.
   
     You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the switch that you want to manage. In addition, you can enter text (such as a system name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the switches that are displayed.
3. **Step 3.** Select the switch to be resolved.
4. **Step 4.** Click **All Actions ➞ Security ➞ Edit Stored Credentials**.
5. **Step 5.** Change the password for the stored credential or select another stored credential to use for the managed device.

   **Note:** If you managed more than one device using the same stored credentials and you change the password for the stored credentials, that password change affects all devices that are currently using the stored credentials.

---

**Recovering management with a RackSwitch switch after a management server failure**

You can recover management of a RackSwitch switch that was not unmanaged cleanly (for example, due to connectivity issues during unmanagement or failure of the managing Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

**Procedure**

- Manage the switch again using the **Force management** option (see Managing switches).
- To permanently remove XClarity Administrator specific configuration on a RackSwitch switch that was not unmanaged cleanly and will not be managed again, complete these steps.
– Manage the switch again using the **Force management** option (see Managing switches), and then unmanage the switch to clean up the configuration (see Unmanaging a RackSwitch switch).

– (ENOS) Log in to the switch using the switch console port or an SSH or telnet session, and run the following configuration commands in the order specified to clear the switch configuration.

```
no snmp-server access 32
no snmp-server group 16
no snmp-server notify 16
no snmp-server target-parameters 16
no snmp-server target-address 16
no snmp-server user 16
```

### Unmanaging a RackSwitch switch

You can remove a RackSwitch switch from management by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. This process is called **unmanaging**.

**Before you begin**

You can enable XClarity Administrator to automatically unmanage devices (including Flex System chassis, Flex System and rack switches, Flex System servers, System x servers, ThinkAgile, and ThinkSystem servers) that are offline for a specific amount of time. This is disabled by default. To enable the automatic unmanagement of offline devices, click **Hardware ➙ Discover and Manage New Devices** from the XClarity Administrator menu, and then click **Edit** next to **Unmanage offline devices is Disabled**. Then, select **Enable unmanage offline devices** and set the time interval. By default, devices are unmanaged after being offline for 24 hours.

Before you unmanage a RackSwitch switch, ensure that there are no active jobs running against the switch.

**About this task**

When you unmanaged a RackSwitch switch, XClarity Administrator retains certain information about the switch. That information is reapplied when you manage the same switch again.

**Tip:** All demo devices that are optionally added during initial setup are nodes in a chassis. To unmanage the demo devices, unmanage the chassis using the **Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable** option.

**Procedure**

To unmanage a RackSwitch switch, complete the following steps.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➙ Switches** to display the Switches page.
2. Select one or more RackSwitch switches from the lists of managed switch.
3. Click **Unmanage Switch**. The Unmanage dialog is displayed.
4. **Optional:** Select **Force unmanage even if the device is not reachable**.
   
   **Important:** When unmanaging demo hardware, ensure that you select this option.

5. **Step 5.** Click **Unmanage**. The Unmanage dialog shows the progress of each step in the unmanagement process.
6. When the unmanagement process is complete, click **OK**.
Recovering a RackSwitch switch that was not unmanaged correctly

If a RackSwitch switch is being managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, and if XClarity Administrator fails, you can recover the management functions until the management server is restored or replaced.

Procedure

- Manage the switch again using the **Force management** option (see Managing switches).
- To permanently remove XClarity Administrator specific configuration on a RackSwitch switch that was not unmanaged cleanly and will not be managed again, complete these steps.
  - Manage the switch again using the **Force management** option (see Managing switches), and then unmanage the switch to clean up the configuration (see Unmanaging a RackSwitch switch).
  - (ENOS) Log in to the switch using the switch console port or an SSH or telnet session, and run the following configuration commands in the order specified to clear the switch configuration.

```bash
no snmp-server access 32
no snmp-server group 16
no snmp-server notify 16
no snmp-server target-parameters 16
no snmp-server target-address 16
no snmp-server user 16
```
Chapter 11. Configuring servers using configuration patterns

Server patterns are used to quickly provision or preprovision multiple servers (rack and tower servers and compute nodes) from a single set of defined configuration settings.

Learn more:
- XClarity Administrator: Bare metal to cluster
- XClarity Administrator: Configuration patterns

Before you begin

After the 90-day free trial expires, you can continue to use XClarity Administrator to manage and monitor your hardware for free; however, you must purchase full-function-enablement licenses for each managed server that supports XClarity Administrator advanced functions to continue using the server configuration function. Lenovo XClarity Pro provides entitlement to service and support and the full-function-enablement license. For more information about purchasing Lenovo XClarity Pro, contact your Lenovo representative or authorized business partner. For more information, see Installing the full-function enablement license in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Review Configuration considerations for important information about configuration support for specific servers and devices.

About this task

You can use server patterns in XClarity Administrator to configure local storage, I/O adapters, boot order, and other baseboard management controller and Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) settings on managed servers. Server patterns also integrate support for virtualizing I/O addresses, so you can virtualize server fabric connections or repurpose servers without disruption to the fabric. You can also initiate SAN-zoning change requests in advance of receiving new hardware by virtualizing (preconfiguring) Fibre Channel addresses.

Procedure

The following figure illustrates the workflow for configuring managed servers. The solid arrows indicate actions taken by you. The dashed arrows indicate actions that are performed automatically by XClarity Administrator.

Step 1. **Create address pools.** An address pool is a defined set of address ranges. Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses address pools to assign IP and I/O addresses to individual servers when the server patterns are deployed to those servers.
For more information about creating address pools, see Defining address pools.

Step 2. **Create category patterns.**

A *category pattern* groups together related firmware settings and can be reused in multiple server patterns. You can create patterns for the following firmware categories:
- System information
- Management interfaces
- Devices and I/O ports
- FC boot targets
- I/O adapter ports

For more information about category patterns, see Working with server patterns.

Step 3. **Create a server pattern.**

A *server pattern* represents pre-OS server configurations, including local storage configuration, I/O adapter configuration, boot settings, and other baseboard management controller and UEFI firmware settings. A server pattern is used as an overall pattern to quickly configure multiple servers at one time.

You can define multiple server patterns to represent different configurations that are used in your data center.

When defining a server pattern, select category patterns and address pools as needed to construct the desired configuration for a specific group of servers. A category pattern groups together related configuration settings that can be reused by multiple server patterns.

You can create a server pattern from scratch for Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers to define the desired configuration before the hardware arrives. Or, you can create a server pattern from an existing managed server. When you create a server pattern from an existing server, XClarity Administrator learns category patterns from the selected server.

For more information about creating server patterns, see Creating a server pattern.

Step 4. **Deploy the server pattern.**

You can deploy a server pattern to one or more individual servers or to groups of servers. For example, you can deploy a server pattern to a chassis so all the compute nodes in that chassis are configured the same. During deployment, XClarity Administrator creates a server profile for each server to which the server pattern was deployed. Each *server profile* represents the specific configuration for a single server. It inherits settings from the server pattern and also contains server-specific information (such as assigned IP addresses and MAC addresses). Because the server profile inherits settings from the server pattern, if you change the server pattern, changes are automatically updated in the server profile. This way, you can maintain common configurations in one place.
Note: The settings on a server can become out of compliance with its server profile if settings are changed without using Configuration Patterns or if an issue occurred during deployment, such as a firmware issue or an invalid setting. You can determine the compliance status of each server from the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page.

You can deploy a server pattern to:

- **Existing servers.** A server profile is created for each server. The server profile is activated after the associated server is rebooted.

- **Empty bays in an existing chassis.** A server profile is created for each empty bay. The server profile that is associated with the empty bay can then be activated after the compute node is physically installed.

- **Placeholder for a chassis that you do not yet have.** You can pre-provision compute nodes in a chassis that you do not yet have by defining a placeholder chassis to act as a target for the server pattern before the hardware arrives. The placeholder chassis bundles all of the server profiles that are created for each empty compute-node bay. So, when the hardware arrives, you can assign the server profiles to all compute nodes in the new chassis by deploying the placeholder chassis to the new chassis. Each server profile is activated after the associated compute node is rebooted.

Note: You can deploy a server pattern to multiple servers; however, multiple patterns cannot be deployed to a single server.

For more information about deploying a server pattern, see Deploying a server pattern to a server and Deploying a placeholder chassis.

**Step 5. Edit the server pattern.**

You use server patterns to control a common configuration from a single place. You no longer update settings directly on servers. Instead, you update category patterns and server patterns, and the changes are automatically deployed to all associated profiles and their servers.

For more information about editing a server pattern, see Modifying a server pattern.

**Configuration considerations**

Before you begin configuring servers through Lenovo XClarity Administrator, review the following important considerations.

- XClarity Administrator v2.8 does not support configuration patterns for ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers in the following situations.
  - If XClarity Administrator v2.7 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20A firmware, and you upgrade to 20B firmware using the baseboard management controller before upgrading to XClarity Administrator v2.8
  - If XClarity Administrator v2.7 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20B firmware before upgrading to XClarity Administrator v2.8
  - If XClarity Administrator v2.8 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20A firmware, and you upgrade to 20B firmware using the baseboard management controller

- The QLogic 8200 2-Port 10GbE SFP+ VFA adapter has invalid values for these settings: iSCSIFirstTargetParameters_iSCSIName, iSCSISecondTargetParameters_iSCSIName and IPv6LinkLocalAddress. You must manually correct these values in the system setup before learning the configuration pattern from the server or correct the values in the learned configuration pattern.

- For Flex System x240 and x440 Compute Nodes with embedded RAID adapters, server patterns that define RAID configuration definitions can be deployed only to one or more servers that do not have
existing RAID configurations. If a server pattern is deployed to a server that has an existing RAID configuration, the existing arrays and volumes are not overwritten. To apply the RAID configuration that is defined in the server pattern, you must first clear the servers existing RAID configuration (see Resetting storage adapters to default values), and then redeploy the server profile by selecting the server and clicking More → Deploy Server Profile.

- The onboard storage controllers in Flex System x220, Flex System x222, and ThinkSystem servers support software-based RAID. However, configuration of software RAID using Configuration Patterns is not supported.
- When configuring RAID using Configuration Patterns, if the server is powered off, the server boots to BIOS/UEFI Setup automatically before activating the server profile.
- For ThinkServer servers, Configuration Patterns are not supported.
- Certain I/O devices cannot be configured using server patterns. For more information, see XClarity Administrator Support – Compatibility webpage.
- If advanced features (such as SPAR, Easy Connect, and stack) are enabled on Flex switches EN4093R, CN4093, SI4093, or SI4091, network configurations might not be applied correctly on internal ports.
- By default, Flex switch SI4093 is shipped with SPAR enabled. If you want to deploy network settings using port patterns to internal ports on these switches, you must manually remove the switch internal ports from SPAR or remove the SPAR configurations from the switch.
- It is recommended that you do not use XClarity Administrator to configure the Converged and ThinkAgile appliances using Configuration Patterns.
- Ensure that all available ports are enabled on the installed adapters before creating the Configuration Patterns from an existing server so that all available ports and settings are included in the pattern. Then, if needed, you can disable any ports using the appropriate settings defined in the pattern. If ports are disabled when the pattern is created, the pattern might not be created correctly and the pattern might not deploy successfully.

### Defining address pools

An address pool is a defined set of address ranges. Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses address pools to assign IP and I/O addresses to individual servers when the server patterns are deployed to those servers.

#### About this task

XClarity Administrator supports IP and I/O address pools.

#### IP address pools

*IP address pools* define ranges of IP addresses for use when configuring the baseboard management controller network interface of your servers. You can use or customize predefined address pools or you can create new pools as needed. When creating server patterns, you can choose which IP address pool to use during deployment. When the server pattern is deployed, IP addresses are allocated from the selected pool and assigned to individual management controllers.

**Note:** If you are satisfied with your management-controller network configuration, do not use this option.

**Attention:**

- Ensure that you select an IP address subrange that does not conflict with existing I/O addresses in your data center.
- Ensure that the IP addresses in the specified ranges are part of the same subnetwork and are reachable by XClarity Administrator.
• Ensure that the IP addresses in the specified ranges are unique for each XClarity Administrator domain and existing IP management tools to prevent address conflicts.

The overall address pool range is derived from the specified routing prefix length and the gateway or initial range. You can create pools of different sizes based on the specific routing prefix length, but overall pool ranges must be unique within the XClarity Administrator domain. Ranges are then created from the overall pool range.

Address ranges can be used to separate hosts (for example, by operating system type, workload types, and business type). Address ranges can also be tied to organizational network rules.

**Ethernet address pools**

*Ethernet address pools* are collections of unique MAC addresses that can be assigned to network adapters when configuring servers. You can use or customize predefined address pools as needed, or you can create new pools. When creating server patterns, you can choose which Ethernet address pool is to be used during deployment. When the server pattern is deployed, addresses are allocated from the selected pool and assigned to individual adapter ports.

The following predefined MAC addresses pool is available:

- Lenovo MAC address pool

For a list of MAC address ranges in this pool, see *Ethernet address (MAC) pools*.

**Fibre Channel address pools**

*Fibre Channel address pools* are collections of unique WWNN and WWPN addresses that can be assigned to Fibre Channel adapters when configuring servers. You can use or customize predefined address pools as needed, or you can create new pools. When creating server patterns, you can choose which Fibre Channel address pool is to be used during deployment. When the server pattern is deployed, addresses are allocated from the selected pool and assigned to individual adapter ports.

The following predefined Fibre Channel addresses pools are available:

- Lenovo WWN addresses
- Brocade WWN addresses
- Emulex WWN addresses
- QLogic WWN addresses

For a list of WWN address ranges in these pools, see *Fibre Channel address (WWN) pools*.

The range of addresses in the address pools must be unique within the XClarity Administrator domain. XClarity Administrator ensures that the defined ranges and assigned addresses are unique within its management domain.

**Important:** In large environments with multiple XClarity Administrator instances, ensure that unique address ranges are used by each XClarity Administrator to prevent address duplication.

Ethernet and Fibre Channel address pools are used with I/O adapter virtual addressing to assign organizationally unique I/O addresses. When you create a server pattern for a compute node, you can enable virtual addressing as part of the devices and I/O adapter configuration. When virtual addressing is enabled, addresses are assigned from the Ethernet and Fibre Channel address pools to prevent address conflicts.

**Restriction:** Virtual addressing is supported for only Flex System compute nodes. Standalone rack and tower servers are not supported.

For information about creating server patterns, see *Creating a server pattern*. 
Creating an IP address pool

An IP address pool defines a range of IP addresses for use when configuring the baseboard-management-controller network interface of your servers. When the associated server pattern is deployed, IP addresses are allocated from the specified pool and assigned to individual servers.

About this task

The data in the Overall Network Information table on the New IP Address Pool dialog is derived from the specified subnet mask and gateway or initial range. You can create pools of different sizes based on the specific subnet mask, but overall pool ranges must be unique within the management domain. Ranges are then created from the overall pool range. All ranges must be part of the same sub network and are bound by the limits shown in the Overall Network Information table.

The pool and ranges have Lenovo XClarity Administrator scope. In large environments with multiple XClarity Administrator instances, create unique pools and ranges for each XClarity Administrator to avoid address conflicts and to avoid address conflicts with existing IP management tools. Ranges can also be used to separate hosts (for example, by operating system type, workload type, and business function) and to tie organization network rules.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create an IP address pool.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Address Pools. The Configuration Patterns: Address Pools page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the IP Address Pools tab.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ). The New IP Address Pools Wizard dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Fill in the following information.
   • Name and description for the address pool.
   • Choose to use IPv4 or IPv6 addresses.
   • Select a subnet mask (for IPv4) or a routing prefix length (for IPv6).
   • Specify the gateway address. The network information values are derived from the specified subnet mask and gateway or initial range and are filled in the table.
   • Add one or more ranges of addresses:
     1. Click Add Range to add a range of addresses. The New Add IP Address Range dialog is displayed.
     2. Enter a range name, first address, and range size. The last address is calculated automatically.
     3. Click OK. The range is added to the Define IP pool address ranges table, and the fields in the summary section are updated automatically.

You can edit the range by clicking the Edit icon ( ) or remove the range by clicking the Remove icon ( ).

Step 5. Click Create.

What to do next

The new IP address pool is listed in the table on the IP Address Pools page:
From this page, you can perform the following actions on a selected address pool:

- Modify the address pool by clicking the **Edit** icon (%).
- Rename the address pool by clicking the **Rename** icon.
- Delete the address pool by clicking the **Delete** icon (%).
- View details about the address pool, including a mapping between the virtual addresses and the installed adapter’s ports and reserved virtual addresses, by clicking the pool name in the **Pool Name** column.

### Creating an Ethernet address pool

**Ethernet address pools** are collections of unique media access control (MAC) addresses that can be assigned to network adapters. You can use or customize predefined address pools as needed, or you can create new address pools. When you create a server pattern, if you enable virtual addressing for Ethernet adapters, you can choose which Ethernet address pool is to be used when the pattern is deployed. When the associated server pattern is deployed, MAC addresses are allocated from the selected address pool and assigned to individual network adapters in the servers.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create an Ethernet address pool.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Address Pools**. The Configuration Patterns: Address Pools page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Ethernet Address Pools** tab.

**Step 3.** Click the **Create** icon (%). The New Ethernet (MAC) Address Pools dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** Enter a name and description for the address pool.

**Step 5.** Add one or more ranges of addresses:

- a. Click **Add Range** to add a range of addresses. The Ethernet (MAC) Address Range dialog is displayed.
- b. Enter a range name, first MAC address, and range size.
  
  The last MAC address is calculated automatically.
- c. Click **Add**.
  
  The range is added to the **Define Ethernet (MAC) pool address ranges** table, and the fields in the summary section are updated automatically.

  You can edit the range by clicking the **Edit** icon (%), or remove the range by clicking the **Remove** icon (%).

**Step 6.** Click **Save**.
What to do next

The new Ethernet address pool is listed in the Ethernet Address Pools page.

**Configuration Patterns: Address Pools**

From this page, you can perform the following actions on a selected address pool:

- Modify the address pool by clicking the **Edit** icon (~).  
- Rename the address pool by clicking the **Rename** icon.  
- Delete the address pool by clicking the **Delete** icon (~).  
- View details about the address pool, including a mapping between the virtual addresses and the installed adapter’s ports and reserved virtual addresses, by clicking the pool name in the **Pool Name** column.

**Ethernet address (MAC) pools**

Ethernet address pools are collections of unique media access control (MAC) addresses that can be assigned to network adapters. You can use the following predefined address pool in your server patterns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>Starting address</th>
<th>Ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:00:00</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:1C:70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:1C:71</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:38:E1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 3</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:38:E2</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:55:52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 4</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:55:53</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:71:C3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:71:C4</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:8E:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:8E:35</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:AA:A5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:AA:A6</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:C7:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:C7:17</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:E3:87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:E3:88</td>
<td>00:1A:64:76:FF:F8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Creating a Fibre Channel address pool**

Fibre Channel address pools are collections of unique World Wide Node Name (WWNN) and World Wide Port Name (WWPN) addresses that can be assigned to Fibre Channel adapters. You can use or customize predefined address pools as needed, or you can create new pools. When creating server patterns, if you enable virtual addressing for Ethernet adapters, you can choose which Fibre Channel address pool is to be used when the pattern is deployed. When the associated server pattern is deployed, WWNN and WWPN addresses are allocated from the pool and assigned to individual servers.
Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a Fibre Channel address pool.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Address Pools. The Configuration Patterns: Address Pools page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Fibre Channel Address Pools tab.

Step 3. Click the Create icon ( ). The Fibre Channel Address Pools dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Enter a name and description for the address pool.

Step 5. Add one or more ranges of addresses:
   a. Click Add Range to add a range of addresses. The Fibre Channel (WWN) Address Range dialog is displayed.
   b. Enter a range name, range size, and the first address for each fabric.
   c. Click Add.
      The last addresses are calculated automatically.
   d. Click Add.

The range is added to the Define Fibre Channel pool address ranges table, and the fields in the summary section are updated automatically.

You can edit the range by clicking the Edit icon ( ) or remove the range by clicking the Remove icon ( ).

Step 6. Click Save.

What to do next

The new Fibre Channel address pool is listed in the Fibre Channel Address Pools table.

From this page, you can perform the following actions on a selected address pool:
• Modify the address pool by clicking the Edit icon ( ).
• Delete the address pool by clicking the Delete icon ( ).
• View details about the address pool, including a mapping between the virtual addresses and the installed adapter’s ports and reserved virtual addresses, by clicking the pool name in the **Pool Name** column.

**Fibre Channel address (WWN) pools**

Fibre Channel address pools are collections of unique World Wide Node Name (WWNN) and World Wide Port Name (WWPN) addresses that can be assigned to Fibre Channel adapters. You can use the following predefined address pools in your server patterns.

Table 5 “Brocade WWN address pool” on page 304 lists the Brocade World Wide Name (WWN) address pools. Each Brocade range contains 1,864,135 addresses.

Table 6 “Emulex WWN address pool” on page 305 lists the Emulex WWN address pools. Each Emulex range contains 1,864,135 addresses.

Table 7 “Lenovo WWN address pool” on page 306 lists the Lenovo WWN address pools. Each Lenovo WWN range contains 116,508 addresses.

Table 8 “QLogic WWN address pool” on page 307 lists the QLogic WWN address pools. Each QLogic WWN range contains 116,508 addresses.

**Table 5. Brocade WWN address pool**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fabric A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>2B: FA:00:05:1E:00:00:00</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:1C:71: C6</td>
<td>2B: FC:00:05:1E:00:00:00</td>
<td>2B: FC:00:05:1E:1C:71: C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:38: E3:8D</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:38: E3:8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:8E:38: E2</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:8E:38: E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:AA:AA: A9</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:AA:AA: A9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:AA:AA: AA</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:70</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:AA:AA: AA</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:8E:37</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:8E:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:8E:38: E3:8E</td>
<td>2B:FA:00:05:1E:FF:FF: FE</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:8E:38</td>
<td>2B:FC:00:05:1E:FF:FF: FE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fabric B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>2B: FB:00:05:1E:00:00:00</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:1C:71: C6</td>
<td>2B: FD:00:05:1E:00:00:00</td>
<td>2B: FD:00:05:1E:1C:71: C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:38: E3:8D</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:38: E3:8D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5. Brocade WWN address pool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:8E:38: E2</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:8E:38: E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:AA:AA: A9</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:AA:AA: A9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2B:FB:00:05:1E:8E:37</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2B:FD:00:05:1E:8E:37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6. Emulex WWN address pool

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fabric A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:00:00:00</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:1C:71: C6</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:00:00:00</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:1C:71: C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:38: E3:8D</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:1C:71: C7</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:38: E3:8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 3</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:38: E3:8E</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:55:55:54</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:38: E3:8E</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:55:55:54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 4</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:55:55:55</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:71: C7:1B</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:55:55:55</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:71: C7:1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:8E:38: E2</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:8E:38: E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:AA:AA: A9</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:8E:38: E3</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:AA:AA: A9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:AA:AA: AA</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C:70</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:AA:AA: AA</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C:70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:E3:8E:37</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:71: C7:1C:71</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:E3:8E:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:8E:38: E3:8E:38</td>
<td>2F:FE:00:00: C9:FF:FF: FE</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:8E:38: E3:8E:38</td>
<td>2F:FC:00:00: C9:FF:FF: FE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Fabric B         |                       |                     |                       |                     |
| Range 1          | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:00:00:00 | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:1C:71: C6 | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:00:00:00 | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:1C:71: C6 |
| Range 2          | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:1C:71: C7 | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:38: E3:8D | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:1C:71: C7 | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:38: E3:8D |
| Range 3          | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:38: E3:8E | 2F:FF:00:00: C9:55:55:54 | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:38: E3:8E | 2F:FD:00:00: C9:55:55:54 |
### Table 6. Emulex WWN address pool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range 4</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:55:55:55</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:71:C7:1B</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:55:55:55</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:71:C7:1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:71:C7:1C</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:E2</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:71:C7:1C</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:8E:38:E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:E3</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:A9</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:E3</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:AA:AA:A9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
<td>2F:FF:00:00:C9:AA:AA:AA</td>
<td>2F:FD:00:00:C9:8E:38:FE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 7. Lenovo WWN address pool

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fabric A</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:01:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:01:00:00:0-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:01:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:03:8E:3-7</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:01:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:03:8E:3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 3</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:03:8E:3-7</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:05:55:5-3</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:03:8E:3-7</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:05:55:5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:07:1C:6F</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:08:1C:70</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:07:1C:6F</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:08:1C:70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:0C:71:C3</td>
<td>20:80:00:50:76:0E:38:DF</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:0C:71:C3</td>
<td>21:80:00:50:76:0E:38:DF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fabric B</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>20:81:00:50:76:20:00:0-0</td>
<td>20:81:00:50:76:21:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:81:00:50:76:20:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:81:00:50:76:21:00:00:0-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>20:81:00:50:76:21:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>20:81:00:50:76:23:8E:3-7</td>
<td>21:81:00:50:76:21:00:00:0-0</td>
<td>21:81:00:50:76:23:8E:3-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7. Lenovo WWN address pool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN starting address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Table 8. QLogic WWN address pool

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fabric A</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>20:80:00:00:00:00:00:00</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:01:C7:1B</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:00:00:00</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:01:C7:1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:01:C7:1C</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:03:8E:37</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:01:C7:1C</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:03:8E:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 4</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:05:55:54</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:05:55:54</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:05:55:54</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:05:55:54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:07:1C:70</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:07:1C:6F</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:07:1C:70</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:07:1C:6F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 6</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:08:00:E3:8C</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:08:A7</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:08:E3:8C</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:08:A7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0A:AA:A8</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0C:71:C3</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0A:AA:A8</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0C:71:C3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0C:71:C4</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0E:38:DF</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0C:71:C4</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0E:38:DF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0E:38:E0</td>
<td>20:80:00:E0:8B:0F:FF:FB</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0E:38:E0</td>
<td>21:80:00:E0:8B:0F:FF:FB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fabric B</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 1</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:20:00:00</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:21:C7:1B</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:20:00:00</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:21:C7:1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 2</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:21:C7:1C</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:23:8E:37</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:21:C7:1C</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:23:8E:37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8. QLogic WWN address pool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predefined range</th>
<th>WWNN starting address</th>
<th>WWNN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
<th>WWPN ending address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range 4</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:25:55:54</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:27:1C:5F</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:25:55:54</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:27:1C:5F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 5</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:27:1C:70</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:28: E3:8B</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:27:1C:70</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:28: E3:8B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 7</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2A:AA: A8</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2C:71: C3</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2A:AA: A8</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2C:71: C3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 8</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2C:71: C4</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2E:38: DF</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2C:71: C4</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2E:38: DF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range 9</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2E:38: E0</td>
<td>20:81:00:E0:8B:2F:FF: FB</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2E:38: E0</td>
<td>21:81:00:E0:8B:2F:FF: FB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with server patterns

A server pattern represents pre-OS server configuration, including local storage, I/O adapter, SAN boot, and other baseboard-management-controller and UEFI firmware settings. Server patterns also integrate support for virtualizing I/O addresses so that you can virtualize server fabric connections or repurpose servers without disruption. A server pattern is used as an overall pattern to quickly configure multiple servers at one time.

About this task

You can define multiple server patterns to represent different configurations that are used in your data center.

When defining a server pattern, select or create category patterns and address pools as needed to construct the desired configuration for a specific group of servers. A category pattern defines specific firmware settings that can be reused by multiple server patterns. You can use address pools to define address ranges to use to assign addresses to individual servers when deploying server patterns. There are IP address pools, Ethernet Address (MAC) pools, and Fibre Channel Address (WWN) pools.

When a server pattern is deployed to multiple servers, multiple server profiles are generated automatically (one profile for each server). Each profile inherits settings from the parent server pattern, so you can control a common configuration from a single place.

You can create a server pattern from scratch, defining your desired configuration before your hardware arrives. Or, you can create a server pattern from an existing server and then use that pattern to provision your remaining servers. If you create a server pattern from an existing server, extended category patterns are learned and dynamically created from the current settings for the server. If you want to change the category settings, you can edit them directly from the server patterns.

Attention: When you create a new server pattern from scratch, you must define the boot settings for the servers. When you deploy the server pattern to servers, the existing boot order on the servers is overwritten with the default boot-order settings in the server pattern. If the servers do not start after you deploy a server pattern to those servers, the problem might be that the original boot settings were overwritten by the default boot order settings in the new server pattern. To restore the original boot settings on the servers, see Recovering boot settings after server pattern deployment.
Important: When you create server patterns, ensure that you create them for each type of server. For example, create a server pattern for all Flex System x240 compute nodes and another server pattern for all Flex System x440 compute nodes. Do not deploy a server pattern that was created for one server type to another server type.

**Important:** If the management node fails, you might lose your server patterns. Always back up the management software after you create or modify server patterns (see Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

**Settings for network devices**

Some Flex System network devices offer more configuration options in server patterns than others.

Although server patterns can be applied to any network device, some server-patterns functionality is limited to certain network adapters. Additionally, some advanced settings for Ethernet network adapters (such as adapter and port compatibility preferences) are not currently supported.

Server patterns can learn existing configuration data and settings for supported network adapters and can change configuration settings through pattern deployment.

**Category patterns**

The firmware settings are organized into categories that group together related settings. For each category, you can create a category pattern that contains common firmware settings and can be reused by multiple server patterns. Most of the firmware settings that you can configure directly on the baseboard management controller and UEFI can also be configured through category patterns. The firmware settings that are available depend on the server type, your Flex System environment, and the scope of the server pattern.

You can create category patterns separately from server patterns.

Category patterns can be predefined, learned from existing servers, or user-defined.

- **Extended category patterns**
  
  *Extended category patterns* are patterns for some I/O adapter ports, advanced Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI), and baseboard management-controller (BMC) settings that are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create extended category patterns; however, you can edit the patterns after they are created.

  The following Extended UEFI patterns are predefined by XClarity Administrator to optimize your servers for specific environments.
  - ESXi Install Options
  - Efficiency – Favor Performance
  - Efficiency – Favor Power
  - Maximum Performance
  - Minimal Power

- **User-defined category patterns**
  
  *User-defined category patterns* are patterns that you can create, including system information, management interfaces, devices and I/O ports, Fibre Channel boot targets, and I/O adapter ports. You can create the following category patterns:

  - **System information.** Settings include automatically generated system name, location, contacts.
  - **Management interface.** Settings include the automatically generated hostname, IP address, domain name space (DNS), interface speed, and port assignments for the management interface. Duplex settings are not supported by server patterns.
Devices and I/O ports. Settings include console redirection and COM ports. You can use server patterns to enable serial over LAN in the Console Redirection area. However, when serial over LAN is enabled, the only serial-port access mode setting that is supported by server patterns is Dedicated; the Shared and Pre-Boot IPMI settings for serial-port access mode are not available in server patterns.

**Important:** If you create a server pattern from an existing server, and that server has the serial-port access mode setting Shared or Pre-Boot, the device and I/O ports pattern that is learned from the server has the serial-port access mode setting Dedicated.

- Fibre Channel boot targets. Settings include specific primary and secondary Fibre Channel WWN boot targets.
- Ports. Settings include I/O adapters and ports for configuring fabric interconnects.

**Creating a server pattern**

When you create a server pattern, you define the configuration characteristics for a specific type of server. You can create a server pattern from scratch using default settings or using settings from an existing server.

**About this task**

Before you create a server pattern, consider the following suggestions.

- The first time that you create a server pattern, consider creating it from an existing server. When you create a server pattern from an existing server, Lenovo XClarity Administrator learns and creates extended category patterns for some I/O adapter ports, UEFI, and baseboard management controller settings. Then, those category patterns are available for use in any server pattern that you create later. For more information about category patterns, see Defining firmware settings.
- Identify groups of servers that have the same hardware options and that you want to configure the same way. You can use a server pattern to apply the same configuration settings to multiple servers, thereby controlling a common configuration from one place.
- Identify the aspects of configuration that you want to customize for the server pattern (for example, local storage, network adapters, boot settings, management controller settings, UEFI settings).
- You cannot manage local user accounts or configure the LDAP server using Configuration Patterns.

**Important:** If the management node fails, you might lose your server patterns. Always back up the management software after you create or modify server patterns (see Backing up Lenovo XClarity Administrator).

**Procedure**

To create a server pattern, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Server Patterns** tab.

**Step 3.** Click the **Create** icon ( ). The New Server Pattern Wizard is displayed.

**Step 4.** To create the server pattern, perform one of the following actions.

- Click **Create a new pattern from an existing server** to use settings from an existing server. Then, select the managed server on which the new pattern is to be based from the displayed list.

  When you create a server pattern from an existing server, XClarity Administrator learns the settings from the specified managed server (including the extended port, UEFI, and management-controller settings) and dynamically creates category patterns for those settings. If the server is brand new, Lenovo XClarity Administrator learns the manufacturing settings. If XClarity Administrator is managing the server, XClarity Administrator uses the customized
settings. You can then customize the settings specifically for the servers to which this pattern is to be deployed.

- Click **Create a new pattern from scratch** to use default settings. Then, select the server type in the **Form Factor** field.

**Note:** The options that are presented on the remaining tabs might differ depending on the type of server for which you are creating a pattern.

**Step 5.** Enter the name of the pattern and a description.

**Step 6.** Customize the server-profile name by selecting the **Custom** toggle and then selecting one or more elements to include in the naming schema (such as custom text, server name, and incrementing number) and the order.

**Step 7.** Click **Next**

**Step 8.** Choose the local storage configuration to be applied when this pattern is deployed to a server, and click **Next**.

For information about local storage settings, see Defining local storage.

**Step 9.** **Optional:** Modify the I/O adapter addressing, and define additional I/O adapters to match the hardware that you expect to configure with this pattern, and click **Next**.

For information about I/O adapter settings, see Defining I/O adapters.

**Step 10.** Define the boot order to be applied when this pattern is deployed to a server, and click **Next**.

For information about SAN boot targets settings, see Defining boot options.

**Step 11.** Select firmware settings from the list of existing category patterns.

You can create new category patterns by clicking the **Create** icon ( ).

For information about firmware settings, see Defining firmware settings.

**Step 12.** Click **Save** to save the pattern, or click **Save and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the pattern to one or more servers.

For information about deploying a server pattern, see Deploying a server pattern to a server.

**What to do next**

If you clicked **Save and Deploy**, the Deploy Server Pattern page is displayed. From this page, you can deploy the server pattern to specific servers.

If you clicked **Save**, the server pattern and all category patterns are saved to the Server Patterns page.
From this page, you can perform the following actions on selected server patterns:

- View details about the pattern by clicking the pattern name in the Name column.
- Deploy the pattern (see Deploying a server pattern to a server).
- Copy the pattern by clicking the Copy icon.
- Edit the pattern (see Modifying a server pattern).
- Rename the pattern by clicking the Rename icon.
- Delete the pattern by clicking the Delete icon.
- Export and import server patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

**Defining local storage**

You can define the local-storage configuration to be applied to target servers when this pattern is deployed.

**About this task**

**Notes:**
- The onboard storage controllers in Flex System x220, Flex System x222, and ThinkSystem servers support software-based RAID. However, configuration of software RAID using Configuration Patterns is not supported.
- When configuring RAID using Configuration Patterns, if the server is powered off, the server boots to BIOS/UEFI Setup automatically before activating the server profile.

**Procedure**

To define the local-storage configuration, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the New Server Pattern Wizard, click the Local Storage tab.
Step 2. To define local-storage settings, choose one of the following options.

- **Specify storage configuration.** (Devices without exiting RAID configurations only) Basic RAID settings are configured on the local boot device during deployment.

  Specify the storage configuration based on the storage option. You can add additional storage options by clicking the **Add** icon.

  - **RAID Adapter.** Choose the RAID level, characteristics, and the number of drives that are installed in the server. RAID 0, 1, 5 are supported. In addition, you can choose advanced volume settings, such as stripe size, policies, and number of hot spare drives.
ThinkSystem servers with XCC version 2.1 and later (ThinkSystem SR950 requires XCC version 1.4 or later), you can also specify the RAID adapter slot number and drive bay numbers to create a single volume using the available array capacity. In this case, RAID level 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, 60, and 00 are supported. In addition, you can choose advanced volume settings, such as stripe size, policies, and hot spare drives.

**Note:** On the target server, ensure that there are enough available drives of the specified type, and ensure that the RAID state of the drives is “Unconfigured Good,” as reported in the Drives section on the servers Inventory Details page (see Viewing the details of a managed server).

- **Lenovo SD Media Adapter.** Choose the where to create the volume and the volume size. You can also choose advanced volume settings, such as media type and access policy.
- **ThinkSystem M.2 with Mirroring.** Choose the PCI slot, RAID level, volume name, and stripe size to create a single volume using the available array capacity.
  - You can define multiple ThinkSystem M.2 with Mirroring storage adapters, each in a different PCI slot.
  - For ThinkSystem Edge Servers, you must specify a specific PCI slot number. For other ThinkSystem servers that have only one M.2 RAID adapter installed, you can choose First Matched (the default value) or specify a specific PCI slot number.
- **Intel Optane DC Persistent Memory.** Choose the type of persistent memory, warning threshold for the percentage of remaining capacity, and percentage of total capacity to be used as memory. (The remaining memory is used as persistent storage).
  
  **Attention:**
  - To configure Intel Optane DC Persistent Memory DIMMs, security must be disabled and a namespace must not be created.
  - Enable Security is supported only when the security state is “Disabled” for all Intel Optane DC Persistent Memory DIMMs in the server.
  - Disable Security and Secure Erase are supported only when the security state is “Locked” and the passphrase is the same for all Intel Optane DC Persistent Memory DIMMs in the server.
  - The Intel Optane DC PMEM security state is not included in the XClarity Administrator inventory. You can manually check the security state in UEFI.

- **Keep existing storage configuration on target.** The existing storage configuration is not changed during deployment. Choose this option to use the storage configuration that is already in place on the target server.
- **Disable local disk.** (Flex System x240 Compute Node only) The on-board storage controller and storage option ROM (both UEFI and Legacy) are disabled during deployment. Disabling the local disk drive decreases the overall boot time when booting from SAN.

**Defining I/O adapters**

You can define I/O port settings and addressing mode to be applied to target servers when this pattern is deployed.

**About this task**

If you intend to virtualize or reassign your I/O adapter addresses, you can configure this pattern to use virtual I/O adapter addressing.

If you are creating a pattern from an existing server, some adapter information might be automatically learned. You can define additional I/O adapter patterns to match the hardware that you expect to have in the servers when this pattern is deployed. By defining I/O adapter patterns, you can configure adapter-port
settings for your supported adapter. If using virtual I/O adapter addresses, you can also define SAN boot targets for Fibre Channel adapters that you add (see Defining boot options).

**Procedure**

To define I/O adapter settings, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the New Server Pattern Wizard, click the **I/O Adapters** tab.

**New Server Pattern Wizard**

![Image](image.png)

**Note:** You can display additional information about the I/O adapters by clicking **Advanced Settings**.

**Step 2.** If you are creating a server pattern for a server in a Flex System chassis, choose the type of I/O-adapter addressing mode:

- **Burned in.** Use existing World Wide Name (WWN) and Media Access Control (MAC) addresses that are provided with the adapter from manufacturing.

- **Virtual.** Use virtual I/O adapter addressing to simplify the management of LAN and SAN connections. Virtualizing I/O-addresses reassigns the burned-in hardware addresses with virtualized Fibre WWN and Ethernet MAC addresses. This can speed deployment by pre-configuring SAN zone membership and facilitate failover by eliminating the need to reconfigure SAN-zoning and LUN-masking assignments when replacing hardware.

When virtual addressing is enabled, both Ethernet and Fibre Channel addresses are allocated by default regardless of defined adapters. You can choose the pool from which Ethernet and Fibre Channel addresses are allocated.

You can also edit virtual-address settings by clicking the **Edit** icon next to the address modes.

**Restriction:** Virtual addressing is supported for only servers in Flex System chassis. Rack and tower servers are not supported.

**Step 3.** If you are creating a server pattern for a server in a Flex System chassis, select one of the following scalability options. The rows in the table change based on what is selected.

- Non-scalable Flex system
- 2 node scalable Flex system
- 4 node scalable Flex system

**Step 4.** Choose the I/O adapters that you expect to be installed in the servers to which the pattern is to be deployed. To add an adapter:

a. Click the **Add I/O Adapter** link in the table to display the Add I/O Adapter 1 or LOM dialog.
b. Select the PCI slot for the adapter.

c. Select the adapter type from the table.

**Note:** By default, the table lists only I/O adapters that are currently installed in the managed servers. To list all supported I/O adapters, click **All Supported Adapters**.

d. Select the initial port pattern to be assigned to all ports in the port group when the pattern is deployed.

*Port patterns* are used to modify port settings that are learned from the server. These initial port patterns are assigned when the adapter is first added. After the adapter is added, you can assign different patterns to individual ports from the I/O Adapter page.

You can create a port pattern by clicking the **Create** icon ( ). You can create a port pattern based on an existing pattern by clicking the **Edit** icon ( ).

For more information about port patterns, see **Defining port settings**.

e. Click **Add** to add the port pattern to the table on the I/O Adapter page.

### Defining boot options

You can define the boot order to be applied to the target servers when this pattern is deployed.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a boot-options pattern.

**Step 1.** From the New Server Pattern Wizard, click the **Boot** tab.

**New Server Pattern Wizard**

![New Server Pattern Wizard](image)

This pattern can be used to configure the boot order for Legacy Only boot environments and SAN boot targets for UEFI or Legacy environments.

- **System boot mode:**
  - **UEFI Only Boot**
  - **UEFI First, Then Legacy**
  - **Legacy Only Boot**
  - **Keep existing boot mode**

- **Primary Boot Order**
- **Wake on LAN (WoL) Boot Order**
- **SAN Boot**

![Boot order can only be configured if the Legacy Only Boot option is selected as the s...](image)

**Step 2.** Select one of the following system-boot modes:

- **UEFI Only Boot.** Select this option to configure a server that supports Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI). If you are booting UEFI-enabled operating systems, this option might shorten boot time by disabling legacy option ROMs.

  If the pattern is learned from a Thinksystem server, you can click the **Primary Boot Order** tab to specify the boot order. You can keep the boot order that is specified on the server to which the pattern is to be deployed or configure the boot order to specify the order in which boot options are to be applied. However, boot priority of boot devices in a device group (boot option) is not supported.

- **UEFI First, Then Legacy.** Select this option to configure a server to attempt to boot using UEFI first. If there is an issue, the server attempts to boot in legacy mode.
If the pattern is learned from a Thinksystem server, you can click the **Primary Boot Order** tab to specify the boot order. You can keep the boot order that is specified on the server to which the pattern is to be deployed or configure the boot order to specify the order in which boot options are to be applied. However, boot priority of boot devices in a device group (boot option) is not supported.

- **Legacy Only Boot.** Select this option if you are configuring a server to boot an operating system that requires legacy (BIOS) firmware. Select this option only if you are booting non-UEFI enabled operating systems.

  **Tip:** If you select the legacy-only boot mode (which makes boot time much faster), you cannot activate any Features on Demand (FoD) keys.

  If you choose this option, you can specify:

  - **Primary Boot Order.** Choose to keep the boot order specified on the server to which the pattern is to be deployed. You can also choose to configure the Legacy Only boot order to specify the order in which boot options are to be applied.
  
  - **Wake on LAN (WoL) Boot Order.** Choose to keep the current WoL boot order specified on the server to which the pattern is to be deployed. You can also choose to configure the Legacy Only boot order to specify the order in which WoL boot options are to be applied.

- **Keep existing boot mode.** Select this option to keep the existing settings on the target server. No changes to the boot order are made when the pattern is deployed.

Step 3. Select the **SAN Boot** tab to choose a boot target pattern and specify boot device targets.

  **Note:** If you defined Fibre Channel adapters and enabled virtual addressing when you defined the I/O adapters, you can set SAN primary and secondary boot targets for the Fibre Channel adapters. You can specify multiple worldwide port name (WWPN) and logical unit number (LUN) identifiers for the storage targets.

### Defining firmware settings

You can specify the baseboard management controller and UEFI firmware settings that are to be applied to target servers when this pattern is deployed.

**About this task**

The firmware settings are organized into categories that group together related settings. For each category, you can create a **category pattern** that contains common firmware settings and can be reused by multiple server patterns. Most of the firmware settings that you can configure directly on the baseboard management controller and UEFI can also be configured through category patterns. The firmware settings that are available depend on the server type, your Flex System environment, and the scope of the server pattern.

Category patterns can be predefined, user-defined, or learned from existing servers:

- **Extended category patterns** are patterns for some I/O adapter ports, advanced Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI), and baseboard management-controller (BMC) settings that are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create extended category patterns; however, you can edit the patterns after they are created.

- **User-defined category patterns** are patterns that you can create, including system information, management interfaces, devices and I/O ports, Fibre Channel boot targets, and I/O adapter ports.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to define firmware settings.

Step 1. From the New Server Pattern Wizard, click the **Firmware Settings** tab.
New Server Pattern Wizard

Step 2. Choose the category-pattern type that includes the settings that you want to define.

- **System information.** Use this category pattern to define automatic system-name generation, contact names, and locations. For more information about system-information patterns, see Defining system-information settings.

- **Management interfaces.** Use this category pattern to define automatic host-name generation, management IP-address assignments, domain name system (DNS) settings, and internet speed settings. For more information about management-interfaces patterns, see Defining management-interface settings.

- **Devices and I/O ports.** Use this category pattern to define console redirection and COM ports, PCIe speed, onboard devices, adapter option ROM, and option ROM execution order. For more information about device and I/O port patterns, see Defining devices and I/O ports settings.

- **Extended BMC.** Use this category pattern to define other baseboard management-controller settings. The extended management-controller patterns are automatically created when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create an extended management-controller pattern. For more information about management-interfaces patterns, see Defining extended management-controller settings.

- **Extended UEFI.** Use this category pattern to define other Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) settings. The extended UEFI patterns are automatically created when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create an extended UEFI pattern. For more information about management-interfaces patterns, see Defining extended UEFI settings.

Step 3. Create new category patterns by clicking the Create icon ( ) next to that category-pattern type.

You can also edit an existing category pattern by selecting a specific pattern from the drop-down list and clicking the Edit icon ( ) next to that category-pattern type. You can also copy an existing category pattern by editing the pattern and clicking Save As to save it with a new name.

**Defining system-information settings**

You can define system name, contact, and location information by creating a system information pattern.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a system-information pattern.
Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Patterns.** The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

Step 3. Click the **System Information Patterns** vertical tab, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).

**Tip:** You can also create a new system-information pattern from the Firmware Settings page of the New Server Pattern wizard by clicking the **Create** icon next to the **System Information** selection.

Step 4. In the New System Information Pattern dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the pattern.
- Choose whether to automatically generate system names. If you click **Custom**, you can specify how names are to be generated when the pattern is deployed. If you click **Disable**, the system name remains unchanged on each server when the pattern is deployed. For most devices, the name is limited to 256 English characters by the baseboard management controller. Automatically generated names are truncated to 256 characters.
- Specify the person to be contacted for this server and the location of the server.

**Note:** If SNMP is enabled, you must specify a contact and system location.

Step 5. Click **Create**.

**Results**

The new pattern is listed on the **System Information Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Modifying current pattern settings by clicking the **Edit** icon ( ).
- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon ( ).
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon ( ).
• Rename a pattern by clicking the Rename icon ( ).
• Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

Defining management-interface settings

You can define hostnames, IP address, domain name system (DNS), interface speed, and port assignments for the management interface by creating a management interface pattern.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a management-interface pattern.

Note: Duplex settings are not supported by server patterns.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning → Patterns. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.
Step 2. Click the Category Patterns tab.
Step 3. Click the Management Interface Patterns vertical tab, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Tip: You can also create a new management-interface pattern from the Firmware settings page of the New Server Pattern wizard by clicking the Create icon ( ) next to the Management Interface selection.

Step 4. In the New Management Interface Pattern dialog, specify the following information.

• Enter a name and description for the pattern.
• Click the Hostname tab, and choose whether to automatically generate hostnames. If you click Custom, you can specify how names are to be generated when the pattern is deployed. If you click Disable, the hostname remains unchanged on each server when the pattern is deployed. Hostnames are limited to 63 English characters by the baseboard management controller. Automatically generated names are truncated to 63 characters.
• Click the Management IP Addresses tab, and configure IPv4 and IPv6 addresses settings.
  For IPv4 addresses, you can choose one of the following options:
  – Obtain dynamic IP address from DHCP server.
  – First by DHCP. If it is not successful, obtain a static IP address from the address pool.
  – Obtain a static IP address from the address pool.
  For IPv6 addresses, you can choose to:
  – Use the stateless address auto configuration.
  – Obtain a dynamic IP address from a DHCP server.
  – Obtain a static IP address from the address pool.
In the Domain Name System (DNS) tab, choose to enable or disable the Dynamic Domain Name Service (DDNS). If you enable DDNS, you can choose one of the following options:
  – Obtain domain name from DHCP server.
  – Specify a domain name.
• Click the Interface Settings tab, and specify the maximum transmission unit (MTU). The default is 1500.
• Click the Port Assignments tab, and specify the numbers to use for the following ports:
  – HTTP
  – HTTPS
  – Telnet CLI
  – SSH CLI
  – SNMP agent
  – SNMP traps
– Remote control console
– CIM over HTTP
– CIM over HTTPS

Step 5. Click **Create**.

**Results**

The new pattern is listed on the **Management Interface Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Modifying current pattern settings by clicking the **Edit** icon (CLUD).
- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon (CLUD).
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon (CLUD).
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon (CLUD).
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

**Defining devices and I/O ports settings**

You can enable console redirection and enable and define the characteristics of the COM 1 port by creating a device and I/O ports pattern.

**Procedure**

To create a device and I/O ports pattern, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

**Step 3.** Click the **Devices and I/O Ports Patterns** vertical tab, and then click the **Create** icon (CLUD).
Tip: You can also create a devices and I/O ports pattern from the Firmware Settings page of the New Server Pattern wizard by clicking the Create icon next to the Devices and I/O Ports selection.

Step 4. In the New Devices and I/O Ports Pattern dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the pattern.
- Choose to enable or disable console redirection. If you enable console redirection, you can choose to enable or disable the following:
  - Serial over LAN.
  - Service processor redirection. If you enable service processor redirection, you can choose to use COM port 1 or 2 for the Legacy optional serial data port. Note that if disabled, COM port 1 is always used. You can also choose one of the following CLI modes:
    - Disable
    - Enable with user-defined keystroke sequence
    - Enable with EMS compatible keystroke sequence
- Choose to enable or disable COM ports 1 and 2. If you choose to enable COM ports, specify the following settings:
  - Baud rate
  - Data bits
  - Parity
  - Stop bits
  - Text emulation
  - Active after boot
  - Flow control

Step 5. Click Create.

Results

The new pattern is listed on the Devices and I/O Ports Patterns tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:
Defining Fibre Channel boot-target settings
You can configure the server to boot from a storage area network (SAN) device instead of from local disk drive by creating a Fibre Channel boot-target pattern.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a Fibre Channel boot-target pattern.

**Restriction:** Fibre Channel boot targets are supported for only Flex compute nodes. Standalone rack and tower servers are not supported.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Fibre Channel Boot Target Pattern** vertical tab, and then click the **Create** icon.

Step 4. In the New Fibre Channel Boot Target Pattern dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the pattern.
- Specify one or more WWPN addresses and LUN identifiers to use as primary boot targets. In addition, you can optionally specify one or more WWPN addresses and LUN identifiers to use as secondary boot targets.

For example, you can add the storage primary paths as primary targets, and the storage secondary paths as secondary targets. By using different target groups in different server patterns, you can balance the storage load during simultaneous boot requests from multiple hosts.

**Tip:** If you specify 00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00 for the WWPN, XClarity Administrator attempts to boot from the first discovered target.

Step 5. Click **Create**.

**Results**

The new pattern is listed on the **Fibre Channel Boot Target Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:
From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Modifying current pattern settings by clicking the **Edit** icon (🛠).
- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon (📋).
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon (🗑).
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon (📝).
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

**Defining port settings**
You can define typical port settings for a specific I/O adapter type by creating a port pattern.

**About this task**

You can use network settings in port patterns to configure switch internal ports. However, you cannot use port patterns to configure the switch global settings, such as VLAN IDs, global UFP mode, global CEE mode, and global FIPs. You must manually configure the global settings using the following rules that are compatible with the internal port settings that you intend to deploy before you deploy the port patterns. You also cannot use port patterns to configure the PVID tagging. See the documentation that came with your switch to determine the compatibility checks between the global settings and internal port settings and how to configure these settings for that switch.

- Ensure that **globalCEEState** is “On” when PFC is configured.
- Ensure that **globalCEEState** is “On” when vport is set to “FCoE” mode.
- Ensure that **globalCEEState** is “On” and **globalFIPsState** is “On” when FIPs are configured.
- Ensure that **globalUFPMode** is “Enable” when the switch internal port mode is set to “UFP” mode.
- Ensure that the VLAN ID is created before adding a port to a specific VLAN.

**Procedure**
Complete the following steps to create an I/O adapter port pattern.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➙ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Port Pattern** vertical tab, and then click the **Create** icon.

**Tip:** You can also create a new port pattern from the Add I/O Adapter page by clicking the **Create** icon next to the **Initial port pattern** selection.

Step 4. In the New Port Pattern dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the pattern.
- Specify the following adapter and port compatibility settings. When assigning patterns to adapters and ports, pattern settings are filtered based on compatibility with the target adapter or port.
  - Target adapter type
  - Target port operational mode, including:
    - pNIC mode
    - vNIC virtual fabric mode
    - vNIC switch independent mode
    - vNIC unified fabric protocol mode
    These settings enable NIC virtualization. For more information, see **NIC Virtualization in Flex System Fabric Solutions**.
  - Target port protocols, including:
    - Ethernet only
    - Ethernet and FCoE
    - Ethernet and iSCSI
  - Port extended settings pattern, which is used to configure additional port settings that are learned from the server
  - If you set the target port operational mode to **pNIC mode**, choose to apply corresponding settings to the Flex switch internal ports, where applicable. If selected, you can configure additional VLAN and advanced settings:
    - Specify the target port protocol.
    - If you set the target port protocol to **Ethernet and FCoE**, optionally select and specify the priority 2 ID.
  - If you set the target port operational mode to **vNIC virtual fabric mode**, configure the physical function settings, including the type and VLAN tag for each function.
  - If you set the target port operational mode to **vNIC switch independent mode**, specify the type, minimum bandwidth and VLAN tag for each enabled function. You can also choose to apply corresponding settings to the Flex switch internal ports, where applicable. If selected, you can configure additional switch internal port and advanced settings:
    - Specify the default LAN, which is used only by the operating system when the operating system sends untagged packets.
    - Specify a comma separated list of VLANs.
    - Choose to configure manual control and specify the triggers.
    - Choose to configure flow control type, including
      - Keep existing flow control
      - Priority-based flow control
      - Link-level flow control
For more information about these flow-control types, see the documentation that came with your Flex switch.

- If you set the target port operational mode to **vNIC unified fabric protocol mode**, choose to apply corresponding settings to the Flex switch internal ports, where applicable. If selected, you can configure additional UFP function and advanced settings:
  - Specify the QoS Mode (bandwidth or priority).
  - Choose to enable default VLAN ID tagging and specify the mode, minimum bandwidth and VLAN tag for each enabled function.
  - Choose to configure layer 2 failure and specify the number of triggers for each function.
  - For bandwidth QoS mode, specify the flow control type (priority based, link-level, or existing flow control).
  - For bandwidth QoS mode, choose to whether priority 4 is enabled when iSCSI is selected.

**Note:** Ensure that global failover is “On” when defining failover triggers.

Step 5. Click **Create**.

**Results**

The new pattern is listed on the **Port Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

**Configuration Patterns: Patterns**

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Modifying current pattern settings by clicking the **Edit** icon.
- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon.
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon.
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon.
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

**Defining extended management-controller settings**

The extended baseboard management-controller settings are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server
pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create extended management-controller patterns; however, you can copy and modify the patterns that have already been created.

Before you begin

**Note:** IMM thermal setting might conflict with the UEFI operating-mode setting. If they do conflict, the UEFI settings overwrites the IMM setting when the device is rebooted, and any thermal settings that you define in an extended baseboard management-controller pattern will be out of compliance. To resolve the non-compliance issue, either remove the setting from the extended baseboard management-controller pattern or select a setting that does not conflict with the current UEFI operating-mode setting.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify extended management-controller patterns.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➙ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Extended BMC Patterns** vertical tab.

Step 4. Select the pattern to be modified, and click the Edit icon ( ![Edit Icon](https://example.com/edit_icon.png)).

Step 5. Modify the appropriate fields.

You can select the settings that you want to include in the category pattern by clicking **Include/Exclude** settings.

- To configure DNS settings, click **Network Settings Interface ➙ DNS Configuration**. You can enable DNS, select the IP protocol, and specify up to three IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, and enable the discovery of XClarity Administrator IP addresses.

  **Note:** For Flex System devices, you can configure only the IP address to use to discover the XClarity Administrator server.

- To configure NTP settings, click **Network Settings Interface ➙ Integrated Module NTP Setting**. You can specify the host name for up to 4 NTP servers and the frequency.

  **Note:** For Flex System devices, you cannot configure NTP settings.

- To change user account security settings, click **Account Security Configuration**.

Step 6. Click **Save** to save changes to the current category pattern, or click **Save As** to save changes in a new category pattern.

Results

The modified category pattern is listed on the **Extended BMC Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:
From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon (COPY ICON).
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon (DELETE ICON).
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon (RENAME ICON).
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

### Defining extended UEFI settings

The extended Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) settings are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create extended UEFI patterns; however, you can copy and modify the patterns that have already been created.

#### About this task

The following Extended UEFI patterns are predefined by Lenovo XClarity Administrator to optimize your servers for specific environments.

- **ESXi Install Options**
- **Efficiency – Favor Performance**
- **Efficiency – Favor Power**
- **Maximum Performance**
- **Minimal Power**

**Note:** Modification of UEFI security settings (including secure boot, trusted platform module (TPM), and physical presence policy configuration) are not supported using Extended UEFI Patterns.

#### Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify extended UEFI patterns.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Category Patterns** tab.
Step 3. Click the **Extended UEFI Patterns** vertical tab.

Step 4. Select the pattern to be modified, and click the **Edit** icon ( ).

Step 5. Modify the appropriate fields.

   You can select the settings that you want to include in the category pattern by clicking **Include/Exclude** settings.

Step 6. Click **Save** to save changes to the current category pattern, or click **Save As** to save changes in a new category pattern.

**Results**

The modified category pattern is listed on the **Extended UEFI Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

![Configuration Patterns: Patterns](image)

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon ( ).
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon ( ).
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon ( ).
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).
Defining extended port settings

Extended port settings are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server pattern from an existing server. You cannot manually create extended port patterns; however, you can copy and modify the patterns that have already been created.

About this task

XClarity Administrator provides the following predefined extended port pattern:

- **Virtual fabric balanced Ethernet.** Lenovo supplied port pattern for Virtual Fabric mode vNIC mode, Ethernet only

Some device-level settings on Mellanox and Broadcom I/O adapters must be set to the same value on all ports. If the settings are set to different values on different ports, the settings for one port will be used, and the settings for other ports will be out of compliance. To resolve the non-compliance issue, select the same value for those device level settings.

For Mellanox I/O adapters, the following settings must be set to the same value on all ports.
- Advanced power settings
- PCI Virtual Functions Advertised
- Slot power limiter
- Virtualization Mode

For Broadcom I/O adapters, the following settings must be set to the same value on all ports.
- Banner Message Timeout
- BW Limit
- BW Limit Valid
- BW Reservation
- BW Reservation Valid
- Enable PME Capability
- Maximum Number of PF MSI-X Vectors
- Multi-Function Mode
- Number of MSI-X Vectors per VF
- Number of VFs Per PF
- Option ROM
- SR-IOV
- Support RDMA

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify extended port patterns.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Patterns.** The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.
2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.
3. Click the **Extended Port Patterns** vertical tab.
4. Select the pattern to be modified, and click the **Edit** icon ()).
5. Modify the appropriate fields.
   - You can select the settings that you want to include in the category pattern by clicking **Include/Exclude** settings.
6. Click **Save** to the save changes to the current category pattern, or click **Save As** to save changes in a new category pattern.
Results

The modified category pattern is listed on the **Extended Port Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

![Configuration Patterns: Patterns](image)

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:
- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon.
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon.
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon.
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

Defining extended SR635/SR655 BIOS settings

The extended SR635/SR655 BIOS settings are learned and dynamically created from a specific managed server. Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates these patterns when you create a server pattern from an existing ThinkSystem SR635 or SR655 server. You cannot manually create extended SR635/SR655 BIOS patterns; however, you can copy and modify the patterns that have already been created.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to modify extended SR635/SR655 BIOS patterns.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Extended SR635/SR655 BIOS Patterns** vertical tab.

Step 4. Select the pattern to be modified, and click the **Edit** icon.

Step 5. Modify the appropriate fields.

You can select the settings that you want to include in the category pattern by clicking **Include/Exclude** settings.
Step 6. Click **Save** to the save changes to the current category pattern, or click **Save As** to save changes in a new category pattern.

**Results**

The modified category pattern is listed on the **Extended SR635/SR655 BIOS Patterns** tab in the Configuration Patterns: Category Patterns page:

From this page, you can also perform the following actions on a selected category pattern:

- Copy an existing pattern by clicking the **Copy** icon ().
- Delete a pattern by clicking the **Delete** icon ().
- Rename a pattern by clicking the **Rename** icon ().
- Import or export patterns (see Exporting and importing server and category patterns).

### Deploying a server pattern to a server

You can deploy a server pattern to one or more managed servers. You can also deploy a server pattern to one or more empty bays in a chassis that is managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator or in a placeholder chassis. Deploying a server pattern before the server is installed reserves management IP addresses, reserves virtual Ethernet or Fibre Channel addresses, and pushes the network setting to the relative switch internal ports.

**Procedure**

To deploy a server pattern to a managed server, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Server Patterns** tab.

**Step 3.** Select the server pattern to deploy, and click the **Deploy** icon ().

The Deploy Server Pattern dialog is displayed with the selected server pattern listed in the **Pattern to Deploy** list.

**Step 4.** Choose when to activate the configurations:

- **Full.** Immediately powers on or restarts the server to activate server, baseboard management controller, and Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) configurations.

- **Partial.** (default) Immediately activates management-controller configurations, but defers the activation of server and UEFI configurations until the next server restart. The server must be manually powered on or restarted before the profile is fully activated.

  **Note:** When deploying server patterns that included only IMM settings (including system information, management interface, and extended BMC category patterns), the server does not need to be restarted.

- **Deferred.** Generates a profile for the server, management controller, and UEFI configurations but does not activate the configuration settings on the server. You must manually activate the server profile by restarting the server before the profile is fully activated.

  **Note:** The network settings on the relative switch internal ports are pushed to the switch immediately after the deployment, regardless of activation configuration.

**Step 5.** Choose one or more servers or empty chassis bays to which you want to deploy the server pattern.

  **Note:** To display a list of empty chassis bays, select **Show Empty Bays**.

**Step 6.** Click **Deploy**. A dialog is displayed that lists the deployment status of each selected bay.
Step 7. Click **Deploy** again to start the deployment process.

**Note:** Deployment might take several minutes to complete. During deployment, a server profile is created and assigned to each selected server or chassis bay.

Step 8. Click **Close**.

**What to do next**

You can monitor the deployment progress by clicking **Monitoring ➔ Jobs** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar. You can also monitor the server-profile creation by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Server Profiles**. After the deployment is complete, review the generated server profiles, and record the management IP address and any virtualized Ethernet or Fibre-Channel addresses.

If you deployed a server pattern to an existing server and selected:

- **Full** activation, a server profile is created for each server, the configuration is propagated to each server, and each server is rebooted to activate the configuration changes.
- **Partial** activation, a server profile is created for each server, and the configuration is propagated to each server. To fully activate the configuration changes, you must manually power on or restart each server (see **Powering on and off a server**).
- **Deferred** activation, a server profile is created for each server. You must manually activate the server profile on the server (see **Activating a server profile**).

If you deployed a server pattern to an empty bay in a managed chassis or placeholder chassis, after the compute nodes are physically installed in appropriate chassis bays and then discovered and managed by Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you must deploy and activate the server profile to the newly installed compute nodes (see **Activating a server profile**).

If one or more servers do not start after you deployed a new server pattern to those servers, the problem might be that the boot settings were overwritten with the default boot settings that are in the server pattern. For operating systems that are installed in UEFI mode, restoring the default settings might require additional configuration steps to restore the boot configuration. For examples for recovering boot settings on servers that are running on Windows or Linux, see **Recovering boot settings after server pattern deployment**.

**Modifying a server pattern**

You can make subsequent configuration changes to an existing server pattern. If the original server pattern is deployed to servers (if it is in use), you can redeploy the changed server pattern to all or a sub-set of those servers.

**About this task**

**Note:** If you choose not to redeploy the changed server pattern to a set of servers, those servers remain associated with the original unchanged server pattern.

By editing the server pattern, you can control a common configuration from a single place and retain the original set of virtual address assignments.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to modify a server pattern.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Server Patterns** tab.
Step 3. Select the server pattern to edit, and click the **Edit** icon ( ). The Edit Server Patterns Wizard is displayed.

Step 4. Enter the name of the pattern and a description.

Step 5. Choose the local storage configuration to be applied when this pattern is deployed to a server, and click **Next**.

For information about local storage settings, see Defining local storage.

Step 6. **Optional:** Modify the I/O adapter addressing, and define additional I/O adapters to match the hardware that you expect to configure with this pattern, and click **Next**.

For information about I/O adapter settings, see Defining I/O adapters.

Step 7. Define the boot order to be applied when this pattern is deployed to a server, and click **Next**.

For information about SAN boot targets settings, see Defining boot options.

Step 8. Select firmware settings from the list of existing category patterns.

You can create new category patterns by clicking the **Create** icon ( ).

For information about firmware settings, see Defining firmware settings.

Step 9. Click **Save** to save the changes to save configuration changes to the current server pattern, or click **Save As** to save the configuration changes to a new server pattern.

Step 10. Choose to save the changes to the current server pattern or to a new server pattern.

- Click **Save** to save the changes to the current server pattern. From the Save and Redeploy Pattern dialog, perform these steps:
  1. Choose when to activate the configurations.
     - **Full.** Immediately powers on or restarts the server to activate server, baseboard management controller, and Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) configurations.
     - **Partial.** (default) Immediately activates management-controller configurations, but defers the activation of server and UEFI configurations until the next server restart. The server must be manually powered on or restarted before the profile is fully activated.

     **Note:** When deploying server patterns that included only IMM settings (including system information, management interface, and extended BMC category patterns), the server does not need to be restarted.

     **Note:** The network settings on the relative switch internal ports are pushed to the switch immediately after the deployment, regardless of activation configuration.

  2. Select the target servers to which you want to redeploy the configuration changes. You can choose all of the servers to which the original server pattern was deployed or a subset of those server.

  3. Click **Redeploy**

- Click **Save As** to save changes to a new server pattern. To deploy the new pattern, see Deploying a server pattern to a server.

**Exporting and importing server and category patterns**

If you have multiple Lenovo XClarity Administrator instances, you can export server and category patterns from one XClarity Administrator instance and import them in another XClarity Administrator instance.

**About this task**
You can export only server and category patterns. Policies, address pools, and profiles cannot be exported. Exported patterns are dissociated with any reference address pools. To leverage the address pools in an imported pattern, edit the pattern and re-associate the pattern with the pools in XClarity Administrator in which they are imported.

**Note:** When you export a server patterns, the associated category patterns are also exported.

**Procedure**

- **To export one or more patterns:**
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.
  2. Click the **Server Patterns** or **Category Patterns** tab.
  3. Select one or more patterns to be exported.
  4. Click the **Export** icon ( ).
  5. Click **Export** to export the patterns.
  6. Save the pattern-data file to your local system.

  **Note:** If an exported pattern references address pools, these references are removed from the exported pattern to avoid conflicts when the pattern is imported into another XClarity Administrator instance. When the pattern is imported again, you can edit the imported pattern and assign the desired address pools.

- **To import one or more patterns:**
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.
  2. Click the **Import** icon ( ) to import the patterns. The Import Patterns dialog is displayed.
  3. Click **Select File**, and select a pattern-data file to be imported. Repeat for additional pattern-data files.
  4. Click **Import** to import the selected files.

  A summary report is displayed with a list of patterns that were imported, patterns that were renamed to naming conflicts, and patterns that were skipped because they already exist.

---

**Working with server profiles**

A *server profile* is an instance of a server pattern that is applied to a specific server. Server profiles are generated and assigned automatically when a server pattern is deployed to one or more servers. One server profile is created for each target server. Each server profile contains the specific configuration for a single server and contains information (such as assigned name, IP addresses, and MAC addresses) that is unique for that specific server.

**About this task**

The server profile is activated during the baseboard-management-controller startup process. You can choose to:

- Reboot the server when the pattern is deployed to activate the server profile immediately
- Defer activation until the next reboot.
- Defer activation until you manually activate the server profile.

Multiple server profiles can inherit from a single server pattern. After a server pattern is deployed to one or more servers, you can quickly deploy configuration changes to multiple servers by editing the parent server pattern and category patterns. The dependant server profiles are automatically updated and redeployed to
their associated servers. By editing the server pattern, you can control a common configuration from a single place.

If you replace an existing server or if you install a pre-provisioned server in an empty bay in a chassis, you must activate the server profile for that new server to provision the configuration changes on the new server.

**Note:** You can deploy a server pattern to multiple servers; however, multiple patterns cannot be deployed to a single server.

You can change the server profile that is associated with a server in several ways, depending on the reason for the change.

- **If you want to move or repurpose a server:**
  1. Deactivate the current server profile on the current server (see Deactivating a server profile).
  2. Deploy the new server pattern to the new server (see Deploying a server pattern to a server).
- **If a server failed and you want to use a spare server in its place:**
  1. Deactivate the current server profile on the failed server (see Deactivating a server profile).
  2. Activate the same server profile on the spare server (see Activating a server profile).
  3. When the failed server is fixed, you can repeat these steps to switch the profile again.
- **If a server failed and you want to replace the hardware:**
  1. Deactivate the current server profile on the failed server (see Deactivating a server profile).
  2. Replace the failed server.
  3. Activate the same server profile on the new server (see Activating a server profile).

**Important:**
- **When using address virtualization,** a server retains its assigned virtual MAC or WWN address until it is powered down. When deactivating a profile that has address virtualization enabled, the **Power off the server** checkbox is selected by default. Ensure that the original server is powered off before you activate the inactive profile on a different server to avoid address conflicts.
- **If you delete a profile that is not the most recently created,** the virtual MAC and WWN addresses are not released from the address pool. For more information, see Deleting a server profile.
- **The settings on a server can become out of compliance with its server profile if settings are changed without using Configuration Patterns or if an issue occurred during deployment,** such a firmware issue or an invalid setting. You can determine the compliance status of each server from the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page.

**Activating a server profile**

You can activate a server profile on a replaced, reassigned, or newly installed and managed server.

**About this task**

If you replace an existing server or if you install a pre-provisioned server in an empty bay in a chassis, you must activate the server profile for that new server to provision the configuration changes on the new server.

**Important:**
- **When using address virtualization,** a server retains its assigned virtual MAC or WWN address until it is powered down. When deactivating a profile that has address virtualization enabled, the **Power off the server** checkbox is selected by default. Ensure that the original server is powered off before you activate the inactive profile on a different server to avoid address conflicts.
• If you delete a profile that is not the most recently created, the virtual MAC and WWN addresses are not released from the address pool. For more information, see Deleting a server profile.

• The settings on a server can become out of compliance with its server profile if settings are changed without using Configuration Patterns or if an issue occurred during deployment, such as a firmware issue or an invalid setting. You can determine the compliance status of each server from the Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page.

Procedure
To activate a server profile, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Server Profiles. The Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page is displayed.

Step 2. Select the server profile to activate.

Tips: The current state of the server profiles is listed in the Profile Status column. You can activate server profile that is in the Inactive or Pending activate state.

Step 3. Click the Activate server profile icon (.orange).

Step 4. Click Activate.

If the profile is in the pending, active, or active failed state, you can choose when to activate the deployment:

• Full. Immediately powers on or restarts the server to activate server, baseboard management controller, and Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) configurations.

• Partial. (default) Immediately activates management-controller configurations, but defers the activation of server and UEFI configurations until the next server restart. The server must be manually powered on or restarted before the profile is fully activated.

Note: When deploying server patterns that included only IMM settings (including system information, management interface, and extended BMC category patterns), the server does not need to be restarted.

When the server profile is first activated, the profile status changes to “Active.” After compliance is verified, the status changes to “Compliance” or “Non-Compliant.”

Results
The state of the server profile on the Configuration Pattern: Server Profiles page changes to Active.
Deactivating a server profile

You can remove a server profile from a server or chassis bay by deactivating the profile.

Procedure

To deactivate a server profile, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server Profiles**. The Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page is displayed.

Step 2. Select the server profile to deactivate.

**Tip:** The current state of the server profile is listed in the **Profile Status** column.

Step 3. Click the **Deactivate server profile** icon ( ).

Step 4. Choose one of the following deactivation options:

- **Reset IMM Identity Settings.** Resets the profile-configured identity settings (including the baseboard-management-controller hostname, device name, or management interface assigned static IP addresses). Only the settings that are configured through the associated server pattern are reset.

  **Note:** For servers with statically assigned IP addresses, this option enables DHCP mode. If there is not a DHCP server enabled on the network, the server must be manually reconfigured with a valid static IP address. Converged, NeXtScale, and System x rack and tower servers must then be remanaged using XClarity Administrator.

- **Power off the server.** Powers off the server. When the server is powered back on, virtual address assignments revert to the burned-in defaults.

- **Force deactivation.** Deactivates the server profile even if the server has been removed or is not reachable.

- **Reset switch internal port settings.** Resets the profile-configured switch internal port settings to default values, including disabling UFP mode and removing associated member vports from VLAN definitions. Only the settings that are configured through the associated server pattern are reset.

  Choose this option to leave the switch ports in a state where the server profile can then be deployed to another server without settings that would conflict with the previous switch port configuration.

Step 5. Click **Deactivate**.

Results

The state of the server profile on the Configuration Pattern: Server Profiles page changes to Inactive.
Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles

Note: If XClarity Administrator cannot communicate with the management controller (for example if the management controller is in an error state or is restarting), deactivation of the server profile fails and the server profile is not deactivated. If this occurs, reattempt the deactivation, and select the force deactivation option to deactivate the profile. The previously assigned server is still configured with the profile assigned identity and address assignments. The server must be manually powered down and removed from the infrastructure to avoid address conflicts.

Deleting a server profile
You can delete only server profiles that have been deactivated.

Before you begin
Ensure that the server profiles to be deleted are deactivated (see Deactivating a server profile).

Procedure
To delete a server profile, complete the following steps

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Server Profiles. The Configuration Patterns: Server Profiles page is displayed.

Step 2. Select the server profile that is in the Deactivated state.

Tip: The current state of the server profile is listed in the Profile Status column.

Step 3. Click the Delete icon (🗑).

Note: When you delete the most recently created profile, any virtual MAC or WWN address is released from the address pool. If you delete a profile that is not the most recently created, the virtual MAC and WWN addresses are not released from the address pool.

Working with placeholder chassis
You can pre-provision servers that will be installed in a Flex System chassis at a later time by defining a placeholder chassis to act as a target for the server pattern until the physical hardware arrives.

About this task
When you deploy a server pattern to a placeholder chassis, Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates a server profile for all 14 server bays in the Flex System chassis and reserves the management IP addresses and virtual Ethernet or Fibre Channel addresses for the servers.
The placeholder chassis bundles all of the server profiles, so that when the hardware arrives, you can deploy the placeholder chassis to activate the server profiles on the physical servers instead of deploying all 14 server profiles individually. Each server must be rebooted to fully activate the server profile.

Creating a placeholder chassis

You can create a placeholder chassis that can be pre-provisioned before the hardware is installed. Provisioning compute nodes in the chassis reserves management IP addresses and virtual Ethernet or Fibre Channel addresses.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a placeholder chassis.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Placeholder Chassis** tab.

Step 3. Click the **Add Placeholder Chassis** vertical tab.

Step 4. Enter a name and description for the placeholder chassis.

Step 5. Click **Add**.

What to do next

A vertical tab is added for the new placeholder chassis on the Configuration Patterns: Placeholder Chassis page.
From this page, you can perform the following actions on a selected placeholder chassis:

- Deploy the placeholder chassis by clicking the **Deploy** icon (ssé).
- Modify the placeholder chassis name and description by clicking the **Edit** icon (ssé).
- Deploy a server pattern to the placeholder chassis (see Deploying a server pattern to a placeholder chassis).
- Deactivate the server profile from a placeholder chassis (see Deactivating a server profile).
- Delete the placeholder chassis by clicking the **Delete** icon (ssé).

### Deploying a server pattern to a placeholder chassis

You can deploy a server pattern to each bay in a placeholder chassis. Deploying a server pattern before the servers are installed in the Flex System chassis creates a server profile for each server bay in the chassis and reserves management IP addresses and virtual Ethernet or Fibre Channel addresses.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to deploy a server pattern to a placeholder chassis.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning** → **Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Server Patterns** tab.

**Step 3.** Select the server pattern that you want to deploy to the placeholder chassis.
Step 4. Click the **Deploy** icon ( ). The Deploy Server Pattern dialog is displayed with a list of available chassis and placeholder chassis.

Step 5. Select **Deferred** from the **Activation** list.

Step 6. Click **Show Empty Bays**.

Step 7. Choose one or more placeholder chassis bays to which you want to deploy the server pattern.

Step 8. Click **Deploy**. A dialog is displayed that lists the deployment status of each selected bay.

Step 9. Click **Deploy** again to start the deployment process.

A server profile is created and assigned for each selected bay in the placeholder chassis.

**Note:** Deployment can take several minutes to complete

Step 10. Click **Close**.

**What to do next**

You can monitor the deployment progress by clicking **Monitoring → Jobs** from the XClarity Administrator menu bar. You can also monitor the server-profile creation by clicking **Provisioning → Server Profiles**. After the deployment is complete, review the generated server profiles, and record the management IP address and any virtualized Ethernet or Fibre-Channel addresses.

After the Flex System chassis is physically installed in the rack and then discovered and managed by XClarity Administrator, you can deploy the placeholder chassis to provision all servers in the chassis (see Deploying a server pattern to a placeholder chassis).

**Deploying a placeholder chassis**

After you pre-configure a placeholder chassis by deploying a server pattern to that placeholder chassis, and then discover and manage the actual chassis, you can deploy the placeholder chassis to configure the actual compute nodes.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to deploy a placeholder chassis.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Server Configuration Patterns**. The Server Configuration Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the **Placeholder Chassis** tab.

Step 3. Select the vertical tab for the placeholder chassis that you want to deploy.

Step 4. Click the **Deploy placeholder chassis** icon ( ) to display the Deploy Placeholder Chassis dialog.
Step 5. Choose when to activate the configurations:

**Note:** The network settings on the relative switch internal ports are pushed to the switch immediately after the deployment, regardless of activation configuration.

- **Full.** Immediately powers on or restarts the server to activate server, baseboard management controller, and Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) configurations.
- **Partial.** (default) Immediately activates management-controller configurations, but defers the activation of server and UEFI configurations until the next server restart. The server must be manually powered on or restarted before the profile is fully activated.

**Note:** When deploying server patterns that included only IMM settings (including system information, management interface, and extended BMC category patterns), the server does not need to be restarted.

Step 6. Click **Activate**.

---

**Resetting storage adapters to default values**

You can reset the local storage adapters to their default manufacturing settings for one or more servers.

**About this task**

**Attention:** This action clears all data on the local storage adapters.

If the server is powered off and RAID link is supported, the server is booted to system setup to reset local HDD and SSD adapters.

**Procedure**

Complete these steps to clear the RAID configuration for one or more servers.
Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Hardware ➔ Servers**. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find the server that you want to manage. In addition, you can select a server type from the **All Systems** drop down list and enter text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field to further filter the servers that are displayed.

### Servers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unmanage</th>
<th>All Actions</th>
<th>Filter By</th>
<th>Filter</th>
<th>Show:</th>
<th>All Systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>IP Addresses</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Rack Name/Unit</th>
<th>Chassis/Bs</th>
<th>Product Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ix-te-1295u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix-te-1352u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix-te-1749</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x240 Compute N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix-te-872u</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10.240.7...</td>
<td>Critical,...</td>
<td>C10 / Un...</td>
<td>Chassis...</td>
<td>IBM Flex System x222 Upper Corr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 2. Select one or more servers.

Step 3. Select **All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Reset Local Storage to Defaults**. A dialog is displayed that asks for additional information.

### Are you sure that you want to perform reset local storage to defaults on the selected server(s)?

### Please select local storage controllers to reset.
- Local HDD/SSD Based Controllers
- Local SD Card Controllers
- Local M.2 Controllers

Choose to convert JBOD drives to unconfigured good or not, it’s only supported on Think System.

- Convert JBOD drives to unconfigured good

This action resets the local storage on the following servers to manufacturing defaults.Any data on local storage will be lost.When RAID link is supported, the server will be boot to system setup to reset local HDD/SSD based controllers, if it’s currently power off.

- 1 server is selected: Powered on

### Server | Status | Power
--- | --- | ---
IMM2-5c3f3c6e10 | Warning | On

Step 4. Select the local storage adapters to reset.

Step 5. (ThinkSystem servers only) Chose to convert JBOD drives to unconfigured good.

Step 6. Click **Reset Storage**.
Configuring memory

You can encrypt and decrypt persistent memory for Intel® Optane™ DC Persistent Memory DIMMs.

Procedure

Complete the following procedure to encrypt and decrypt persistent memory.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click Hardware ➔ Servers. The Servers page is displayed with a tabular view of all managed servers (rack servers and compute nodes).

Step 2. Select one or more servers that you want to configure.

Step 3. Click All Actions ➔ Service ➔ Intel Optane Security Operation to display the Intel Optane Security Operation dialog.

Step 4. Select the security operation that you want to perform.

- **Enable security.** Data that is written to the persistent memory region is encrypted using the specified passphrase.
  
  **Important:** Record the encryption passphrase. The passphrase is required to authorize disabling security or erasing the encryption passphrase.

- **Disable security.** Data that is written to the persistent memory region is not encrypted.
  
  Data that is already stored in the persistent memory region remains encrypted and is still accessible.

  **Note:** This action is available only when security is enabled, and the passphrase set. You must authorize this operation using the current passphrase. You can disable security for multiple DIMMs in the device only if all DIMMs share the same passphrase.

- **Secure erase.** Erases the encryption passphrase that is used to encrypt the data that is stored in the persistent memory region to ensure that data is unrecoverable.

  **Note:** This action is available only when security is enabled, and the passphrase set. You must authorize this operation using the current passphrase.

- **Secure erase without passphrase.** Securely erases all the data that is stored in the persistent memory of the specified DIMMs in the device. After the secure erase, all data is unrecoverable.

  **Note:** This action is available only when security is disabled and passphrase is not required.

Step 5. If required, specify and confirm the passphrase.

Step 6. Click OK.
Chapter 12. Configuring switches using configuration templates

You can use templates to quickly provision multiple CNOS rack switches from a single set of defined configuration settings.

About this task

You can use switch-configuration templates in XClarity Administrator to configure global settings, port channels, virtual LANs, Virtual link aggregation groups, and spine-leaf topologies on managed switches. Currently, only rack switches running CNOS are supported.

The following figure illustrates the workflow for configuring managed rack switches.

1. Choose a template type.
   A switch-configuration template groups together related switch settings. You can create the following types of switch-configuration templates.
   - **Global**: Configures global settings, including system propriety, native VLAN tags, and L2 interfaces.
   - **Port channel**: Configures basic and advanced port-channel settings, and removes ports from and deletes a port channel.
   - **Spine-leaf**: Deploys a spine-leaf configuration to an existing topology.
   - **Virtual LAN (VLAN)**: Configures VLAN settings and properties, and deletes a VLAN.
   - **Virtual link aggregation group (VLAG)**: Configures basic, advanced, and peer VLAG settings, and creates and deletes a VLAG instance.

2. Create a template.
   You can create multiple switch-configuration templates to represent different configurations that are used in your data center. You use switch-configuration templates to control a common switch configuration from a single place.
   For more information about creating switch configuration templates, see Creating a switch-configuration template.

3. Deploy the template to one or more switches.
   You can deploy a server pattern to one or more individual rack switches running CNOS.
   For more information about deploying a switch configuration, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

4. Edit a template.
   Editing a switch-configuration template does not automatically deploy the updated settings to all switches to which the initial template was deployed. You must manually redeploy changed templates. The history page keeps track of the settings for each deployment.
Setting default server-configuration preferences

You can define values to be selected by default when creating server configuration patterns. The values can be changed during server pattern creation.

Procedure

To set default server-configuration settings, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning, and then click the help icon ( ) after Configuration Patterns to display the Configuration Patterns: Getting Started page.

Step 2. Click Set Configuration Pattern Preference to display the Configuration Pattern Preference dialog.

Configuration Patterns Preferences

Choose values that are to be used as defaults when creating patterns. The chosen values are selected by default during pattern creation but can be changed if desired.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Initial Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Form factor</td>
<td>Flex Compute Node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O adapter addressing</td>
<td>Burned-in Addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-compliant Profiles</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select the Default Adapters You Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Adapter Description</th>
<th>Physical Ports</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded 1Gb Ethernet Controller (LOM)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ethernet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded 10Gb Virtual Fabric Ethernet Controller (LOM)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fabric Connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lenovo Flex System 4-port 10GbE LOM Virtual Fabric Adapter</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fabric Connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flex System CN4054R 10Gb Virtual Fabric Adapter</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Virtual Fabric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flex System EN4132 2-port 10Gb Ethernet Adapter</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ethernet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flex Group EN4124 4-port 10Gb Ethernet Adapter</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ethernet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 3. Select the default server form factor.

Step 4. Select the default I/O adapter addressing mode.

- **Burned in.** Use existing World Wide Name (WWN) and Media Access Control (MAC) addresses that are provided with the adapter from manufacturing.
- **Virtual.** Use virtual I/O adapter addressing to simplify the management of LAN and SAN connections. Virtualizing I/O-addresses reassigns the burned-in hardware addresses with virtualized Fibre WWN and Ethernet MAC addresses. This can speed deployment by pre-configuring SAN zone membership and facilitate failover by eliminating the need to reconfigure SAN-zoning and LUN-masking assignments when replacing hardware.

When virtual addressing is enabled, both Ethernet and Fibre Channel addresses are allocated by default regardless of defined adapters. You can choose the pool from which Ethernet and Fibre Channel addresses are allocated.

You can also edit virtual-address settings by clicking the Edit icon ( ) next to the address modes.

**Restriction:** Virtual addressing is supported for only servers in Flex System chassis. Rack and tower servers are not supported.
Step 5. Choose whether to enable or disable raising an alert when a server’s configuration settings do not match the assigned server-configuration profile.

Alerts are raised only for non-compliance with an active profile (in the ASSIGNED or ERROR_ACTIVATING state).

When the server’s configuration becomes compliant or if the server profile is unassigned, the non-compliant profile alert is deleted.

Step 6. Select one or more default I/O adapters that you want to use as preferred adapters in the selection lists.

Step 7. Click **Save**.

---

**Creating a switch-configuration template**

When you create a switch-configuration template, you define the settings for a specific type of configuration.

**Before you begin**

Before you create a switch-configuration template, consider the following suggestions:

- Identify groups of switches that have the same hardware options and that you want to configure the same way. You can use a switch-configuration template to apply the same configuration settings to multiple switches, thereby controlling a common configuration from one place.

- Identify the aspects of configuration that you want to customize (for example, global, port-channel, or VLAN settings).

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a switch-configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.
Step 2. Select the type of template that you want to create from the left navigation.

Step 3. Click the **Create** icon (>Create<) to display the Create New Template dialog.

The fields that are listed on this dialog vary depending on the type of template.

Step 4. Click **Save** to save the template, or click **Save and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

What to do next

If you clicked **Save and Deploy**, the Deploy Switch Template page is displayed. From this page, you can deploy the switch-configuration template to specific switches.

If you clicked **Save**, the switch-configuration template is saved to the Switch Configuration Templates page. From this page, you can perform the following actions on selected server patterns:

- View details about the template by clicking the template name in the Name column.
- View an aggregated list of all templates, click **Others → All templates**.
- Deploy the template (see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch).
- Copy and then modify a template by clicking the **Copy** icon (<Copy>.
- Edit the template by clicking the **Edit** icon (<Edit>.

**Note:** Changes to the template are not automatically redeployed to switches on which the original template was deployed.
• Rename the pattern by clicking the Rename icon (Ren).  
• Delete the pattern by clicking the Delete icon (Del).

**Defining VLAN port-membership settings**

You can add physical ports and port channels to one or more (for trunk) VLANs using the VLAN Port Membership Configuration template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a Port Membership Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **VLAN ➔ Port Membership Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon (Create).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

**Important:** You must specify one or more physical L2 interfaces or port channel IDs.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify one or more valid physical L2 interfaces. You can specify a list of interfaces separated by a comma, a range of IDs separated by a dash, or a combination of both, for example:
  - Ethernet1/10
  - Ethernet1/3,5,7,9
  - Ethernet1/5-10,21-32
  - Ethernet2/2-5,7,9,11-13
- Specify one or more valid port channel IDs (port aggregator interfaces). You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a dash, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
  - 10
  - 3,5,7,9
  - 5-10,21-32
  - 2-5,7,9,11-13
- Choose whether the port accepts tagged or untagged traffic. This can be one of the following values.
  - **access.** The port carries traffic for a single VLAN.
  - **trunk.** (default) The port carries traffic for all VLANs that are accessible by the switch.
- Specify one or more VLAN IDs to add to the port’s VLAN membership list. You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a dash, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
  - 10
  - 3,5,7,9
  - 5-10,21-32
  - 2-5,7,9,11-13

**Notes:**

- If the port mode is set to “access,” only the first VLAN ID is used. For example, in the range 2-4,5,10-20, only 2 is used.
- CNOS reserves VLAN IDs 4000-4095 by default. Using reserved VLAN IDs (either by CNOS or another user) might cause the switch-configuration deployment to fail.
- Specify a native VLAN ID with which untagged traffic is tagged. This can be a number from 1-4096.
**Notes:**
- This field is valid only when the port mode is set to “trunk.”
- If it is not specified, or if the ID is outside the end-state VLANs on a port, the port will effectively not allow untagged traffic.

- Select **Create VLANs** to create VLAN IDs that are currently missing on the target switch.

  If a port belongs in a VLAN that is not created, the port continues to be a member of that VLAN, but any traffic that is tagged with that VLAN ID and reaches the port is not allowed to pass.

**Step 4.** Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

---

### Defining VLAN properties

You can configure advanced VLAN properties using the VLAN Properties Configuration template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a VLAN Properties Configuration template.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click **VLAN ➔ VLAN Properties Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon (').

**Step 3.** In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify a VLAN ID on which to apply the changes. This can be a number from 1-4095.

  **Note:** CNOS reserves VLAN IDs 4000-4095 by default. Using reserved VLAN IDs (either by CNOS or another user) might cause the switch-configuration deployment to fail.

- Specify a custom name for the VLAN.
- Choose whether the VLAN is active (enabled) or suspended (disabled).
- Choose whether IP multicast (IPMC) flood on the target VLAN is controlled (enabled) on IPv4 or IPv6 interfaces. This can be one of the following values.
  - **Disable.** IPv4 and IPv6 are disabled.
  - **Enable.** IPv4 and IPv6 are enabled.
  - **IPv4 Disable.**
  - **IPv4 Enable**
  - **IPv6 Disable**
  - **IPv6 Enable**

  This action is additive, meaning that “IPv4 Enable” deployed on top of “Disable” results in “IPv4 Enable,” but deploy on top of “IPv6 Enable” results in “Enable.” The reverse is true for the disable options.

**Step 4.** Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch
Removing VLAN settings
You can remove interfaces from VLANs using the VLAN Remove template.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to create a VLAN Remove template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **VLAN ➔ VLAN Remove** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

**Important:** You must specify one or more physical L2 interfaces or port channel IDs.
- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify one or more valid physical L2 interfaces. You can specify a list of interfaces separated by a comma, a range of IDs separated by a dash, or a combination of both, for example:
  - Ethernet1/10
  - Ethernet1/1,3,5,7
  - Ethernet1/1-10,21-30
  - Ethernet2/1-5,7,9,11-13
- Specify one or more valid port channel IDs (port aggregator interfaces). You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a dash, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
  - 10
  - 1,3,5,7
  - 1-10,21-32
  - 1-5,7,9,11-13
- Specify one or more VLAN IDs to remove from the port’s VLAN membership list. You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a dash, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
  - 10
  - 1,3,5,7
  - 1-10,21-32
  - 1-5,7,9,11-13

**Note:** If the port mode is set to “access,” removing the VLAN causes the port to go in VLAN 1.

Step 4. Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Deleting VLANs
You can remove VLAN configurations from the switch using the Delete VLAN template.

Procedure
Complete the following steps to create a Delete VLAN template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **VLAN ➔ Delete VLAN** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).
Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify one or more VLAN IDs to remove from the port's VLAN membership list. You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a dash, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
  - 10
  - 3,5,7,9
  - 5-10,21-32
  - 2-5,7,9,11-13

  **Note:** You cannot delete reserved VLAN IDs.

Step 4. Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

### Defining port-channel basic settings

You can create port aggregators and add ports to the aggregators using a port-channel Basic Configuration template.

If the port channel has ports in it, and some of those ports are part of the template, their properties (port priority, mode, and timeout) are updated with the template’s settings when the template is deployed.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a port-channel Basic Configuration template.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning** ➔ **Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click **Port Channel** ➔ **Basic Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).

**Step 3.** In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify one or more valid physical L2 interfaces. You can specify a list of interfaces separated by a comma, a range of IDs separated by a dash, or a combination of both, for example:
  - Ethernet1/10
  - Ethernet1/3,5,7,9
  - Ethernet1/5-10,21-32
  - Ethernet2/2-5,7,9,11-13
- Specify the port channel ID (port aggregator interface) to create or update. This can be a number from 1-4095.
- Specify the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) port mode. This can be one of the following values.
  - **Active.** (default) Enables LACP unconditionally
  - **Passive.** Enables LACP only when an LCAP device is detected.
  - **Static.** Disables LCAP.

  **Note:** Active and Passive can be mixed in the same aggregator, but Static cannot.
- Specify the LACP port priority. This can be a number from 1 - 65535.

  **Note:** The LACP port priority is used with the port number to form the LACP Port ID.
• Specify the LACP timeout mode before LCAP goes into individual mode. This can be one of the following values.
  – **Long**. (default) 90 seconds
  – **Short**. 3 seconds

Step 4. Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

**Defining port-channel advanced settings**

You can configure advanced port-channel properties using the port-channel Advanced Configuration template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a port-channel Advanced Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **Port Channel ➔ Advanced Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon (£).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

  • Enter a name and description for the template.
  • Specify a port channel ID (port aggregator interface) to update. This can be a number from 1-4095.
  • Choose whether individual ports remain active when LACP fails. This can be one of the following values.
    – **Active**. (default) Enables LACP unconditionally.
    – **Suspend**. Disables LACP.
  • Specify the minimum number of links that must be up for the port channel to be considered up. This can be a number from 1 – 32.

Step 4. Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

**Deleting port channels**

You can remove port channels from the switch using the Delete Port Channel template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a Delete Port Channel template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **Port Channel ➔ Delete Port Channel** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon (£).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

  • Enter a name and description for the template.
Specify one or more port channel IDs (port aggregator interfaces) to delete. You can specify a list of numbers separated by a comma, a range of numbers separated by a comma, or a combination of both. The values and ranges can be numbers from 1-4096, for example:
- 10
- 3,5,7,9
- 5-10,21-32
- 2-5,7,9,11-13

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

**Defining general switch settings**

You can configure general switch properties using the global Generic Configuration template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create a switch global Generic Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Global ➔ Generic Configuration in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.
- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify the LACP system priority that is used to generate the LACP system ID. This can be a number from 1 – 65535.
- Choose where to enable native VLAN tagging. This can be one of the following values.
  - Ingress and Egress
  - Egress only

  **Note:** This property is supported by CNOS 10.10.1 and later.

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch.

**Defining global L2 interface settings**

You can configure VLAN tagging properties on L2 Interfaces using the L2 Interface Configuration template.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to create an L2 Interface Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Global ➔ L2 Interface Configuration in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.
  - Enter a name and description for the template.
• Specify one or more valid physical L2 interfaces. You can specify a list of interfaces separated by a comma, a range of IDs separated by a dash, or a combination of both, for example:
  – Ethernet1/10
  – Ethernet1/3,5,7,9
  – Ethernet1/5-10,21-32
  – Ethernet2/2-5,7,9,11-13

• Choose where to enable native VLAN tagging. This can be one of the following values.
  – Ingress and Egress
  – Egress only

  Note: This property is supported by CNOS 10.10.1 and later.

• Choose whether to enable or disable tunnelling (QinQ) support.

  Note: This property is supported by CNOS 10.10.1 and later.

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Defining peer VLAG settings

You can configure a VLAG peers using the VLAG Peers Configuration template.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a VLAG Peers Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click VLAG ➔ Peers Configuration in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

  • Enter a name and description for the template.
  • Choose whether to enable or disable the VLAG.
  • For Peer 1 and Peer 2, complete the following fields. Fields for both peers must be populated.
    – Specify the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the VLAG peer to use for health check.
    – Specify the ID of the port channel that is used between the two peers. This can be a number from 1 – 4095.
    – Specify the VRF that is used for health check (for example, management, default, or customVRF).

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Defining VLAG instance settings

You can create or update a VLAG instance using the VLAG Instance Configuration template. A VLAG instance is a device that is connected to both switches (usually through a port aggregation) to which the VLAG appears as a single device.
Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a VLAG Instance Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **VLAG → Instance Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify the VLAG ID. This can be a number from 1 – 64.
- Specify the ID of the port-channel that is connected to the Peer 1 and Peer 2. This can be a number from 1 – 4095.
- Choose whether to enable or disable the VLAG instance.

Step 4. Click **Create** to save the template, or click **Create and Deploy** to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Defining VLAG advanced settings

You can configure advanced VLAG properties using the VLAG Advanced Configuration template.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a VLAG Advanced Configuration template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Switch Configuration Templates**. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click **VLAG → Advanced Configuration** in the left navigation, and then click the **Create** icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

- Enter a name and description for the template.
- Specify the priority that is used to control which peer is primary. This can be a number from 1 – 65535. If not specified, the switch’s default priority is used. For CNOS, the default is 0.
- Specify the grace period, in seconds, for the VLAG to come online after a simultaneous reboot. This can be a number from 240 – 3600. If not specified, the switch’s default is used. For CNOS, the default is 300.
- Specify the tier ID that is used to differentiate VLAG setups in the same network. This can be a number from 1 – 512.
- Specify the vLAG startup delay interval, in seconds, that is used to delay bringing up ports after a peer reloads. This can be a number from 0 – 3600. If not specified, the switch’s default is used. For CNOS, the default is 120.
- Specify the number of VLAG keep-alive attempts (unanswered hello messages) before the VLAG fails. This can be a number from 1 – 24. If not specified, the switch’s default is used. For CNOS, the default is 3.
- Specify the interval, in seconds, between VLAG keep-alive attempts. This can be a number from 2 – 300. If not specified, the switch’s default is used. For CNOS, the default is 5.
• Specify the interval, in seconds, between VLAG keep-alive retry attempts. This can be a number from 1 – 300.

If not specified, the switch’s default is used. For CNOS, the default is 30.

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Deleting a VLAG instance

You can delete a VLAG instance using the VLAG Instance Delete template.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a VLAG Instance Delete template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click VLAG ➔ Instance Delete in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

• Enter a name and description for the template.
• Specify the unique ID of the VLAG instance. This can be a number from 1 – 64.

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.

For information about deploying a template, see Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

Defining a spine-leaf topology

You can verify the physical topology and deploy a SpineLeaf (L3 fabric) setup on managed switches using the spine-leaf Topology Wizard template.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to create a spine-leaf Topology Wizard template.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Switch Configuration Templates. The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Click Spine-Leaf ➔ Topology Wizard in the left navigation, and then click the Create icon ( ).

Step 3. In the Create New Template dialog, specify the following information.

• Enter a name and description for the template.
• Specify the autonomous system (AS) number for the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) protocol that is running on the switch. This can be a number from 1 – 4294967295.

  Note: This is supported by CNOS 10.9.3 and later.

• Choose whether to allow single links between switches.
  Typically, deployment fails if there are not at least two links between any spine and leaf switch.

Step 4. Click Create to save the template, or click Create and Deploy to save and immediately deploy the template to one or more managed rack switches.
Deploying switch-configuration templates to a target switch

You can define VLAN port settings by creating a VLAN port-configuration template.

About this task

There are three types of deployments:

- **Normal.** Deploys switch-configuration settings to one or more rack switches in a basic layered architecture.
- **VLAG.** Deploys switch-configuration settings to exactly two switches that support a virtual link aggregation group (VLAG) architecture. The switches must be of the same model and software version.
- **Spine-Leaf.** Deployment templates to one or more spine switches and leaf switches.

Procedure

To deploy a switch-configuration template to one or more managed switches, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Switch Configuration Templates.** The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Select one or more switch-configuration templates that you want to deploy.

Step 3. Click the **Deploy** icon ( ) to display the Deploy Template dialog.

Step 4. Select one or more switches to which you want to deploy the templates.

Only switches that are compatible with the selected templates are listed.

Step 5. Click **Deploy.** A dialog is displayed that lists the deployment status of each selected switch.

Step 6. Click **Deploy** again to start the deployment process.

**Note:** Deployment might take several minutes to complete.

What to do next

You can view the deployment history (see Viewing switch-configuration deployment history).

Viewing switch-configuration deployment history

You can view information about switch-configuration templates that have been deployed to managed switches, including the template name, template type, timestamp, and the switches to which they were deployed. Each deployment contains a snapshot of the template as it was when it was deployed.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to view switch-configuration deployment history.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Switch Configuration Templates.** The Switch Configuration Templates page is displayed.

Step 2. Expand **Deployment**, and click **History** in the left navigation to display a table of deployed templates.

The **Status** column indicates whether the configuration deployment was successful. It can be one of the following states:
• **Succeeded.** Configuration deployment to all target switches completed successfully.

• **Warning.** Configuration deployment to one or more target switches completed with warnings.

• **Failed.** Configuration deployment to one or more target switches failed.

### What to do next

- View the information about each deployed template, including what was deployed and what succeeded or failed, by clicking the template name in the table.

- Clear the deployment history by selecting a deployment and clicking the **Delete** icon.
Chapter 13. Updating firmware and Windows device drivers

You can use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to update firmware and Windows device drivers on supported devices.

Updating firmware and updating device drivers are separate processes; there is no connection between these processes. XClarity Administrator does not maintain compliance between firmware and devices drivers on managed devices, even though it is recommended that you update device drivers at the same time as the firmware.

XClarity Administrator provides the following support for managed devices.

• Download and install repository packs, which are collections of the latest firmware that is available at the same time as the XClarity Administrator release
• Download and install any version of Update Express System Packs (UXSPs)
• Download and install the latest available individual firmware-update packages

Notes:

• When you import UXSPs from the Firmware Updates Repository page, only firmware updates are downloaded and stored in the repository. Device drivers are discarded.
• When you import UXSPs from the Windows Driver Updates Repository page, only device drivers are downloaded and stored in the repository. Firmware updates are discarded.
• XClarity Administrator does not support updating devices drivers in Linux or VMWare.

Updating firmware on managed devices

From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator web interface, you can download, install, and manage firmware updates for managed devices, including chassis, servers, storage systems, and switches. You can assign firmware-compliance policies to the managed devices to ensure that firmware on those devices remains compliant. You can also create and edit firmware-compliance policies when validated firmware levels do not match the suggested predefined policies.

Learn more:

• Lenovo ThinkSystem Firmware and Driver Update Best Practices
• XClarity Administrator: Bare metal to cluster
• XClarity Administrator: Firmware updates
• XClarity Administrator: Provisioning firmware security updates

About this task

Note: An operating system is not required to update firmware. For bare metal servers, ensure that the server is powered off before updating firmware.

You can manage and apply firmware updates to the following managed devices:

• Chassis. CMM updates
• Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, System x, ThinkAgile, and ThinkSystem servers. Baseboard management controller, UEFI, DSA, mezzanine, and adapter updates
• Lenovo Storage devices.
• RackSwitch and Flex System switches.

Firmware for the following devices cannot be updated through XClarity Administrator:
- **ThinkServer servers.** See the documentation that was provided with the server to find information about how to update the firmware.

- **Flex Power Systems compute nodes.** Several methods are available to update firmware for Flex Power Systems compute nodes. For more information, see IBM Flex System p260/p460 Compute Nodes online documentation. The process for other Flex Power Systems compute nodes is similar.

- **Flex System v7000 Storage Node.** Use the Flex System v7000 Storage Node user interface to update the firmware. For more information, see FlexSystem v7000 Storage Node online documentation.

- **Flex switches that are in stacked mode or protected mode.** You cannot update firmware on stacked switches. Updating firmware is disabled for all switches that are stacked.

- **Flex switches.** If you are using the following switch, see the documentation that was provided with the switch to find information about how to update the firmware.
  - Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender

For information about installing operating systems using XClarity Administrator (see Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers).

**Procedure**

The following figure illustrates the workflow for updating firmware on managed devices.

### Step 1. Manage the firmware-updates repository

The firmware-updates repository contains a catalog of available updates and the update packages that can be applied to the managed devices.

The catalog contains information about firmware updates that are currently available for all devices that XClarity Administrator supports. The catalog organizes the firmware updates by device type. When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the latest available firmware updates from the Lenovo website and stores the information in the firmware-updates repository.

If new firmware updates are available, you must first download the update packages before you can update that firmware on the managed devices. Refreshing the catalog does not automatically download update packages. The Product Catalog table on the Firmware Updates Repository page identifies which update packages are downloaded and which are available for download.

You can download firmware updates in a few different ways:

- **Firmware-update repository packs**
  
  Firmware-update repository packs contains the latest available firmware updates at a specific point in time for all supported devices and a refreshed default firmware-compliance policy. These repository packs are imported and then applied from the Update Management Server page. When you apply a firmware-update repository pack, each update package in the pack is added to the firmware-updates repository, and a default firmware-compliance policy is automatically created for all manageable devices. You can copy this predefined policy, but you cannot change it.

  The following repository packs are available:
- **lnvgy_sw_lxca_cmmswitchrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch**. Contains firmware updates for all CMMs and Flex System switches.

- **lnvgy_sw_lxca_storagerackswitchrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch**. Contains firmware updates for all RackSwitch switches and Lenovo Storage devices.

- **lnvgy_sw_lxca_systemxrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch**. Contains firmware updates for all Converged HX Series, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers.

- **lnvgy_sw_thinksystemrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch**. Contains firmware updates for all ThinkAgile and ThinkSystem servers.

You can determine whether firmware-update repository packs are stored in the repository from the **Download Status** column on Update Management Server page. This column contains the following values:

- **Downloaded**. The firmware-update repository pack is stored in the repository.

- **Not Downloaded**. The firmware-update repository pack is available but not stored in the repository.

**UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs)**

UXSPs contains the latest available firmware and device driver updates, organized by operating system. When you download UXSPs, XClarity Administrator downloads the UXSP, based on the version that is listed in the catalog, and stores the update packages in the firmware-updates repository. When you download a UXSP, each firmware update in the UXSP is added to the firmware-updates repository and listed on the **Individual Updates** tab, and a default firmware-compliance policy is automatically created for all manageable devices using the name `<uxsp-version>-<date>-<server-short-name>-UXSP` (for example, `v1.50-2017-11-22- SD530-UXSP`). You can copy this predefined policy, but you cannot change it.

**Note:** When you download UXSPs from the Firmware Updates: Repository page, only firmware updates are downloaded and stored in the repository. Device driver updates are excluded. For information about downloading Windows device driver updates using UXSPs, see Managing the OS device-drivers repository.

You can determine whether UXSPs are stored in the firmware-updates repository from the **Download Status** column on the **Individual Updates** tab of the Firmware Updates: Repository page. This column contains the following values:

- **Downloaded**. The entire update package or the individual firmware update is stored in the repository.

- **x of y Downloaded**. Some but not all firmware updates in the update package are stored in the repository. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of available updates and the number of stored updates, or there are no updates for the specific device type.

- **Not Downloaded**. The entire update package or the individual firmware update is available but not stored in the repository.

**Individual firmware updates**

You can download individual firmware-update packages, at one time. When you download firmware-update packages, XClarity Administrator downloads the update, based on the version that is listed in the catalog, and stores the update packages in the firmware-updates repository. You can then create firmware-compliance policies using those update packages for each of your managed devices.

**Note:** The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers. For more information
about which firmware-update packages to use for your managed servers, see Downloading firmware updates.

You can determine whether specific firmware updates are stored in the firmware-updates repository from the Download Status column on the Individual Updates tab on the Firmware Updates: Repository page. This column contains the following values:

- **Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is stored in the repository.

- **x of y Downloaded.** Some but not all firmware updates in the update package are stored in the repository. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of available updates and the number of stored updates, or there are no updates for the specific device type.

- **Not Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is available but not stored in the repository.

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download firmware-update. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the files to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser and then import the files into the firmware-updates repository.

When you manually import firmware updates into XClarity Administrator, you must include the following required files: payload (image and MIB), metadata XML, change history, and readme. For example:

- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.tgz`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.xml`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.chg`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.txt`

**Attention:**

- Only import these required files. Do not import other files that might be found on the firmware download websites.

- If you do not include the XML file in the update package, the update is not imported.

- If you do not include all required files that are associated with the update, the repository shows that the update is not downloaded, which means that it is partially imported. You can then import the missing files by selecting and importing them.

- The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers. For more information about which firmware-update packages to use for your managed servers, see Downloading firmware updates.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator User’s Guide
For more information about the firmware updates, see Managing the firmware-updates repository.

Step 2. **(Optional) Create and assigning firmware-compliance policies**

Firmware-compliance policies ensure that the firmware on certain devices is at the current or specific level by flagging the devices that need attention. Each firmware-compliance policy identifies which devices are monitored and which firmware level must be installed to keep the devices in compliance. XClarity Administrator then uses these policies to check the status of managed devices and to identify devices that are out of compliance.

When you create a firmware-compliance policy, you can choose to have XClarity Administrator flag a device when:
- The firmware on the device is down level
- The firmware on the device does not exactly match the compliance target version

XClarity Administrator comes with a predefined firmware-compliance policy named **Latest firmware in repository**. When new firmware is downloaded or imported into the repository and when XClarity Administrator is restarted, this policy is updated to include latest available versions of firmware in the repository.

After a firmware-compliance policy is assigned to a device, XClarity Administrator checks the compliance status of each device when the device inventory changes or firmware-updates repository changes. When the firmware on a device is not compliant with the assigned policy, XClarity Administrator identifies that device as not compliant on the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page, based on the rule that you specified in the firmware-compliance policy.

For example, you can create a firmware-compliance policy that defines the baseline level for firmware that is installed in all ThinkSystem SR850 devices and then assign that firmware-compliance policy to all managed ThinkSystem SR850 devices. When the firmware-updates repository is refreshed and a new firmware update is added, those compute nodes might become out of compliance. When that happens, XClarity Administrator updates the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page to show that the devices are not compliant and generates an alert.

**Note:** You can choose to show or hide alerts for devices that do not meet the requirements of their assigned firmware-compliance policies (see Configuring global firmware-update settings). Alerts are hidden by default.

For more information about the firmware-compliance policies, see Creating firmware-compliance policies.

Step 3. **Applying and activating updates**

XClarity Administrator does not automatically apply firmware updates to managed devices. To update firmware, you must manually apply and activate the update on selected devices. You can apply the firmware in one of the following ways:
- Apply and activate firmware on managed devices that are not compliant with the assigned firmware-compliance policy.
You can choose to apply and activate all firmware updates that apply to a firmware-compliance policy or only specific firmware updates in a policy.

Firmware-compliance policies must be created and assigned to the devices on which you intend to apply firmware updates. For more information, see Creating firmware-compliance policies and Assigning firmware-compliance policies.

If the device has an assigned compliance policy and the firmware update results in compliance violations, you must correct the violations either by adjusting the compliance policy or assigning an alternate policy.

- Apply and activate firmware that is later than the currently installed firmware on a single managed device or group of devices without using compliance policies.

**Note:** If you choose to install a firmware-update package that contains updates for multiple components, all components to which the update package applies are updated.

When you perform updates on a set of devices, XClarity Administrator performs the updates in the following order:
- Chassis CMM
- RackSwitch and Flex System switches
- Flex compute nodes, and rack and tower servers
- Lenovo Storage devices

To activate the firmware updates, the devices must be restarted. (Note that restarting a device is disruptive.) You can choose to restart the devices as part of the update process (called *immediate activation*), or wait until a maintenance window is available to restart the devices (called *delayed activation*). In this case, you must manually restart the device for the update to take effect.

**Note:** Updates to CMMs and Flex switches are always activated immediately, even if you select delayed activation.

When you choose to update the firmware for a managed device, the following steps occur:

1. XClarity Administrator sends the firmware updates (for example, for the management controller, UEFI, and DSA) to the device.
2. When the device is restarted, the firmware updates are activated on the device.
3. For servers, XClarity Administrator sends updates for optional devices, such as network adapter and hard drive updates. XClarity Administrator applies these updates, and the server is restarted.
4. When you restart the device or choose immediate activation, the updates for the optional devices are activated.

**Attention:** Before you attempt to apply and activate updates on managed devices, ensure that you have completed the following actions:

- Review the “Read before downloading Lenovo XClarity Administrator Virtual Appliance Update” link on the XClarity Administrator download webpage.
- Read the firmware-update considerations before you attempt to update firmware on your managed devices (see Firmware-update considerations).
- Initially, devices that are not supported for updates are hidden from the view. Devices that are not supported cannot be selected for updates.
- If devices are installed in the server but is not detected by XClarity Administrator, enable **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices** to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).
• Ensure that the firmware-updates repository contains the firmware packages that you intend to deploy. If not, refresh the product catalog, and download the appropriate firmware updates (see Refreshing the product catalog and Downloading firmware updates).

  **Note:** When XClarity Administrator is initially installed, the product catalog and the repository are empty.

• Ensure that the Flex switches that are being updated are powered on.

• Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. If jobs are running, the update job is queued until all other jobs have completed. To see a list of active jobs, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.

• Typically, devices must be restarted to activate the firmware update. If you choose to restart the device during the update process (*immediate activation*), ensure that any running workloads have either been stopped or, if you are working in a virtualized environment, moved to a different server.

• If XClarity Administrator runs on a hypervisor host that runs on a managed server, do not use XClarity Administrator to update firmware on that server. When firmware updates are applied with immediate activation, XClarity Administrator forces the target server to restart, which would restart the hypervisor host and XClarity Administrator as well. When applied with deferred activation, only some firmware is applied until the target system is restarted.

• If you are updating CMMs that are running firmware level stack release 1.3.2.1 2PET12K through 2PET12Q, that have been running for more than three weeks, and are in a dual-CMM configuration, you must virtually reseat both the primary and standby CMMs before updating firmware (see Virtually reseating a CMM).

• On the Apply/Activate page, the NVMe firmware version is listed for solid state drives (SSDs). Because no target firmware update is identified for discovered NVMe devices, a warning message is displayed when you attempt to update the target system. However, the HDD/SSD update is applied even if it is not identified with a target component, so the NVMe firmware is still updated.

• You can choose to install prerequisite firmware in addition to the firmware update. All prerequisite firmware must be downloaded to the repository before it can be applied.

  **Note:** In some cases, multiple versions might be needed to update firmware, and all versions would need to be downloaded to the repository. For example, to upgrade the IBM FC5022 SAN scalable switch from v7.4.0a to v8.2.0a, you must first install v8.0.1-pha, then v8.1.1, and then v8.2.0a. All three versions must be in repository to update the switch to v8.2.0a.

• If the device has an assigned compliance policy and the firmware update results in compliance violations, you must correct the violations either by adjusting the compliance policy or assigning an alternate policy.

For more information about installing updates, see Applying and activating firmware updates.

**Firmware-update considerations**

Before you begin updating firmware for managed devices by using Lenovo XClarity Administrator, review the following important considerations.

**General considerations**

• **Minimum required levels of firmware.**

  Ensure that the firmware that is installed on each managed device is at the minimum required level before using XClarity Administrator to update firmware on those devices. For information about firmware requirements, see **Supported firmware** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
Note: For information about I/O device support and known limitations, see the XClarity Administrator Support – Compatibility webpage.

- **Update all components to the level that is included in the firmware-updates repository.**
  Because firmware updates for Flex System components are tested and released together, it is recommended that you maintain the same firmware level on all components in a Flex System chassis. Therefore, it is important to update firmware on all components in the chassis in the same maintenance window. XClarity Administrator applies the selected updates in the correct sequence automatically.

- **LXPM Linux Drivers and LXPM Windows Drivers are excluded when downloading UXSPs**
  When downloading or importing UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) for firmware updates, the Lenovo XClarity Provisioning Manager (LXPM) Linux Drivers and LXPM Windows Drivers are excluded. If you want to apply these update packages to your devices, either download the latest firmware-update repository packs or manually download the individual packages and create a firmware compliance policy to include those packages.

- **Some firmware updates are codependent on a minimum level of device driver.**
  Before applying adapter and I/O firmware updates on a server, you might be required to update the device driver to a minimum level. In general, firmware updates are not dependent on specific levels of device drivers. Refer to the firmware update readme for such co-dependencies, and update the device drivers in your operating system before updating the firmware. XClarity Administrator does not update device drivers in your operating system.

- **Reboot XClarity Administrator before updating firmware**
  If previous attempts to update firmware fails, reboot XClarity Administrator before updating firmware. Rebooting the management sever ensures that the system reserved account that is used to update firmware is synchronized on the managed devices.

- **Firmware updates are disruptive and require workloads to be quiesced on devices.**
  Performing firmware updates on managed devices is disruptive if you choose to immediately activate the update. You must quiesce the devices before updating firmware using immediate activation.
  When updating firmware on servers, the servers are shut down and placed in a maintenance operating system to update device drivers for adapters, disk drives, and solid-state drives.
  Flex switches in a given chassis are updated sequentially and are restarted during the firmware update process. Implementing redundant data paths lessens the disruption, but there might still be a brief interruption in network connectivity during the firmware update.

- **Do not use XClarity Administrator to update the firmware on the server on which XClarity Administrator is running.**
  If XClarity Administrator is running on a hypervisor host that runs on a server that it is managing, you must not update firmware on that server using XClarity Administrator. The firmware-update process shuts down the target server, so selecting XClarity Administrator as a target node also shuts down the hypervisor host and XClarity Administrator.

Baseboard-management controller considerations

- **IPMI over KCS Access must be enabled in the baseboard management controller to ensure that the management controller can communicate with XClarity Administrator.**
  To enable this option from the Lenovo XClarity Controller user interface, click **BMC Configuration → Security → IPMI over KCS Access.**

- **Minimum required BMC levels for Pending-Activation status**
  To see the pending-activation levels, the following firmware version must be installed on the primary baseboard management controller in the server.
  - **IMM2**: TCO046F, TCO046E, or later (depending on the platform)
  - **XCC**: CDI328M, PSI316N, TEI334I, or later (depending on the platform)
• Updates applied to the primary management controller and UEFI firmware partitions.

Baseboard management-controller (BMC) and UEFI updates can be applied to the primary and backup firmware partitions for the management controller and UEFI independently.

You can also apply management controller and UEFI updates to only the primary firmware partitions on the server. By default, the management controller is configured to synchronize the backup management controller partition with the primary management controller partition after the primary management controller has been running satisfactorily and the new level is ready to promote to backup. However, the management controller is not configured to synchronize the UEFI backup partition by default. Therefore, consider one of the following options on the management controller:

– Enable the automatic synchronization of the UEFI backup partition.
  
  This ensures that both the primary and backup partitions are running the same level of firmware (and that the backup UEFI firmware is compatible with the management controller firmware).

– Disable the automatic synchronization of the management-controller backup partition.

  Although not recommended, this gives you complete control over the firmware levels for the management controller and the UEFI. However, you must manually update the management controller and UEFI firmware for both partitions.

You use firmware-compliance policies to determine which updates are applied to each device. For more information about firmware-compliance policies, see Creating firmware-compliance policies.

**Note:** If the management controller and UEFI are configured to automatically synchronize the backup firmware from the primary, it is not necessary for XClarity Administrator to update the backup banks. In that case, you can clear the backup bank updates when applying updates to a server or remove the backup banks from the firmware-compliance policy.

• Possibility of VMware vSphere ESXi system failure (host purple diagnostic screen) when a management controller is reset.

If you are running VMware vSphere ESXi on any server, ensure that the following minimum VMware ESXi levels are installed before updating the firmware on the server:

– If you are running VMware vSphere ESXi 5.0, install a minimum level of 5.0u2 (update 2)
– If you are running VMware vSphere ESXi 5.1, install a minimum level of 5.1u1 (update 1)

If you do not install these minimum levels, a VMware vSphere ESXi system failure (host purple diagnostic screen) might occur whenever the management controller is reset, including when management-controller firmware is applied and activated.

**Note:** This issue does not affect ESXi v5.5.

**ThinkSystem device considerations**

• For ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers, the following limitations apply.

  – XClarity Administrator v3.0 does not correctly update management data when updating firmware from 20A to 20B or 20C.

    To work around this issue, either unmanage and then manage the device again, or restart XClarity Administrator.

  – XClarity Administrator v2.8 does not support firmware updates in the following situations.

    – If XClarity Administrator v2.7 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20A firmware, and you upgrade to 20B firmware using the baseboard management controller before upgrading to XClarity Administrator v2.8

    – If XClarity Administrator v2.7 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20B firmware before upgrading to XClarity Administrator v2.8
If XClarity Administrator v2.8 manages ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers running 20A firmware, and you upgrade to 20B firmware using the baseboard management controller

- Only BMC and UEFI firmware updates are supported.
- Only Immediate activation is supported. Delayed activation and Prioritized activation are not supported.
- BMC firmware version AMBT10M or later is required.
- UEFI firmware version CFE114L or later is required.
- XClarity Administrator v3.0 does not support downgrading firmware updates.

- **XClarity Administrator v2.1, v2.2, and v2.3 require a cumulative patch to manage ThinkSystem servers running BMC firmware TEI342s-2.40, CDI334v-2.50, or PSI322k-1.50.**
  
  For XClarity Administrator v2.1, v2.2, and v2.3, before updating BMC firmware on ThinkSystem servers to version TEI342s-2.40, CDI334v-2.50, or PSI322k-1.50, you must either apply the latest XClarity Administrator Virtual Appliance Cumulative Patch or update to XClarity Administrator v2.4. XClarity Administrator v2.0 or earlier does not require the cumulative patches.

- **Firmware updates is not supported on ThinkSystem servers using DHCPv6 or statically assigned IPv6 addresses**
  
  When using IPv6 addressing on ThinkSystem servers, firmware updates is supported on only IPv6 Link-Local Address(LLA) and stateless addresses.

**Flex System device considerations**

- **Select Immediate Activation when updating compute nodes that are at management-controller firmware levels earlier than Flex System 1.3.2.**
  
  When you apply the Flex System 1.3.2, 2nd Quarter lifecycle release to a compute node, you must choose *immediate activation* to update the compute node. Immediate activate forces the compute node to restart during the update process.

- **Flex switches must be configured with an IP address that is reachable from XClarity Administrator.**
  
  The target Flex switch must be assigned an IP address that can communicate with XClarity Administrator so that XClarity Administrator can download and apply the firmware update.

- **Update support on scalable complexes, such as x480 X6 and x880 X6 nodes.**
  
  Update support on scalable nodes such as the Flex System x480 X6 and x880 X6 compute nodes is limited to configurations where the complex is configured as a *single partition* that includes all compute nodes that are part of the multi-node complex. You cannot use XClarity Administrator to update a complex that consists of multiple partitions.

  If you assign a firmware-compliance policy to a partition that includes multiple servers in a scalable complex (such as Flex System x480 X6 and x880 X6 compute nodes), XClarity Administrator updates firmware on all management controllers and UEFIs for each server in the partition by default. However, if you select a subset of components within the partition, XClarity Administrator updates the firmware on only the selected components in the partition.

- **Before updating the CMM2 to v1.30 (1AON06C) or later, Flex switches must be running Level 3 version of Enhanced Configuration and Management (EHCM L3)**
  
  CMM2 and the Flex switches communicate using the EHCM protocol. This protocol is required for XClarity Administrator to update the Flex switches. When you update a CMM2 to v1.30 (1AON06C) or later, XClarity Administrator verifies that the Flex switches are running EHCM L3 and if not, cancels the CMM update with a warning that the Flex switches must be first updated to a version that supports EHCM-L3. You can override this verification by selecting *Attempt to update components already in compliance* when updating the CMM firmware.

  **Attention:** There is currently no firmware version for Flex System EN6131 Ethernet switches and IB6131 InfiniBand switches that support EHCM L3. This means that after you update the CMM2 to firmware v1.30 (1AON06C) or later, you can no longer use XClarity Administrator to update those switches. The work-
around is to use the management controller web interface or command-line interface for the chassis to update the switch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flex System switch</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CN4093</td>
<td>7.8.4.0</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN4023</td>
<td>6.0.0</td>
<td>April 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN4093</td>
<td>7.8.4.0</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN4093R</td>
<td>7.8.4.0</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN6132</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FC3171</td>
<td>9.1.3.02.00</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FC5022</td>
<td>7.4.0b1</td>
<td>March 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB6132</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI4091</td>
<td>7.8.4.0</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI4093</td>
<td>7.8.4.0</td>
<td>June 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The EN2092 1-Gb Ethernet Scalable Switch does not require EHCM L3 and does not have this restriction.

**Storage considerations**

- **Disk drives must be in the JBOD, Online, Ready, or Unconfigured (good) state.**
  To update firmware on disk drives, the RAID state must be JBOD, Online, Ready, or Unconfigured (good). Other states are not supported. To determine the RAID state for a disk drive, go to the Inventory page for the device, expand the Drives section, and check the RAID State column for that disk drive (see Viewing the details of a managed server).

- **Firmware version does not detect disk drives and solid state drives.**
  XClarity Administrator detects only the installed-firmware version and performs a compliance check for disk drives and solid-state drives (SSDs) that are attached to a MegaRAID or an NVME adapter. Other attached drives might have a level of firmware that is not supported or might not support firmware-version reporting. However, firmware updates are applied to those drives when selected.

- **Applying the ServeRAID M5115 PSoC3 update package from XClarity Administrator requires a minimum installed level of 68.**
  The ServeRAID M5115 PSoC3 (Programmable System-on-Chip) update from earlier than version 68 must be done in a controlled manner.

**Tip:** You can view the code version for the ServeRAID M5115 PSoC3 by logging in to the CMM web interface and selecting the Firmware tab for the target compute node. Then, select the expansion card for the ServeRAID M5115 adapter. The PSoC3 code version is the GENERIC firmware type.

For installed versions earlier than 68, you cannot update using XClarity Administrator. Instead you must perform the following steps from either the Chassis Management Module (CMM) web interface or the command-line interface (CLI):

- **Using the CMM web interface:**
  1. Log in to the Chassis Management Module (CMM) web interface.
  2. From the main menu, click Service and Support → Advanced.
  3. Click the Service Reset tab.
  4. Select the appropriate compute node by clicking its radio button.
  5. From the Reset pull down button, click Virtual Reseat.
6. Click OK to confirm.

Managing the firmware-updates repository

The firmware-updates repository contains a catalog of available updates and the update packages that can be applied to the managed devices.

About this task

The catalog contains information about firmware updates that are currently available for all devices that XClarity Administrator supports. The catalog organizes the firmware updates by device type. When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the latest available firmware updates from the Lenovo website and stores the information in the firmware-updates repository.

If new firmware updates are available, you must first download the update packages before you can update that firmware on the managed devices. Refreshing the catalog does not automatically download update packages. The Product Catalog table on the Firmware Updates Repository page identifies which update packages are downloaded and which are available for download.

You can download firmware updates in a few different ways:

- **Individual firmware updates.** You can download individual firmware-update packages, at one time, based on the version that is listed in the catalog.

- **UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs).** UXSPs contains the latest available firmware and device driver updates, organized by operating system. When you download UXSPs from the Firmware Updates Repository page, only firmware updates are downloaded and stored in the repository. Device driver updates are excluded.

- **Firmware-update repository packs.** Repository packs contains the latest available firmware updates for all supported devices and a refreshed default firmware-compliance policy. These repository packs are imported and then applied from the Update Management Server page.

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download firmware-update. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the files to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser and then import the files into the firmware-updates repository.

![Diagram](image)

When you manually import firmware updates into XClarity Administrator, you must include the following required files: payload (image and MIB), metadata XML, change history, and readme. For example:

- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.tgz`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.xml`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.chg`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.txt`
Attention:

- Only import these required files. Do not import other files that might be found on the firmware download websites.
- If you do not include the XML file in the update package, the update is not imported.
- If you do not include all required files that are associated with the update, the repository shows that the update is not downloaded, which means that it is partially imported. You can then import the missing files by selecting and importing them.
- The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers. For more information about which firmware-update packages to use for your managed servers, see Downloading firmware updates.

After the firmware-updates are downloaded in the repository, information is provided about each update, including the release date, size, policy usage, and severity. The severity indicates the impact and the need to apply the update to help you to assess how your environment might be affected.

- **Initial Release.** This is the first release of the firmware.
- **Critical.** The firmware release contains urgent fixes for data corruption, security, or stability issue.
- **Suggested.** The firmware release contains significant fixes for problems that you are likely to encounter.
- **Non-Critical.** The firmware release contains minor fixes, performance enhancements, and textual changes.

Notes:

- The severity is relative to the previously released version of the update. For example, if the installed firmware is v1.01, and update v1.02 is Critical and update v1.03 is Recommended, this means that the update from 1.02 to 1.03 is recommended, but the update from v1.01 to v1.03 is critical because it is cumulative (v1.03 includes v1.02 critical issues).
- Special cases might arise where an update is only critical or recommended for a specific machine type or operating system. Refer to the Release Notes for additional information.

Procedure

To view firmware updates that are available in the product catalog, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Repository**. The Firmware Updates Repository page is displayed with a list of available firmware-update packages, organized by device type.

**Step 2.** Click the **Individual Updates** tab to view information about available firmware update packages, or click the **UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs)** tab to view information about available UXSPs.

**Step 3.** Expand a device and device components to list the update packages and firmware updates for that device.

You can sort the table columns and click the **Expand all** icon (++) and **Collapse all** icon (−−) to make it easier to find specific firmware updates. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed devices and firmware updates by selecting an option in the **Show** menu to list only firmware updates of a specific age, firmware updates for all server types or only managed-server types or by entering text in the **Filter** field. Note that if you search for specific devices, only the devices are listed; firmware updates are not listed under the device name.

**Note:** For servers, specific update packages are available based on the type of server. For example, if you expand a server, such as the Flex System x240 Compute Node, update packages that are available specifically for that compute node are displayed.
From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Refresh this page with the current firmware-update information in the catalog by clicking the **Refresh** icon.

- Retrieve the latest information about available updates by clicking **Refresh Catalog**. Retrieving this information might take several minutes to complete. For more information, see Refreshing the product catalog.

- Add the firmware updates to the repository by selecting one or more update packages or updates in the product catalog and then clicking the **Download** icon. When the firmware updates are downloaded and added to the repository, the status changes to “Downloaded.”

  **Note:** The XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to acquire updates through the XClarity Administrator user interface. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can import updates that you previously downloaded.

  For more information about downloading updates, see Downloading firmware updates.

- Import firmware updates that you manually downloaded to a workstation that has network access to XClarity Administrator by selecting one or more updates and then clicking the **Import** icon. For more information about importing updates, see Downloading firmware updates.

- Stop firmware downloads that are currently in progress by selecting one or more updates and then clicking the **Cancel Downloads** icon. Canceling downloads cancels all firmware downloads that are in progress. You can monitor the detailed progress of and stop a specific firmware download from the jobs log (see Monitoring jobs).
• Delete update packages or individual updates from the repository (see Deleting firmware updates).
• Export firmware updates that exist in the firmware-updates repository to a local system (see Exporting and importing firmware updates).

**Refreshing the product catalog**
The product catalog contains information about all firmware updates that are available for all devices that Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports, including chassis, servers, and Flex switches.

**Before you begin**

An Internet connection is required to refresh the product catalog.

Refreshing the catalog might take several minutes to complete.

**About this task**

When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the latest available firmware updates from the [Lenovo XClarity Support website](https://www.lenovo.com/support/XClarity) and stores the information to the firmware-updates repository.

Refreshing the catalog only adds information about available firmware updates to the repository. It does not download the update packages. You must download the firmware updates to make the updates available for installation. For more information about downloading updates, see Downloading firmware updates.

**Procedure**

To refresh the product catalog, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Firmware Updates: Repository**. The Firmware Updates Repository page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Individual Updates** tab to retrieve information about individual firmware-update packages, or click the **UpdateXpress System Pack (UXSP)** tab to retrieve information about UXSPs.

**Step 3.** Click **Refresh Catalog**, and then click one of the following options to obtain information about the latest available firmware updates.

- **Refresh Selected - Latest Only.** Retrieves information about the most current version of firmware updates that are available for only the selected devices.
- **Refresh All - Latest Only.** Retrieves information about the most current version of all firmware updates for all supported devices.
- **Refresh Selected.** Retrieves information about all versions of firmware updates that are available for only the selected devices.
- **Refresh All.** Retrieves information about all versions of all firmware updates that are available for all supported devices.

**Tip:** You can refresh the product catalog and download the latest firmware in one step by clicking **All Actions ➞ Refresh and download the latest for all managed devices** or **All Actions ➞ Refresh and download the latest for selected devices**.

**Downloading firmware updates**

You can download or import firmware updates in the firmware-updates repository, depending on your access to the Internet. Firmware updates must be available in the firmware-updates repository before you can update firmware on management devices.
Before you begin

Ensure that all ports and Internet address that Lenovo XClarity Administrator requires are available before you attempt to download firmware. For more information about ports, see Port availability and Firewalls and proxy servers in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

If a device type is not listed in the firmware-updates repository, you must first manage a device of that type before downloading or importing individual firmware updates for that device type.

Important:

• For XClarity Administrator v1.1.1 and earlier, you must manually download and import the firmware updates for Lenovo hardware from Lenovo Data Center Support website.

• XClarity Administrator cannot download updates for RackSwitch switches and Lenovo storage devices from the Lenovo website to the firmware-updates repository; instead, you must manually download and import the RackSwitch and Lenovo Storage updates from the Lenovo website to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host, or download and apply the firmware-update repository packs, which contain all available firmware updates.

• Internet Explorer and Microsoft Edge web browsers have an upload limit of 4 GB. If the file that you are importing is greater than 4 GB, consider using another web browser (such as Chrome or Firefox).

About this task

You can download firmware updates in a few different ways:

• **Firmware-update repository packs**
  Firmware-update repository packs contains the latest available firmware updates at a specific point in time for all supported devices and a refreshed default firmware-compliance policy. These repository packs are imported and then applied from the Update Management Server page. When you apply a firmware-update repository pack, each update package in the pack is added to the firmware-updates repository, and a default firmware-compliance policy is automatically created for all manageable devices.
  You can copy this predefined policy, but you cannot change it.
  The following repository packs are available:

  - `lnvgy_sw_lxca_cmmswitchrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch`. Contains firmware updates for all CMMs and Flex System switches.
  - `lnvgy_sw_lxca_storagerackswitchrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch`. Contains firmware updates for all RackSwitch switches and Lenovo Storage devices.
  - `lnvgy_sw_lxca_systemxrepos-x.x.x_anyos_noarch`. Contains firmware updates for all Converged HX Series, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers.
  - `lnvgy_sw_thinksystemrepo-x.x.x_anyos_noarch`. Contains firmware updates for all ThinkAgile and ThinkSystem servers.
  You can determine whether firmware-update repository packs are stored in the repository from the Download Status column on Update Management Server page. This column contains the following values:

    - Downloaded. The firmware-update repository pack is stored in the repository.
    - Not Downloaded. The firmware-update repository pack is available but not stored in the repository.

• **UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs)**
  UXSPs contains the latest available firmware and device driver updates, organized by operating system. When you download UXSPs, XClarity Administrator downloads the UXSP, based on the version that is listed in the catalog, and stores the update packages in the firmware-updates repository. When you download a UXSP, each firmware update in the UXSP is added to the firmware-updates repository and
listed on the **Individual Updates** tab, and a default firmware-compliance policy is automatically created for all manageable devices using the name `<uxsp-version>-<date>-<server-short-name>-UXSP` (for example, v1.50-2017-11-22-SD530-UXSP). You can copy this predefined policy, but you cannot change it.

**Note:** When you download UXSPs from the Firmware Updates: Repository page, only firmware updates are downloaded and stored in the repository. Device driver updates are excluded. For information about downloading Windows device driver updates using UXSPs, see Managing the OS device-drivers repository.

You can determine whether UXSPs are stored in the firmware-updates repository from the **Download Status** column on the **Individual Updates** tab of the Firmware Updates: Repository page. This column contains the following values:

- **Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is stored in the repository.

- **x of y Downloaded.** Some but not all firmware updates in the update package are stored in the repository. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of available updates and the number of stored updates, or there are no updates for the specific device type.

- **Not Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is available but not stored in the repository.

### Individual firmware updates

You can download individual firmware-update packages, at one time. When you download firmware-update packages, XClarity Administrator downloads the update, based on the version that is listed in the catalog, and stores the update packages in the firmware-updates repository. You can then create firmware-compliance policies using those update packages for each of your managed devices.

**Note:** The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers. For more information about which firmware-update packages to use for your managed servers, see **Downloading firmware updates**.

You can determine whether specific firmware updates are stored in the firmware-updates repository from the **Download Status** column on the **Individual Updates** tab on the Firmware Updates: Repository page. This column contains the following values:

- **Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is stored in the repository.

- **x of y Downloaded.** Some but not all firmware updates in the update package are stored in the repository. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of available updates and the number of stored updates, or there are no updates for the specific device type.

- **Not Downloaded.** The entire update package or the individual firmware update is available but not stored in the repository.

When you install XClarity Administrator or update to a new release, it is a best practice to download the latest repository pack to ensure you have the latest firmware updates. Then, you can schedule a recurring job to refresh the catalog to find individual updates that were posted on the web since the last repository pack and then electronically download those updates, one at a time.

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download firmware-update. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the files to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser and then import the files into the firmware-updates repository.
When you manually import firmware updates into XClarity Administrator, you must include the following required files: payload (image and MIB), metadata XML, change history, and readme. For example:

- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.tgz`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.xml`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.chg`
- `lnvgy_sw_lxca_thinksystemrepo*_anyos_noarch.txt`

**Note:** The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers.

A message is displayed on the page when the repository is more than 50% full. Another message is displayed on the page when the repository is more than 85% full. To reduce the space used in the repository, you can remove unused images files and policies. You can remove unused firmware-compliance policies and associated firmware packages by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Compliance policies**, selecting one or more policies to delete, and then clicking **Actions ➔ Delete any policy and firmware packages**.

The following table summarizes the differences between acquiring firmware-update repository packs, UXSPs, and individual firmware-update packages.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Update package</th>
<th>UI page for downloading and importing files</th>
<th>Webpage to download files manually</th>
<th>Is the firmware updates repository refreshed?</th>
<th>Is the firmware-compliance policy refreshed automatically?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Firmware-update repository packs</td>
<td>Update Management Server page <strong>Note:</strong> You must import and then apply the repository pack.</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator download webpage</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateXpress System Packs</td>
<td>Firmware Updates: Repository page, <strong>UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) tab</strong></td>
<td>Lenovo XClarity Essentials UpdateXpress webpage</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware-updates</td>
<td>Firmware Updates: Repository page, <strong>Individual Updates tab</strong></td>
<td>Lenovo Data Center Support website <strong>Notes:</strong> Use the Fix Central website for the following devices: • Flex System x220 Type 2585, 7906 • Flex System x222 Compute Nod Type 2589, 7916 • Flex System x240 Type 7863, 8737, 8738, 8956 • Flex System x280 / x480 / x880 X6 Type 4259, 7903 • Flex System x440 Type 2584, 7917</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Procedure**

To download one or more firmware updates, complete the following steps.

- To import one or more firmware-update repository packs:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Administration ➔ Update Management Server** to display the Management Server Update page.
  2. Download the latest repository packs:
     - If XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet:
       a. Retrieve information about the latest updates by clicking the **Refresh Catalog ➔ Refresh All Managed – Latest only**. New management-server updates and firmware-update repository packs are listed in the table on the “Management Server Update” page.
       Refreshing the repository might take several minutes to complete.
       **Note:** Refreshing the repository does not automatically download payload files. Only the XML and readme files are downloaded.
       b. Select the firmware-update repository packs that you want to download.

      **Tip:** Ensure that the packages that you select have “Supplemental Pack” in the **Type** column.
c. Click the Download Selected icon ( ). When the download is complete, the Download Status for that software update changes to “Downloaded”.

- If XClarity Administrator is not connected to the Internet:
  a. Download the firmware-update repository packs from the XClarity Administrator download webpage to a workstation that has a network connection to the XClarity Administrator host.
  b. From the Management Server Update page, click the Import icon ( ).
  c. Click Select Files, and browse to the location of the firmware-update repository packs on the workstation.
  d. Select all package files, and then, click Open.
    You must import the metadata file (.xml) as well as the image or payload file (.zip, .bin, .uxz, or .tgz), change history file (.chg), and readme file (.txt) for the update. Any files that are selected but are not specified in the .xml file are discarded. If you do not include the .xml file, the update is not imported.
  e. Click Import.
    When the import is complete, the firmware-update repository packs are listed in the table on the Management Server Update page, and the Download Status for each update is “Downloaded”.

3. Select the firmware-update repository packs that you want to install to the firmware-updates repository.

   Note: Ensure that Download Status is “Downloaded” and that the Type is “Patch.”

4. Click the Perform Update icon ( ) and add the firmware-update packages to the repository.
5. Wait a few minutes for the update to complete and XClarity Administrator to be restarted.
6. Determine if the update is complete by refreshing the web browser.
   When completed, the Management Server Update page is displayed, and the Applied Status column changes to “Applied.”
7. Clear the web browser cache.

- To download one or more UXSPs:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Repository to display the Firmware Updates Repository page.
  2. Click the UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) tab.
  3. Download the latest UXSPs:
     - If XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet:
       To refresh the catalog and download the latest UXSPs for all managed devices, click All Actions ➔ Refresh and download the latest for all managed devices.
       To refresh the catalog and download the latest UXSPs for only selected devices:
       a. Expand the device to display the list of available UXSPs.
       b. Select one or more UXSPs that you want to download.
       c. Click All Actions ➔ Refresh and download the latest for selected devices.
       When the download is complete, the Download Status for the selected UXSPs changes to “Downloaded.”
     - If XClarity Administrator is not connected to the Internet:
       a. Download the UXSPs from the Lenovo XClarity Essentials UpdateXpress webpage to a workstation that has a network connection to the XClarity Administrator host.
b. From XClarity Administrator, click the **Import** icon.

c. Click **Select Files**, and browse to the location of the UXSPs on the workstation.

d. Select all package files, and then, click **Open**.

You must import the metadata file (.xml) as well as the image or payload file (.zip, .bin, .uxz, or .tgz), change history file (.chg), and readme file (.txt) for the update. Any files that are selected but are not specified in the .xml file are discarded. If you do not include the .xml file, the update is not imported.

e. Click **Import**.

When the import is complete, the firmware-update repository packs are listed in the table on the Management Server Update page, and the Download Status for each update is “Downloaded.”

- **To download one or more individual firmware-update packages.**

  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Firmware Updates: Repository** to display the Firmware Updates Repository page.

  2. Click the **Individual Updates** tab.

  3. Download the latest individual firmware-updates:

     - If XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet:

       To refresh the catalog and download the latest firmware for all managed devices, click **All Actions → Refresh and download the latest for all managed devices**.

       To refresh the catalog and download the latest firmware for only selected devices:

       a. Expand the device to display the list of available firmware updates.

       b. Select one or more firmware updates that you want to download.

       **Tip:** An update package can consist of multiple firmware updates. When you download a firmware update, you can choose to download the entire update package or only specific updates. You can also choose to download multiple packages at one time.

       c. Click **All Actions → Refresh and download the latest for selected devices**.

       When the download is complete, the **Download Status** for the selected firmware updates changes to “Downloaded”.

     - If XClarity Administrator is not connected to the Internet:

       a. Download the firmware-update packages from the Lenovo Data Center Support website to a workstation that has network connection to the XClarity Administrator host.

       For the following servers, download firmware updates for the SLES 11 operating system from the Fix Central website:

       - Flex System x220 Type 2585, 7906
       - Flex System x222 Compute Node Type 2589, 7916
       - Flex System x240 Type 7863, 8737, 8738, 8956
       - Flex System x280 / x480 / x880 X6 Type 4259, 7903
       - Flex System x440 Type 2584, 7917

       For all other servers, download firmware updates for the RHEL 6 operating system from the Lenovo XClarity Support website.

       b. From XClarity Administrator, click the **Import** icon.

       c. Click **Select Files**, and browse to the location of the firmware updates on the workstation.

       d. Select all package files, and then click **Open**.
You must import the metadata file (.xml) as well as the image or payload file (.zip, .bin, .uxz, or .tgz), change history file (.chg), and readme file (.txt) for the update. Any files that are selected but are not specified in the .xml file are discarded.

Attention:
- Only import these required files. Do not import other files that might be found on the firmware download websites.
- If you do not include the XML file in the update package, the update is not imported.
- If you do not include all required files that are associated with the update, the repository shows that the update is not downloaded, which means that it is partially imported. You can then import the missing files by selecting and importing them.
- The core firmware updates (such as management controller, UEFI, and pDSA) are operating-system independent. Firmware-update packages for the RHEL 6 or SLES 11 operating systems are used to update compute nodes and rack servers. For more information about which firmware-update packages to use for your managed servers, see Downloading firmware updates.

e. Click Import.

Results

Refreshing the catalog and downloading the firmware updates might take a several minutes. When the updates have been downloaded and stored in the repository, the row in the product catalog is highlighted, and the Download Status column is changed to “Downloaded.”

Note: The machine type for some switches might show up as a hexadecimal number.
Exporting and importing firmware updates
You can export individual firmware updates and UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) that exist in the repository to the local system.

About this task

Only firmware updates that exist in the repository are exported. Ensure that the download-status for the selected firmware updates is "Downloaded."

All of the files that are associated with the firmware update are exported, including the update image or payload file (.zip, .bin, .uxz, or .tgz), metadata file (.xml), change history file (.chg), and readme file (.txt).

Attention: Do not change the name of the firmware update files.

Procedure

• To export firmware updates:
  1. Click the Individual Updates tab or UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) tab.
2. Select one or more firmware updates.
3. Click the Export icon 📋.

- To import firmware updates:
  You can import files that you manually exported from Lenovo XClarity Administrator and files that you manually downloaded from the web. For more information, see Downloading firmware updates.

Deleting firmware updates
You can delete firmware updates and UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) from the firmware-updates repository.

Before you begin

Ensure that all running or scheduled update jobs that use a firmware-compliance policy that contains the firmware updates to be deleted are completed or canceled (see Monitoring jobs).

Ensure that the update is not being used in a firmware-compliance policy before deleting the update. You cannot delete firmware-update packages that are currently used in one or more firmware-compliance policies.

Deleting a UXSP also deletes the firmware-compliance policy that was automatically created for that UXSP.

Procedure
To delete one or more firmware updates from the repository, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Unassign all firmware-compliance policies that contain the firmware updates to be deleted from all managed devices.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Apply/Activate. The Firmware Updates Apply/Activate page is displayed.
   b. Select “No assignment” or select another firmware-compliance policy in the Assigned Policy column for the managed devices that use the firmware-compliance policy.

Step 2. Delete all user-defined firmware-compliance policies that contain the firmware updates to be deleted, or edited the firmware-compliance policies to remove the firmware updates to be deleted.
   a. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Compliance Policies. The Firmware Updates Compliance Policies page is displayed.
   b. Select the firmware-compliance policy, and then select the Delete icon 🗑️ to delete the policy, or click the Edit icon 📊 to remove the firmware updates from the policy.

Step 3. Delete the firmware updates.
   - Individual firmware updates
     1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Repository. The Firmware Updates Repository page is displayed.
     2. Click the Individual Updates tab.
     3. Select one or more firmware updates to be deleted.
     4. Click the Delete only images icon 🗑️ to delete only the image or payload file (.zip, .bin, .uxz, or .tgz). Information about the update, remains so that you can easily download the update again. Or click the Delete full update packages icon 🗑️ to delete the full update packages, including the image or payload file, change history file (.chg), readme file (.txt), and metadata file (.xml).
When you delete a firmware update, the payload files are removed; however, the XML file, which contains information about the update, remains so that you can easily download the update again, if needed, and the **Download Status** changes to "Not downloaded."

- **UXSPs**
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Repository**. The Firmware Updates Repository page is displayed.
  2. Click the **UpdateXpress System Pack (UXSP)** tab.
  3. Select one or more UXSPs to be deleted.
  4. Click the **Delete UXSP and associated policy** icon (️) to delete the full UXSPs, including the image or payload file, change history file (.chg), readme file (.txt), and metadata file (.xml), and all associated firmware-compliance policies.

If selected UXSPs are associated with policies that are in use (assigned to devices), the Delete UXSP, Policy, and Update Packages dialog is displayed. Choose whether to delete the assigned policies in addition to the UXSP and unassigned policies, and click **OK**.

### Creating firmware-compliance policies

*Firmware-compliance policies* ensure that the firmware on certain devices is at the current or specific level by flagging the devices that need attention. Each firmware-compliance policy identifies which devices are monitored and which firmware level must be installed to keep the devices in compliance. XClarity Administrator then uses these policies to check the status of managed devices and to identify devices that are out of compliance.

**Before you begin**

Refresh the product catalog in the firmware-updates repository, and download the appropriate firmware updates (see Refreshing the product catalog and Downloading firmware updates).

If a device type is not listed in the firmware-updates repository, you must first manage a device of that type and then download or import the complete set of firmware updates before creating compliance policies for devices of that type.

**About this task**

When you create a firmware-compliance policy, you can choose to have XClarity Administrator flag a device when:

- The firmware on the device is down level
- The firmware on the device does not exactly match the compliance target version

XClarity Administrator comes with a predefined firmware-compliance policy named **Latest firmware in repository**. When new firmware is downloaded or imported into the repository and when XClarity Administrator is restarted, this policy is updated to include latest available versions of firmware in the repository.

After a firmware-compliance policy is assigned to a device, XClarity Administrator checks the compliance status of each device when the device inventory changes or firmware-updates repository changes. When the firmware on a device is not compliant with the assigned policy, XClarity Administrator identifies that device as not compliant on the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page, based on the rule that you specified in the firmware-compliance policy.
For example, you can create a firmware-compliance policy that defines the baseline level for firmware that is installed in all ThinkSystem SR850 devices and then assign that firmware-compliance policy to all managed ThinkSystem SR850 devices. When the firmware-updates repository is refreshed and a new firmware update is added, those compute nodes might become out of compliance. When that happens, XClarity Administrator updates the Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate page to show that the devices are not compliant and generates an alert.

**Note:** You can choose to show or hide alerts for devices that do not meet the requirements of their assigned firmware-compliance policies (see Configuring global firmware-update settings). Alerts are hidden by default.

**Procedure**

To create a firmware-compliance policy, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Compliance Policies**. The Compliance Policy page is displayed with a list of all existing firmware-compliance policies.

**Firmware Updates: Compliance Policies**

- Compliance Policy allows you to create or modify a policy based on the acquired updates in the Firmware Repository.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compliance Policy Name</th>
<th>Usage Status</th>
<th>Compliance...</th>
<th>Last Modified</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEV-ThinkSystem-SDV-UEFI-2017-12-21</td>
<td>Not Assigned</td>
<td>Predefined</td>
<td>2017-12-21 03:00:00</td>
<td>ThinkSystem Developm...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEV-ThinkSystem-SDV-UEFI-2017-12-11</td>
<td>Not Assigned</td>
<td>Predefined</td>
<td>2017-12-11 03:00:00</td>
<td>ThinkSystem Developm...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEV-ThinkSystem-Without-UEFI-2017-12</td>
<td>Assigned</td>
<td>Predefined</td>
<td>2017-12-21 04:00:00</td>
<td>ThinkSystem Developm...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT-Thinksystem-Servers-2017-12</td>
<td>Assigned</td>
<td>Predefined</td>
<td>2017-12-21 03:00:00</td>
<td>Production firmware for...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEV-ThinkSystem-Without-UEFI-2017-12</td>
<td>Assigned</td>
<td>Predefined</td>
<td>2017-12-11 04:00:00</td>
<td>ThinkSystem Developm...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy-DEV-ThinkSystem-Without-UEFI-20</td>
<td>Not Assigned</td>
<td>User Defined</td>
<td></td>
<td>This policy was created...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Create a New Policy

Step 3. Fill in the name and description for the firmware-compliance policy.

Step 4. Fill in the table on the following criteria for each device:

- **Device Type.** Choose a type of device for which this policy is to apply.

  **Tip:** If you choose a server, the compliance level is done at the UXSP level. However, you can also expand the server to specify specific firmware levels for each component, such as the baseboard management controller or UEFI.

- **Compliance Target.** Specify the compliance target for the applicable devices and subcomponents.

  For servers, you can choose one of the following values.

  - **Default.** Changes the compliance target for each subcomponent to the default value (such as the latest set of firmware in the repository for that device).
  
  - **Do not update.** Changes the compliance target for each subcomponent to “Do not update.”

  For devices without subcomponents (such as CMMs, switches, or storage devices) or for subcomponents in a server, you can choose one of the following values.

  - `<firmware_level>`. Specifies the baseline firmware level.
  
  - **Do not update.** Specifies that the firmware is not to be updated. Note that firmware on the backup management controller is not updated by default.

  **Note:** When you change default values for any subcomponent in a server, the compliance target for that server changes to Custom.

- **Compliance Rule.** Specify when a device is flagged as not compliant in the Installed Version column on the Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate.

  - **Flag if Downlevel.** If the firmware level that is installed on a device is earlier than the level that is specified in the firmware-compliance policy, the device is flagged as not compliant. For example, if you replace a network adapter in a compute node, and the firmware on that network adapter is earlier than the level identified in the firmware-compliance policy, the compute node is flagged as not compliance.

  - **Flag if Not Exact Match.** If the firmware level that is installed on a device is not an exact match with the firmware-compliance policy, the device is flagged as not compliant. For example, if you replace a network adapter in a compute node, and the firmware on that network adapter is different than the level identified in the firmware-compliance policy, then the compute node is flagged as not compliance.

  - **No Flag.** Devices that are out of compliance are not flagged.
Step 5. **Optional:** Expand the system type to display each update in the package, and select the firmware level to be used as the compliance target, or select “Do not update” to prevent firmware from being updated on that device.

Step 6. Click **Create.**

The firmware-compliance policy is listed on the Firmware Updates: Compliance Policy page.

**What to do next**

The firmware-compliance policy is added to the table on the page. The table shows the usage status, origin of the policy (whether user-defined or predefined), and the last modification date.

After you create a firmware-compliance policy, you perform the following actions on a selected firmware-compliance policy:

- Create a duplicate of an existing firmware-compliance policy by clicking the **Copy** icon (●).
- Rename or edit a firmware-compliance policy by clicking the **Edit** icon (●).
- Delete the selected firmware-compliance policy by clicking the **Delete user-defined policy** icon (●) or delete the selected firmware-compliance policy and all associated firmware updates that are used only by that policy by clicking the **Delete any policy and firmware packages** icon (●). If the policy is assigned to a device, the policy is unassigned before it is deleted.

You cannot delete the predefined Latest Firmware policy; however, you can disable the policy by clicking the **Global Settings** icon (●), and then selecting **Disable Latest Firmware Policy.** When this option is selected, the Latest firmware policy is unassigned from managed devices, and the policy is no longer updated to include the latest available versions of firmware in the repository.

- Export firmware-compliance policy that exists in the firmware-updates repository to a local system by selecting the policies and clicking the **Export** icon (●). You can then import the policies to another XClarity Administrator instance by clicking the **Import** icon (●).

After you create a firmware-compliance policy, you can assign the policy to a specific device (see Creating firmware-compliance policies) and apply and activate updates for that device (see Applying and activating firmware updates).

**Assigning firmware-compliance policies**

You must assign a firmware-compliance policy to a device before you can apply and activate firmware updates on the device.

**About this task**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports the following policy assignments.

- **Updates Not Supported.** The device does not support firmware updates; therefore, you cannot assign a firmware-compliance policy.
- **No assignment.** A policy is not currently assigned to the device. However, the next time that XClarity Administrator is restarted, the last-edited firmware-compliance policy that can be applied to the device is assigned to that device.
- **<policy_name>**. The specific policy is assigned to the device.

When a device is managed, XClarity Administrator automatically assigns the last-edited firmware-compliance policy that can be applied to that device. You can manually assign a different policy to a device.
Procedure

To assign a firmware-compliance policy to a device, complete the following steps.

- For a single device
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate**. The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed with a list of managed devices.
  2. Select a policy from the drop-down menu in the **Assigned Compliance Policy** column.
     You can only select from a list of firmware-compliance policies that are applicable to each device. If a policy is not currently assigned to the device, the assigned policy is set to "No assignment." If no policies are applicable to the device, the assigned policy is set to "No applicable policies."

- For multiple devices
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate**. The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed with a list of managed devices.
  2. **Optional**: Select one or more devices to which you want to assign a firmware-compliance policy.
  3. Click the **Assign policy** icon ( ) to display the Assign Policy dialog.

  ![Assign Policy](image)

  4. Select a firmware-compliance policy from the **Policy to assign** drop-down menu.
  5. Select one of the following scopes for the policy assignment:
     - **All applicable devices**
     - **All applicable devices with no current policy assignment**
     - **Only selected applicable devices**
     - **Only selected applicable devices with no current policy assignment**
  6. Click **OK**. The policy that is listed in the **Assigned Policy** column on the Firmware Updates: Repository page changes to the name of the selected firmware-compliance policy.

**Identifying devices that are not compliant**

If a firmware-compliance policy has been assigned to a managed device, you can determine whether the firmware on that device is compliant with that policy.

**Procedure**
To determine whether the firmware on a device is compliant with its assigned firmware-compliance policy, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate** from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar to display the Firmware Update: Compliance Policy page, and check the **Installed Versions** column for that device.

The **Installed Versions** column contains one of the following values:

- **Firmware version**. The firmware version that is installed on the device is compliant with the assigned policy.
- **Compliant**. The firmware that is installed on the device is compliant with the assigned policy.
- **Not Compliant**. The firmware that is installed on the device is not compliant with the assigned policy.
- **No Compliance Policy Set**. A firmware-compliance policy is not assigned to the device.

You can click the **Refresh** icon (🔗) to refresh the content in the **Installed Version** column.

**Configuring global firmware-update settings**

Global settings serve as defaults settings when firmware updates are applied.

**About this task**

From the Global Settings page, you can configure the following settings:

- Enhanced support for down-level devices
- Alerts for devices that are not compliant with their assigned policies
- Automatic assignment of a firmware-compliance policy to a device that has no assigned policy
- Non-compliance status for devices with a firmware component that has no associated target in the firmware-compliance policy

**Procedure**

To configure the global settings to be used for all servers, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate**. The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Update with Policy** or **Update without Policy** tab.
Step 3. Click **All Actions → Global Settings** to display the Global Settings: Firmware Updates dialog.

**Global Settings: Firmware Updates**

- **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices**
  
  Down-level firmware might prevent a device from appearing in inventory or reporting full version information. When you select this option, all policy-based packages are available for you to apply (the default). If you do not select this option, only detected devices are shown.

- **Alerts for Non-Compliant Devices**
  
  If this option is enabled, you will see alerts for all devices that do not meet the requirements of their assigned firmware compliance policies. These alerts are listed under Monitoring > Alerts

- **Disable Auto Policy Assignment**
  
  If this option is enabled, firmware compliance policies are not assigned automatically to managed devices that have no assigned policy.

- **Report Non-Compliant for Firmware Without Target**
  
  If this option is enabled, devices will be shown as non-compliant when a firmware component has no target associated to it in the policy, such as some legacy hardware module that has no firmware released for it for a while.

Step 4. Optionally select the following options.

- Select **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices** to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory.
- Select **Alerts for Non-Compliance Devices** to display alerts on the Alerts page for devices that do not meet the requirements of their assigned firmware-compliance policies. Alerts are hidden on the Alerts page by default. For more information, see Viewing active alerts.
- Select **Disable auto policy assignment** to disable automatic assignment of a firmware-compliance policy to a device that has no assigned policy. If this option is not selected, firmware compliance policies are assigned to devices without a policy when XClarity Administrator is restarted or when you manage a new device.
- Select **Report Non-Compliance for Firmware Without Target** to flag devices as non-compliant when a firmware component has no associated target in the firmware-compliance policy. If this option is not selected, devices without targets are flagged as compliant.

Step 5. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

**Applying and activating firmware updates**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator does not automatically apply firmware updates to managed devices. You can choose to apply firmware updates with or without compliance policies.
Before you begin

When using compliance policies, you can schedule updates on multiple devices at the same time. XClarity Administrator updates devices in the correct sequence automatically. The CMM is updated first, followed by switches, servers, and then storage devices.

Only downloaded firmware updates can be applied.

When you perform a firmware update, XClarity Administrator starts one or more jobs to perform the update.

While the firmware update is in progress, the target device is locked. You cannot initiate other management tasks on the target device until the update process is complete.

After a firmware update is applied to a device, one or more restarts might be required to fully activate the firmware update. You can choose whether to restart the device immediately, delay the activation, or prioritize activation. If you choose to restart immediately, XClarity Administrator minimized the number of restarts that are required. If you choose to delay activation, the updates are activated the next time the device is restarted. If you choose prioritized activation, the updates are immediately activated on the baseboard management controller, and all other firmware updates are activated the next time the device is restarted.

You can update firmware on a maximum of 50 devices at one time. If you choose to update firmware on more than 50 devices, the remaining devices are queued. A queued device is taken off the queue when either the activation completes on an updated device or an updated device is placed in the Pending Maintenance Mode state (if a restart is required on that device). When a device in the Pending Maintenance Mode state is restarted, the device boots into Maintenance Mode and continues the update process, even if the maximum number of firmware updates is already in progress.

Attention: For Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) v7 and later, restarting the operating system from a graphical mode suspends the server by default. Before you can perform the Restart Normally or Restart Immediately actions from XClarity Administrator, you must manually configure the operating system to change the behavior of the power button to power off. For instructions, see the Red Hat Data Migration and Administration Guide: Changing behavior when pressing the power button in graphical target mode.

Note: The XClarity Administrator automatically enables the LAN-over-USB interface.

Applying and activating firmware updates with compliance policies

After Lenovo XClarity Administrator identifies a device as not compliant, you can manually apply and activate the firmware updates on these managed devices. You can choose to apply and activate all firmware updates that apply to a firmware-compliance policy or only specific firmware updates in a policy. Only downloaded firmware updates are applied.

Before you begin

- Review the “Read before downloading Lenovo XClarity Administrator Virtual Appliance Update” link on the XClarity Administrator download webpage.
- Read the firmware-update considerations before you attempt to update firmware on your managed devices (see Firmware-update considerations).
- Initially, devices that are not supported for updates are hidden from the view. Devices that are not supported cannot be selected for updates.
- If devices are installed in the server but is not detected by XClarity Administrator, enable Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).
- Ensure that the firmware-updates repository contains the firmware packages that you intend to deploy. If not, refresh the product catalog, and download the appropriate firmware updates (see Refreshing the product catalog and Downloading firmware updates).

**Note:** When XClarity Administrator is initially installed, the product catalog and the repository are empty.

- Ensure that the Flex switches that are being updated are powered on.

- Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. If jobs are running, the update job is queued until all other jobs have completed. To see a list of active jobs, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.

- Typically, devices must be restarted to activate the firmware update. If you choose to restart the device during the update process (**immediate activation**), ensure that any running workloads have either been stopped or, if you are working in a virtualized environment, moved to a different server.

- If XClarity Administrator runs on a hypervisor host that runs on a managed server, do not use XClarity Administrator to update firmware on that server. When firmware updates are applied with immediate activation, XClarity Administrator forces the target server to restart, which would restart the hypervisor host and XClarity Administrator as well. When applied with deferred activation, only some firmware is applied until the target system is restarted.

- If you are updating CMMs that are running firmware level stack release 1.3.2.1 2PET12K through 2PET12Q, that have been running for more than three weeks, and are in a dual-CMM configuration, you must virtually reseat both the primary and standby CMMs before updating firmware (see **Virtually reseating a CMM**).

- On the Apply/Activate page, the NVMe firmware version is listed for solid state drives (SSDs). Because no target firmware update is identified for discovered NVMe devices, a warning message is displayed when you attempt to update the target system. However, the HDD/SSD update is applied even if it is not identified with a target component, so the NVMe firmware is still updated.

- You can choose to install prerequisite firmware in addition to the firmware update. All prerequisite firmware must be downloaded to the repository before it can be applied.

  **Note:** In some cases, multiple versions might be needed to update firmware, and all versions would need to be downloaded to the repository. For example, to upgrade the IBM FC5022 SAN scalable switch from v7.4.0a to v8.2.0a, you must first install v8.0.1-pha, then v8.1.1, and then v8.2.0.a. All three versions must be in repository to update the switch to v8.2.0.a.

- If the device has an assigned compliance policy and the firmware update results in compliance violations, you must correct the violations either by adjusting the compliance policy or assigning an alternate policy.

**Procedure**

To apply and activate updates on managed devices, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate**. The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Update with Policy** tab.

**Step 3.** Select one or more devices and devices to which firmware updates are to be applied.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed devices by selecting an option in the **Show** menu to list only devices in a specific chassis, rack, or group, by entering text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field, or by clicking the following icons to list only devices with a specific status.

- **Hide compliant devices** icon (✓)

- **Hide non-compliant devices status** icon (⚠️)

- **Hide devices without an assigned compliance policy** icon (无论是其ら)
• Hide devices not being monitored icon

• Hide devices with firmware pending activation icon

• Hide devices with compliance errors icon

• Hide devices not supported for updates icon

• Hide devices undergoing firmware updates icon

• Hide devices with nonstageable firmware icon

• You can update firmware on a maximum of 50 devices at one time. If you choose to update firmware on more than 50 devices, the remaining devices are queued. A queued device is taken off the queue when either the activation completes on an updated device or an updated device is placed in the Pending Maintenance Mode state (if a restart is required on that device). When a device in the Pending Maintenance Mode state is restarted, the device boots into Maintenance Mode and continues the update process, even if the maximum number of firmware updates is already in progress.

• You can apply and activate firmware that is later than the currently installed firmware.

• You can choose to apply all updates for a specific device. However, you can also choose to expand a device to specify updates for specific components, such as the baseboard management controller or UEFI.

• If you choose to install a firmware-update package that contains updates for multiple components, all components to which the update package applies are updated.

• By default, all detected devices are listed as available for applying updates; however, down-level firmware might prevent a device from appearing in inventory or reporting full-version information. To list all policy-based packages that are available for you to apply updates, click All Actions ➔ Global Settings, and selecting Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices. When this option is selected, “Other Available Software” is listed in the Installed Version column for undetected devices.

  Note: The global settings cannot be changed when updates to managed devices are in progress.

• If devices are installed in the server but is not detected by XClarity Administrator, enable Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).

• The Groups column indicates the groups of which each device is a member. You can hover over the Groups column to get a complete list of groups, by group type.

• The Installed Version column indicates the installed firmware version, compliance status, or device status.

The compliance status can be one of the following:

– ✔ Compliant
– ✗ Compliance Error
– ⚠ Not Compliant
– ✈ No Compliance Policy Set
– ◀ Not Monitored

The device status can be one of the following:

– 🔄 Updates Not Supported
– Update in Progress

**Notes:** If the installed firmware version is pending activation, "(Pending Activation)" is appended to the installed firmware version or compliance status of each applicable device, for example "2.20 / A9E12EUS (Pending Activation)." To see the pending-activation status, the following firmware version must be installed on the primary baseboard management controller in the server.
– **IMM2:** TCOO46F, TCOO46E, or later (depending on the platform)
– **XCC:** CDI328M, PSI316N, TEI334I, or later (depending on the platform)

**Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate**

To update firmware on a device, assign a compliance policy and select Perform Updates.

![Update with Policy](image)

**Step 4.** Click the **Perform Updates** icon ( ). The Update Summary dialog is displayed.
Step 5. Select one of the following update rules:

- **Stop all updates on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the components (such as an adapter or management controller) in the target device, the firmware-update process stops for all selected devices in the current firmware-update job. In this case, none of the updates in the update package for the device are applied. The current firmware that is installed on all selected systems remains in effect.

- **Continue on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the devices in the device, the firmware-update process does not update the firmware for that specific device; however, the firmware-update process continues to update the other devices in the device and continues to update all other devices in the current firmware-update job.

- **Continue to next system on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the devices in the device, the firmware-update process stops all attempts to update the firmware for that specific device, so the current firmware that is installed on that device remains in effect. The firmware-update process continues to update all other devices in the current firmware-update job.

Step 6. Select one of the following activation rules:

- **Immediate activation.** During the update process, the device might be restarted automatically a number of times until the entire update process is complete. Ensure that you quiesce all applications on the device before you proceed.

- **Delayed activation.** Some but not all update operations are performed. Devices must be restarted manually to continue the update process. Additional restarts are then performed until the update operation completes.

If a device restarts for any reason, the delayed update process completes.

This rule is supported for only servers and rack switches. CMMs and Flex switches are immediately activated, regardless of this setting.

**Important:** Do not choose **Delayed Activation** for more than 50 devices at one time. XClarity Administrator actively monitors devices with delayed activation so that the delayed activation is serviced when device is restarted. If you want to apply updates with delayed activation for more than 50 devices, break the update selection into batches of 50 devices at one time.
• **Prioritized activation.** Firmware updates on the baseboard management controller are activated immediately; all other firmware updates are firmware updates are activated the next time the device is restarted. Additional restarts are then performed until the update operation completes. This rule is supported only for servers.

**Note:** When enabled, the Wake-on-LAN boot option can interfere with XClarity Administrator operations that power off the server, including firmware updates if there is a Wake-on-LAN client in your network that issues “Wake on Magic Packet” commands.

**Step 7.** **Optional:** Clear **Install prerequisite firmware** if you do not want to install prerequisite firmware. Prerequisite firmware is installed by default.

**Note:** When using **Delayed Activation** or **Prioritized Activation** for prerequisite firmware updates, you might need to restart the server to activate the prerequisite firmware. After the initial restart, the remaining firmware updates are installed using **Immediate Activation**.

**Step 8.** **Optional:** Select **Force update** to update firmware on the selected components even if the firmware level is up to date or to apply a firmware update that is earlier than the one currently installed on the selected components.

**Note:** You cannot apply earlier levels of firmware to device options, adapters, or disk drivers.

**Step 9.** Click **Perform Update** to update immediately, or click **Schedule** to schedule this update to run at a later time.

If needed, you can perform power actions on the managed devices. The power actions are useful when **Delayed Activation** is selected and you want the updates to continue when the device is waiting in the “Pending Maintenance” state. To perform a power action on a managed device from this page, click **All Actions ➔ Power Actions**, and then click one of the following power actions.

- Power on
- Power down OS and power off
- Power off
- Shut down OS and restart
- Restart

**What to do next**

When applying a firmware update, if the server fails to enter maintenance mode, attempt to apply the update again.

If updates were not completed successfully, see **Firmware update and repository issues** in the XClarity Administrator online documentation for troubleshooting and corrective actions.

From the Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page, you can perform the following actions:

- Export firmware and compliance information for each managed device by clicking **All Actions ➔ Export View as CSV**.

  **Note:** The CSV file contains only filtered information in the current view. Information that is filtered out of the view and information in hidden columns are not included.

- Cancel an update that is being applied to a device by selecting the device and clicking the **Cancel Update** icon ((Canvas icon).)

  **Note:** You can cancel firmware updates that are in the queue to start. After the update process starts, the firmware update is cancelable only when the update process is performing a task other than applying the update, such as changing to maintenance mode or restarting the device.

- View the status of the firmware update directly from the Apply / Activate page in the **Status** column.
Monitor the status of the update process from the jobs log. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.

For more information about the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

![Jobs Page > Firmware Updates](image)

When the firmware-update jobs are complete, you can verify that the devices are compliant by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate** to go back to the Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page, and then clicking the **Refresh** icon (.Win). The current firmware version that is active on each device is listed in the **Installed Version** column.

### Applying and activating firmware updates without compliance policies

You can quickly apply and activate firmware that is later than the currently installed firmware on a single managed device or group of devices without using compliance policies.

#### Before you begin

- Review the “Read before downloading Lenovo XClarity Administrator Virtual Appliance Update” link on the XClarity Administrator download webpage.

- Read the firmware-update considerations before you attempt to update firmware on your managed devices (see Firmware-update considerations).

- Initially, devices that are not supported for updates are hidden from the view. Devices that are not supported cannot be selected for updates.

- If devices are installed in the server but is not detected by XClarity Administrator, enable **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices** to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).

- Ensure that the firmware-updates repository contains the firmware packages that you intend to deploy. If not, refresh the product catalog, and download the appropriate firmware updates (see Refreshing the product catalog and Downloading firmware updates).

**Note:** When XClarity Administrator is initially installed, the product catalog and the repository are empty.

- Ensure that the Flex switches that are being updated are powered on.

- Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. If jobs are running, the update job is queued until all other jobs have completed. To see a list of active jobs, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.
• Typically, devices must be restarted to activate the firmware update. If you choose to restart the device during the update process (*immediate activation*), ensure that any running workloads have either been stopped or, if you are working in a virtualized environment, moved to a different server.

• If XClarity Administrator runs on a hypervisor host that runs on a managed server, do not use XClarity Administrator to update firmware on that server. When firmware updates are applied with immediate activation, XClarity Administrator forces the target server to restart, which would restart the hypervisor host and XClarity Administrator as well. When applied with deferred activation, only some firmware is applied until the target system is restarted.

• If you are updating CMMs that are running firmware level stack release 1.3.2.1 2PET12K through 2PET12Q, that have been running for more than three weeks, and are in a dual-CMM configuration, you must virtually reseat both the primary and standby CMMs before updating firmware (see Virtually reseating a CMM).

• On the Apply/Activate page, the NVMe firmware version is listed for solid state drives (SSDs). Because no target firmware update is identified for discovered NVMe devices, a warning message is displayed when you attempt to update the target system. However, the HDD/SSD update is applied even if it is not identified with a target component, so the NVMe firmware is still updated.

• You can choose to install prerequisite firmware in addition to the firmware update. All prerequisite firmware must be downloaded to the repository before it can be applied.

**Note:** In some cases, multiple versions might be needed to update firmware, and all versions would need to be downloaded to the repository. For example, to upgrade the IBM FC5022 SAN scalable switch from v7.4.0a to v8.2.0a, you must first install v8.0.1-pha, then v8.1.1, and then v8.2.0a. All three versions must be in repository to update the switch to v8.2.0a.

**Procedure**

To apply and activate updates on a managed device, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate**. The Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click the **Update without Policy** tab.

**Step 3.** Select the firmware level in the **Downloaded later versions** column for each device that you want to update.

**Step 4.** Select one or more devices and devices that you want to update.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed devices by selecting an option in the **Show** menu to list only devices in a specific chassis, rack, or group, by entering text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field, or by clicking the following icons to list only devices with a specific status:

- **Hide components with some later versions** icon (⏺)
- **Hide components with no later versions** icon (🚫)
- **Hide devices not supported for updates** icon (🚫)
- **Hide devices undergoing firmware updates** icon (🚀)
- **Hide devices with nonstageable firmware** icon (🚫)

You can update firmware on a maximum of 50 devices at one time. If you choose to update firmware on more than 50 devices, the remaining devices are queued. A queued device is taken off the queue when either the activation completes on an updated device or an updated device is placed in the Pending Maintenance Mode state (if a restart is required on that device). When a device in the Pending Maintenance Mode state is restarted, the device boots into Maintenance mode.
Mode and continues the update process, even if the maximum number of firmware updates is already in progress.

- You can apply and activate firmware that is later than the currently installed firmware.
- You can choose to apply all updates for a specific device. However, you can also choose to expand a device to specify updates for specific components, such as the baseboard management controller or UEFI.
- If you choose to install a firmware-update package that contains updates for multiple components, all components to which the update package applies are updated.
- By default, all detected devices are listed as available for applying updates; however, down-level firmware might prevent a device from appearing in inventory or reporting full-version information. To list all policy-based packages that are available for you to apply updates, click **All Actions ➙ Global Settings**, and selecting **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices**. When this option is selected, “Other Available Software” is listed in the **Installed Version** column for undetected devices.

**Note:** The global settings cannot be changed when updates to managed devices are in progress.

- If devices are installed in the server but is not detected by XClarity Administrator, enable **Enhanced Support for Down-Level Devices** to display inventory and full-version information for all devices, even if the firmware is down-level or if the device is missing from the inventory (see Configuring global firmware-update settings).
- The **Groups** column indicates the groups of which each device is a member. You can hover over the **Groups** column to get a complete list of groups, by group type.
- The **Installed Version** column indicates the installed firmware version, compliance status, or device status.

The compliance status can be one of the following:
- ☑ Compliant
- ❌ Compliance Error
- ⚠ Not Compliant
- 🌟 No Compliance Policy Set
- ⚖ Not Monitored

The device status can be one of the following:
- 🏷 Updates Not Supported
- ⚙ Update in Progress

**Notes:** If the installed firmware version is pending activation, "(Pending Activation)" is appended to the installed firmware version or compliance status of each applicable device, for example "2.20 / A9E12EUS (Pending Activation)." To see the pending-activation status, the following firmware version must be installed on the primary baseboard management controller in the server.
- IMM2: TCOO46F, TCOO46E, or later (depending on the platform)
- XCC: CDI328M, PSI316N, TEI334I, or later (depending on the platform)

- The **Installed Version** column indicates the installed firmware version or device status. The device status can be one of the following:
  - 🏷 Updates Not Supported
  - ⚙ Update in Progress
Notes: If the installed firmware version is pending activation, "(Pending Activation)" is appended to the installed firmware version of each applicable device, for example "2.20 / A9E12EUS (Pending Activation)." To see the pending-activation status, the following firmware version must be installed on the primary baseboard management controller in the server.

- **IMM2**: TCOO46F, TCOO46E, or later (depending on the platform)
- **XCC**: CDI328M, PSI316N, TEI334I, or later (depending on the platform)

**Firmware Updates: Apply / Activate**

To update firmware on a device, select a target version for each component, and click Perform Updates.

Step 5. Click the **Perform Updates** icon ( ). The Update Summary dialog is displayed.

**Update Summary**
Select your Update Rule and review your updates. Then click Perform Update.

*Update Rule*: Continue on error

*Activation Rule*: Immediate activation

Step 6. Select one of the following update rules
• **Stop all updates on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the components (such as an adapter or management controller) in the target device, the firmware-update process stops for all selected devices in the current firmware-update job. In this case, none of the updates in the update package for the device are applied. The current firmware that is installed on all selected systems remains in effect.

• **Continue on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the devices in the device, the firmware-update process does not update the firmware for that specific device; however, the firmware-update process continues to update the other devices in the device and continues to update all other devices in the current firmware-update job.

• **Continue to next system on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the devices in the device, the firmware-update process stops all attempts to update the firmware for that specific device, so the current firmware that is installed on that device remains in effect. The firmware-update process continues to update all other devices in the current firmware-update job.

**Note:** When enabled, the Wake-on-LAN boot option can interfere with XClarity Administrator operations that power off the server, including firmware updates if there is a Wake-on-LAN client in your network that issues “Wake on Magic Packet” commands.

**Step 7.** Select one of the following activation rules:

• **Immediate activation.** During the update process, the device might be restarted automatically a number of times until the entire update process is complete. Ensure that you quiesce all applications on the device before you proceed.

• **Delayed activation.** Some but not all update operations are performed. Devices must be restarted manually to continue the update process. Additional restarts are then performed until the update operation completes.

  If a device restarts for any reason, the delayed update process completes.

  This rule is supported for only servers and rack switches. CMMs and Flex switches are immediately activated, regardless of this setting.

**Important:** Do not choose **Delayed Activation** for more than 50 devices at one time. XClarity Administrator actively monitors devices with delayed activation so that the delayed activation is serviced when device is restarted. If you want to apply updates with delayed activation for more than 50 devices, break the update selection into batches of 50 devices at one time.

• **Prioritized activation.** Firmware updates on the baseboard management controller are activated immediately; all other firmware updates are firmware updates are activated the next time the device is restarted. Additional restarts are then performed until the update operation completes. This rule is supported only for servers.

**Step 8.** **Optional:** Clear **Install prerequisite firmware** if you do not want to install prerequisite firmware. Prerequisite firmware is installed by default.

**Note:** When using **Delayed Activation** or **Prioritized Activation** for prerequisite firmware updates, you might need to restart the server to activate the prerequisite firmware. After the initial restart, the remaining firmware updates are installed using **Immediate Activation**.

**Step 9.** **Optional:** Select **Force update** to update firmware on the selected components even if the firmware level is up to date or to apply a firmware update that is earlier than the one currently installed on the selected components.

**Note:** You cannot apply earlier levels of firmware to device options, adapters, or disk drivers.

**Step 10.** Click **Perform Update** to update immediately, or click **Schedule** to schedule this update to run at a later time.
If needed, you can perform power actions on the managed devices. The power actions are useful when **Delayed Activation** is selected and you want the updates to continue when the device is waiting in the “Pending Maintenance” state. To perform a power action on a managed device from this page, click **All Actions ➔ Power Actions**, and then click one of the following power actions.

- **Power on**
- **Power down OS and power off**
- **Power off**
- **Shut down OS and restart**
- **Restart**

### What to do next

When applying a firmware update, if the server fails to enter maintenance mode, attempt to apply the update again.

If updates were not completed successfully, see [Firmware update and repository issues](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation for troubleshooting and corrective actions.

From the Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page, you can perform the following actions:

- Export firmware and compliance information for each managed device by clicking **All Actions ➔ Export View as CSV**.

  **Note:** The CSV file contains only filtered information in the current view. Information that is filtered out of the view and information in hidden columns are not included.

- Cancel an update that is being applied to a device by selecting the device and clicking the **Cancel Update** icon ( ![Cancel icon](image.png)).

  **Note:** You can cancel firmware updates that are in the queue to start. After the update process starts, the firmware update is cancelable only when the update process is performing a task other than applying the update, such as changing to maintenance mode or restarting the device.

- View the status of the firmware update directly from the Apply / Activate page in the **Status** column.

- Monitor the status of the update process from the jobs log. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.

  For more information about the jobs log, see [Monitoring jobs](#).
When the firmware-update jobs are complete, you can verify that the devices are compliant by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate** to go back to the Firmware Updates: Apply/Activate page, and then clicking the **Refresh** icon ( ). The current firmware version that is active on each device is listed in the **Installed Version** column.

### Updating Windows device drivers on managed servers

Using Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs), you can update OS device drivers on deployed Windows operating systems.

#### Before you begin

You must have **lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor, lxc-admin** or **lxc-hw-admin** authority to manage and deploy OS device drivers and to perform power actions on managed servers from the Windows Driver Updates pages.

#### About this task

Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows.

Only device drivers for Windows Server 2012 R2 and later are supported.

For information about installing device drivers when deploying operating systems, see [Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers](#).

#### Procedure

**Step 1. Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems. The WinRM service must be correctly configured on the target servers before attempting to update OS device drivers (see Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates).

**Step 2. Manage the OS device-driver repository**
The OS device-driver repository includes the catalog and downloaded Windows device drivers.

The catalog contains information about all Windows UXSPs and device-driver updates that are available for all Lenovo servers that support Windows. When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the available UXSPs from the Lenovo Data Center Support website (including the metadata .xml and readme .txt files) and stores the information to the repository. The payload file (.exe) is not downloaded. For more information about refreshing the catalog, see Refreshing the OS device-driver catalog.

Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows. You can download or import Windows UXSPs in the repository. UXSPs must be available in the repository before you can update Windows device drivers on managed severs. For more information about downloading device drivers, see Downloading Windows device drivers.

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download UXSPs. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the UXSPs to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser. This UXSPs download is a zip format file and contains all the required device driver files for the UXSP, including the payload (.exe), metadata (.xml), and change history file (.chg), and readme files (.txt).

Note: You might see messages that the firmware (fw) files are not needed and have been removed. This is normal, because only windows device drivers are updated using this process.

Attention:
- Do not unzip the UXSP before importing the it.
- The Windows UXSPs include device drivers and firmware updates. The firmware updates in the Windows UXSPs are discarded when the UXSPs are imported to the repository and a warning message displayed. Only the device drivers are imported.

Step 3. Applying OS device drivers

XClarity Administrator does not automatically update device drivers to managed servers. To update device drivers, you must manually apply the device drivers on selected servers.

Attention: Before you attempt to update device drivers on managed servers, ensure that you reviewed the following considerations and completed any necessary prerequisite actions.
- Devices that are not supported cannot be selected for updates.
- Read the device-driver update considerations before you attempt to update device drivers on your managed servers (see OS device-driver update considerations).
- Ensure that the repository contains the UXSPs and device drivers that you intend to deploy (see Downloading Windows device drivers).
Note: When XClarity Administrator is initially installed, the catalog and repository are empty.

- XClarity Administrator can use the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems. HTTPS is the default. To use HTTP, click All Actions ➞ Global Settings on the Windows Driver updates: Apply page, and then clear Use HTTPS for Windows driver updates.

Attention: When using HTTP, Windows user credentials are sent over the network without encryption and can be easily viewed using commonly available network troubleshooting tools.

Important:
- Ensure that Windows Remote Management (WinRM) on the target server is configured to use the same setting (HTTPS or HTTP) that is defined in XClarity Administrator (see Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates).
- Ensure that WinRM on the target server is configured with basic authentication.
- When using HTTPS, ensure that WinRM on the target server is configured with allowUnencrypted=false.

- Ensure that PowerShell is supported on the target server.
- Ensure that the target server is powered on before attempting to update device drivers. If the server is not powered on, select the target server, and click All Actions ➞ Power Actions ➞ Power On.
- Ensure that XClarity Administrator has information that it needs to access the host operating system (see Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers).
- Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. You cannot update device drivers on a managed server that is locked by a running job. If another update job is running on the target server, this update job is queued until the current update job completes. To see a list of active jobs, click Monitoring ➞ Jobs.

For more information about updating device drivers, see Applying Windows device drivers.

OS device-driver update considerations

Before you begin updating OS device drivers for managed devices by using Lenovo XClarity Administrator, review the following important considerations.

Note: You must have lxc-os-admin, lxc-supervisor, lxc-admin or lxc-hw-admin authority to manage and deploy device drivers and to perform power actions on managed servers from the Windows Driver Updates pages.

Network considerations

- Required ports and Internet addresses must be available before you attempt to download UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs). For more information, see Port availability and Firewalls and proxy servers in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
- XClarity Administrator must have access to management and data network to access the operating system.
- XClarity Administrator must be able to communicate with the target server (both the baseboard management controller and the server’s data network) over the network interface (Eth0 or Eth1) that was selected when you configured the XClarity Administrator network access and that the interface is configured with an IPv4 address or an IPv6 auto ULA address.

To specify an interface to be used for operating-system deployment, see Configuring network access.

For more information about the operating-system deployment network and interfaces, see Network considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
• IP addresses must be unique for the host operating system.
• XClarity Administrator can use the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems. HTTPS is the default. To use HTTP, click All Actions ➔ Global Settings on the Windows Driver updates: Apply page, and then clear Use HTTPS for Windows driver updates.

  **Attention:** When using HTTP, Windows user credentials are sent over the network without encryption and can be easily viewed using commonly available network troubleshooting tools.

**Managed-device considerations**
• For ThinkSystem SR635 and SR655 servers, updating Windows device drivers is not supported.
• Only ThinkSystem, Lenovo System x, and Lenovo Flex System servers are supported.
• XClarity Administrator does not validate the relationship between the management controller and operating system. The baseboard management controller is used to power on or off the server.
• Ensure that the LAN-over-USB interface is enabled. LAN-over-USB is used when updating OS device drivers.

**Operating-system and device-driver considerations**
• You can update device drivers for the following operating systems.
  – Windows Server 2012 R2
  – Windows Server 2016
  – Windows Server 2019

  **Note:** XClarity Administrator is tested with only Windows versions that are supported by Microsoft at the time when the XClarity Administrator version was released.
• Windows Remote Management (WinRM) must be configured for HTTPS on the target server (see Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates).
• PowerShell must be supported on the target server.
• You must provide information that is needed to access the host operating system on the target server, including the OS IP address and credentials (see Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers). You must provide credentials for a user account that has administrator authority.
• XClarity Administrator updates only device drivers that are out of compliance. Device drivers are out of compliance when the version on the server is earlier than version in the selected UXSP. Device drivers that are equal to or later than version in the selected UXSP are skipped.
• Device-driver compliance is accurate only when hardware is present. If hardware is not present, device drivers are still applied to the server. When the missing hardware is added to the server, Windows loads the latest version.
• System x servers do not support some predefined device drivers that come with XClarity Administrator. To deploy device drivers to these servers, create a custom profile that includes only the needed device drivers.

**Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates**
Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems. The WinRM service must be correctly configured on the target servers before attempting to update OS device drivers.

**Before you begin**
Required ports must be available. For more information, see Port availability in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.
For more information about configuring Windows Server before updating OS device driver, see the XClarity Administrator: Preparing for OS Device Driver Updates (White paper).

Procedure

To configure Windows Server to support updating OS device drivers, complete the following steps.

- **For HTTPS**
  1. Sign and install a server certificate on each of your target Windows systems.
     
     **Important:** The certificate must contain the following information.
     
     - In the Subject, ensure that the Domain Component is set (for example, DC=labs, DC=com, DC=company).
     - In the Subject Alternative Name, ensure that the DNS Name and host IP Address are set (for example, DNS Name=node1325C554A6F.labs.company.com and IP Address=10.245.43.149).
  2. Configure the remote management commands and data over an HTTPS connection by running one of the following commands from an administrative command prompt, and then confirm the suggested configuration changes.
     
     - `winrm quickconfig -transport:https`
     - `winrm create winrm/config/Listener?Address="*"+Transport=HTTPS @{(Hostname="host_name";CertificateThumbprint="certificate_thumbprint")}

     To manually set up a WinRM HTTPS listener according to WinRM documentation, see the How to configure WinRM for HTTPS webpage.
  3. Enable basic authentication of local Windows users by running the following command from an administrative command prompt.
     
     `winrm set winrm/config/service/Auth @{Basic="true"}
  4. To avoid a possible timeout and sending WinRM request errors in compliance checking and performing driver updates, increase the default value for the WinRM response timeout by running the following command from an administrative command prompt. A value of 280000 is recommended.
     
     For more information, see the Installation and Configuration for Windows Remote Management webpage.
     
     `winrm set winrm/config @{MaxTimeoutms="280000"})
  5. Open the port in your firewall that you configured for the WinRM HTTPS listener. The default HTTPS port is 5986. For example
     
     `netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="Windows Remote Management (HTTPS-In)" dir=in action=allow protocol=TCP localport=5986
  6. If you are using HTTPS listeners, adds the certificate to the XClarity Administrator trust store by completing the following steps. Adding the certificate to the trust store allows XClarity Administrator to trust the WinRM HTTPS listeners to which it connects. Repeat the following steps for any additional certification paths that need to be trusted for the Windows Remote Management service.
     
     a. Identify and collect the Certificate Authority root certificate that you used to sign the server certificates for the target Windows systems. If you do not have access to the CA root certificate, collect the server certificate itself or another certificate in the certification path.
     
     b. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Administration ➔ Security to display the Security page.
     
     c. Click Trusted Certificates under the Certificate Management section.
     
     d. Click the Create icon (>Create) to display the Add Certificate dialog.
     
     e. Either browse for the certificate file that you collected in step 1, or copy/paste the contents of the certificate file into the text box.
f. Click **Create**.

7. After the WinRM listener is running on your target Windows systems, XClarity Administrator can connect to these systems and perform the device driver updates.

For **HTTP**

1. Configure the remote management commands and data over an HTTP connection by running the following command from an administrative command prompt, and then confirm the suggested configuration changes.
   ```bash
   winrm quick config
   ```

2. Enable basic authentication of local Windows users by running the following command from an administrative command prompt.
   ```bash
   winrm set winrm/config/service/Auth @{Basic="true"}
   ```

3. Allocate enough memory for the update commands on this system by running the following command from an administrative command prompt.
   ```bash
   winrm set winrm/config/winrs @{MaxMemoryPerShellMB="1024"}
   ```

4. Allow unencrypted data by running the following command from an administrative command prompt.
   ```bash
   winrm set winrm/config/service ¢{AllowUnencrypted="true"}
   ```

5. Open the port in your firewall that you configured for the WinRM HTTP listener. The default HTTPS port is 5985. For example
   ```bash
   netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="Windows Remote Management (HTTPS-In)" dir=in action=allow protocol=TCP localport=5985
   ```

After the WinRM listener is running on your target Windows systems, XClarity Administrator can connect to these systems and perform the device driver updates.

**Managing the OS device-drivers repository**

The **OS device-driver repository** includes the catalog and downloaded Windows device drivers.

**About this task**

The **catalog** contains information about all Windows UXSPs and device-driver updates that are available for all Lenovo servers that support Windows. When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the available UXSPs from the Lenovo Data Center Support website (including the metadata .xml and readme .txt files) and stores the information to the repository. The payload file (.exe) is not downloaded. For more information about refreshing the catalog, see Refreshing the OS device-driver catalog.

Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows. Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows. You can download or import Windows UXSPs in the repository. UXSPs must be available in the repository before you can update Windows device drivers on managed servers. For more information about downloading device drivers, see Downloading Windows device drivers.

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download UXSPs. If it is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the UXSPs to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser. This UXSPs download is a zip format file and contains all the required device driver files for the UXSP, including the payload (.exe), metadata (.xml), and change history file (.chg), and readme files (.txt).

After a UXSP is downloaded in the repository, information about each device driver in the pack is added to the Windows Driver Updates Repository page. This includes the release date, size, and severity. The severity indicates the impact and the need to apply the update to help you to assess how your environment might be affected.
• **Initial Release.** This is the first release of the device driver.
• **Critical.** The device driver contains urgent fixes for data corruption, security, or stability issues.
• **Suggested.** The device driver contains significant fixes for problems that you are likely to encounter.
• **Non-Critical.** The device driver contains minor fixes, performance enhancements, and textual changes.

**Notes:**

• The severity is relative to the previously released version of the device driver. For example, if the installed device driver is v1.01, and update v1.02 is Critical, and update v1.03 is Recommended, this means that the update from 1.02 to 1.03 is recommended, but the update from v1.01 to v1.03 is critical because it is cumulative (v1.03 includes v1.02 critical issues).
• Special cases might arise where an update is only critical or recommended for a specific machine type. Refer to the Release Notes for additional information.

**Procedure**

To view UXSPs and device drivers that are available in the repository, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Windows Driver Updates: Repository.** The Windows Driver Updates Repository page is displayed with a list of available UXSPs, organized by device type.

**Step 2.** Expand a server type, and then expand the UXSPs that are available for that server type to list the device drivers that are available for that server type.

You can sort the table columns and click the **Expand all** icon (▲) and **Collapse all** icon (▼) to make it easier to find specific device drivers. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed server types and device drivers by selecting an option in the **Show** menu to list only device drivers of a specific age, device drivers for all server types or only managed-server types or by entering text in the **Filter** field.

**Windows Driver Updates: Repository**

Use Refresh Catalog to add new entries, if available, to the catalog list. Then, download the UXSP.

Repository Usage: 378.7 MB of 5 GB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product Catalog</th>
<th>Machine Type</th>
<th>Windows Version</th>
<th>Version Information</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Download Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lenovo Flex System</td>
<td>9532</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lenovo UpdateX...</td>
<td>win2012r2</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>2018-07-16</td>
<td>47 of 47 Downloaded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mellanox Wi...</td>
<td>win2012r2, win201...</td>
<td>WinOF-5.35.12978...</td>
<td>2017-12-05</td>
<td>12 of 12 Downloaded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qlogic NetX...</td>
<td>win2012r2, win201...</td>
<td>nx2-7.13.104.0.10i</td>
<td>2018-03-09</td>
<td>Downloaded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcom N...</td>
<td>win2012r2, win2016</td>
<td>nx1-20.8.0.2b</td>
<td>2018-03-11</td>
<td>Downloaded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

• Retrieve the latest information about available UXSPs by clicking **Refresh Catalog.**
Retrieving this information might take several minutes to complete. For more information, see Refreshing the OS device-driver catalog.

- Download UXSPs and device drivers using XClarity Administrator by refreshing the catalog and then clicking the Download icon ( ). When the UXSPs and device drivers are downloaded and added to the repository, the status changes to "Downloaded."
  For more information about downloading UXSPs and device drivers, see Downloading Windows device drivers .
- Import UXSPs that you manually downloaded to a workstation from the web or device drivers that you exported from XClarity Administrator (see Downloading Windows device drivers ).
- Stop selected downloads that are currently in progress by clicking the Cancel Downloads icon ( ).
- Delete selected UXSPs or individual device drivers from the repository by clicking the Delete icon ( ).

**Refreshing the OS device-driver catalog**

The OS device-driver catalog contains information about all Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) and device drivers that are available for all Lenovo servers that support Windows device driver updates.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that Lenovo XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet.

**About this task**

When you refresh the catalog, XClarity Administrator retrieves information about the available UXSPs from the Lenovo Data Center Support website (including the metadata .xml and readme .txt files) and stores the information to the repository. The payload file (.exe) is not downloaded. You must download the desired UXSP and OS device-driver payloads before updating device drivers on managed servers. For more information about downloading device drivers, see Downloading Windows device drivers .

**Note:** Refreshing the catalog might take several minutes to complete.

**Procedure**

To refresh the catalog, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Windows Driver Updates: Repository** to display the Windows Driver Updates Repository page.

Step 2. Click **Refresh Catalog**, and then click one of the following options to obtain information about the latest available UXSPs.

  - **Refresh Selected - Latest Only**, Retrieves information about the most current UXSP versions that are available for only the selected servers.
  - **Refresh All - Latest Only**, Retrieves information about the most current UXSP versions for all supported servers.
  - **Refresh Selected**, Retrieves information about all UXSP versions that are available for only the selected servers.
  - **Refresh All**, Retrieves information about all UXSP versions that are available for all supported servers.

Step 3. Click **Refresh Catalog** to refresh immediately, or click **Schedule** to schedule this refresh to run at a later time.
Downloading Windows device drivers

Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows. Windows UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) contain Windows device drivers for supported Windows versions and for Lenovo servers that supports Windows. You can download or import Windows UXSPs in the repository. UXSPs must be available in the repository before you can update Windows device drivers on managed servers.

Before you begin

Ensure that all required ports and Internet addresses are available before you attempt to download UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs). For more information, see Port availability and Firewalls and proxy servers in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

To download UXSPs using XClarity Administrator, ensure that XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet.

Internet Explorer and Microsoft Edge web browsers have an upload limit of 4 GB. If the file that you are importing is greater than 4 GB, consider using another web browser (such as Chrome or Firefox).

About this task

XClarity Administrator must be connected to the Internet to refresh the catalog and download UXSPs. If XClarity Administrator is not connected to the Internet, you can manually download the files to a workstation that has network access to the XClarity Administrator host using a web browser and then import the updates into the firmware-updates repository.

You can determine whether UXSPs are stored in the repository from the Download Status column on Windows Driver Updates Repository page. This column contains the following values:

- □ Downloaded. All device drivers in the UXSP or the individual device driver is downloaded in the repository.
- □ x of y Downloaded. Some but not all device drivers in the UXSP are downloaded in the repository. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of available device drivers and the number of download device drivers.
- □ Not Downloaded. The UXSP or individual device driver is available on the Lenovo Support site but not downloaded in the repository.

A message is displayed on the Windows Driver Updates Repository page when the space that is available for UXSPs and device drivers is more than 50% full. Another message is displayed on the page when the repository is more than 85% full. To reduce the space that is used in the repository, you can remove unused files by selecting the target files and then clicking the Delete icon (.crt). For more information, see Managing disk space.

Attention: The Windows UXSPs include device drivers and firmware updates. The firmware updates in the Windows UXSPs are discarded when the UXSPs are imported to the repository and a warning message displayed. Only the device drivers are imported.

Procedure

To download UXSPs and specific device drivers, perform one of the following procedures.

- When XClarity Administrator is connected to the Internet:
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning → Windows Driver Updates: Repository to display the Windows Driver Updates Repository page.
2. Click **Refresh Catalog**, and then click one of the following options to obtain information about the latest available UXSPs.

   - **Refresh Selected - Latest Only.** Retrieves information about the most current UXSP versions that are available for only the selected servers.
   
   - **Refresh All - Latest Only.** Retrieves information about the most current UXSP versions for all supported servers.
   
   - **Refresh Selected.** Retrieves information about all UXSP versions that are available for only the selected servers.
   
   - **Refresh All.** Retrieves information about all UXSP versions that are available for all supported servers.

   **Note:** Refreshing the catalog might take several minutes to complete.

3. Expand the server type to display the list of available UXSPs. Expand the UXSP to see a list of available device drivers.

   **Windows Driver Updates: Repository**

   ![Repository Image]

4. Select one or more target UXSPs and device drivers to download.

5. Click the **Download Selected** icon (Download).

6. Click **Download** to download immediately, or click **Schedule** to schedule this download to run at a later time.

   Downloading the UXSPs might take a few minutes. When the UXSPs and device drivers have been downloaded and stored in the repository, the row in the catalog is highlighted, and the **Download Status** column is changed to "Downloaded."

   You can monitor the status of the download process from the jobs log. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**. For more information about the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

   - **When XClarity Administrator is not connected to the Internet:**

     1. Download the UXSPs to a workstation that has network connection to the XClarity Administrator host from the Lenovo Data Center Support website.
2. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Windows Driver Updates: Repository** to display the Windows Driver Updates Repository page.

3. Click the **Import** icon.

4. Click **Select Files**, and browse to the location of the UXSP on the workstation.

5. Select the UXSP .zip file (do not unzip the zip file before importing), and then click **Open**.

   The UXSP .zip file contains the metadata file (.xml), payload (.exe), change history file (.chg), and readme file (.txt).

6. Click **Import**.

   You can monitor the status of the import process from the jobs log. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**. For more information about the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

**What to do next**

From this page, you can perform the following actions on selected UXSPs.

- Cancel a download that is currently in process by clicking the **Cancel download** icon.
- Delete all file associated with the UXSP by clicking the **Delete** icon.

**Configuring global Windows device-driver update settings**

Global settings serve as defaults settings when Windows device-driver updates are applied.

**About this task**

From the Global Settings page, you can configure the following settings:

- Use HTTPS for Windows driver updates
- Show Device Drivers for installed hardware

**Procedure**

To configure the global settings to be used for all servers, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Windows Driver Updates: Apply**. The Windows Driver Updates: Apply page is displayed.

**Step 2.** Click **All Actions ➔ Global Settings** to display the Global Settings: Apply Windows driver updates dialog.

**Step 3.** Optionally select the following options.

- **Select Use HTTPS for Windows driver updates** to use the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems HTTPS is the default.

   Clear this setting to use HTTP.

---

416 Lenovo XClarity Administrator User's Guide
Attention: When using HTTP, Windows user credentials are sent over the network without encryption and can be easily viewed using commonly available network troubleshooting tools.

- Select **Show Device Drivers for installed hardware** to list only device drivers for managed hardware.

Clear this setting to list all device drivers in each imported UpdateXpress System Packs (UXSPs) are listed.

**Important:** After selecting this option, you must perform a compliance check by clicking the **Check Compliance** icon.

Step 4. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

**Applying Windows device drivers**

You can apply device drivers to managed servers running Windows.

**Before you begin**

- Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems. The WinRM service must be correctly configured on the target servers before attempting to update OS device drivers (see Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates).

- Devices that are not supported cannot be selected for updates.

- Read the device-driver update considerations before you attempt to update device drivers on your managed servers (see OS device-driver update considerations).

- Ensure that the repository contains the UXSPs and device drivers that you intend to deploy (see Downloading Windows device drivers).

**Note:** When XClarity Administrator is initially installed, the catalog and repository are empty.

- XClarity Administrator can use the Windows Remote Management service (WinRM) listening over HTTPS or HTTP to run device-driver update commands on target Windows systems HTTPS is the default. To use HTTP, click **All Actions ➞ Global Settings** on the Windows Driver updates: Apply page, and then clear **Use HTTPS for Windows driver updates**.

**Attention:** When using HTTP, Windows user credentials are sent over the network without encryption and can be easily viewed using commonly available network troubleshooting tools.

**Important:**

- Ensure that Windows Remote Management (WinRM) on the target server is configured to use the same setting (HTTPS or HTTP) that is defined in XClarity Administrator (see Configuring Windows Server for OS device-driver updates).

- Ensure that WinRM on the target server is configured with basic authentication.

- When using HTTPS, ensure that WinRM on the target server is configured with `allowUnencrypted=false`.

- Ensure that PowerShell is supported on the target server.

- Ensure that the target server is powered on before attempting to update device drivers. If the server is not powered on, select the target server, and click **All Actions ➞ Power Actions ➞ Power On**.
• Ensure that XClarity Administrator has information that it needs to access the host operating system (see Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers).

• Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. You cannot update device drivers on a managed server that is locked by a running job. If another update job is running on the target server, this update job is queued until the current update job completes. To see a list of active jobs, click Monitoring → Jobs.

About this task

XClarity Administrator updates only device drivers that are out of compliance. Device drivers are out of compliance when the version on the server is earlier than version in the selected UXSP. Device drivers that are equal to or later than version in the selected UXSP are skipped.

Procedure

To apply Windows device drivers to managed servers, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning → Windows Driver Updates: Apply to display the Windows Driver Updates: Apply page.

Important:

• To discover the device drivers on the target server and determine compliance, you must select the target server and run the compliance check. After the compliance check is run for the first time, you can expand the row to see a list of device drivers on the target server.

• The Windows System column identifies the hostname or IP address of the host operating system.

• The Server column identifies the name and IP address of the managed server.

Windows Driver Updates: Apply

Update Windows device drivers on a server by checking authentication to the host operating system, assigning a UXSP, checking compliance, and then clicking Perform Updates. Ensure that the server is powered on. You can modify authentication information from the Manage OS Access page. Compliance is accurate only when hardware is present. If hardware is not present, device-driver updates are still applied. When the missing hardware is added, Windows loads the latest version.

Step 2. Select one or more target servers and device drivers.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed servers by entering text (such as a name or IP address) in the Filter field.

Tip:
• You can choose to update all device drivers for a specific operating system, or you can expand an operating system and choose to update only specific devices.

• The **Update Status** column shows the authentication status for each server and the update status for each device driver.

• The **OS Credential** column shows the stored credential that is used to authenticate to the operating system (for example, “901 – company\USER1.”)

If OS credentials are not defined for the host operating system on the target server, the Edit OS Credentials dialog is displayed. For a single target server, specify the user name and password that you want to use for this operation. For multiple target servers, select the stored credential to use for each server. Then, click **Save**.

**Note:** The OS credentials that you select on the Edit OS Credentials dialog are not saved for the host operating system. To save OS credentials, see Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers.

---

**Step 3.** Click the **Check Authentication** icon ( ) to run authentication and prerequisite checks.

XClarity Administrator connects to the host operating system using the stored credential that is listed in the **OS Credential** column, determines the OS version, verifies that WinRM is enabled, performs additional prerequisite checks, and then disconnects from the host OS.

For information about changing the stored credential for the host operating system, see Managing access to operating-systems on managed servers.

**Step 4.** For each target server, select the target UXSP that you want to use to update device drivers from the **Compliance Target** column.

**Step 5.** Select the target servers again, and click the **Check Compliance** icon ( ) to verify the compliance of each device driver.

The compliance check updates the compliance status in the **Installed Driver Version** column. This column displays the overall compliance status for the server and the installed version and compliance status for each device driver as measured against the assigned UXSP.

- **Compliant.** The installed device driver is equal to or later than the version in the assigned UXSP.
- **Not compliant.** The installed device driver is earlier than the version in the assigned UXSP. You can click on the link to get more information about the non compliance.

**Note:** Device-driver compliance is accurate only when hardware is present. If hardware is not present, device drivers are still applied to the server. When the missing hardware is added to the server, Windows loads the latest version.

**Step 6.** Click the **Perform Updates** icon ( ).

**Step 7.** Select one of the following update rules.

- **Stop all updates on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the device drivers on a target device, the update process stops for all target devices in the current device-driver update job. In this case, none of the device-driver updates in the UXSP for the target device are applied. The current device driver that is installed on all target devices remains in effect.

- **Continue on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the device drivers on the target device, the update process does not update the device driver for that specific device; however, the update process continues to update other device drivers on the device and continues to update all other target devices in the current device-driver update job.
• **Continue to next system on error.** If an error occurs while updating any of the device drivers on the device, the update process stops all attempts to update the device drivers for that specific device, so the current device drivers that are installed on that device remains in effect. The update process continues to update all other devices in the current device-driver update job.

Step 8. Click **Perform Updates** to update immediately, or click **Schedule** to schedule this update to run at a later time.

**What to do next**

When applying an update, if the target server fails to enter maintenance mode, attempt to apply the update again.

If updates were not completed successfully, see OS device-driver update considerations for troubleshooting and corrective actions.

From the Windows Driver Updates: Apply page, you can perform the following actions.

- View the status of the device-driver update directly from the Apply page in the **Update Status** column.
- Monitor the status of the device-driver update from the jobs log. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs.**
  
  For more information about the jobs log, see Monitoring jobs.

  When the update job is complete, you can verify that the devices are compliant from the Windows Driver Updates: Apply page. The current driver version that is active on each device is listed in the **Installed Driver Version** column.
Chapter 14. Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers

You can use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to manage the OS images repository and deploy operating-system images to up to 28 bare-metal servers concurrently.

Learn more:
- XClarity Administrator: Bare metal to cluster
- XClarity Administrator: Operating-system deployment

Before you begin

After the 90-day free trial expires, you can continue to use XClarity Administrator to manage and monitor your hardware for free; however, you must purchase full-function-enablement licenses for each managed server that supports XClarity Administrator advanced functions to continue using the OS deployment function. Lenovo XClarity Pro provides entitlement to service and support and the full-function-enablement license. For more information about purchasing Lenovo XClarity Pro, contact your Lenovo representative or authorized business partner. For more information, see Installing the full-function enablement license in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

About this task

XClarity Administrator provides a simple way to deploy operating-systems images to bare-metal servers, which typically do not have an operating system installed.

Attention: If you deploy an operating system to a server that has an operating system installed, XClarity Administrator performs a fresh installation that overwrites the partitions on the target disks

Several factors determine the amount of time that is required to deploy an operating system to a server:

- The amount of RAM that is installed in the server, which affects how long the server takes to start up.
- The number of and types of I/O adapters that are installed on the server, which affects the amount of time that it takes XClarity Administrator to perform an inventory of the server. It also affects the amount of time that it takes for the UEFI firmware to start when the server is started up. During an operating-system deployment, the server is restarted multiple times.
- Network traffic. XClarity Administrator downloads the operating-system image over the data network or the operating-system deployment network.
- The hardware configuration on the host on which Lenovo XClarity Administrator virtual appliance is installed. The amount of RAM, processors, and hard drive storage can affect download times.

Important: To deploy an operating-system image from XClarity Administrator, at least one of the XClarity Administrator interfaces (Eth0 or Eth1) must have IP network connectivity to the server network interface that is used to access the host operating system. Operating-system deployment uses the interface that is defined on the Network Access page. For more information about network settings, see Configuring network access.

Before you perform a bare-metal operating-system deployment on a server, prepare the server by updating firmware to the latest levels and configuring the server using Configuration Patterns. For more information, see Updating firmware on managed devices and Configuring servers using configuration patterns.

Attention: It is recommended that you do not use XClarity Administrator to perform a bare-metal operating-system deployment on Converged and ThinkAgile appliances.
Procedure

The following figure illustrates the workflow for deploying an OS image to a server.

![Workflow diagram]

Step 1. **Import OS images.**

Before you can deploy an OS image to a server, you must first import the operating system into the repository. When you import an OS image, XClarity Administrator:

- Ensures that there is sufficient space in the OS images repository before importing the operating system. If you do not have sufficient space to import an image, delete an existing image from the repository and attempt to import the new image again.
- Creates one or more profiles of that image and stores the profile in the OS images repository. Each profile includes the OS image and installation options. For more information about predefined OS image profiles, see Operating-system image profiles.

A **base operating system** is the full OS image that was imported into the OS-images repository. The imported base image contains predefined profiles that describe the installation configurations for that image. You can create custom profiles in the base OS image that can be deployed for specific configurations.

You can also import supported **custom operating systems**. This custom image contains a predefined placeholder profile, which cannot be deployed. You must import a custom profile that can be deployed or create your own custom profile based on the placeholder profile. After the custom profile is added, the placeholder profile is removed automatically.

For Microsoft Windows Server 2016 and 2019, you can import a custom operating-system image for each release. The imported base image contains predefined profiles that describe the installation configurations for that image. You cannot create custom profiles in the custom OS image.

The OS images repository can store up to ten operating-system images, if space is available to store the images (up to 50GB). For a list of supported base and custom operating systems, see Supported operating systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Step 2. **(Optional) Customize the OS image.**

You can customize an OS image by adding device drivers, boot files (for Windows only), configuration settings, unattend files, post-installation scripts, and software. When you customize a base OS image, XClarity Administrator creates a customized OS-image profile that includes the custom files and installation options.

The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

Step 3. **Configure global settings.**

Global settings are configuration options that serve as defaults for operating system deployment. You can configure the following global settings:

- The password for the administrator user account to be used for deploying the operating systems.
• The method to use to assign IP addresses to servers
• License keys to use when activating installed operating systems
• Optionally join an Active Directory domain as part of the Windows operating-system deployment

Step 4. **Configure network settings.**

You can specify the network settings for each server on which operating systems are to be deployed.

If you are using DHCP to assign IP addresses dynamically, you must configure the MAC address.

If you are using static IP addresses, you must configure the following network settings for a specific server before you can deploy an operating system to that server. After these settings are configured, the deployment status of the server changes to “Ready.” (Note that some fields are not available for static IPv6 addresses.)

**• Hostname**

The hostname must comply with the following rules:
- The hostname of each managed server must be unique.
- The hostname can contain strings (labels) that are separated by a period (.).
- Each label can contain ASCII letters, digits, and dashes (-); however, the string cannot start or end with a dash and cannot contain all digits.
- The first label can be 2 - 15 characters in length. Subsequent labels can be 2 – 63 characters in length.
- The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters.

**• MAC address of the port on the host where the operating system is to be installed.**

The MAC address is set to AUTO by default. This setting automatically detects the Ethernet ports that can be configured and used for deployment. The first MAC address (port) that is detected is used by default. If connectivity is detected on a different MAC address, the XClarity Administrator host is automatically restarted to use the newly detected MAC address for deployment.

You can determine the status of the MAC address port that is used for OS deployment from the **MAC address** drop-down menu on the Network Settings dialog. If multiple ports are up or if all ports are down, AUTO is used by default.

**Notes:**

- Virtual network ports are not supported. Do not use one physical network port to simulate multiple virtual network ports.
- When the server’s network setting is set to AUTO, XClarity Administrator can automatically detect network ports in slots 1 – 16. At least one port in slots 1 – 16 must have a connection to XClarity Administrator.
- If you want to use a network port in slot 17 or greater for the MAC address, you cannot use AUTO. Instead, you must set the server’s network setting to the MAC address of the specific port that you want to use.
- For ThinkServer servers, not all host MAC addresses are displayed. In most cases, MAC addresses for AnyFabric Ethernet adapters are listed on the Edit Network Settings dialog. MAC addresses for other Ethernet adapters (such as the Lan-On-Motherboard) are not listed. In cases where the MAC address for an adapter is not available, use the AUTO method for non-VLAN deployments.

**• IP address and subnet mask**
**• IP gateway**
• Up to two domain name system (DNS) servers
• Maximum transmission unit (MTU) speed
• VLAN ID, if VLAN IP mode is enabled

If you choose to use VLANs, you can assign a VLAN ID to the host network adapter that is being configured.

Step 5. **Choose the storage options**

For each deployment, you can choose the preferred storage location where the operating system is to be deployed. Depending on the operating system, you can choose to deploy to a local disk drive, embedded hypervisor key, or SAN.

Step 6. **Choose additional options and custom configuration settings, and deploy the OS image.**

You can configure additional deployment options, such as the license key for the OS deployment, and custom configuration settings. If you are installing Microsoft Windows, you can also configure the Active Directory domain to join.

**Notes:**

- If you defined custom configuration settings for a specific custom OS profile, you must define values for required custom configuration settings before you can deploy the profile to a server.
- When deploying a custom OS profile that includes custom settings, all target servers must use the same custom OS profile and the values for the custom settings apply to all target servers.

You can then choose the target servers for deployment and the OS images to be deployed. Remember that to deploy an operating system, the server must be have a deployment status of “Ready.”

You can deploy operating-system images on up to 28 servers concurrently.

Before you attempt to deploy an operating-system image, review the Operating-system deployment considerations.

---

**Operating-system deployment considerations**

Before you attempt to deploy an operating-system image, review the following considerations.

**Lenovo XClarity Administrator considerations**

- Ensure that no jobs are currently running on the target server. To see a list of active jobs, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**.
- Ensure that the target server does not have a deferred or partially activated server pattern. If a server pattern has been deferred or partially activated on the managed server, you must restart the server to apply all configuration settings. Do not attempt to deploy an operating system to a server with a partially activated server pattern. To determine the configuration status of the server, see the **Configuration Status** field on the Summary page for the managed server (see Viewing the details of a managed server).
- Ensure that a password for the administrator account that is to be used to deploy the operating system is specified on the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog. For more information about setting the password, see Configuring global OS-deployment settings.
- Ensure that the global default settings are correct for this operating-system deployment (see Configuring global OS-deployment settings).
Operating system considerations

- Ensure that you have all applicable operating-system licenses to activate the installed operating systems. You are responsible for obtaining licenses directly from the operating-system manufacturer.

- Ensure that the operating-system image that you intend to deploy is already loaded in the OS images repository. For information about importing images, see Importing operating-system images.

- You must import a boot file into the OS-images repository before you can deploy a Windows profile. Lenovo bundles the predefined WinPE_64.wim boot file along with a set of device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage and then imported into OS-images repository. Because the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the Device Driver or Boot Files tab.

- For SLES 15 and later, you must import both the installer image and the associated package image from the Server OS Support Center webpage.

- For ThinkSystem servers, XClarity Administrator includes out-of-box device drivers to enable the installation of the operating system as well as basic network and storage configuration for the final operating system. For other servers, ensure that the operating-system image that you intend to deploy includes the appropriate Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and storage adapter device drivers for your hardware. If the I/O adapter device driver is not included in the operating system, the adapter is not supported for OS deployment. Always install the latest operating system to ensure that you have the latest inbox I/O adapter device drivers and boot files that you need. You can also add out-of-box device drivers and boot files to operating systems that have been imported into XClarity Administrator (see Customizing OS-image profiles in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

For VMware, use the latest Lenovo Custom Image for ESXi, which includes support for the latest adapters. For information about obtaining that image, see the VMware Support – Downloads webpage.

- Operating-system images in the XClarity Administrator repository might not be supported only on certain hardware platforms. Only OS-image profiles that are supported by the selected server are listed on the Deploy OS Images page. You can determine whether an operating system is compatible with a specific server from the Lenovo OS Interoperability Guide website.

- For ThinkSystem servers, if you want to deploy SLES 12 SP2, you must use a kISO profile. To get the kISO profiles, you must import the appropriate SLES kISO image after you import the base SLES operating system. You can download the SLES kISO image from the Linux Support – Downloads webpage.

Notes:
- The SLES kISO image counts towards the maximum number of imported OS images.
  The OS images repository can store up to ten operating-system images, if space is available to store the images (up to 50GB). For a list of supported base and custom operating systems, see Supported operating systems Supported operating systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.
  - If you delete all kISO profiles, you must delete the base SLES operating system and then import the base operation system and kISO image again to deploy SLES 12 SP2 on a ThinkSystem server.
  - If you create a custom OS-profile based on a kISO profile, the predefined device drivers in the base operating system are not included. The device drivers that are included in the kISO are used instead.
    You can also add device drivers to the custom OS-profile (see Creating a custom OS-image profile).

For more information about limitations for specific operating systems, see Supported operating systems.

Network considerations

- Ensure that all required ports are open (see Port availability for deployed operating systems).
- Ensure that XClarity Administrator can communicate with the target server (both the baseboard management controller and the servers’ data network) over the interface (Eth0 or Eth1) that was selected when you configured the XClarity Administrator network access.
To specify an interface to be used for operating-system deployment, see Configuring network access). For more information about the operating-system deployment network and interfaces, see Network considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Ensure that the IP addresses are unique for the host operating system. XClarity Administrator checks for duplicate IP addresses that you specify for the network address during the deployment process.
- If the network is slow or unstable, you might see unpredictable results when deploying operating systems.
- The XClarity Administrator network interface that is used for management must be configured to connect to the baseboard management controller using the same IP address method that you choose on the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog. For example, if XClarity Administrator is set up to use eth0 for management, and you choose to use manually assigned static IPv6 addresses when configuring the deployed OS, then eth0 must be configured with an IPv6 address that has connectivity to the baseboard management controller.
- If you choose to use IPv6 addresses for the OS deployment global settings, the IPv6 address for XClarity Administrator must be routable to the baseboard management controller and the servers’ data network.
- IPv6 mode is not supported for ThinkServer (see IPv6 configuration limitations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).
- If you are using DHCP to assign IP addresses dynamically, you must configure the MAC address.
- If you are using static IP addresses, you must configure the following network settings for a specific server before you can deploy an operating system to that server. After these settings are configured, the deployment status of the server changes to “Ready.” (Note that some fields are not available for static IPv6 addresses.)
  - Hostname
    The hostname must comply with the following rules:
    - The hostname of each managed server must be unique.
    - The hostname can contain strings (labels) that are separated by a period (\.).
    - Each label can contain ASCII letters, digits, and dashes (-); however, the string cannot start or end with a dash and cannot contain all digits.
    - The first label can be 2 - 15 characters in length. Subsequent labels can be 2 – 63 characters in length.
    - The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters.
  - MAC address of the port on the host where the operating system is to be installed.
    The MAC address is set to AUTO by default. This setting automatically detects the Ethernet ports that can be configured and used for deployment. The first MAC address (port) that is detected is used by default. If connectivity is detected on a different MAC address, the XClarity Administrator host is automatically restarted to use the newly detected MAC address for deployment.
    You can determine the status of the MAC address port that is used for OS deployment from the **MAC address** drop-down menu on the Network Settings dialog. If multiple ports are up or if all ports are down, AUTO is used by default.

**Notes:**
- Virtual network ports are not supported. Do not use one physical network port to simulate multiple virtual network ports.
- When the server’s network setting is set to AUTO, XClarity Administrator can automatically detect network ports in slots 1 – 16. At least one port in slots 1 – 16 must have a connection to XClarity Administrator.
- If you want to use a network port in slot 17 or greater for the MAC address, you cannot use AUTO. Instead, you must set the server’s network setting to the MAC address of the specific port that you want to use.
– For ThinkServer servers, not all host MAC addresses are displayed. In most cases, MAC addresses for AnyFabric Ethernet adapters are listed on the Edit Network Settings dialog. MAC addresses for other Ethernet adapters (such as the Lan-On-Motherboard) are not listed. In cases where the MAC address for an adapter is not available, use the AUTO method for non-VLAN deployments.

– IP address and subnet mask
– IP gateway
– Up to two domain name system (DNS) servers
– Maximum transmission unit (MTU) speed
– VLAN ID, if VLAN IP mode is enabled

• If you choose to use VLANs, you can assign a VLAN ID to the host network adapter that is being configured.

For more information about the operating-system deployment network and interfaces, see Configuring network settings for managed servers and Configuring network settings for managed servers and Network considerations in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Storage and boot-option considerations

• Each server must have a hardware RAID adapter that is installed and configured.

Attention:
– Only storage that is set up with hardware RAID is supported.
– The software RAID that is typically present on the onboard Intel SATA storage adapter or storage that is set up as JBOD are not supported; however, if a hardware RAID adapter is not present, setting the SATA adapter to ACHI SATA mode enabled for operating-system deployment or setting unconfigured good disks to JBOD might work in some cases. For more information, see OS installer cannot find the disk on which you want to install XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

This exception does not apply to M.2 drives.
– If a managed device has both local drives (SATA, SAS, or SSD) that are not configured for hardware RAID and M.2 drives, you must disable the local drives if you want to use M.2 drives, or you must disable the M.2 drives if you want to use local drives. You can disable on-board storage controller devices and legacy and UEFI storage option ROMs using the using Configuration Patterns by selecting Disable local disk on the Local Storage tab of the wizard or by creating a Configuration Pattern from an existing server and then disabling the M.2 devices in the extended UEFI pattern.
– If a SATA adapter is enabled, the SATA mode must not be set to “IDE.”

• The NVMe storage that is connected to a server motherboard or HBA controller is not supported and must not be installed in the device; otherwise, OS deployment to non-NVMe storage will fail.

• Ensure that the UEFI boot option on the target server is set to “UEFI boot only” or to “UEFI first, then legacy” before you deploy an operating system. The legacy-only boot option is not supported for operating-system deployment.

• When deploying RHEL, multi ports that are connected to same LUN on the target storage is not supported.

• Ensure that secure-boot mode is disabled for the server. If you are deploying a secure-boot mode enabled operating system (such as Windows), disable secure-boot mode, deploy the operating system, and then re-enable secure-boot mode.

• When deploying Microsoft Windows to a server, attached drives must not have existing system partitions (see OS deployment fails due to existing system partitions on an attached disk drive in the XClarity Administrator online documentation).

• For ThinkServer servers, ensure that the following requirements are met:
- The boot settings on the server must include a Storage OpROM Policy that is set to UEFI Only. For more information, see OS installer cannot boot on a ThinkServer server - XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- If you are deploying ESXi and there are network adapters that are PXE bootable, disable PXE support on the network adapters before deploying the operating system. The deployment is completed, you can re-enable PXE support, if desired.

- If you are deploying ESXi and there are bootable devices in the boot-order list other than the drive on which the operating system is to be installed, remove the bootable devices from the boot-order list before deploying the operating system. After deployment is complete, you can add the bootable device back to the list. Ensure that the installed drive is at the top of the list.

For more information about storage-location settings, see Choosing the storage location for managed servers.

**Managed-device considerations**

- For information about operating-system deployment limitations for specific devices, see Supported hardware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- Ensure there is no mounted media (such as ISOs) on the target server. Additionally, ensure there are no active Remote Media sessions open to the management controller.

- Ensure that the timestamp in BIOS is set to the current date and time.

- For ThinkSystem and System x servers, ensure that the Legacy BIOS option is disabled. From the BIOS/UEFI (F1) Setup utility, click UEFI Setup ➔ System Settings, and verify that Legacy BIOS is set to Disabled.

- For Flex System servers, ensure that the chassis is powered on.

- For Converged, NeXtScale, and System x servers, ensure that a Feature on Demand (FoD) key for remote presence is installed. You can determine whether remote presence is enable, disabled, or not installed on a server from the Servers page (see Viewing the status of a managed server). For more information about FoD keys that are installed on your servers, see Viewing Features on Demand keys.

- For ThinkSystem servers and ThinkAgile appliances, the XClarity Controller Enterprise feature is required for operating-system deployment. For more information, see Viewing Features on Demand keys.

- For Converged and ThinkAgile appliances, it is recommended that you do not use XClarity Administrator to perform a bare-metal operating-system deployment.

---

**Supported operating systems**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports the deployment of several operating-systems. Only supported versions of the operating systems can be loaded into the XClarity Administrator OS images repository.

**Important:**

- For information about operating-system deployment limitations for specific devices, see Supported hardware in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- The cryptographic management feature of XClarity Administrator allows limiting communication to certain minimum SSL/TLS modes. For example, if TLS 1.2 is selected, then only operating systems with an installation process that supports TLS 1.2 and strong cryptographic algorithms can be deployed through XClarity Administrator.

- Operating-system images in the XClarity Administrator repository might not be supported only on certain hardware platforms. Only OS-image profiles that are supported by the selected server are listed on the Deploy OS Images page. You can determine whether an operating system is compatible with a specific server from the Lenovo OS Interoperability Guide website.
• For OS and Hypervisor related compatibility and support information and resources for Lenovo servers and solutions, see the [Server OS Support Center webpage](#).

The following table lists the 64-bit operating systems that XClarity Administrator can deploy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Versions</th>
<th>Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>7.2 and later</td>
<td>• All existing and future minor versions are supported unless otherwise noted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.x</td>
<td>• DHCP, static IPv4, and static IPv6 address are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• VLAN tagging is not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Out-of-box drivers are not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• OS profile customization is not supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Versions</th>
<th>Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>2012 R2</td>
<td>• Windows Reseller Option Kit (ROK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2012 R2U1</td>
<td>• Windows Server Semi-Annual Channel (SAC) v1709, v1803, and v1809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>• Windows Server 2019 Essentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2019</td>
<td>• Windows Server 2016 Nanoserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Windows Server 2012 Evaluation Copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Windows Server images to managed servers with embedded hypervisor keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2 on servers that contain Intel CLX processors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You must physically remove the embedded hypervisor key from the target servers before deploying a Windows image. This includes Hyper-V through one of the virtualization profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Datacenter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Datacenter Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Datacenter Virtualization (Hyper-V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Datacenter Virtualization Core (Hyper-V with Core)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Standard Core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Standard Virtualization (Hyper-V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Standard Virtualization Core (Hyper-V with Core)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Both the retail and volume license copies are supported. Note: XClarity Administrator is tested with only Windows versions that are supported by Microsoft at the time when the XClarity Administrator version was released. The following are not supported:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 14. Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers 429
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Versions</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>6.8 and later</td>
<td>Includes KVM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.2 and later</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• All existing and future minor versions are supported unless otherwise noted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When importing the DVD version of the OS image, only DVD1 is supported.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When installing RHEL on ThinkSystem servers, RHEL v7.4 or later is recommended.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To deploy RHEL 7.2, the global IP-assignment must be set to use IPv4 addresses. For information about global settings, see Configuring global OS-deployment settings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• OS deployment failures have been observed on IPv6 networks with lower bandwidths due to timeouts in the OS installer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>12.x</td>
<td>Includes KVM and Xen hypervisors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• All existing and future service packs are supported unless otherwise noted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When importing the DVD version of the OS image, only DVD1 is supported.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• OS deployment failures have been observed on IPv6 networks with lower bandwidths due to timeouts in the OS installer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you want to deploy SLES 12 SP2 on a ThinkSystem server, you must use a kISO profile. To get the kISO profiles, you must import the appropriate SLES kISO image. For more information, see Operating-system deployment considerations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For SLES 15 and later, you must import both the installer image and the associated package image from the Server OS Support Center webpage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi)</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Base VMware vSphere Hypervisor (ESXi) images and Lenovo VMware ESXi Custom images are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.5u1</td>
<td>Lenovo VMware ESXi Custom images are customized for select hardware to give you online platform management, including updating and configuring firmware, platform diagnostics, and enhanced hardware alerts. Lenovo management tools also support simplified management of the ESXi with select System x servers. This image is available for download from the VMware Support – Downloads webpage. The license that is provided with the image is a 60-day free trial. You are responsible for meeting all VMware licensing requirements. Important:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.5u2</td>
<td>• All existing and future update packs are supported for 6.0, 6.5, 6.7, and 7.0 unless otherwise noted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.5u3</td>
<td>• Base ESXi images (without Lenovo customization) include only basic in-box device drivers for network and storage. The base image does not include the out-of-box device drivers (which are included in Lenovo VMware ESXi Custom images). You can add out-of-box device drivers by creating your own custom OS0image profiles (see Customizing OS-image profiles).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0.x</td>
<td>• For some versions of Lenovo VMware ESXi Custom images, separate images might be available for System x, ThinkSystem, and ThinkServer. Only one image for a specific release can exist in the OS-images repository at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.5.x</td>
<td>• ESXi deployment is not supported for certain older servers. For information about which servers are supported, see the Lenovo OS Interoperability Guide website.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.7.x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0.x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following versions are supported for ThinkServer devices: ESXi 6.0u3, 6.5 and later.

- During the installation of ESXi 5.5 (any update), or 6.0 onto a server in a Flex System chassis, the server might become unresponsive or restart shortly after the following message:
  Loading image.pld

- ESXi 5.5 requires Memory Mapped I/O (MMIO) space to be configured within the initial 4 GB of the system. Depending on the configuration, certain systems attempt to use memory higher than 4 GB, which can cause a failure. To resolve the issue, see VMware deployment causes system hang or restart in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

- When deploying ESXi using a static IPv6 mode, the hostname that is defined on the Network Settings page in XClarity Administrator is not configured in the deployed ESXi instance. Instead, the default hostname localhost is used. You must manually set the hostname in the deployed ESXi to match the hostname that is defined in XClarity Administrator.

- When deploying ESXi on a managed server, the operating system does not explicitly move the drive on which the operating system is installed to the top of the boot-order list. If a boot device containing a bootable OS or a PXE server is specified before the boot device containing ESXi, then ESXi does not boot. For ESXi deployment, XClarity Administrator updates the boot-order list for most servers to ensure the ESXi boot device is at the top of the boot-order list; however, ThinkServer servers do not provide a way for XClarity Administrator to update the boot-order list. You must disable PXE boot support or remove bootable devices other than the installation drive before deploying the operating system. For more information, see Operating system does not boot after deploying ESXi on a ThinkServer server in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Tip: Instead of setting MM Config through the Setup utility for each server, consider using one of the predefined extended UEFI patterns that are related to virtualization, which sets the MM Config option to 3 GB and disables the PCI 64-bit resource allocation. For more information about these patterns, see Defining extended UEFI settings.

---

### Operating-system image profiles

When you import an OS image into the OS images repository, Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates one or more profiles for that image and stores the profiles in the OS images repository. Each predefined profile includes the OS image and installation options for that image.

**OS image profile attributes**

OS image profile attributes provide additional information about an OS-image profile. The following attributes can be shown.

- **kISO.** You must use a kISO profile to deploy SLES 12 SP2 to a ThinkSystem server. You can download the SLES kISO image from the Linux Support – Downloads webpage.

**Predefined OS image profiles**

The following table lists the profiles that are predefined by XClarity Administrator when you import an operating-system image. This table also lists the packages that are included in each profile.

You can create a customized OS image profile for a base operating system. For more information, see Customizing OS-image profiles.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Profile</th>
<th>Packages included in the profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| CentOS Linux      | Basic            | @X Window System  
                             @Desktop  
                             @Fonts  
                             compat-libstdc++-33  
                             compat-libstdc++-33.i686  
                             compat-libstdc++-296  
                             libstdc++.i686  
                             pam.i686 |
|                   | Minimal          | compat-libstdc++-33  
                             compat-libstdc++-33.i686  
                             compat-libstdc++-296  
                             libstdc++.i686  
                             pam.i686 |
|                   | Virtualization   | %packages  
                             @virtualization  
                             @virtualization-client  
                             @virtualization-platform  
                             @virtualization-tools  
                             # begin additional packages  
                             @basic-desktop  
                             @desktop-debugging  
                             @desktop-platform  
                             @fonts  
                             @general-desktop  
                             @graphical-admin-tools  
                             @kde-desktop  
                             @remote-desktop-clients  
                             @x11  
                             @"graphical-server-environment"  
                             @gnome-desktop  
                             @x11  
                             @virtualization-client  
                             # end additional packages  
                             libconfig  
                             libsysfs  
                             libicu  
                             lm_sensors-libs  
                             net-snmp  
                             net-snmp-libs  
                             redhat-lsb  
                             compat-libstdc++-33  
                             compat-libstdc++-296  
                             # begin additional rpms  
                             xterm  
                             xorg-x11-xdm  
                             rdesktop  
                             tigervnc-server  
                             device-mapper-multipath  
                             # end additional rpms |
| Microsoft Windows Server | Datacenter     | GUI |
| Note: Includes Hyper-V through the Virtualization Profile. | Datacenter virtualization | GUI  
                             Hyper-V role |
|                   | Datacenter virtualization core | Hyper-V role |
|                   | Datacenter core | GUI |
|                   | Standard       | GUI  
                             Hyper-V role |
|                   | Standard virtualization | GUI  
                             Hyper-V role |
<p>|                   | Standard virtualization core | Hyper-V role |
|                   | Standard core | GUI |
| Customized Microsoft Windows Server | Datacenter customized | GUI |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Profile</th>
<th>Packages included in the profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Microsoft® Windows® Hyper-V Server 2016 | Hyper_V | `<selection name="Microsoft-Hyper-V" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="MultipathIo" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="FailoverCluster-PowerShell" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="FailoverCluster-FullServer" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="FailoverCluster-CmdInterface" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="FailoverCluster-AutomationServer" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="FailoverCluster-AdminPak" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="MicrosoftWindowsPowerShellRoot" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="MicrosoftWindowsPowerShell" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="ServerManager-Core-RSAT" state="true" />`  
`<selection name="ServerManager-Core-RSAT-Role-Tools" state="true" />` |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) | Basic | @RX Window System  
@Desktop  
@Fonts  
compat-libstdc++-33  
compat-libstdc++-33.i686  
compat-libstdc++-296  
libstdc++.i686  
pam.i686 |
| | Minimal | compat-libstdc++-33  
compat-libstdc++-33.i686  
compat-libstdc++-296  
libstdc++.i686  
pam.i686 |
| | Virtualization | # Packages  
@virtualization  
@virtualization-client  
@virtualization-platform  
@virtualization-tools  
# begin additional packages  
@basic-desktop  
@desktop-debugging  
@desktop-platform  
@fonts  
@general-desktop  
@graphical-admin-tools  
@kde-desktop  
@remote-desktop-clients  
@x11  
@graphical-server-environment  
@gnome-desktop  
@x11  
@virtualization-client  
# end additional packages |
| | | libconfig  
libsysfs  
libicu  
lm_sensors-libs  
net-snmp  
net-snmp-libs  
redhat-lsb  
compat-libstdc++-33  
compat-libstdc++-296  
# begin additional rpms  
xtterm  
xorg-x11-xdm  
rdesktop  
tigervnc-server  
device-mapper-multipath  
# end additional rpms |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Profile</th>
<th>Packages included in the profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 12</td>
<td>Basic and Basic with kiSO</td>
<td>&lt;pattern&gt;32bit&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;Basis-Devel&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;Minimal&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;WBEM&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;documentation&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;file_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;fips&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;gateway_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;lamp_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;mail_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;fed&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;printing&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;sap_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal and Minimal with kiSO</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;pattern&gt;Minimal&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;file_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;sap_server&lt;/pattern&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualization-KVM and Virtualization-KVM with kiSO</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;pattern&gt;32bit&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;Minimal&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;documentation&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;file_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;fips&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;kvm_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;kvm_tools&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;sap_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualization-Xen and Virtualization-Xen with kiSO</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;pattern&gt;32bit&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;Minimal&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;documentation&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;file_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;fips&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;sap_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;xen_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;xen_tools&lt;/pattern&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 15</td>
<td>Basic and Basic</td>
<td>&lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;devel_basis&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;enhanced_base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;basesystem&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;minimal_base&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;print_server&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;sw_management&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11_enhanced&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;x11_yast&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;pattern&gt;yast2_basis&lt;/pattern&gt; &lt;package&gt;wget&lt;/package&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Profile</td>
<td>Packages included in the profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal and Minimal</td>
<td><code>&lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;minimal_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;yast2_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;package&gt;wget&lt;/package&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualization-KVM and Virtualization-KVM</td>
<td><code>&lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;devel_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;enhanced_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;base_system&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;minimal_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;print_server&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;sw_management&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11_enhanced&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11_yast&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;yast2_basesys&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;xen_server&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;xen_tools&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;package&gt;wget&lt;/package&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualization-Xen and Virtualization-Xen</td>
<td><code>&lt;pattern&gt;apparmor&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;devel_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;enhanced_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;base_system&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;minimal_base&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;print_server&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;sw_management&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11_enhanced&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;x11_yast&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;yast2_basesys&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;xen_server&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;pattern&gt;xen_tools&lt;/pattern&gt;</code> <code>&lt;package&gt;wget&lt;/package&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi)</td>
<td>Virtualization</td>
<td>Base VMware vSphere Hypervisor (ESXi) images and Lenovo VMware ESXi Custom images are supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Port availability for deployed operating systems**

Some ports are blocked by certain operating-system profiles. The following tables list the ports that are open (not blocked).

Ensure that the hypervisor that is running the Lenovo XClarity Administrator appliance allows network traffic (TCP/UDP) on ports 139, 445, 3001, 3900, 8443. These are required for operating-system deployment.

**RHEL Virtualization profile**

By default, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Virtualization profile blocks all ports except for those that are listed in the following table.
Table 9. Port availability for RHEL Virtualization profiles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>TCP or UDP</th>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Communication description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Inbound</td>
<td>SSH communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>TCP, UDP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>Communication with RHEL KVM networking devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>TCP, UDP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>Communication with RHEL KVM networking devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>Outbound</td>
<td>Communication with SNMP agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>Inbound</td>
<td>Communication with SNMP agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>427</td>
<td>TCP, UDP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>Communication with SLP service agent, SLP directory agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3001</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>Communication with management software image-deployment service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15988</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound</td>
<td>CIM-XML over HTTP communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15989</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound</td>
<td>CIM-XML over HTTP communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49152-49215</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>KVM Virtual Server communication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RHEL Basic and Minimal profiles

By default, the RHEL Basic and Minimal profiles block all ports except for those that are listed in the following table.

Table 10. Port availability for RHEL Basic and Minimal profiles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>TCP or UDP</th>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Communication description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Inbound</td>
<td>SSH communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3001</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>Management software image-deployment service communication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SLES Virtualization, Basic, and Minimal profiles

For SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES), some open ports are dynamically assigned based on the operating system version and profiles. For a complete list of open ports, see your SUSE Linux Enterprise Server documentation.

VMware ESXi Virtualization profile

For a complete list of open ports for VMware vSphere Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo customization, see the VMware documentation for ESXi on the [VMware Knowledge Base website](https://kb.vmware.com/kb/search.vmware.com).

Windows profiles

The following ports must be available for Windows profiles.
### Table 11. Port availability for Windows profiles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>TCP or UDP</th>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Communication description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>NetBIOS Name Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>NetBIOS Datagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>NetBIOS Session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>Outbound/Inbound</td>
<td>SMB over TCP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring a remote file server

You can import OS images, device drivers, and boot files into the OS images repository from the local system or from a remote file server. To import files from a remote file server, you must first create a profile that is used to authenticate the connection to the remote file server.

#### About this task

The following cryptographic algorithms are supported:
- RSA–2048 bits
- RSA–4096 bits
- ECDSA–521 bits (secp521r1 curve)

The following protocols are supported:
- HTTP with no authentication.
- HTTP with basic authentication.
- HTTPS (certificate validation) with basic authentication.
- HTTPS (certificate validation) with no authentication.
- FTP with password authentication.
- SFTP (client validation) with password authentication.
- SFTP (client validation) with public-key authentication.

For SFTP public key authentication and HTTPS certificate validation, Lenovo XClarity Administrator validates that the remote file server’s certificate. If the server certificate is not in the trust store, you are prompted to accept the server certificate and add it to the trust store. For information about troubleshooting validation issues, see [Server certification validation fails](#) in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

#### Procedure

To configure a remote file server, complete the following steps.

1. **Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS images page.

2. **Step 2.** Click the **Configure File Server** icon (🔗) to display the Configure Remote File Server dialog.
Configure Remote File Server

Configure remote file servers for importing OS images and files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server Name</th>
<th>Server Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No items to display

Remote File Server Protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HTTP</th>
<th>Create</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


Note: This dialog differs depending on the protocol that you selected.

Step 5. Enter the server name, address, and port.

Step 6. For HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, and SFTP with basic authentication, enter a user name and password if authentication is required to access the server.

Step 7. For SFTP with basic authentication, click Validate Server Certificate to obtain the public key signature.

Note: A dialog might be displayed informing you that the OS deployment process does not trust the public key of the SFTP file server. Click OK to store and trust the SFTP public key in the OS deployment trusted key store. If successful, the public key signature is shown in the SFTP Server Public Key Signature field.

Step 8. For SFTP with public-key authentication:

a. Enter a key passphrase and password and select the key type if authentication is required to access the server.

b. Click Generate Management Server Key to obtain the public-key signature.

c. Copy the generated key to the authorized_keys file in your SFTP remote file server.

d. Select the The Management key was copied onto the server checkbox in XClarity Administrator.

e. Click Validate Server Certificate to validate the public key signature.

Note: A dialog might be displayed informing you that the OS deployment process does not trust the public key of the SFTP file server. Click OK to store and trust the SFTP public key in the OS deployment trusted key store. If successful, the public key signature is shown in the SFTP Server Public Key Signature field.

f. Click Save.

Step 9. Click Save Server.

What to do next

From the Configure Remote File Server dialog, you can perform the following actions:

- Refresh the list of remote file server by clicking the Refresh icon ( ).
• Modify a selected remote file-server by clicking the **Edit** icon ( inherits).

• Remove a selected remote file server by clicking the **Delete** icon ( inherits).

### Importing operating-system images

Before you can deploy a licensed operating system to managed servers, you must import the image into the XClarity Administrator OS images repository.

**About this task**

For information about operating system images that you can import and deploy, see Supported operating systems.

The OS images repository can store up to ten operating-system images, if space is available to store the images (up to 50GB). For a list of supported base and custom operating systems, see Supported operating systems in the Lenovo XClarity Administrator online documentation.

You can import only one image at a time. Wait until the image is displayed in the OS images repository before attempting to import another image. Importing the operating system might take a while.

When you import an operating system image, XClarity Administrator:

• Ensures that there is sufficient space in the OS images repository before importing the operating system.
  If you do not have sufficient space to import an image, delete an existing image from the repository and attempt to import the new image again.

• Creates one or more profiles of that image and stores the profile in the OS images repository. Each profile includes the OS image and installation options. For more information about predefined OS image profiles, see Operating-system image profiles.

**Note:** Internet Explorer and Microsoft Edge web browsers have an upload limit of 4 GB. If the file that you are importing is greater than 4 GB, consider using another web browser (such as Chrome or Firefox) or copy the file to a remote file server and import using the **Remote import** option.

### Procedure

To import an operating-system image into the OS images repository, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Obtain a licensed ISO image of the operating system.

  **Note:** You are responsible for obtaining applicable licenses for the operating system.

Step 2. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images page.

Step 3. Click the **Import Files** icon ( inherits) to display the Import OS Images and Files dialog.

Step 4. Click the **Local** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

  **Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( inherits). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

Step 5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.

Step 6. Enter the path and ISO-image file name, or click **Browse** to find the ISO image that you want to import.
If you chose to use the local file server, you must enter the absolute path to the ISO-image file. If you chose to use a remote file server, you must enter the absolute path (for example, /home/user/isos.osimage.iso) or relative path (for example, /isos.osimage.iso) to the ISO-image file (depending on the configuration of the remote file server). If the file is not found, verify that the path to the file is correct, and try again.

Step 7. **Optional:** Enter a description for the OS image.

Step 8. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the ISO image being imported into XClarity Administrator is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded OS image. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded image matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the image again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:
- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256

Step 9. Click **Import**.

**Tip:** ISO image is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the image. If you close the web browser tab or window in which the operating-system image is being uploaded before the upload completes, the import fails.

**Results**

XClarity Administrator uploads the OS image and creates an image profile in the OS images repository.
Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installations scripts. You can also configure remote file servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. Learn more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Total OS Image Repository Usage: 11.1 GB of 50 GB
- OS Image Usage: 9.9 GB
- Device Driver Usage: 737.1 MB
- Boot File Usage: 0.1 MB
- Software File Usage: 484.5 MB
- Configuration File Usage: 0.0 MB
- Unattend File Usage: 0.1 MB
- Script File Usage: 0.0 MB

From this page, you can perform the following actions.

- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon (🚀).
- Customize an OS image by clicking the **Create Customized Profile** icon (🗂).
- Modify an OS image by clicking the **Edit** icon (📝).
- Import a customized OS image profile and apply to a base OS image by clicking **Import/Export Profile ➔ Import Customized Profile Image** (see Importing a customized OS image profile).
- Delete a selected OS image or customized OS image profile by clicking the **Delete** icon (🗑).
- Export a selected customized OS image profile by clicking **Import/Export Profile ➔ Export Customized Profile Image**.

**Note:** When importing Windows Server images, you must also import the associated bundle file. Lenovo bundles the predefined WinPE_64.wim boot file along with a set of device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage and then imported into OS-images repository. Because the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the **Device Driver** or **Boot Files** tab. For more information, see Importing boot files and Importing device drivers.

**Customizing OS-image profiles**

A *base operating system* is the full OS image that was imported into the OS-images repository. The imported base image contains predefined profiles that describe the installation configurations for that image. You can also create custom profiles in the base OS image that can be deployed for specific configurations. The custom profile contains the custom files and installation options.
Note: You cannot create a custom OS-image profile for a custom Microsoft Windows Server image.

Several example scenarios for customizing and deploying OS-images, including Windows and SLES, are available in English only. For more information, see End-to-end scenarios for setting up new devices.

You can add the following types of files to a custom OS image profile.

- **Boot files**
  A boot file acts as the bootstrap install environment. For Windows, this is a Windows Pre-installation (WinPE) file. A WinPE boot file is required to deploy Windows

  Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports predefined and custom boot files.

  - **Predefined boot files.** Lenovo provides a WinPE_64.wim boot file that can be used to deploy predefined OS-image profiles.

  Lenovo bundles the predefined WinPE_64.wim boot file along with a set of device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the [Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage](#) and then imported into OS-images repository. Because the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the **Device Driver** or **Boot Files** tab.

  **Notes:**

  - A predefined boot file is not preloaded with XClarity Administrator. You must import a boot file into the OS-images repository before you can deploy a Windows profile.

  - If you migrated your Windows images to XClarity Administrator v2.1.0 from an earlier release, a preloaded WinPE_64.wim boot file was migrated to the OS-images repository. It is recommended that you import the bundle file for the specific Windows release that you want to deploy instead of using the preloaded boot file.

  - You cannot delete predefined boot files that were loaded when you installed XClarity Administrator; however, you can delete predefined boot files that were imported from a Lenovo bundle.

  - XClarity Administrator requires that imported bundle files be signed by Lenovo. When importing a bundle file, an .asc signature file must also be imported.

  - **Custom boot files.** You can create a WinPE boot file to customize boot options for a Windows deployment. You can then add the boot file to custom Windows profiles.

  XClarity Administrator provides scripts for creating boot files in the correct format. For information about creating a custom boot files, see Creating a boot (WinPE) file and [Introduction to Windows PE (WinPE) website](#).

  The following file types are supported for importing custom boot files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported Boot File Types</th>
<th>Supported Bundle File Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file that contain a WinPE file that is created using the <code>genimage.cmd</code> script</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device drivers and boot files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>A .zip file that contain a WinPE file that is created using the <code>genimage.cmd</code> script</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device drivers and boot files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Device drivers

You must ensure that the operating-system image that you intend to deploy includes the appropriate Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and storage adapter device drivers for your hardware. If the I/O adapter device driver is not included in the operating system image or profile, the adapter is not supported for OS deployment. You can create custom OS-image profiles that include the out-of-box device drivers that you need.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports in-box device drivers as well as predefined and custom out-of-box device drivers.

- **In-box device drivers.** XClarity Administrator does not manage in-box device drivers. Always install the latest operating system to ensure that you have the latest in-box device drivers that you need.

  **Note:** You can add in-box device drivers to a customized Windows profile by creating a custom WinPE boot file and copying the device-driver files to the host system in the `C:\drivers` directory. When you create a custom OS-image profile that uses the custom boot-file, the device drivers that are in the `C:\drivers` directory are included in both WinPE and the final OS. They are treated as though they were inbox. Therefore, you do not need to import these in-box device drivers into XClarity Administrator when you specify device drivers to use in the custom OS-images profile creation.

- **Predefined device drivers.** For ThinkSystem servers, XClarity Administrator is preloaded with a set of out-of-box device drivers for Linux to enable the installation of the operating system as well as basic network and storage configuration for the final operating system. You can add these predefined device drivers to your custom OS-image profiles, and then deploy the profiles to your managed servers.

  Lenovo also bundles sets of predefined device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage and then imported into OS-images repository. Currently, the bundle files are available only for Windows. If the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the Device Driver or Boot Image tab.

  **Notes:**
  - By default, the predefined OS-image profiles include the predefined device drivers.
  - You cannot delete predefined device drivers that were loaded when you installed XClarity Administrator; however, you can delete predefined device drivers that were imported from a Lenovo bundle.
  - XClarity Administrator requires that imported bundle files be signed by Lenovo. When importing a bundle file, an `.asc` signature file must also be imported.

- **Custom device drivers.** You can import out-of-box device drivers into the OS-images repository, and then add those device drivers to a custom OS-image profile.

  You can obtain device drivers from the Lenovo YUM Repository webpage, from the vendor (such as Red Hat), or through a custom device driver that you generated yourself. For some Windows device drivers, you can generate a custom device driver by extracting the device driver from the installation `.exe` to your local system and creating a `.zip` archive file.

  The following file types are supported for importing custom device drivers.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported Device Driver File Types</th>
<th>Device Driver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the raw device-driver files, which are typically grouping of .inf, .cat, and .dll files.</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device-driver files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the raw device-driver files, which are typically grouping of .inf, .cat, and .dll files.</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device-driver files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>Driver update disk (DUD) in either an .rpm or .iso image format</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you apply a DUD .rpm to the customer profile, the .rpm is installed only to the final operating system. It is not installed in the install environment (initrd). To install a custom device driver to the initrd, import a DUD .iso and apply the .iso to the customer profile.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>Driver update disk (DUD) in .rpm or .iso image format</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you apply a DUD .rpm to the customer profile, the .rpm is installed only to the final operating system. It is not installed in the install environment (initrd). To install a custom device driver to the initrd, import a DUD .iso and apply the .iso to the customer profile.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>Device drivers in .vib image format</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

- **Custom configuration settings**
  Configuration settings describe data that needs to be gathered dynamically during OS deployment. Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses a set of predefined configuration settings, including global, network, and storage location settings. You can use these predefined configuration settings and add custom configuration setting that are not available through the XClarity Administrator.

  The custom configuration settings are defined in the form of a JSON schema. The schema must conform to the JSON specification.

  When you import custom configuration settings to XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator validates the JSON schema. If the validation passes, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting.

  You can use the custom macros in the unattend file and post-installation script.

- **In unattend files**
  You can associate the custom configuration file with an unattend file and include these custom macros (and predefined macros) in that unattend file.
You can add one or more custom configuration settings files in a custom profile. When you deploy the OS profile to a set of target servers, you can choose which configuration settings file to use. XClarity Administrator renders the **Custom Settings** tab on the Deploy OS Images dialog based on the JSON schema in the configuration settings file and allows you to specify values for each setting (JSON object) that is defined in the file.

**Note:** OS deployment will not proceed if input is not specified for any required custom configuration settings.

**In post-installation scripts**

After the data is gathered during OS deployment, XClarity Administrator creates an instance of the configuration settings file (which includes the custom settings in the selected file and a subset of predefined settings) on the host system that can be used by the post installation script.

**Notes:**
- Configuration settings file is unique to a custom OS-image profile.
- You cannot modify configuration settings for predefined OS-image profiles.
- Configuration settings are supported for only the following operating systems:
  - Microsoft® Windows® Server
  - Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server
  - SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)
  - VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization 6.0u3 and later updates and 6.5 and later.

The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

**Custom unattend files**

You can customize OS image profiles to use unattend files to automate the deployment of the operating system.

The following file types are supported for custom unattend files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>Unattend (.xml)</td>
<td>For more information about unattend files, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference webpage](Unattended Windows Setup Reference webpage).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Supported File Types</td>
<td>More information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server                | Kickstart (.cfg)     | For more information about unattend files, see the [Red Hat: Automating the Installation with Kickstart webpage](https://www.redhat.com/en/automating-the-installation-with-kickstart). Consider the following when adding %pre, %post, %firstboot sections in the file.  
  - You can include multiple %pre, %post, %firstboot sections to the unattend file; however, be aware of the ordering of the sections.  
  - When the recommended `#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig` macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds a %pre section before all other %pre sections in the file.  
  - When the recommended `#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig` macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds %post and %firstboot sections before all other %post and %firstboot sections in the file. |
| SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)                   | AutoYast (.xml)      | For more information about unattend files, see the [SUSE: AutoYaST webpage](https://www.suse.com/en).                                                                                                     |
| VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization | Kickstart (.cfg)     | Supported only for ESXi 6.0u3 and later updates and 6.5 and later. For more information about unattend files, see the [VMware: Installing or Upgrading Hosts by Using a Script webpage](https://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/). Consider the following when adding %pre, %post, %firstboot sections in the file.  
  - You can include multiple %pre, %post, %firstboot sections to the unattend file; however, be aware of the ordering of the sections.  
  - When the recommended `#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig` macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds a %pre section before all other %pre sections in the file.  
  - When the recommended `#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig` macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds %post and %firstboot sections before all other %post and %firstboot sections in the file. |

**Attention:**

- You can inject predefined and custom macros (configuration settings) in the unattend file using the unique name of the object. Predefined values are dynamic based on the XClarity Administrator instances. Custom macros are dynamic based on user input that is specified during OS deployment.

**Notes:**

- Surround the macro name with a hash symbol (#).
- For nested objects, separate each object name using a period (for example, `#server_settings.server0.locale`).
- For custom macros, do not include the top-most object name. For predefined macros, prefix the macro name with "predefined."
- When an object is created from a template, the name is appended with a unique number, starting with 0 (for example, `server0` and `server1`).
You can see the name for each macro from the Deploy OS Images dialog on the Custom Settings tabs by hovering over the Help icon (?url) next to each custom setting.

For a list of predefined macros, see Predefined macros. For information about custom configuration settings and macros, see Custom macros.

XClarity Administrator provides the following predefined macros that are used to communicate status from the OS installer, as well as several other critical installation steps. It is strongly recommended that you include these macros in unattend file (see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file).

- #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
- #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#

**Custom installation scripts**

You can customize OS image profiles to run an installation script after the OS deployment completes. Currently, only post-installation scripts are supported.

The following table lists the file types for installation scripts that Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports for each operating system. Note that certain operation system versions do not support all of the file types that XClarity Administrator supports (for example, some RHEL versions might not include Perl in the minimal profile and, therefore, Perl scripts will not run). Ensure that you use the correct file type for the operating system versions that you want to deploy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is C:\lxca. For more information about installation scripts, see the Add a custom script to Windows Setup webpage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>Command file (.cmd), PowerShell (.ps1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is C:\lxca. For more information about installation scripts, see the RHEL: Post-installation Script webpage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL)</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca. For more information about installation scripts, see the SUSE: Custom user script webpage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca. For more information about installation scripts, see the SUSE: Custom user script webpage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca. For more information about installation scripts, see the VMware: Installation and Upgrade Scripts webpage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom software**

You can customize OS image profiles to install custom software payloads after the OS deployment and post-installation scripts complete.

The following file types are supported for custom software.
## Importing a customized OS image profile

You can import a customized OS image profile and add it to an existing compatible base OS image.

### About this task

The base OS image must be imported before you can import a custom profile.

A custom OS-image profile can be added only to a based OS image of the same type. For example, if the exported profile is for a Windows 2016 image, the profile can only be imported and added to a Windows 2016 image that exists in the OS-images repository.

The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of custom profiles, if space is available to store the files.

### Procedure

To import a customized OS image profile, complete the following steps.

1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. From the **OS Images** tab, select the base OS image to which you want to add the customized OS image profile.
3. Click **Import/Export Profile ➔ Import Customized Profile Image**. The Import Customized OS Image Profile dialog is displayed.
4. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

   **Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.
6. Enter the profile name or click **Browse** to find the profile that you want to import.
7. **Optional:** For local imports, select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

---

### Supported File Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the software payload.</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is C:\lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:
- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256

Step 8. Click Import.

**Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

What to do next

The customized OS image profile is listed under the base operating system on the Manage OS Images page.

Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installations scripts. You can also configure remote files servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. Learn more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total OS Image Repository Usage: 11.1 GB of 50 GB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS Image Usage: 9.9 GB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Driver Usage: 737.1 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot File Usage: 0.1 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software File Usage: 404.5 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration File Usage: 0.0 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unattend File Usage: 0.1 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script File Usage: 0.0 MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From this page, you can perform the following actions:
- Create a customized OS-image profile (see Creating a custom OS-image profile).
- Export a selected customized OS image profile by clicking Import/Export Profile ➔ Export Customized Profile Image.
**Important:** You can export customized OS image profiles to a remote file server that is set up to use FTP or SFTP protocols. You cannot export to a remote file server that is set up to use HTTP or HTTPS.

- Modify a selected customized OS image profile by clicking the **Edit** icon (_drag_and_drop_icon_).
- Remove a selected customized OS image profile by clicking the **Delete** icon (_drag_and_drop_icon_).

## Importing boot files

You can import boot files into the OS images repository. These files can then be used to customize and deploy Windows images.

### About this task

A boot file acts as the bootstrap install environment. For Windows, this is a Windows Pre-installation (WinPE) file. A WinPE boot file is required to deploy Windows

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports predefined and custom boot files.

- **Predefined boot files.** Lenovo provides a WinPE_64.wim boot file that can be used to deploy predefined OS-image profiles.

Lenovo bundles the predefined WinPE_64.wim boot file along with a set of device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the [Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage](http://www.lenovo.com) and then imported into OS-images repository. Because the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the **Device Driver** or **Boot Files** tab.

**Notes:**

- A predefined boot file is not preloaded with XClarity Administrator. You must import a boot file into the OS-images repository before you can deploy a Windows profile.
- If you migrated your Windows images to XClarity Administrator v2.1.0 from an earlier release, a preloaded WinPE_64.wim boot file was migrated to the OS-images repository. It is recommended that you import the bundle file for the specific Windows release that you want to deploy instead of using the preloaded boot file.
- You cannot delete predefined boot files that were loaded when you installed XClarity Administrator; however, you can delete predefined boot files that were imported from a Lenovo bundle.
- XClarity Administrator requires that imported bundle files be signed by Lenovo. When importing a bundle file, an .asc signature file must also be imported.

- **Custom boot files.** You can create a WinPE boot file to customize boot options for a Windows deployment. You can then add the boot file to custom Windows profiles.

XClarity Administrator provides scripts for creating boot files in the correct format. For information about creating a custom boot files, see Creating a boot (WinPE) file and [Introduction to Windows PE (WinPE) website](http://www.lenovo.com).

The following file types are supported for importing custom boot files:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported Boot File Types</th>
<th>Supported Bundle File Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file that contain a WinPE file that is created using the <strong>genimage. cmd</strong> script</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device drivers and boot files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>A .zip file that contain a WinPE file that is created using the <strong>genimage. cmd</strong> script</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device drivers and boot files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Supported Boot File Types</td>
<td>Supported Bundle File Types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

**Procedure**

- To import a Windows bundle file that contains boot files into the OS images repository, complete the following steps.

  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
  2. Click the **Boot Files** tab.

**Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images**

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installations scripts. You can also configure remote file servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. [Learn more...](#)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to Generate Boot Files

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boot File Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>OS Release</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No items to display

3. Click **Downloads → Windows Bundle Files** to go to the Lenovo Support webpage, and download the appropriate bundle file and the associated signature file for the OS image to the local system.

4. Click the **Import Bundle File** icon ( ). The Import Bundle File dialog is displayed.

5. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

**Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

6. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.

7. Select the operating-system type and release.

8. Enter the file name for the bundle file and the associated signature file or click **Browse** to find the files that you want to import.

9. **Optional:** Enter a description for the bundle file.

10. Click **Import**.
To import an individual boot file into the OS images repository, complete the following steps.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the **Boot Files** tab.
3. Click the **Import File** icon ( ). The Import File dialog is displayed.
4. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

   **Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.
6. Select the operating-system type and release.
7. Enter the file name or click **Browse** to find the boot file that you want to import.
8. **Optional:** Enter a description for the boot file.
9. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

   If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

   Three checksum types are supported:
   - **MD5**
   - **SHA1**
   - **SHA256**

10. Click **Import**.

   **Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

   If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

**What to do next**

The boot file is listed on the **Boot Files** tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions.

- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ).
- Remove a selected boot file by clicking the **Delete** icon ( ).
- Add a boot file to an customized OS image profile (see Creating a custom OS-image profile).
Creating a boot (WinPE) file
You can create boot files that can be used to customize Windows images.

Before you begin

• Ensure that the operating system you intend to provision is installed on the host. For example, if you plan to provision Windows 2016 using the WinPE files, then install Windows 2016 on the host.

• Ensure that the Microsoft ADK that is compatible with the installed operating system is also installed on the host. For example, Windows 2012R2 requires ADK version 8.1 Update.

• Obtain the device drivers, in .inf format, that you want to add to the boot file.

You can obtain device drivers from the Lenovo YUM Repository webpage, from the vendor (such as Red Hat), or through a custom device driver that you generated yourself. For some Windows device drivers, you can generate a custom device driver by extracting the device driver from the installation .exe to your local system and creating a .zip archive file.

Lenovo also bundles sets of predefined device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage and then imported into OS-images repository. Currently, the bundle files are available only for Windows. If the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the Device Driver or Boot Image tab.

• Download the genimage.cmd and startnet.cmd files to the host in a temporary directory, such as C:\customwim.

The genimage.cmd command is used to generate the WinPE boot files, including the .wim file. The startnet.cmd command is used by XClarity Administrator to bootstrap the Windows installer.

• Decide how you want to inject device drivers into the boot file. You can do this in one of the following ways:
  – Add in-box device drivers to a customized Windows profile by copying the device-driver files to the host system in the C:\drivers directory. These will be included in the boot file when genimage.cmd runs later.
    
    **Note:** When you create a custom OS-images profile that uses the custom boot-file, the device drivers that are in the C:\drivers directory are included in both WinPE and the final OS. They are treated as though they were inbox. Therefore, you do not need to import these in-box device drivers into XClarity Administrator when you specify device drivers to use in the custom OS-images profile creation.
  – Add out-of-box device drivers directly to the boot file.
    
    **Note:** If you use this method, the device drivers are only applied to the boot file and therefore to the WinPE install environment. The device drivers are not applied to the final installed OS. You must manually import the device drivers into the OS-images device driver repository and select them for use as part of the OS-image profile customization.

• For more information about boot files, see the Introduction to Window PE (WinPE) website.

Procedure
To create a boot file, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Using a user ID with administrator authority, run the Windows ADK command “Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment.” A command session is displayed.

**Step 2.** From the command session, change to the directory where the genimage.cmd and startnet.cmd files were downloaded (for example, C:\customwim).

**Step 3.** Ensure that no previously mounted images are on the host by running the following command:

dism /get-mountedwiminfo

If there are mounted images, discard them by running the following command:
Step 4. If you are adding in-box device drivers to a customized Windows profile, copy the raw device-driver files, in .inf format, to the host system in the C:\drivers directory.

Step 5. Run the following command to generate the boot file, in .wim format, and then wait a few minutes for the command to complete.

```
genimage.cmd amd64 <ADK_Version>
```

Where <ADK_Version> is one of the following values.

- **8.1.** For Windows 2012 R2
- **10.** For Windows 2016

This command creates the boot file: C:\WinPE_64\media\Boot\WinPE_64.wim.

Step 6. Mount the boot file by running the following command:

```
dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\WinPE_64\media\Boot\WinPE_64.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\WinPE_64\mount
```

Step 7. If you are adding out-of-box device drivers directly to the boot file, complete the following steps.

1. Create the following directory structure, where <os_release> is 2012, 2012R2, or 2016
   ```
drivers\<os_release>\drivers\<os_release>\drivers\<os_release>\drivers
   ```

2. Copy the device drivers, in .inf format, to a directory inside that path, for example:
   ```
drivers\<os_release>\<driver1>\<driver1_files>
   ```

3. Copy the drivers directory to the mount directory, for example:
   ```
C:\WinPE_64\mount\drivers
   ```

Step 8. Make additional customizations to the boot file, such as adding folders, files, startup scripts, language packs, and apps. For more information about customizing boot files, see the WinPE: Mount and Customize website.

Step 9. Unmount the image by running the following command.

```
dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\WinPE_64\mount /commit
```

Step 10. Compress the contents of the C:\WinPE_64\media directory into a zip file called WinPE_64.zip.

Step 11. Import the .zip file into XClarity Administrator (see Importing boot files).

## Importing device drivers

You can import individual device drivers and bundles files into the OS images repository. These files can then be used to customize Linux and Windows images.

### About this task

You must ensure that the operating-system image that you intend to deploy includes the appropriate Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and storage adapter device drivers for your hardware. If the I/O adapter device driver is not included in the operating system image or profile, the adapter is not supported for OS deployment. You can create custom OS-image profiles that include the out-of-box device drivers that you need.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports in-box device drivers as well as predefined and custom out-of-box device drivers.

- **In-box device drivers.** XClarity Administrator does not manage in-box device drivers. Always install the latest operating system to ensure that you have the latest in-box device drivers that you need.

   **Note:** You can add in-box device drivers to a customized Windows profile by creating a custom WinPE boot file and copying the device-driver files to the host system in the C:\drivers directory. When you create a custom OS-images profile that uses the custom boot-file, the device drivers that are in the C:\drivers directory are included in both WinPE and the final OS. They are treated as though they were
inbox. Therefore, you do not need to import these in-box device drivers into XClarity Administrator when you specify device drivers to use in the custom OS-images profile creation.

- **Predefined device drivers.** For ThinkSystem servers, XClarity Administrator is preloaded with a set of out-of-box device drivers for Linux to enable the installation of the operating system as well as basic network and storage configuration for the final operating system. You can add these predefined device drivers to your custom OS-image profiles, and then deploy the profiles to your managed servers.

Lenovo also bundles sets of predefined device drivers into a single package that can be downloaded from the Lenovo Windows drivers and WinPE Images Repository webpage and then imported into OS-images repository. Currently, the bundle files are available only for Windows. If the bundle file contains both device drivers and boot files, you can import the bundle file from the Device Driver or Boot Image tab.

**Notes:**
- By default, the predefined OS-image profiles include the predefined device drivers.
- You cannot delete predefined device drivers that were loaded when you installed XClarity Administrator; however, you can delete predefined device drivers that were imported from a Lenovo bundle.
- XClarity Administrator requires that imported bundle files be signed by Lenovo. When importing a bundle file, an .asc signature file must also be imported.

- **Custom device drivers.** You can import out-of-box device drivers into the OS-images repository, and then add those device drivers to a custom OS-image profile.

You can obtain device drivers from the Lenovo YUM Repository webpage, from the vendor (such as Red Hat), or through a custom device driver that you generated yourself. For some Windows device drivers, you can generate a custom device driver by extracting the device driver from the installation .exe to your local system and creating a .zip archive file.

The following file types are supported for importing custom device drivers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported Device Driver File Types</th>
<th>Device Driver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the raw device-driver files, which are typically grouping of .inf, .cat, and .dll files.</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device-driver files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the raw device-driver files, which are typically grouping of .inf, .cat, and .dll files.</td>
<td>A .zip file containing device-driver files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>Driver update disk (DUD) in either an .rpm or .iso image format</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If you apply a DUD .rpm to the customer profile, the .rpm is installed only to the final operating system. It is not installed in the install environment (initrd). To install a custom device driver to the initrd, import a DUD .iso and apply the .iso to the customer profile.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported Device Driver File Types</th>
<th>Device Driver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>Driver update disk (DUD) in .rpm or .iso image format <strong>Note:</strong> If you apply a DUD .rpm to the customer profile, the .rpm is installed only to the final operating system. It is not installed in the install environment (initrd). To install a custom device driver to the initrd, import a DUD .iso and apply the .iso to the customer profile.</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>Device drivers in .vib image format</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

**Procedure**

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the **Driver File** tab.
3. Click **Downloads ➔ Windows Bundle Files** to go to the Lenovo Support webpage, and download the appropriate bundle file and the associated signature file for the OS image to the local system.
4. Click the **Import Bundle File** icon ( ). The Import Bundle File dialog is displayed.
5. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

   **Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.
6. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the Remote File Server list.

7. Select the operating-system type and release.

8. Enter the file name for the bundle file and the associated signature file or click Browse to find the files that you want to import.

9. **Optional:** Enter a description for the bundle file.

10. Click **Import**.

    **Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

    If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

• To import an individual device driver into the OS images repository, complete the following steps.

    1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

    2. Click the **Driver Files** tab.

    3. Click the **Import File** icon ( ). The Import File dialog is displayed.

    4. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

        **Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

    5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the Remote File Server list.

    6. Select the operating-system type and release.

    7. Enter the file name or click Browse to find the device driver that you want to import.

    8. **Optional:** Enter a description for the device driver.

    9. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

        If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

        Three checksum types are supported:
        - MD5
        - SHA1
        - SHA256

    10. Click **Import**.

        **Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

        If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

**What to do next**

The device-drive image is listed on the **Driver Files** tab on the Manage OS Images page.
From this page, you can perform the following actions.

- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ).
- Remove a selected device driver by clicking the **Delete** icon ( ).
- Add a device driver to an customized OS image profile (see Creating a custom OS-image profile).

**Importing custom configuration settings**

Configuration settings describe data that needs to be gathered dynamically during OS deployment. Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses a set of predefined configuration settings, including global, network, and storage location settings. You can use these predefined configuration settings and add custom configuration setting that are not available through the XClarity Administrator.

**About this task**

The custom configuration settings are defined in the form of a JSON schema. The schema must conform to the JSON specification.

When you import custom configuration settings to XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator validates the JSON schema. If the validation passes, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting.

You can use the custom macros in the unattend file and post-installation script.

**In unattend files**

You can associate the custom configuration file with an unattend file and include these custom macros (and predefined macros) in that unattend file.

You can add one or more custom configuration settings files in a custom profile. When you deploy the OS profile to a set of target servers, you can choose which configuration settings file to use. XClarity Administrator renders the **Custom Settings** tab on the Deploy OS Images dialog based on the JSON schema in the configuration settings file and allows you to specify values for each setting (JSON object) that is defined in the file.

**Note:** OS deployment will not proceed if input is not specified for any required custom configuration settings.

**In post-installation scripts**

After the data is gathered during OS deployment, XClarity Administrator creates an instance of the configuration settings file (which includes the custom settings in the selected file and a subset of predefined settings) on the host system that can be used by the post installation script.

**Notes:**

- Configuration settings file is unique to a custom OS-image profile.
- You cannot modify configuration settings for predefined OS-image profiles.
- Configuration settings are supported for only the following operating systems:
  - Microsoft® Windows® Server
  - Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server
  - SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)
  - VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization 6.0u3 and later updates and 6.5 and later.

The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.
Procedure

To import configuration-settings files into the OS-images repository, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the **Configuration Settings** tab.

**Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images**

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installation scripts. You can also configure remote file servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. Learn more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 3. Click the **Import File** icon ( ). The Import Configuration Settings dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

*Note:* To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

Step 5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.

Step 6. Select the operating-system type.

Step 7. Enter the file name of the configuration-settings file, or click **Browse** to find the file that you want to import.

Step 8. **Optional:** Enter a description of the configuration-settings.

*Tip:* Use the **Description** field to distinguish between custom files with the same name.

Step 9. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:

- **MD5**
- **SHA1**
- **SHA256**

Step 10. Click **Import**. The JSON format is validated when you import the file. If errors are found, a dialog is displayed with the error message and location.

*Tip:* The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.
Attention: If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

What to do next

The configuration-settings files are listed on the **Configuration Settings** tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can also perform the following actions.

- Create a configuration-setting file by clicking the **Create** icon, and then specifying the file name, description, OS type, and configuration settings and values. Click **Validate** to validate the schema before saving the file.
  
  The editor identifies the location of any errors that are found in the file. Note that some messages are English only.

- View and modify a configuration-settings file by clicking the **Edit** icon.
  
  You cannot edit a configuration-settings file that is associated with an unattend file.
  
  The editor identifies the location of any errors that are found in the file. Note that some messages are English only.

- Copy a configuration-settings file by clicking the **Copy** icon.
  
  If you copy a configuration-settings file that is associated with an unattend file, the associated unattend file is also copied and the association is automatically created between both copied files.

- Remove selected configuration-setting files by clicking the **Delete** icon.

- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon.

For information about adding a configuration-settings to a customized OS image profile, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

Custom macros

*Macros* give you the ability to add variable data (configuration settings) to an unattend file or post-installation script. Lenovo XClarity Administrator allows you to define your own custom settings by creating a custom configuration-settings file, using JSON format.

The value for each custom configuration setting varies based on user input that is specified during OS deployment.

When you import custom configuration settings in XClarity Administrator, XClarity Administrator validates the JSON schema. If the validation passes, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting.

To inject custom macros into an unattend file or post-installation script, use the unique name of the object, separate nested objects using a period, and then surround the macro name with a hash symbol (#), for example, `#server_settings.server0.locale#`.

**Notes:**

- Do not include the top-most object name.

- When an object is created from a template, the name is appended with a unique number, starting with 0 (for example, server0 and server1).

- You can see the name for each macro from the Deploy OS Images dialog on the Custom Settings tabs by hovering over the **Help** icon next to each custom setting.
Configuration settings

You can define custom configuration settings that:

- Are common to all target servers or unique to a specific target server.
- Have static (non-configurable) values or with dynamic (configurable) values that are entered when you deploy the OS-image profile.
- Have a variable number of elements based on a template. For example, you can define a configuration setting that lets you specify 0 – 3 NTP servers during deployment.

Common settings

During OS deployment, the UI elements on the **Common Settings** tabs on the Deploy OS Image dialog are rendered based on the objects that are represented in the content object. The objects describe the settings and values that all the target servers need for OS deployment.

To represent settings that are common to all servers, the JSON file must contain a parent object with a nested object that contains the "common": true name/value pair.

The following example uses the same configurable (dynamic) NTP servers for all servers.

```json
{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "content": [{
        "category": "dynamic",
        "common": true,
        "description": "NTP Servers",
        "label": "NTP Servers",
        "maxElements": 3,
        "minElements": 0,
        "name": "common-ntpservers",
        "optional": true,
        "template": [{
            "autoCreateInstance": true,
            "category": "dynamic",
            "common": true,
            "description": "A NTP Server",
            "label": "NTP Server",
            "name": "ntpserver",
            "optional": true,
            "regex": "[\w.\-]{1,64}$",
            "type": "string"
        }],
        "type": "array"
    }, ...]
}
```

The following example uses the same non-configurable (static) post-installation script log directory.

```json
{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "content": [{
        "category": "static",
        "common": true,
        "description": "Directory location for post-installation script logging.",
        "name": "logpath",
        "optional": false,
        "type": "string",
        "value": "/tmp/mylogger.log"
    }
}
```
Server-specific settings

During OS deployment, the UI elements on the **Server-Specific Settings** tab on the Deploy OS Image dialog are rendered based on the objects that are represented in the template’s `content` objects. The objects describe the settings and values that a specific target server needs for OS deployment.

After the server-specific values are gathered in the UI, a `content` object is created in the JSON for each target server based on the `template` object. Each `content` object contain a unique `name` and `targetServer` field, and any values that were inputted for that server.

To represent the server-specific settings, the JSON file must contain a parent object with the following content:
- The "category": "dynamic" name/value pair.
- A nested object that contains the "common": false name/value pair. Only one "common": false object is supported in the content of the parent object.
- A template object with an embedded content object. This template array can contain only one object.

For example, if you want to define a unique OS locale for each target server

```json
{
  "category": "dynamic",
  "content": [{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "common": false,
    "name": "server-settings",
    "optional": false,
    "template": [{
      "category": "dynamic",
      "common": false,
      "content": [{
        "category": "dynamic",
        "choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
        "common": false,
        "label": "OS Locale",
        "name": "locale",
        "optional": false,
        "type": "string",
        "value": "en_US"
      }],
      "name": "server",
      "optional": false,
      "type": "assoc_array"
    }],
    "type": "assoc_array"
  },
  ...
}
```

**JSON specification**

The following table describes the fields that are allowed in the JSON specification.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required / Optional</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>autoCreateInstance</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Indicates whether an instance of the template object is created automatically in JSON file at deployment time. This can be one of the following values. <strong>true.</strong> An instance of the template object is created automatically in JSON file at deployment time. <strong>false.</strong> (default) An instance of the template object is not created automatically in JSON file at deployment time. <strong>Note:</strong> This field can be placed only in the template object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Indicates how the value of each setting is populated. This can be one of the following values: <strong>dynamic.</strong> The value is input by the user at run time. Lenovo XClarity Administrator prompts you for this value during OS deployment. <strong>predefined.</strong> The value is preset by Lenovo XClarity Administrator. <strong>static.</strong> The value is specified in the schema and does not change at run time. Nested objects inherit the value of this field from its parent object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choices</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Array of values that match the type property</td>
<td>Array of static values (such as strings or integers) for the configuration setting from which the user can select during OS deployment (for example, [&quot;enabled&quot;,&quot;disabled&quot;]).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>common</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Indicates whether this configuration schema applies to all target servers. <strong>true.</strong> The object applies to all target servers. <strong>false.</strong> (default) The object applies to a specific target server. Nested objects inherit the value of this field from its parent object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Array of objects</td>
<td>Pattern that represents nested objects in the schema. After user-inputted data is gathered during OS deployment, this field is used to represent the final values for a given template in the instance of the configuration-settings file that is created for the deployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Varies depending on the type</td>
<td>The default value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Required / Optional</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Description of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Label for the setting in the user interface that is displayed during OS deployment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Maximum value, when <code>type</code> is set to integer. The default value is unlimited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxElements</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Maximum number of entries in the array for this object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Minimum value, when <code>type</code> is set to integer. The default value is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minElements</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Minimum number of entries in the array for this object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Unique name of the object. This name can contain only the following characters: alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, and 0-9), underscore (_), and dash (-).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You can reference the name as a custom macro in the unattend file. When referencing a nested name object, separate each object using a period (for example, mydeploy.node.locale).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optional</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Indicates whether the object is optional. This can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• true. The field is optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• false. The field is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regex</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Regular expression for validating the value (for example, &quot;[\w.]{1,64}$&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>script</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Array of strings</td>
<td>List of scripts, separated by a comma, that have dependencies on the data in this object (for example, [&quot;/opt/lenovo/saphana/bin/saphana-create-saphana.sh&quot;, &quot;create_hana.sh&quot;]).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The scripts must be available to the OS-image profile as an installation script or custom software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetServer</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>UUID of the server that is the target for the OS deployment. If common is true, this field can be empty or null, and the target server is specified during OS deployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Required / Optional</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Array of objects</td>
<td>Pattern that represents reusable objects. During OS deployment, this template can represent multiple instances of the object. The <code>minElements</code> and <code>maxElements</code> fields can be used to limit the number of instances. The following example uses a template to represent an array of 1 - 3 NTP servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "common": true,
    "description": "NTP Servers",
    "label": "NTP Servers",
    "maxElements": 3,
    "minElements": 0,
    "name": "common-ntp_servers",
    "optional": true,
    "template": [
        {
            "autoCreateInstance": true,
            "category": "dynamic",
            "common": true,
            "description": "A NTP Server",
            "label": "NTP Server",
            "name": "ntpserver",
            "optional": true,
            "regex": "\\w\\.\\{1,64}\$",
            "type": "string"
        }
    ],
    "type": "array"
}
```

After user-inputted values are gathered during OS deployment, an instance of the configuration-settings file is created with specific content for each device on which the OS is to be deployed. |

```
{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "common": true,
    "description": "NTP Servers",
    "label": "NTP Servers",
    "maxElements": 3,
    "minElements": 0,
    "name": "common-ntp_servers",
    "optional": true,
    "content": [
        {
            "category": "dynamic",
            "common": true,
            "description": "A NTP Server",
            "label": "NTP Server",
            "name": "ntpserver0",
            "optional": true,
            "regex": "\\w\\.\\{1,64}\$",
            "type": "string",
            "value": "192.0.2.1"
        }
    ],
    "template": [
        {
            "category": "dynamic",
            "common": true,
            "description": "A NTP Server",
            "label": "NTP Server",
            "name": "ntpserver0",
            "optional": true,
            "regex": "\\w\\.\\{1,64}\$",
            "type": "string",
            "value": "192.0.2.1"
        }
    ]
}
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Required / Optional</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Data type for the object. This can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• assoc_array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• user_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>A single static value for the configuration setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Notes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If default is set, this field can be empty or null; otherwise, specify a value that matches type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If type is password, specify a non-encrypted string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If type is assoc_array or array, you must also specify an empty content field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If type is user_data, specify valid JSON-formatted value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If regex is set, this value is validated using the specified regular expression.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example configuration settings define locale settings for SLES deployments that can be added to a custom profile.

```json
{
    "category": "dynamic",
    "content": [
        {
            "category": "dynamic",
            "common": false,
            "name": "server-settings",
            "optional": false,
            "template": [
                {
                    "autoCreateInstance": true,
                    "category": "dynamic",
                    "common": false,
                    "content": [
                        {
                            "category": "dynamic",
                            "choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"]
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
"common": false,
"description": "This parameter defines the OS language locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported."
"label": "OS Locale",
"name": "locale",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "en_US"
},

{ "category": "dynamic",
"choices": ["english-us", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
"common": false,
"description": "This parameter defines the keyboard locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported."
"label": "Keyboard Locale",
"name": "keyboardLocale",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "english-us"
}
"name": "server",
"optional": false,
"type": "assoc_array"
],
"type": "assoc_array"
},

{ "category": "dynamic",
"common": true,
"description": "NTP Servers",
"label": "NTP Servers",
"maxElements": 3,
"minElements": 0,
"name": "common-ntpservers",
"optional": true,
"template": [{
"category": "dynamic",
"common": true,
"description": "A NTP Server",
"label": "NTP Server",
"name": "ntpserver",
"optional": true,
"regex": "[\w\.]{1,64}$",
"type": "string"
}],
"type": "array"
},

{ "category": "static",
"common": true,
"description": "Directory for post-installation script logging."
"name": "logpath",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "/tmp/mylogger.log"
}],
"description": "Custom configuration file for deployment of custom locale, NTP server, and directory for post-installation script logs."
"label": "My Custom Deployment",
"name": "myCustomDeploy"}
The following example is the instance of the configuration settings file that is created on the host system after user-inputted values are defined during deployment.

```json
{
   "category": "dynamic",
   "content": {
      "category": "dynamic",
      "common": false,
      "name": "server-settings",
      "optional": false,
      "content": {
         "category": "dynamic",
         "common": false,
         "content": {
            "category": "dynamic",
            "choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
            "common": false,
            "description": "This parameter defines the OS language locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.",
            "label": "OS Locale",
            "name": "locale",
            "optional": false,
            "type": "string",
            "value": "en_US"
         },
         "category": "dynamic",
         "choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
         "common": false,
         "description": "This parameter defines the keyboard locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.",
         "label": "Keyboard Locale",
         "name": "keyboardLocale",
         "optional": false,
         "type": "string",
         "value": "en_US"
      },
      "name": "server0",
      "optional": false,
      "type": "assoc_array",
      "targetServer": "AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA"
   },
   "category": "dynamic",
   "common": false,
   "content": {
      "category": "dynamic",
      "choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
      "common": false,
      "description": "This parameter defines the OS language locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.",
      "label": "OS Locale",
      "name": "locale",
      "optional": false,
      "type": "string",
      "value": "en_US"
   }
}
```

Lenovo XClarity Administrator User's Guide
This parameter defines the keyboard locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.

"label": "Keyboard Locale",
"name": "keyboardLocale",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "english-us"
],
"name": "server1",
"optional": false,
"type": "assoc_array",
"targetServer": "BBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBB"
}],
"template": [{
"category": "dynamic",
"common": false,
"content": [{
"category": "dynamic",
"choices": ["en_US", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
"common": false,
"description": "This parameter defines the OS language locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.",
"label": "OS Locale",
"name": "locale",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "en_US"
}
,
"category": "dynamic",
"choices": ["english-us", "pt_BR", "ja_JP"],
"common": false,
"description": "This parameter defines the keyboard locale to use with this deployment. English, Brazilian Portuguese, and Japanese are supported.",
"label": "Keyboard Locale",
"name": "keyboardLocale",
"optional": false,
"type": "string",
"value": "english-us"
}],
"name": "server",
"optional": false,
"type": "assoc_array"
}],
"type": "assoc_array"}
Predefined macros

Macros give you the ability to add variable data (configuration settings) to an unattend file or post-installation script. Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides a set of predefined configuration settings that you can use.

To inject predefined macros to an unattend or post-installation script file, prefix the macro with "predefined" for predefined macros, separate nested objects using a period, and then surround the macro name with a hash symbol (#), for example #predefined.globalSettings.ipAssignment#.

The value for each predefined macro varies based on the XClarity Administrator instance. For example, the Deploy OS Images ➤ Global Settings ➤ IP Assignment field allows you to specify the IP mode. After the user-inputted value is gathered during OS deployment, the value is represented in the predefined
configurations settings by the predefined macro `#predefined.globalSettings.ipAssignment#` and in the instance of the configuration-settings JSON file under the ipAssignment Object name.

The following table lists the predefined macros (configuration settings) that are available in XClarity Administrator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Macro name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>predefined</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Information about all predefined OS-deployment settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>globalSettings</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Information about global OS-deployment settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credentials</td>
<td>Array of objects</td>
<td>Information about user credentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Operating system type. This can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• ESXi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• LINUX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• WINDOWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipAssignment</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Host network setting option for operating system deployment. This</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• dhcpv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• staticv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• staticv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isVLANMode</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Indicates whether VLAN mode is used. This can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostPlatforms</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Deployment settings from the host platforms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licenseKey</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>License key to be used for Microsoft Windows or VMware ESXi. If you do not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>have a license key, you can set this field to null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkSettings</td>
<td>Array</td>
<td>Information about network settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dns1</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Preferred DNS server for the host server to be used after the operating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>system is deployed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dns2</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Alternative DNS server for the host server to be used after the operating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>system is deployed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gateway</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Gateway of the host server to be used after the operating system is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deployed. This is used when the network setting is set to static in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global OS deployment settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Tip:</strong> To determine the IP mode, use <code>GET /osdeployment/globalSettings</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostname</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Hostname for the host server. If a hostname is not specified, a default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hostname is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipAddress</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>IP address of the host server to be used after the operating system is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deployed. This is used when the network setting is set to static in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global OS deployment settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtu</td>
<td>Long</td>
<td>Maximum transmission unit for the host to be used after the operating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>system is deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefixLength</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Prefix length of the host IP address to be used after the operating system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>is deployed. This is used when the network setting is set to static IPv6 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the Global OS deployment settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selectedMAC</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>MAC address of the host server to which the IP address is to be bound. The MAC address is set to AUTO by default. This setting automatically detects the Ethernet ports that can be configured and used for deployment. The first MAC address (port) that is detected is used by default. If connectivity is detected on a different MAC address, the XClarity Administrator host is automatically restarted to use the newly detected MAC address for deployment, and selectedMAC is set to the newly detected MAC address. VLAN mode is supported only for servers that have MAC addresses in their inventory. If AUTO is the only the MAC address that is available for a server, then VLANs cannot be used to deploy operating systems to that server. Tip: To obtain the MAC address, use the macaddress response property in GET /hostPlatforms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subnetCIDRNumber</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Subnet mask of the host server to be used after the operating system is deployed, in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) format. This is used when the network setting is set to static in the Global OS deployment settings. The CIDR number is typically preceded by a slash “/” and follows the IP address. For example, an IP address of 131.10.55.70 with a subnet mask of 255.0.0.0 (which has 8 network bits) would be represented as 131.10.55.70 /8. For more information, see the CIDR Notation Tutorial webpage. Tip: To determine the IP mode, use GET /osdeployment/globalSettings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subnetMask</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Subnet mask of the host server to be used after the operating system is deployed, in dotted decimal notation (for example, 255.0.0.0). This is used when the network setting is set to static in the Global OS deployment settings. Tip: To determine the IP mode, use GET /osdeployment/globalSettings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlanId</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>VLAN ID for operating-system VLAN tagging. This parameter is valid only if in VLAN mode is enabled. To determine if VLAN mode is enabled use GET /osdeployment/globalSettings in the XClarity Administrator online documentation). Important: Only specify a VLAN ID when a VLAN tag is required to function on the network. Using VLAN tags can affect the network routability between the host operating system and the XClarity Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selectedImage</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Profile ID of the operating-system image to be deployed. Tip: To obtain the operating-system image profile IDs, use the availableImages response property in GET /hostPlatforms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storageSettings</td>
<td>Array</td>
<td>Preferred storage location on which you want to deploy operating-system images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetDevice</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Target device. This can be one of the following values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• localdisk. Local disk drive. The first enumerated local disk drive in the managed server is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• M.2drive. M.2 drive. The first enumerated M.2 drive in the managed server is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• usbdisk. Embedded USB Hypervisor. This location is applicable only when a VMware ESXi image is being deployed to managed servers. If two hypervisor keys are installed on the managed server, the VMware installer selects the first enumerated key for deployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• lunpluswwn=LUN@WWN. FC SAN storage (for example, lunpluswwn=2050:05:07:68:05:0c:09:bb).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• lunplusiqn=LUN@IQN. iSCSI SAN Storage (for example, lunplusiqn=<a href="mailto:0@iqn.1990-01.com.lenovo">0@iqn.1990-01.com.lenovo</a>:tg1). Specifying the IQN is optional if only one iSCSI target is configured. If the IQN is not specified, the first detected iSCSI target is selected for OSDN. If specified, and exact match is made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td></td>
<td>For ThinkServer servers, this value is always “localdisk.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unattendFileId</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>ID of the unattend file to be used with this deployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>UUID of the host server to which the operating system is to be deployed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imageSettings</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Information about each OS image and image profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Operating-system image name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profile</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Image profile name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otherSettings</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Additional settings that are related to the currently running OS deployment jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deployDataAndSoftwareLocation</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Path to the extracted software payload, custom files, and deployment data (such as certificates and logs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installRepoUrl</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>(SLES 15 and later only) URL for the imported package image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You can use this predefined macro in the custom unattend for the media_url in the add-on section, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;add-on&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;add_on_products config:type=&quot;list&quot;&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;listentry&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;media_url&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>#predefined.otherSettings.installRepoUrl#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;/media_url&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;product&gt;sle-module-basesystem&lt;/product&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;product_dir&gt;/Module-Basesystem&lt;/product_dir&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;/listentry&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;/add_on_products&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;/add-on&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxcalp</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>IP address of the XClarity Administrator instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lxcaRelease</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>XClarity Administrator release (for example, 2.0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jobId</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>ID of the currently running OS deployment job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntpServer</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>NTP server that is associated with XClarity Administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statusSettings</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>OS deployment status settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urlStatus</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>HTTPS URL (including the port) that XClarity Administrator uses for reporting status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certLocation</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Folder containing the certificates that are needed to access the urlStatus web service from the host OS on first boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sdkLocation</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Location of XClarity Administrator provided helper scripts and interfaces for access to the XClarity Administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timezone</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Time zone that is set for XClarity Administrator (for example, America/New_York)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unattendSettings</td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Settings that are used to populate the unattend file. These values are specific to the version of XClarity Administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkConfig</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>(ESXi and RHEL only) XClarity Administrator predefined content for use at unattend install time. This configures the network settings for the operating system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| preinstallConfig    | String | XClarity Administrator predefined content for use at pre-installation unattend time. This includes pre-installation status.  
- For ESXi and RHEL, this uses the %pre pre-installation scripts hook.  
- For SLES, this uses the <scripts> pre-installation scripts hook. 
**Attention:** It is strongly recommended that you include this macro in the custom unattend file. You can place the macro in the unattend file anywhere after line 1 (after the <xml> tag). |
| postinstallConfig   | String | XClarity Administrator predefined content for use after the server is configured and booted for the first time. This includes post-installation status.  
- For ESXi and RHEL, this uses the %post post-installation scripts hook.  
- For SLES, this uses the <scripts> post-installation scripts hook.  
- For Windows, this uses the “specialize settings” section. 
**Attention:** It is strongly recommended that this macro be included in the custom unattend file. You can place the macro in the unattend file anywhere after line 1 (after the <xml> tag). |
| reportWorkloadNotComplete | String | When this macro is present, the postinstallConfig macro does not report OS Installation Completed (17) status. The custom profile must report complete. |
| storageConfig       | String | (ESXi and RHEL only) XClarity Administrator predefined content for use at unattend install time. This configures the storage settings for the operating system. |

**Importing custom unattend files**

You can import custom unattend files into the OS images repository. These files can then be used to customize Linux and Windows OS-images profiles.

**About this task**

The following file types are supported for custom unattend files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>Unattend (.xml)</td>
<td>For more information about unattend files, see the <a href="http://example.com">Unattended Windows Setup Reference webpage</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Supported File Types</td>
<td>More information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• You can include multiple %pre, %post, %firstboot sections to the unattend file; however, be aware of the ordering of the sections.  
• When the recommended #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig# macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds a %pre section before all other %pre sections in the file.  
• When the recommended #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig# macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds %post and %firstboot sections before all other %post and %firstboot sections in the file. |
| Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server | Kickstart (.cfg)              |                                                                                                                                                    |
| SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)   | AutoYast (.xml)              | For more information about unattend files, see the [SUSE: AutoYaST](https://www.suse.com/documentation/).                                                                                                    |
| VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization | Kickstart (.cfg)              | Supported only for ESXi 6.0u3 and later updates and 6.5 and later. For more information about unattend files, see the [VMware: Installing or Upgrading Hosts by Using a Script](https://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/vsphere-esxi-65-update-3-pubs.html). Consider the following when adding %pre, %post, %firstboot sections in the file.  
• You can include multiple %pre, %post, %firstboot sections to the unattend file; however, be aware of the ordering of the sections.  
• When the recommended #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig# macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds a %pre section before all other %pre sections in the file.  
• When the recommended #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig# macro is present in the unattend file, XClarity Administrator adds %post and %firstboot sections before all other %post and %firstboot sections in the file. |

**Attention:**

• You can inject predefined and custom macros (configuration settings) in the unattend file using the unique name of the object. Predefined values are dynamic based on the XClarity Administrator instances. Custom macros are dynamic based on user input that is specified during OS deployment.

**Notes:**

– Surround the macro name with a hash symbol (#).
– For nested objects, separate each object name using a period (for example, #server_settings.server0.locale#).
– For custom macros, do not include the top-most object name. For predefined macros, prefix the macro name with “predefined.”
When an object is created from a template, the name is appended with a unique number, starting with 0 (for example, server0 and server1).

You can see the name for each macro from the Deploy OS Images dialog on the Custom Settings tabs by hovering over the Help icon (?) next to each custom setting.

For a list of predefined macros, see Predefined macros. For information about custom configuration settings and macros, see Custom macros.

XClarity Administrator provides the following predefined macros that are used to communicate status from the OS installer, as well as several other critical installation steps. It is strongly recommended that you include these macros in unattend file (see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file).

- #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
- #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#

The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

Procedure

To import unattended files into the OS-images repository, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➤ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the Unattend Files tab.

Step 3. Click the Import File icon ( ). The Import File dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Click the Local Import tab to upload files from the local system, or click the Remote Import tab to upload files from a remote file server.

Note: To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the Configure File Server icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

Step 5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the Remote File Server list.

Step 6. Select the operating-system type.
Step 7. Enter the file name of the unattend file, or click **Browse** to find the file that you want to import.

Step 8. **Optional:** Enter a description for the unattend file.

**Tip:** Use the **Description** field to distinguish between custom files with the same name.

Step 9. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:
- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256

Step 10. Click **Import**.

**Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

**What to do next**

The unattend-file image is listed on the **Unattend Files** tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions.

- Create an unattend file by clicking the **Create** icon (>Create Icon<). The editor identifies the location of any errors that are found in the file. Note that some messages are English only.
- Associate an unattend file with a configuration-settings file (see **Associating an unattend file with a configuration settings file**).
- View and modify an unattend file by clicking the **Edit** icon (>Edit Icon<). The editor identifies the location of any errors that are found in the file. Note that some messages are English only.
- Copy an unattend file by clicking the **Copy** icon (>Copy Icon<).
  If you copy an unattend file that is associated with a configuration-settings file, the associated configuration-settings file is also copied and the association is automatically created between both copied files.
- Remove selected unattend files by clicking the **Delete** icon (>Delete Icon<).
- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon (>Configure File Server Icon<).

For information about adding an unattend file to a customized OS image profile, see **Creating a custom OS-image profile**.

**Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file**

You can add predefined and custom macros to an unattend file.
About this task

Macros give you the ability to add dynamic data (configuration settings) to an unattend file. You provide the data values when the OS-image profile is deployed.

Lenovo XClarity Administrator provides a set of predefined macros that you can add to an unattend file without associating a custom configuration-settings file. For a list of predefined macros, see Predefined macros.

It is strongly recommended that you include the following predefined macros in the custom unattend files.

- **#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#** and **#predefined.unattendSettings postinstallConfig#**. Used to communicate status from the OS installer, as well as several other critical installation steps.
  
  See the following example OS-deployment scenarios for more information about how to include the installation-configuration macros.
  
  - Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using a custom unattend file
  - Deploying SLES 12 SP3 with a configurable locale and NTP servers
  - Deploying VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization to a local disk using a static IP address
  - Deploying Windows 2016 with custom features

- **#predefined.unattendSettings.networkConfig#**. (For ESXi and RHEL only) Enables XClarity Administrator to configure the network. This macro uses the network settings that are specified on the Deploy OS Images page. If you do not include this macro in the unattend file or if the network settings are not defined in XClarity Administrator, you must configure the IP interface as part of the unattend file so that the host has a network route back to XClarity Administrator.
  
  See the following example OS-deployment scenarios for more information about how to include the network-configuration macro.
  
  - Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using a custom unattend file
  - Deploying VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization to a local disk using a static IP address

- **#predefined.unattendSettings.storageConfig#**. (For ESXi and RHEL only) Enables XClarity Administrator to configure storage on the host. This macro uses the storage settings that are specified on the Deploy OS Images page. If you do not include this macro in the unattend file or if the storage settings are not defined in XClarity Administrator, you must specify the storage configuration in unattend file.
  
  See the following example OS-deployment scenarios for more information about how to include the storage-configuration macro.
  
  - Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using a custom unattend file
  - Deploying VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization to a local disk using a static IP address

You can create custom macros by creating a configuration-settings file and then associating the unattend file with a custom configuration-settings file. When you import the custom configuration-settings file, XClarity Administrator creates a macro for each configuration setting in the file.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to add macros to an unattend file.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.

Step 3. Select the unattend file that you want to edit.

Step 4. Click the **Edit** icon (📝) display the Edit Unattend File dialog.
Step 5. Add the recommended predefined macros, for example:

1. Place the cursor in the unattend file anywhere after line 1 (after the <xml> tag).
2. Expand the predefined → unattendSettings list in the list of available macros.
3. Click the preinstallConfig and postinstallConfig to add the required predefined macros to the unattend file.

The following code is added to the file:

```xml
#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#
```

Step 6. Add additional predefined or custom macros by placing the cursor in the correct location in unattend file and then clicking the macro from the list.

Step 7. Click Save.

**Associating an unattend file with a configuration settings file**

You can associate (bind) configuration settings to an unattend file, and then add the associated custom macros to the unattend file.

**About this task**

You can add predefined macros to an unattend file without associating a custom configuration settings file.

You cannot edit configuration settings files that are associated with unattend files. However, you can copy an associated file and then edit the copy.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to associate an unattend file with a configuration-settings file.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.
Step 3. Select the custom attend file.

Step 4. Click the **Associate a Configuration File** icon ( Españoles ) to display the Associate an Unattend File dialog.

Step 5. Select a configuration-settings file to associate with the unattend file.

Step 6. Add predefined and custom macros to the unattend file by placing the cursor at the location in the editor where you want to add the macro and then clicking the macro in the available list (see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file).

You can inject macros in the unattend file using the unique name of the object. For nested name objects, separate each object using a period (for example, `server_specific_settings.server.locale`). Note that you do not include the top-most name.

Step 7. Click **Associate** to bind the files together.

### Importing custom installation scripts

You can import installation scripts into the OS images repository. These files can then be used to customize Linux and Windows images.

#### About this task

Currently, only post-installation scripts are supported.

The following table lists the file types for installation scripts that Lenovo XClarity Administrator supports for each operating system. Note that certain operation system versions do not support all of the file types that XClarity Administrator supports (for example, some RHEL versions might not include Perl in the minimal profile and, therefore, Perl scripts will not run). Ensure that you use the correct file type for the operating system versions that you want to deploy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>Command file (.cmd), PowerShell (.ps1)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is <code>C:\lxca</code>. For more information about installation scripts, see the <a href="#">Add a custom script to Windows Setup webpage</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is <code>/home/lxca</code>. For more information about installation scripts, see the <a href="#">RHEL: Post-installation Script webpage</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Supported File Types</td>
<td>More information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxc a. For more information about installation scripts, see the <a href="#">SUSE: Custom user script webpage</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>Bash (.sh), Python (.py)</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxc a. For more information about installation scripts, see the <a href="#">VMware: Installation and Upgrade Scripts webpage</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

After the data is gathered during OS deployment, XClarity Administrator creates an instance of the configuration settings file (which includes the custom settings in the selected file and a subset of predefined settings) on the host system that can be used by the post installation script.

You can inject predefined and custom macros (configuration settings) in the post-installation script using the unique name of the object. Predefined values are dynamic based on the XClarity Administrator instances. Custom macros are dynamic based on user input that is specified during OS deployment.

**Notes:**
- Surround the macro name with a hash symbol (#).
- For nested objects, separate each object name using a period (for example, #server_settings.server0.locale#).
- For custom macros, do not include the top-most object name. For predefined macros, prefix the macro name with "predefined."
- When an object is created from a template, the name is appended with a unique number, starting with 0 (for example, server0 and server1).
- You can see the name for each macro from the Deploy OS Images dialog on the Custom Settings tabs by hovering over the Help icon (RoleId) next to each custom setting.
- For a list of predefined macros, see Predefined macros. For information about custom configuration settings and macros, see Custom macros.

The recommended predefined macros in the unattend file report final operating-system deployment status and report status when downloading and running post-installation scripts. You can modify the post-installation script to include custom status reporting, depending on the target operating system. For more information, see Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts.

**Procedure**
To import installation scripts into the OS-images repository, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

**Step 2.** Click the **Installation Scripts** tab.
Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installations scripts. You can also configure remote file servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. Learn more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3.** Click the Import File icon ( ). The Import Installation Script dialog is displayed.

**Step 4.** Click the Local Import tab to upload files from the local system, or click the Remote Import tab to upload files from a remote file server.

**Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the Configure File Server icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

**Step 5.** If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the Remote File Server list.

**Step 6.** Select the operating-system type.

**Step 7.** Enter the file name of the installation script, or click Browse to find the file that you want to import.

**Step 8.** **Optional:** Enter a description for the installation script.

**Tip:** Use the Description field to distinguish between custom files with the same name.

**Step 9.** **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:
- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256

**Step 10.** Click Import.

**Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

**What to do next**

The installation scripts are listed on the Installation Scripts tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions.
• Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the Configure File Server icon.

• Remove selected installation scripts by clicking the Delete icon.

For information about adding an installation script to a customized OS image profile, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts

The recommended predefined macros in the unattend file report final operating-system deployment status and report status when downloading and running post-installation scripts. You can include additional status reporting in the post-installation scripts.

Linux

For Linux, you can use the following curl command to report status.

```bash
curl -X PUT -globoff \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.urlStatus# -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d '{"deployStatus":"<status_ID>"}'}
-cert \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/cert.pem
-key \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/key.pem
-ca cert \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/ca-bundle.crt
```

Where `<status_ID>` can be one of the following values.

• 44. Workload deployment succeeded
• 45. Workload deployment is running with warning
• 46. Workload deployment failed
• 47. Workload deployment message
• 48. Custom post-install script error

Note that the `curl` command uses predefined macros for the HTTPS URL that Lenovo XClarity Administrator uses for reporting status (`predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.urlStatus`) and for the folder that contains the certificates that are needed to access the urlStatus web service from the host OS on first boot (`predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation`). The following example reports that an error occurred in the post-installation script.

```bash
curl -X PUT -globoff \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.urlStatus# -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d '{"deployStatus":"48"}'}
-cert \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/cert.pem
-key \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/key.pem
-ca cert \#predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/ca-bundle.crt
```

Windows

For Windows, you can import the LXCA.psm1 script and then call the following commands to report status.

• `initializeRestClient`
  Initializes the REST client. Use the following syntax to run this command. This command is required before running the reporting commands.

```bash
initializeRestClient
```

• `testLXCAConnection`
  Verifies that the XClarity Administrator can connect to the host server. Use the following syntax to run this command. This command is optional but recommended in the installation script before running the reporting commands.

```bash
testLXCAConnection -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcalp#"
```

• `reportWorkloadDeploymentSucceeded`
Reports a successful-completion message to be logged in the XClarity Administrator jobs log. Use the following syntax to run this command.

**Tip:** If the `#predefined.unattendSettings.reportWorkloadNotComplete#` macro is included in a custom unattend file or post-installation script, include the `reportWorkloadDeploymentSucceeded` command in the post-installation script to signal a successful-completion. Otherwise, XClarity Administrator automatically reports a complete status after all post-installation scripts are run.

```
reportWorkloadDeploymentSucceeded -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#"
```

- **reportWorkloadDeploymentRunningWithWarning**
  Reports a warning message to be logged in the XClarity Administrator jobs log. Use the following syntax to run this command.

```
reportWorkloadDeploymentRunningWithWarning -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" --WarningMessage "<message_text>"
```

- **reportWorkloadDeploymentFailed**
  Reports a failure message to be logged in the XClarity Administrator jobs log. Use the following syntax to run this command.

```
reportWorkloadDeploymentFailed -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" --ErrorMessage "<message_text>"
```

- **reportCustomPostInstallScriptError**
  Reports a post-installation script error message to be logged in the XClarity Administrator jobs log. Use the following syntax to run this command.

```
reportCustomPostInstallScriptError -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" --Message "<message_text>"
```

- **reportWorkloadDeploymentMessage**
  Reports a general message to be logged in the XClarity Administrator jobs log without affecting the state of the deployment. Use the following syntax to run this command.

```
reportWorkloadDeploymentMessage -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" --Message "<message_text>"
```

Where `<message_text>` is the message that you want to return to XClarity Administrator for each status condition.

Note that these commands use predefined macros for the IP address of the XClarity Administrator instance (`#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#`) and for the UUID of the host server to which the operating system is to be deployed (`#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#`).

The following example is a PowerShell installation script that installs Java and reports an error if the installation fails:

```
import-module C:\windows\system32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\Modules\LXCA\LXCA.psm1
initializeRestClient
testLXCAConnection -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#"

Write-Output "Reporting status to Lenovo XClarity Administrator..."
reportWorkloadDeploymentMessage -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#" 
-UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" -Message "Installing Java"

Write-Output "Install Java..."
Invoke-Command -ScriptBlock {#predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#\jre-8u151-windows-x64.exe 
[INSTALLCFG=#predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#\java_configfile.cfg] /s}
```
if ($LastExitCode -ne 0) {
    reportWorkloadDeploymentFailed -masterIP "#predefined.otherSettings.lxcaIp#"
    -UUID "#predefined.hostPlatforms.uuid#" -ErrorMessage "Java could not be installed"
}

Write-Output "Completed install of Java for Administrator user."

**Importing custom software**

You can import software into the OS images repository. These files can then be used to customize Linux and Windows images.

**About this task**

The custom software files are installed after the operating-system deployment and post-installation scripts are complete.

The following file types are supported for custom software.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Supported File Types</th>
<th>More information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CentOS Linux</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft® Windows® Server</td>
<td>A .zip file containing the software payload.</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is C:\lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Windows Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat® Enterprise Linux (RHEL) Server</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE® Linux Enterprise Server (SLES)</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization</td>
<td>A .tar.gz file containing the software payload</td>
<td>The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The OS images repository can store an unlimited number of predefined and custom files, if space is available to store the files.

**Procedure**

To import software into the OS-images repository, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the **Software** tab.
Deploy Operating Systems: Manage OS Images

You can import and delete operating-system images and related files, such as device drivers, unattend files, and installations scripts. You can also configure remote file servers for uploading these files and customize OS-image profiles. Learn more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Images</th>
<th>Driver Files</th>
<th>Boot Files</th>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Unattend Files</th>
<th>Configuration Files</th>
<th>Installation Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 3. Click the **Import File** icon ( ). The Import Installation Script dialog is displayed.

Step 4. Click the **Local Import** tab to upload files from the local system, or click the **Remote Import** tab to upload files from a remote file server.

**Note:** To upload a file from a remote file server, you must first create a remote file-server profile by clicking the **Configure File Server** icon ( ). For more information, see Configuring a remote file server.

Step 5. If you chose to use a remote file server, select the server that you want to use from the **Remote File Server** list.

Step 6. Select the operating-system type.

Step 7. Enter the file name of the software file, or click **Browse** to find the file that you want to import.

Step 8. **Optional:** Enter a description of the software file.

**Tip:** Use the **Description** field to distinguish between custom files with the same name.

Step 9. **Optional:** Select a checksum type to verify that the file being uploaded is not corrupt, and copy and paste the checksum value in the provided text field.

If you select a checksum type, you must specify a checksum value to check the integrity and security of the uploaded file. The value must come from a secure source from an organization that you trust. If the uploaded file matches with the checksum value, it is safe to proceed with deployment. Otherwise, you must upload the file again or check the checksum value.

Three checksum types are supported:
- **MD5**
- **SHA1**
- **SHA256**

Step 10. Click **Import**.

**Tip:** The file is uploaded over a secure network connection. Therefore, network reliability and performance affects how long it takes to import the file.

If you close the web browser tab or window in which the file is being uploaded locally before the upload completes, the import fails.

**What to do next**
The installation scripts are listed on the Software tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions.

- Create a remote-file-server profile by clicking the Configure File Server icon ( ).
- Remove selected software files by clicking the Delete icon ( ).

For information about adding a software file to a customized OS image profile, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

Creating a custom OS-image profile

You can add custom device drivers, boot files (Windows only), configuration settings, unattend files, installation scripts, and software to a predefined OS-image profile that exists in the OS-images repository. When you add files to an OS image, Lenovo XClarity Administrator creates a custom profile for that OS image. The custom profile includes the custom files and installation options.

Before you begin

The custom files that you want to add must exist in the OS-images repository (see Importing boot files, Importing device drivers, Importing custom configuration settings, Importing custom unattend files, Importing custom installation scripts, and Importing custom software).

Procedure

To customize an OS image, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

Step 2. Click the OS Images tab.

Step 3. Select the predefined OS-image profile that you want to customize.

The Customization column identifies which OS images can be customized. Click the Help icon ( ) for more information about the customization for a specific OS image.
- Customizable. The OS image support customization but is not customized.
- Non Customizable. The OS image does not support customization.

Note: You can import additional base OS images (in .iso format) from a local or remote system by clicking the Import File icon ( ).

Step 4. Click the Create Customized Profile icon ( ). The New Custom OS Image dialog is displayed.
Step 5. On the General tab, specify a name, description, path for the custom files and deployment data on the deployment host, and customization type for the new customized OS-image profile.

The customization type can be one of the following:
• Only unattend files
• Only configuration files
• Unassociated unattend and configuration files
• Associated unattend and configuration files
• None

Step 6. Click Next.

Step 7. On the Device Drivers tab, select the device drive that you want to add to the Linux OS-image profile.

For a list of supported formats, see Importing device drivers.

The selected file is applied after you complete the configuration wizard.

Note: You can import additional device drivers from a local or remote system by clicking the Import File icon.

Step 8. Click Next.

Step 9. (Windows only) On the Boot Options tab, select the boot files that you want to add to the Windows OS-image profile.

For a list of supported formats, see Importing boot files.

The selected file is applied after you complete the configuration wizard.

Step 10. Click Next.

Step 11. On the Configuration Settings tab (if applicable), select one or more custom configuration files that you want to add to the OS-image profile. You can select at most one file

Step 12. Click Next.

Step 13. On the Unattend Files tab:

a. Select the unattend file that you want to add to the OS-image profile.
For a list of supported formats, see Importing custom unattend files.

The selected file is applied after you complete the configuration wizard.

b. Select a configuration file to associate with the unattend file from the Associated Configuration File column
c. Optionally select custom macros that are available in the selected configuration file or add custom macros in .xml format.

Step 14. Click Next.

Step 15. On the Installation Scripts tab (if applicable), select the installation scripts that you want to add to the Windows OS-image profile. You can select at most one post-installation script.

For a list of supported formats, see Importing custom installation scripts.

The selected file is applied after you complete the configuration wizard.

Note: You can import additional installation scripts from a local or remote system by clicking the Import File icon ( ).

Step 16. Click Next.

Step 17. On the Software tab, select the software that you want to add to the Linux OS-image profile.

For a list of supported formats, see Importing custom software.

The selected file is applied after you complete the configuration wizard.

Note: You can import additional software from a local or remote system by clicking the Import File icon ( ).

Step 18. Click Next.

Step 19. Review the settings on the Summary tab, and click Customize to create the customized OS-image profile.

What to do next

The customized OS images profile is listed under the base operating system on the OS Images tab on the Manage OS Images page.

From this page, you can perform the following actions:

- Import a customized OS image profile and apply to a base OS image by clicking Import/Export Profile ➔ Export Customized Profile Image (see Importing a customized OS image profile).
- Export a selected customized OS image profile by clicking Import/Export Profile ➔ Export Customized Profile Image.
- Modify a selected customized OS image profile by clicking the Edit icon ( ).
- Remove a selected customized OS image profile by clicking the Delete icon ( ).

Configuring global OS-deployment settings

Global settings serve as defaults settings when operating systems are deployed.

About this task
From the Global Settings page, you can configure the following settings:

- The password for the administrator user account to be used for deploying the operating systems
- The method to use to assign IP addresses to servers
- License keys to use when activating installed operating systems
- Optionally join an Active Directory domain as part of the Windows operating-system deployment

**Procedure**

To configure the global settings to be used for all servers, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy OS Images page.

**Step 2.** Click the **Global Settings** icon ( ) to display the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog.

**Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems**

Specify settings that are used for all image deployments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Credentials</th>
<th>IP Assignment</th>
<th>License Keys</th>
<th>Active Directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Set the credentials to be used on the deployed operating systems.

**Linux or ESXi**

- **User:** root
- **Password:**
- **Confirm Password:**

**Windows**

- **User:** Administrator
- **Password:**
- **Confirm Password:**

**Step 3.** On the **Credentials** tab, enter the password for the administrator account to be used to log in to the operating system.

**Step 4.** On the **IP Assignment** tab, select the following options.

- **Optional:** Select **Use VLANs** to allow configuring VLAN settings in the Network Settings dialog (see Configuring network settings for managed servers).

**Notes:**

- VLAN tagging is not supported for Linux operating-system deployments.
- VLAN tagging is not supported for operating-system deployments on ThinkServer devices.
- VLAN mode is supported only for servers that have MAC addresses in their inventory. If AUTO is the only MAC address that is available for a server, then VLANs cannot be used to deploy operating systems to that server.

- **b.** Select the method for assigning IP addresses when configuring the deployed operating system:

  **Note:** The XClarity Administrator network interface that is used for management must be configured to connect to the baseboard management controller using the same IP address.
method that you choose on the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog. For example, if XClarity Administrator is set up to use eth0 for management, and you choose to use manually assigned static IPv6 addresses when configuring the deployed OS, then eth0 must be configured with an IPv6 address that has connectivity to the baseboard management controller.

- **Manually assign a static IPv4 address.** If you choose to assign static IPv4 addresses, ensure that you configure the static IPv4 address, gateway address, and subnet mask for the server before deploying the operating system (see Configuring network settings for managed servers).

- **Use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) to assign the addresses.** If you already have an existing DHCPv4 infrastructure in your network, you can use that infrastructure to assign IP addresses to servers.

  **Note:** DHCP IPv6 is not supported for operating-systems deployment.

- **Manually assign a static IPv6 address.** If you choose to assign static IPv6 addresses, ensure that you configure the static IPv6 address, gateway address, and subnet mask for the server before deploying the operating system (see Configuring network settings for managed servers).

Step 5. **Optional:** On the License Keys tab, specify the global volume-license keys to use when activating installed Windows operating systems.

When you specify global volume-license keys on this tab, you can select the specified license keys for any Windows OS-image profiles from the Deploy OS Images page.

  **Tip:** XClarity Administrator supports global volume-license keys for Windows installations and individual retail-license keys for both Windows and VMware ESXi. You can specify individual retail-license keys as part of the deployment procedure (see Deploying an operating-system image).

Step 6. **Optional:** On the Active Directory tab, configure the Active Directory settings for Windows operating-system deployments. For information about integrating with Active Directory, see Integrating with Windows Active Directory.

Step 7. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

### Configuring network settings for managed servers

Network settings are configuration options that are specific to each server. You must configure the network settings for a managed server before you can deploy an operating system to that server.

**About this task**

If you are using DHCP to assign IP addresses dynamically, you must configure the MAC address.

If you are using static IP addresses, you must configure the following network settings for a specific server before you can deploy an operating system to that server. After these settings are configured, the deployment status of the server changes to “Ready.” (Note that some fields are not available for static IPv6 addresses.)

- **Hostname**
  - The hostname must comply with the following rules:
    - The hostname of each managed server must be unique.
    - The hostname can contain strings (labels) that are separated by a period (.).
    - Each label can contain ASCII letters, digits, and dashes (-); however, the string cannot start or end with a dash and cannot contain all digits.
    - The first label can be 2 - 15 characters in length. Subsequent labels can be 2 – 63 characters in length.
The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters.

- MAC address of the port on the host where the operating system is to be installed.

The MAC address is set to AUTO by default. This setting automatically detects the Ethernet ports that can be configured and used for deployment. The first MAC address (port) that is detected is used by default. If connectivity is detected on a different MAC address, the XClarity Administrator host is automatically restarted to use the newly detected MAC address for deployment.

You can determine the status of the MAC address port that is used for OS deployment from the **MAC address** drop-down menu on the Network Settings dialog. If multiple ports are up or if all ports are down, AUTO is used by default.

**Notes:**

- Virtual network ports are not supported. Do not use one physical network port to simulate multiple virtual network ports.
- When the server’s network setting is set to AUTO, XClarity Administrator can automatically detect network ports in slots 1 – 16. At least one port in slots 1 – 16 must have a connection to XClarity Administrator.
- If you want to use a network port in slot 17 or greater for the MAC address, you cannot use AUTO. Instead, you must set the server’s network setting to the MAC address of the specific port that you want to use.
- For ThinkServer servers, not all host MAC addresses are displayed. In most cases, MAC addresses for AnyFabric Ethernet adapters are listed on the Edit Network Settings dialog. MAC addresses for other Ethernet adapters (such as the Lan-On-Motherboard) are not listed. In cases where the MAC address for an adapter is not available, use the AUTO method for non-VLAN deployments.

- IP address and subnet mask
- IP gateway
- Up to two domain name system (DNS) servers
- Maximum transmission unit (MTU) speed
- VLAN ID, if VLAN IP mode is enabled

If you choose to use VLANs, you can assign a VLAN ID to the host network adapter that is being configured.

**Procedure**

To configure network settings for one or more servers, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS images page.

**Step 2.** Select one or more servers to configure. You can select up to 28 servers to be configured at one time.

**Step 3.** Click **Changed Selected ➔ Network Settings** to display the Edit Network Settings page.

**Step 4.** Complete the fields in the table for each server.

**Tip:** As an alternative to filling in each row, you can update all rows in the table for some of the fields:

a. Click **Change All Rows ➔ Hostname** to set the hostnames for all servers, using either a predefined or a custom naming scheme.

b. Click **Change All Rows ➔ IP address** to assign a range of IP addresses, subnet mask, and gateway. The IP address is assigned for each server, starting with the first IP address and ending with the last IP address that is displayed. The subnet mask, and gateway IP address are applied to each server.
c. Click **Change All Rows ➔ Domain Name System (DNS)** to set the DNS servers to be used by the operating system for DNS lookup. If the network defines DNS servers automatically, or if you do not want to define DNS servers, select **None**.

d. Click **Change All Rows ➔ Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)** to set the MTU to be used on the configured Ethernet adapter on the deployed operating system.

e. Click **Change All Rows ➔ VLAN** to set a specific VLAN ID for operating-system VLAN tagging.

This option is available only when Use VLANs is enabled on the Global Settings dialog (see Configuring global OS-deployment settings).

**Important:**
- Only specify a VLAN ID when a VLAN tag is required to function on the network. **Using VLAN** tags can affect the network routability between the host operating system and the XClarity Administrator.
- Chassis or top-of-rack switches must be independently configured to handle VLAN tagged packets. Ensure that XClarity Administrator and the data network are configured to handle these packets correctly.
- VLAN mode is supported only for servers that have MAC addresses in their inventory. If AUTO is the only MAC address that is available for a server, then VLANs cannot be used to deploy operating systems to that server.

Step 5. Click **OK** to save the settings. Settings are saved and persistent only in your web browser’s local storage cache.

**Results**

Each configured server now shows **Ready** as the deployment status on the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS images page.

**Choosing the storage location for managed servers**

Choose the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating-system image for one or more servers.

**Before you begin**

Review storage and boot-option considerations before choosing a storage location (see Operating-system deployment considerations).

You can deploy an operating system to the following types of storage:

- **Local disk drive**

  Only disks attached to a RAID-controller or SAS/SATA HBA are supported.

  Lenovo XClarity Administrator installs the operating-system image on the first enumerated local RAID disk in the managed server.

  If the RAID configuration on the server is not configured correctly, or if it is inactive, the local disk might not be visible to Lenovo XClarity Administrator. To resolve the issue, enable the RAID configuration through configuration patterns (see Defining local storage) or through the RAID management software on the server.

**Notes:**
- If an M.2 drive is also present, the local disk drive must be configured for hardware RAID.
– If an SATA adapter is enabled, the SATA mode must not be set to “IDE.”

– For ThinkServer servers, operating systems can be deployed only to the local disk. SAN storage and embedded hypervisors are not supported.

– For ThinkServer servers, configuration is available only through the RAID management software on the server.

For an example scenario for deploying VMware ESXi 5.5 to a locally installed disk drive, see Deploying ESXi to a local hard drive.

• (ESXi only) Embedded hypervisor (USB or SD media adapter)

This location is applicable only when a VMware ESXi image is being deployed to managed servers.

The embedded hypervisor can be one of the following devices:

– IBM License USB key (PN 41Y8298) or Lenovo Licensed USB key that is mount to a specific port on one of the following servers:
  – Flex System x222
  – Flex System x240
  – Flex System x440
  – Flex System x480
  – Flex System x880
  – System x3850 X6
  – System x3950 X6

– SD media adapter that is installed on the following servers:
  – Flex System x240 M5
  – System x3500 M5
  – System x3550 M5
  – System x3650 M5

In addition, the drive must be configured as follows:

– The appropriate drives on the media adapter must be defined.
– The mode of the SD media adapter must be set to **Operational**.
– The owner must be set to System or System Only.
– Access must be set to Read/Write.
– The drive must be assigned a LUN number of 0.

**Important:** If the SD Media Adapter is not configured correctly, operating system deployment to the SD Media Adapter from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator will not be successful.

You can change the mode of the SD Media Adapter to **Configuration** and configure the media adapter through the management controller CLI using the `sdrd` command. For additional information about setting the mode of the SD Media Adapter and configuring the adapter from the CLI, see the Integrated Management Module II online documentation.

If two hypervisor keys are installed on the managed server, the VMware installer selects the first enumerated key for deployment.

**Note:** Attempting to deploy Microsoft Windows to a managed server that has a hypervisor key installed might cause issues even if you do not select the embedded hypervisor key. If Windows deployment errors occur, remove the embedded hypervisor key from the managed server, and attempt to deploy Microsoft Windows to that server again.

• M.2 drive

Lenovo XClarity Administrator installs the operating-system image on the first M.2 drive that is configured on the managed server.

M.2 storage is supported only on ThinkSystem servers.
Attention: If a managed device has both local drives (SATA, SAS, or SSD) that are not configured for hardware RAID and M.2 drives, you must disable the local drives if you want to use M.2 drives, or you must disable the M.2 drives if you want to use local drives. You can disable on-board storage controller devices and legacy and UEFI storage option ROMs using the using Configuration Patterns by selecting Disable local disk on the Local Storage tab of the wizard or by creating a Configuration Pattern from an existing server and then disabling the M.2 devices in the extended UEFI pattern.

- **SAN storage**

Lenovo XClarity Administrator installs the operating-system image on the SAN boot target that is configured on the managed server.

The following protocols are supported.
- Fibre Channel
- Fibre Channel over Ethernet
- SAN iSCSI (using only Emulex VFA5.2 2x10 GbE SFP+ Adapter and FCoE/iSCSI SW or Emulex VFA5.2 ML2 2x10 GbE SFP+ Adapter and FCoE/iSCSI SW adapters)

On managed rack servers, you can only deploy Windows or RHEL to SAN storage. Ensure that the SAN boot target is configured on the managed servers. You can also configure the FC SAN boot target using a server pattern (see Defining boot options).

When deploying VMware ESXi:
- Local hard disks must be disabled or removed from the server. You can disable the local hard disks using server patterns (see Defining local storage).
- If multiple SAN volumes are available, only the first volume is used for deployment.

Ensure that the OS volume to which you are installing is the only volume that is visible to the operating system.

For an example scenario for deploying VMware ESXi 5.5 to SAN volumes that are attached to servers, see Deploying ESXi to SAN storage.

Note: Each server must have a hardware RAID adapter or SAS/SATA HBA that is installed and configured. The software RAID that is typically present on the onboard Intel SATA storage adapter or storage that is set up as JBOD are not supported; however, if a hardware RAID adapter is not present, setting the SATA adapter to **AHCI SATA mode** enabled for operating-system deployment or setting unconfigured good disks to JBOD might work in some cases. For more information, see OS installer cannot find the disk on which you want to install XClarity Administrator in the XClarity Administrator online documentation.

Procedure

To choose storage location for one or more managed servers, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➜ Deploy OS images** to display the Deploy OS Images page.

Step 2. Select the servers for which you want to change the storage settings.

Step 3. Click **Change Selected ➜ Storage Location** to change the priority order of storage locations for all selected servers. If the first storage location is not compatible, the next storage location is attempted.
Edit Storage Location

Configure the image deployment storage location for the selected devices. The values in the table will be applied in priority order. If a particular storage location is not compatible, the next storage location will be attempted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Storage Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Use local disk drive storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Use SAN Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Use embedded hypervisor (USB or SD media adapter) when ESXi is selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Use M.2 drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can set the priority for the following storage locations:
- Use local disk drive storage
- Use embedded hypervisor (USB or SD media adapter) when ESXi is selected
- Use M.2 drive
- Use SAN storage

Step 4. For each server, select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating-system image from the Storage column. You can choose from the following values, which correspond to values in the previous step.
- Local Disk Drive
- Embedded Hypervisor
- M.2 Drive
- SAN Storage

If you select SAN Storage, a dialog is displayed to configure the SAN volume. Ensure that the target SAN volume is reachable during deployment.

If the selected storage location is not compatible with the server, Lenovo XClarity Administrator attempts to deploy the operating system to the next storage location in the priority defined in the previous step.

Deploying an operating-system image

You can use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to deploy an operating-system image to up to 28 servers concurrently.

Before you begin

Read the operating-system deployment considerations before you attempt to deploy operating systems on your managed servers (see Operating-system deployment considerations).

On the OS Images tab, ensure that the Deploy Status of the operating system that you want to deploy is set to “Ready.” To deploy the Windows operating system, a WinPE boot file is required. If a matching WinPE file is not available, the Deploy Status is set to “Not Ready” and the operating system cannot be deployed. You must manually download and import a WinPE file (see Importing boot files).
From the Manage OS Images page, you can filter the list of OS images by clicking **Show All ➔ Deploy Status**. You can filter the list to show only servers that have a status of “Ready,” “Not Ready,” and “Warning”.

**Note:** If the deployment status for an operating-system image is “Not Ready,” the operating system is not included in the list of deployable operating systems.

The English locale is supported by default. To specify a language-specific locale, you must use a custom configuration file and unattend file. For more information, see Deploying SLES 12 SP3 with a configurable locale and NTP servers and Deploying Windows 2016 for Japanese.

**Note:** Operating-system deployment to non-RAID attached storage is not supported.

**Attention:** If the server currently has an operating system installed, deploying an OS-image profile will overwrite the current operating system.

**Procedure**

To deploy an operating-system image to one or more managed servers, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS images page.

**Tip:** For scalable complexes, the operating system is deployed on the primary partition; therefore, only the primary partition is included in the server list.

**Step 2.** Select one or more servers to which the operating system is to be deployed. You can deploy an operating system on up to 28 servers at one time.

You can sort the table columns to make it easier to find specific servers. In addition, you can filter the list of displayed devices by selecting an option in the **Show** menu to list only devices in a specific chassis, rack, or group or by entering text (such as a name or IP address) in the **Filter** field.

**Tip:** You can choose multiple compute nodes from multiple chassis if you intend to deploy the same operating system to all compute nodes.

**Deploy Operating Systems: Deploy OS Images**

Select one or more servers to which images will be deployed. [Learn more...](#)

**Note:** Before you begin, validate that the management server network port being used to attach to the data network is configured to be on the same network as the data network ports on the servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Rack Name Unit</th>
<th>Chas Bay</th>
<th>IP Addr</th>
<th>Deploy Status</th>
<th>Image to Deploy</th>
<th>Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fo-cosm</td>
<td>File...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10....</td>
<td>Ready</td>
<td>win2016\win2016-x86_64...</td>
<td>Local Disk Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fo-d45f</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10....</td>
<td>Not Ready</td>
<td>sles12.3\2018010933336...</td>
<td>Local Disk Drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3.** Click **Change Selected ➔ Network Settings** to configure network settings.

For more information, see Configuring network settings for managed servers.
Step 4. For each server, select the OS-image profile to be deployed from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

Ensure that you select an OS-image profile that is compatible with the selected server. You can determine compatibility from profile attributes that are listed in the **Attribute** column on the Manage OS Images page. For information about profile attributes, see Operating-system image profiles.

Step 5. For each server, click the **License Key** icon (🔑) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

XClarity Administrator supports default volume-license keys for Windows installations and individual retail keys for both Windows and VMware ESXi.

To use the global volume-license key that you specified in the Global Settings dialog, select **Use the volume license key defined in Global Settings**. For more information about global volume-license keys, see Configuring global OS-deployment settings.

To use an individual retail-license key, select **Use the following retail license key**, and enter the key in the following field.

**Select a License Key**

![Choose the default mass activation key or enter a new key.](image)

Select to use the predefined global volume license key for this operating system or enter a new retail license key.

- Use the volume license key defined in Global Settings.
- Use the following retail license key:

Step 6. **Optional:** If you selected a Windows operating system for any server, you can join the Windows operating system to an Active Directory domain as part of the operating-system deployment by clicking the **Folder** icon (̀agenta) that is displayed next to the operating-system image, and then selecting the Active Directory name.

To use the default Active Directory that you specified in the Global Settings dialog, select **Use the Active Directory defined in Global Settings**. For more information about joining an Active Directory domain, see Integrating with Windows Active Directory.

To use an individual Active Directory, select **Use the following Active Directory**, and select the Active Directory domain.

Step 7. For each server, select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.

- **Local Disk Drive**
- **Embedded Hypervisor**
- **M.2 Drive**
- **SAN Storage**

If the selected storage location is not compatible with the server, XClarity Administrator attempts to deploy the operating system to the next storage location in the priority.

**Note:** For ThinkServer servers, only **Local disk** is available.
For more information about how to configure the storage location, see Choosing the storage location for managed servers.

**Note:** To ensure that operating system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

**Step 8.** Verify that the deployment status for all selected servers is Ready.

**Important:** Ensure that the deployment status of all selected servers is Ready. If the status of a server is Not Ready, you cannot deploy an operating-system image to that server. Click the **Not Ready** link to get information to help resolve the problem. If the network settings are not valid, click **Change Selected ➔ Network Settings** to configure the network settings.

**Step 9.** Click the **Deploy images** icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

If custom configuration settings were added to the OS-image profile, the **Custom Settings** tab is displayed on the Deploy OS Image dialog. Specify custom settings, common server settings, and specific server settings, and then click **Next** to continue with the OS deployment. Note that OS deployment will not proceed if input is not specified for any required custom configuration settings.

**What to do next**

You can monitor the status of the deployment process from the jobs log. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click **Monitoring ➔ Jobs**. For more information about the job log, see **Monitoring jobs**.

You can also set up a remote-control session through the baseboard management controller for the server to watch the installation as it progresses. For more information about remote control, see **Using remote control to manage Converged, Flex System, NeXtScale, and System x servers**.

Deployment information is saved for the operating system. You can view the deployment information by clicking **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Access**, and then hovering over the server name.

**Integrating with Windows Active Directory**

When you deploy a Windows image using Lenovo XClarity Administrator, you are able to join an Active Directory domain as part of the operating-system deployment.

**Before you begin**

To join an Active Directory domain as part of a Windows image deployment, you must configure both the management server and the Windows Server that is running the affected Active Directory domain controller. To perform this configuration, you need the following access:

- An administrator account with the authority to authenticate and join the Active Directory servers domain. This account must have privileges similar to those of the default Domain Administrators group, and you can use an account in this group for this configuration.
- Access to a domain name system (DNS) that resolves to the Active Directory server that is running the domain controller. This DNS must be specified in the **Network Settings ➔ DNS** option for the server to which you are deploying the operating system.
- The Active Directory server administrator must create the required computer name on the domain server before you deploy the operating system. The join attempt does not create computer name. If no name is specified, the join fails.
- The Active Directory server administrator must specify the hostname of the server to which the image is being deployed as a computer name under the target organizational unit by clicking the **Network Settings ➔ Hostname** field.
The specified hostname (computer name) must be unique. Specifying a name that is already in use by another Windows installation causes the join to fail.

You can join the Active Directory domain using one of the following methods:

• **Use an Active Directory domain**
  You can choose to use a specific Active Directory domain from a list of predefined domains. Complete the following steps to define an Active Directory domain in XClarity Administrator. If you intend to use multiple domains, repeat these steps for each domain name.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Deploy OS images** to display the Deploy OS Images page.
  2. Click the **Global Settings** icon ( ) to display the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog.
  3. Click the **Active Directory** tab.
  4. Click the **Create** icon ( ) to display the Add New Active Directory Domain dialog.
  5. Specify the domain name and organizational unit.
     Operating-system deployment supports joining a domain and creating nested organizational units within a domain. If you are specifying organizational units, it is not necessary to specify the OU as part of the join explicitly. Active Directory is able to derive the correct OU using the domain name and computer name.
  6. Click **OK**.

• **Use the default Active Directory domain**
  You can choose to use the default Active Directory domain that is defined in global settings. Complete the following steps to set the default Active Directory domain in XClarity Administrator.
  1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Deploy OS images** to display the Deploy OS Images page.
  2. Click the **Global Settings** icon ( ) to display the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog.
  3. Click the **Active Directory** tab.

  Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Credentials</th>
<th>IP Assignment</th>
<th>License Keys</th>
<th>Active Directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Configure Microsoft Active Directory settings used for Windows operating-system deployments.

Apply this domain as default selection: **None**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain Name</th>
<th>Organizational Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No items to display

[Learn more about using Microsoft Active Directory](#)
4. From the **Apply this domain as default selection** drop-down menu, select the Active Directory domain to be used by default for every Windows deployment.

5. Click **OK**.

**Use metadata blob data**

You can use Active Directory Computer Account Metadata (in Base-64 encoded blob format) to join the Active Directory domain for any server. Complete the following steps to generate metadata blob data.

1. Use an administrator account to log in to the computer. The computer must be part of the Active Directory domain to which you are joining.

2. Click **Start ➔ Programs ➔ Accessories**. Right-click **Command Prompt**, and then click **Run as administrator**.

3. Change to the C:\windows\system32 directory.

4. Run the **djoin** command using the following format to perform an offline domain join:

   \[
   \text{djoin } /\text{provision } /\text{domain }<\text{AD_domain_name}> /\text{machine }<\text{hostname}> /\text{savefile blob}
   \]

   where:

   - *<AD_domain_name>* is the name of the Active Directory domain.
   - *<hostname>* is the hostname of the server to which the image is being deployed as a computer name under the target organizational unit by clicking the **Network Settings ➔ Hostname** field.

   This command creates a file named **blob** that contains the metadata blob data. The content of this file is used by the operating-system deployment process to specify the Active Directory join details, so keep this data close by.

   The metadata blob data is sensitive data.

For detailed information about deploying an operating-system image, see Deploying an operating-system image.

**Procedure**

To join an Active Directory domain, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Import the Windows operating-system image in to the OS images repository (see Importing operating-system images).

**Step 2.** Select one or more servers to which the operating system is to be deployed. You can deploy an operating system on up to 28 servers at one time.

**Tip:** You can choose multiple compute nodes from multiple chassis if you intend to deploy the same operating system to all compute nodes.
Step 3. Click Change Selected ➔ Network Settings to configure network settings.
   a. Click Change All Rows ➔ Domain Name System (DNS), and specify at a minimum a DNS that resolves to the Active Directory domain.
   b. For each server, specify a hostname that matches an existing computer name in the domain and organizational unit that you are joining.

For more information about setting network settings, see Configuring network settings for managed servers.

Step 4. For each server, select the Windows operating-system image to be deployed in the Image to Deploy column. A folder and license key icons is displayed next to the image name.

Step 5. For each server, click the License Key icon ( ), and specify the license key to use to active the operating system after it is installed:

Step 6. For each server, click the Folder icon ( ), and specify the Active Directory domain. You can choose one of the following values:
   - Use the Active Directory defined in Global Settings to use the default domain.
   - Use the following Active Directory to select a specific domain.
   - Use metadata block data to specify the contents of the blob file.
     The metadata blob data contains sensitive information and is not displayed in the field. This information is available only until the deployment operation is complete. It is not persistent.

Step 7. For each server, select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating-system image from the Storage column.
   - Local Disk Drive
   - Embedded Hypervisor
   - M.2 Drive
   - SAN Storage

If the selected storage location is not compatible with the server, XClarity Administrator attempts to deploy the operating system to the next storage location in the priority.

For more information about how to configure the storage location, see Choosing the storage location for managed servers.

Note: To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage chosen for the operating-system deployment.
Step 8. Verify that the deployment status for all selected servers is Ready.

If the status of a server is Not Ready, you cannot deploy an operating-system image to that server. Click the Not Ready link to get information to help resolve the problem. If the network settings are not valid, click Changed Selected ➔ Network Settings to configure the network settings.

Step 9. Click the Deploy images icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

The Deploy Confirmation dialog prompts you for the credentials to use for authenticating to the Active Directory server and joining the domain. For security reasons, these credentials are not stored in XClarity Administrator. You must supply the credential for every Windows deployment that joins the domain.

You can monitor the status of the deployment process from the jobs log. From the XClarity Administrator menu, click Monitoring ➔ Jobs. For more information about the job log, see Monitoring jobs.

Results

When the operating-system deployment is complete, open a web browser to the IP address that you specified on the Edit Network Settings page, and log on to continue with the configuration process.

OS-deployment scenarios

Use these scenarios to help you customize and deploy operating systems to your managed servers.

Deploying RHEL with custom device drivers

This scenario installs the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) operating system and additional device drivers that are not available in the base operating system. A custom profile is used that includes the additional device drivers. The custom profile can then be selected on the Deploy OS Images page.

Before you begin

When deploying operating systems using Lenovo XClarity Administrator, the operating system must include the appropriate Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and storage-adapter device drivers for your hardware. If a device driver is not included in the operating system, that adapter is not supported for OS deployment. In XClarity Administrator v1.2.0 and later, you can customize an operating system by adding device drivers.

You can obtain device drivers from the Lenovo YUM Repository webpage, from the vendor (such as Red Hat), or through a custom device driver that you generated yourself. For some Windows device drivers, you can generate a custom device driver by extracting the device driver from the installation .exe to your local system and creating a .zip archive file.

Note: RHEL device drivers must be in .rpm or .iso image format.

Procedure

To deploy RHEL with custom device drivers, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Download the base RHEL operating system from the Red Hat website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

2. Click the OS Images tab.
3. Click **Import** icon ( ).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the RHEL image to import (for example, `RHEL-<ver>-<date>-Server-x86_64-dvd1.iso`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 2.** Download the custom device drivers to the local system and import the files into the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing device drivers.

1. Click the **Device Drivers** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon ( ).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select RHEL for the operating system.
5. Select the operating-system version.
6. Select the device type.
7. Click **Browse** to find and select the device driver to import (for example, `kmod-i40e-2.0.12-1.el7.x86_64.rpm`).
8. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 3.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom device drivers. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Virtualization).
3. Click **Create** icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom RHEL with device drivers).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **None** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.
5. On the **Driver Options** tab, select the custom device drivers to include in profile, and click **Next**. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the **Software** tab, click **Next**.
7. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

**Step 4.** Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➞ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.
      
      **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➞ IP Assignment ➞ Use VLANs**.
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>-<timestamp>_Custom RHEL with device drivers`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.
Note: Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

d. (Optional) Click the License Key icon (License Key) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the Storage column.

Note: To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is Ready.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon (Deploy image) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

5. Click Deploy to deploy the operating system.

Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using a custom unattend file

This scenario installs the RHEL operating system along with custom software (Apache HTTP, PHP, and a hello-world PHP application). A custom OS-image profile is used that includes the custom unattend that registers the operating system with the internal Lenovo RHEL subscription service so that it can use the yum repositories, installs the Apache and PHP packages, configures the firewall to allow Apache connections, creates a Hello World PHP application and copies to the Apache web server directory, and configures the Apache configuration files to support PHP.

Before you begin

You can deploy RHEL with custom software in a few different ways. This example uses a custom attend file that you include in the custom OS-image profile. You can also use a post-installation script that installs custom software that you import into the repository and include in the custom OS-image profile. For installing software using a post-installation script, see Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using custom software and a post-installation script.

This scenario uses the following sample file.

- RHEL_installSoftware_customUnattend.cfg This custom unattend file uses values in predefined and custom macros and installs and configures the custom software.

Procedure

To deploy RHEL with custom software using a custom unatttend file, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Download the base RHEL operating system from the Red Hat website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

2. Click the OS Images tab.

3. Click Import icon (Import).

4. Click Local Import.

5. Click Browse to find and select the RHEL image to import (for example, RHEL-<ver>-<date>-Server-x86_64-dvd1.iso).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.

7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 2.** Modify the RHEL unattend (kickstart) file to register the operating system with your RHEL satellite subscription service, install HTTP (Apache) and PHP packages, and create a simple Hello World PHP application, add the required predefined macros and other predefined macros where applicable, such as the IP address, gateway, DNS and host name settings, and then import the custom file to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

Add commands to register the host with your RHEL satellite, for example:

```bash
rpm -Uvh http://<YOUR_SATELLITE_SERVER_IP>/pub/katello-ca-consumer-latest.noarch.rpm
subscription-manager register --org="<YOUR_ORGANIZATION>" --activationkey="RHEL_Base" --force
subscription-manager repos --enable rhel-7-server-rpms
```

**Important:** In the example unattend file, specify the IP address of your satellite server and your organization based on our subscription service configuration.

Add commands to update the host and to install and configure apache and php packages, for example:

```bash
#Add the Apache and PHP packages
httpd
mod_ssl
openssl
php
php-mysql
php-gd
@end

yum -y update
systemctl enable httpd.service
firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-service=http
firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-service=https
firewall-cmd --reload

echo "<?PHP
echo 'Hello World!!';

sudo cp /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf.original

sudo sed -i -e 's/\"\[/\"\{\"\]/' /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
sudo sed -i "s/\#IncludeOptional/\#IncludeOptional/" /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
sudo sed -i "s/\#ServerName www.example.com:80|ServerName localhost|" /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
sudo sed -i "s/\#DirectoryIndex index.html|DirectoryIndex index.html index.php|" /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf

echo "AddType application/x-httpd-php .php" | tee -a /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```
**Note:** The example unattend file modifies the default packages that are being installed with the kickstart file. It specifies the Apache and PHO packages as part of the %packages section.

For ESXi and RHEL only, XClarity Administrator provides the `#predefined.unattendSettings.networkConfig` macro, which adds all network settings that are defined in the UI to the unattend file, and the `#predefined.unattendSettings.storageConfig` macro, which adds all storage settings that are defined in the UI to the unattend file. The example unattend file already contains these macros.

XClarity Administrator also provides some basic convenience macros, such as OOB driver injection, status reporting, post-install scripts, custom software. However, to take advantage of these predefined macros, you must specify the following macros in the custom unattend file. The example file already contains the required macros.

```
#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig
#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig
```

The example file already contains the required macros and additional predefined macros for dynamically specifying network settings for the target server and timezone. For more information about adding macros to unattend files, see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file.

You can also add commands to send custom messages to the jobs log in XClarity Administrator. For more information, see Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts.

To import the custom installation script, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom installation scripts.

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps.

1. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon (import).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select RHEL for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the software file to import (for example, `RHEL_installSoftware_customUnattend.cfg`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 3.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom software and post-installation script. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Basic).
3. Click **Create** icon (create) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom RHEL with software using custom unattend).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **Only unattend files** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.
5. On the **Driver Options** tab, click **Next**. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the **Software** tab, click **Next**.
7. On the Unattend Files tab, select custom unattend file (for example, RHEL_installSoftware_customUnattend.cfg), and click Next.

8. On the Installation Scripts tab, click Next.

9. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

10. Click Customize to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 4. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.

2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click Change Selected ➔ Network Settings, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   Tip:
   - VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in Global Settings ➔ IP Assignment ➔ Use VLANs.
   - The network settings that you specify on the Network Settings dialog are added to the unattend file at runtime using the #predefined.hostPlatforms.networkSettings.<setting># macros.

   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, <base_OS>|<timestamp>_Custom RHEL with software using custom unattend) from the drop-down list in the Image to Deploy column

   Note: Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

   d. (Optional) Click the License Key icon (锁) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

   e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the Storage column.

   Note: To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

   f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is Ready.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon (@email) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Custom Settings tab, click the Unattend and Configuration Settings subtab, and select the custom unattend file (for example, RHEL_installSoftware_customUnattend.cfg).
Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using custom software and a post-installation script

This scenario installs the RHEL operating system along with custom software (Apache HTTP, PHP, and a hello-world PHP application). A custom OS-image profile is used that includes the custom software and a post-installation script that registers the operating system with the internal Lenovo RHEL subscription service so that it can use the yum repositories, installs the Apache and PHP packages, configures the firewall to allow Apache connections, creates a Hello World PHP application and copies to the Apache web server directory, and configures the Apache configuration files to support PHP. The custom software packages are exported to the host during the deployment and made available for the custom post-installation script to use.

Before you begin

You can deploy RHEL and a Hello World PHP application in a few different ways. This example uses a post-installation script that installs custom software that you import into the repository and include in the custom OS-image profile. You can also use a custom attend file that you include in the custom OS-image profile. For installing software using a custom attend file, see Deploying RHEL and a Hello World PHP application using a custom unattend file.

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- httpd.conf This is the installation file for Apache HTTP.
- hello_world.php This is the Hello World PHP application.
- RHEL_installSoftware_customScript.sh This post-installation script installs and configures the custom software.

Notes:

- RHEL installation scripts can be in one of the following formats: Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)
- Software files and installation scripts are installed from the custom data and files path that you specify during deployment. The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.

Procedure

5. On the Summary tab, review the settings.
6. Click Deploy to deploy the operating system.
To deploy RHEL with custom software using a post-installation script, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Download the base RHEL operating system from the Red Hat website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

2. Click the **OS Images** tab.

3. Click **Import** icon (rietag).

4. Click **Local Import**.

5. Click **Browse** to find and select the RHEL image to import (for example, RHEL-<ver><date>-Server-x86_64-dvd1.iso).

6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.

7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 2.** Download the custom software to the local system and import the files into the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom software.

**Tip:** To import custom software into XClarity Administrator, the files must be contained in a tar.gz file. For this example, compress the example software files httpd.conf and index.php into a tar.gz file named RHEL_installSoftware_customsw.tar.gz before continuing.

1. Click the **Software** tab.

2. Click the **Import** icon (rietag).

3. Click **Local Import**.

4. Select RHEL for the operating system.

5. Click **Browse** to find and select the software file to import (for example, RHEL_installSoftware_customsw.tar.gz).

6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 3.** Create a custom post-installation script, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

Add commands to register the host with the RHEL satellite, for example:

```bash
subscription-manager register --org="Default_Organization" --activationkey="RHEL_Base" --force
subscription-manager repos --enable rhel-7-server-rpms A
```

Add a command to update the host and install and configure apache and php packages, for example:

```bash
yum -y update
god -y install httpd mod_ssl openssl php php-mysql php-gd
```

```bash
systemctl enable httpd.service
```

```bash
firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-service=http
firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-service=https
firewall-cmd --reload
```

Add commands to add our PHP application to the web serversatellite, for example:

```bash
cp #predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#/lxca/index.php /var/www/html/index.php
```

Add commands to configure Apache HTTP, for example:

```bash
cp /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf.original
cp #predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#/httpd.conf /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```
Note that these commands use predefined macros for the path to the extracted data and software files (predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation).

You can also add commands to send custom messages to the jobs log in XClarity Administrator. For more information, see Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts.

To import the custom installation script, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom installation scripts.

1. Click the Installation Scripts tab.
2. Click the Import icon ( ).
3. Click Local Import.
4. Select RHEL for the operating system.
5. Click Browse to find and select the post-installation script to import (for example, RHEL_installSoftware_customScript.sh).
6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

Step 4. Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom software and post-installation script. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the OS Images tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Basic).
3. Click Create icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the General tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom RHEL with software using post-installation script).
   b. Use the default value for the Custom data and file path field.
   c. Select None for the customization type.
   d. Click Next.
5. On the Driver Options tab, click Next. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the Software tab, select the software installation files (for example httpd.conf and index.php), and click Next.
7. On the Installation Scripts tab, select the installation scripts (for example, RHEL_installSoftware_customScript.sh), and click Next.
8. On the Summary tab, review the settings.
9. Click Customize to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 5. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click Change Selected ➔ Network Settings, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

      Tip: VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in Global Settings ➔ IP Assignment ➔ Use VLANS.
c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>-<timestamp>_Custom RHEL with software using post-installation script`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

   **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

d. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.

   **Note:** To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

e. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

5. Click **Deploy** to deploy the operating system.

### Deploying SLES 12 SP3 with custom packages and time zone

This scenario installs the SLES 12 SP3 operating system (in English) and several optional SLES packages. It also prompts for the time zone. A custom OS-image profile is used that includes a custom configuration file and custom unattend file. This custom profile can be selected on the Deploy OS Images page. Then, the SLE packages that you want to deploy can be selected and time zone can be specified on the **Custom Settings** tab. The selected values are substituted for the custom macros in the custom unattend, and the SLES autoyast installer uses those values in the unattend file to configure the operating system.

#### Before you begin

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- **SLES_installPackages_customConfig.json.** This configuration file prompts for the time zone and optional SLES packages (Linux, Apache, MySQL, PHP software package, SLES mail server package, and SLES file server package) to install.

- **SLES_installPackages_customUnattend.xml** This unattend file uses values in predefined macros and custom macros that are defined in the configuration file.

#### Procedure

To deploy SLES 12 SP3 to servers using a custom OS-image profile, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Download the base SLES operating system from the SUSE website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

   1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

   2. Click the **OS Images** tab.

   3. Click **Import** icon ( ).

   4. Click **Local Import**.

   5. Click **Browse** to find and select the SLES 12 SP3 image to import (for example, SLE-12-SP3-Server-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso).

   6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.

   7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.
Step 2. Create a custom configuration-settings file, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

The configuration-settings file is a JSON file that describe the data that needs to be gathered dynamically during the OS deployment process. For this scenario, we want to specify the optional SLES packages that can be installed (including SLES Linux, Apache, MySQL, PHP software package, SLES mail-server package, and SLES file-server package) and a time zone to use for each OS deployment. For more information about creating a configuration-settings file, see Custom macros.

To import the configuration-settings file, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom configuration settings.

1. Click the **Configuration Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon (uded).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select SLES for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the configuration-settings file to import (for example, `SLES_installPackages_customConfig.json`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

   **Note:** When you import a custom configuration-settings file, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting in the file. You can add those macros to the unattend file. During OS deployment, the macros are replaced with actual values.

Step 3. Modify the SLES unattend file to specify dynamic values for the optional SLES packages and time zone, and then import the custom file to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

In the `<general>` section, add the time zone information, for example:

```xml
<timezone>
  <hwclock></hwclock>
  <timezone></timezone>
</timezone>
```

In the `<patterns>` section, add three pattern tags. These tags are used for the custom macros for the optional SLES package settings, for example:

```xml
<patterns config:type="list">
  <pattern>32bit</pattern>
  <pattern>Basis-Devel</pattern>
  <pattern>Minimal</pattern>
  <pattern>WBEM</pattern>
  <pattern>apparmor</pattern>
  <pattern>base</pattern>
  <pattern>documentation</pattern>
  <pattern>fips</pattern>
  <pattern>gateway_server</pattern>
  <pattern>ofed</pattern>
  <pattern>printing</pattern>
  <pattern>sap_server</pattern>
  <pattern>x11</pattern>
</patterns>
```

**Notes:**
These tags are in the sample unattend file.

When you use a custom unattend file, XClarity Administrator does not provide many of the normal convenience features that you get when you use a predefined unattend file. For example, the targets `<DiskConfiguration>`, `<ImageInstall>`, `<ProductKey>`, and `<UserAccounts>` for Administrator, `<Interfaces>` for networking, and `<package>` list for installation features must be specified in the custom unattend file that is being uploaded.

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps.

1. Click the Unattend Files tab.
2. Click the Import icon.
3. Click Local Import.
4. Select SLES for the operating system.
5. Click Browse to find and select the unattend file to import (for example, `SLES_installPackages_customUnattend.xml`).
6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

   **Note:** A warning that there are missing predefined macros in the unattend file is displayed. You can ignore the warning for now. You will add the predefined macros in the next step.

7. Click Close in the warning dialog to open the Edit Unattend File dialog.

**Step 4.** Associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file, and add the required predefined and custom macros (settings) from the configuration-settings file to the unattend file.

For more information, see Associating an unattend file with a configuration settings file and Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file.

**Tip:** You can optionally associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file and add macros when importing the unattend file.

1. From the Edit Unattend File dialog, select the configuration-settings file to associate with the unattend file from the **Associate a Configuration File** drop-down list (for example, `SLES_installPackages_customConfig`).

2. Add the required predefined macros to the unattend file.
   a. Select Predefined from the **Available Macros** drop-down list.
   b. Place the cursor in the unattend file anywhere after line 1 (after the `<xml>` tag).
   c. Expand the **predefined → unattendSettings** list in the list of available predefined macros.
   d. Click the `preinstallConfig` and `postinstallConfig` macros to add the macros to the unattend file.

   For example:
   ```xml
   <profile xmlns="http://www.suse.com/1.0/yast2ns" xmlns:config="http://www.suse.com/1.0/configs">
   #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
   #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#
   </profile>
   ```

3. Add the custom macro for specifying the time zone.
   a. Select Custom from the **Available Macros** drop-down list.
   b. Place the cursor after the `<hwclock>` tag, and click **timezone** to add the time zone macro.
   c. Place the cursor after the `<timezone>` tag, and click **timezone** to add the time zone macro.

   For example:
   ```xml
   <timezone>
   <hwclock>##timezone##</hwclock>
   ```
4. Add the custom macro for specifying the optional SLES packages.
a. Expand the server-settings → node list in the list of available custom macros.
b. Place the cursor in one of the empty <pattern> tags, and click fileserver.
c. Place the cursor in one of the empty <pattern> tags, and click lampserver.
d. Place the cursor in one of the empty <pattern> tags, and click mailserver.

For example:

```xml
<patterns config:type="list">
  <pattern>32bit</pattern>
  <pattern>Basis-Devel</pattern>
  <pattern>Minimal</pattern>
  <pattern>WBEM</pattern>
  <pattern>apparmor</pattern>
  <pattern>base</pattern>
  <pattern>documentation</pattern>
  <pattern>ips</pattern>
  <pattern>gateway_server</pattern>
  <pattern>ofed</pattern>
  <pattern>printing</pattern>
  <pattern>.sap_server</pattern>
  <pattern>x11</pattern>
  <pattern>#server-settings.node.fileserver#</pattern>
  <pattern>#server-settings.node.lampserver#</pattern>
  <pattern>#server-settings.node.mailserver#</pattern>
</patterns>
```

5. Click Save to bind the files together and save the changes to the unattend file.

Step 5. Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom configuration-settings and unattend files. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the OS Images tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Basic).
3. Click Create icon (>Create to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the General tab:
a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom SLES with optional packages).
b. Use the default value for the Custom data and file path field.
c. Select Associated unattend and configuration-settings files for the customization type.
d. Click Next.
5. On the Driver Options tab, click Next. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the Software tab, click Next.
7. On the Unattend Files tab, select the unattend file (for example, SLES_installPackages_customUnattend.xml), and click Next.

The associated configuration-settings file is automatically selected.

8. On the Installation Scripts tab, click Next.
9. On the Summary tab, review the settings.
10. Click Customize to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 6. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning → Deploy OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➔ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.
      
      **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➔ IP Assignment ➔ Use VLANs**.
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>`|`<timestamp>` _Custom SLES with optional packages_) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.
      
      **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.
   d. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.
      
      **Note:** To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.
   e. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.

3. Select all target servers, and click the **Deploy image** icon (”) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the **Custom Settings** tab, click the **Unattend and Configuration Settings** subtab, and select the custom configuration-settings file (for example, `SLES_installPackages_customConfig`).
      
      **Note:** The associated custom unattend file is selected automatically.

**Deploy OS Images**

---

**Operating systems on the selected servers will be overwritten.**

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Custom Settings</th>
<th>Active Directory Domain</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Choose the unattend and configuration files that you want to use for this deployment. If applicable, also configure common and server-specific configuration settings for operating-system deployments.

**Unattend and Configuration Settings** | **Server Specific Settings** | **Common Settings**

**Customization Type:** Custom unattend file and associated custom config file

Select a Configuration File to be applied to the deploy. The unattend file associated with the configuration file is also automatically applied.

**Configuration File:**

- None
- None
- `SLES_installPackages_customConfig`

5. On the **Server-Specific Settings** subtab, select the target server and the optional SLES packages that you want to deploy.
Deploy OS Images

6. On the **Common Settings** subtab, select the time zone to set for all target servers.

7. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

8. Click **Deploy** to deploy the operating system.
Deploying SLES 12 SP3 with custom software

This scenario installs the SLES 12 SP3 operating system along with custom software (Java and Eclipse IDE). A custom profile is used that includes the custom software and post-installation scripts to install and configure the custom software. The custom software packages are copied to the host during the deployment and made available for the custom post-install script to use.

Before you begin

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- jre-8u151-linux-x64.tar.gz. This is the installation file for Java for Eclipse.
- eclipse-4.6.3-3.1.x86_64.tar.gz. This is the installation file for Eclipse IDE.
- SLES_installSoftware_customScript.sh. This post-installation script creates a user to launch Eclipse, and installs Eclipse IDE and Java.

Notes:

- SLES installation scripts can be in one of the following formats: Bash (.sh), Perl (.pm or .pl), Python (.py)
- Software files and installation scripts are installed from the custom data and files path that you specify during deployment. The default custom data and files path is /home/lxca.
- For SLES 12 SP3, the Eclipse IDE requires the GCC compiler, which is included in the predefined Basic profile. This scenario creates a custom OS-image profile using the predefined Basic profile as the base. If you choose to use another profile, you must ensure that the profile includes the GCC compiler.

Procedure

To deploy SLES 12 SP3 with custom software, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Download the base SLES 12 SP3 operating system from the SUSE website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➙ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the OS Images tab.
3. Click Import icon ( ).
4. Click Local Import.
5. Click Browse to find and select the SLES 12 SP3 image to import (for example, SLE-12-SP3-Server-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso).
6. Click Import to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

Step 2. Download the custom software to the local system and import the files into the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom software.

1. Click the Software tab.
2. Click the Import icon ( ).
3. Click Local Import.
4. Select SLES for the operating system.
5. Click Browse to find and select the software file to import (for example, jre-8u151-linux-x64.tar.gz).
6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.
7. Click the **Import** icon \(\text{:image}(\text{icon})\) again.

8. Click **Local Import**.

9. Select SLES for the operating system.

10. Click **Browse** to find and select the software file to import (for example, `eclipse-4.6.3-3.1.x86_64.tar.gz`).

11. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 3.** Create a custom post-installation script, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

Add commands to create a user to launch eclipse to this file, for example:

```bash
echo "Create a user called lenovo..."
egrep "\{\"login\"\:"\"lenovo\"\}" /etc/passwd >> /dev/null
pass=$(perl -e 'print crypt($ARGV[0], "password")' "Passw0rd")
useradd -m -p $pass lenovo
[$? -eq 0 ] && echo "User has been created." || curl -X PUT
--globoff
$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.urlStatus# -H "Content-Type: application/json"
-d "\"deployStatus\"{"\"id\":\"46\",\"parameters\":\"\"Could not create lenovo user\"\"\"\"}}"
--cert
$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/cert.pem
--key
$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/key.pem
--cacert
$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation#/ca-bundle.crt
```

Add commands to install the software, for example:

```
# Install Java for eclipse
echo "Installing Java JRE &..."
rpm -ivh $predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#/jre-8u151-linux-x64.rpm
```

```
# Install eclipse
echo "Installing Eclipse IDE &..."
rpm -ivh $predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#/eclipse-4.6.3-3.1.x86_64.rpm
```

Note that these commands use predefined macros for the HTTPS URL that XClarity Administrator uses for reporting status (\$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.urlStatus\), for the Folder containing the certificates that are needed to access the urlStatus web service from the host OS on first boot (\$predefined.otherSettings.statusSettings.certLocation\), and for the path to the extracted data and software files (\$predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation\).

You can also add commands to send custom messages to the jobs log in XClarity Administrator, as shown in the sample file. For more information, see Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts.

To import the custom installation script, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom installation scripts.

1. Click the **Installation Scripts** tab.

2. Click the **Import** icon \(\text{:image}(\text{icon})\).

3. Click **Local Import**.

4. Select SLES for the operating system.

5. Click **Browse** to find and select the post-installation script to import (for example, `SLES_installSoftware_customScript.sh`).

6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 4.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom software and post-installation script. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Basic).

3. Click Create icon (>Create) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.

4. On the General tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom SLES with software).
   b. Use the default value for the Custom data and file path field.
   c. Select None for the customization type.
   d. Click Next.

5. On the Driver Options tab, click Next. The inbox device drivers are included by default.

6. On the Software tab, select the software installation files (for example jre-8u151-linux-x64.tar.gz and eclipse-4.6.3-3.1.x66_64.tar.gz), and click Next.

7. On the Installation Scripts tab, select the installation scripts (for example, SLES_installSoftware_customScript.sh), and click Next.

8. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

9. Click Customize to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 5. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➞ Deploy OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.

2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click Change Selected ➞ Network Settings, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

      **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in Global Settings ➞ IP Assignment ➞ Use VLANs.

   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, <base_OS>|<timestamp>_Custom SLES with software) from the drop-down list in the Image to Deploy column

     **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

   d. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the Storage column.

     **Note:** To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

   e. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is Ready.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon (Deploy) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

5. Click Deploy to deploy the operating system.

**Deploying SLES 12 SP3 with a configurable locale and NTP servers**

This scenario installs the SLES 12 SP3 operating system with either English, Brazilian, or Japanese enabled for the keyboard and operating-system locales. It also configures the IP address for up to three NTP servers.

A custom OS-image profile is used that includes an unattend file (with predefined and custom macros) and a configuration-settings file for selecting the locales and NTP-server settings. This custom profile can be selected on the Deploy OS Images page. Then, the locales and NTP-server settings can be selected on the Custom Settings tab. The specified values are substituted for the custom macros contain in the custom
unattend file, and the SLES autoyast installer uses those values in the unattend file to configure the operating system.

**Before you begin**

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- SLES_locale_customConfig.json. This custom configuration file prompts for the language to install for the OS local and keyboard for SLES and for the NTP server.
- SLES_locale_customUnattend.xml. This custom unattend file uses values in custom macros that are defined in the configuration file.

**Procedure**

To deploy SLES 12 SP3 using custom OS-image profile, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Download the base SLES operating system from the SUSE website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the **Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images** page.
2. Click the **OS Images** tab.
3. Click **Import** icon (导入).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the SLES 12 SP3 image to import (for example, SLE-12-SP3-Server-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete.

**Step 2.** Create a custom configuration-settings file, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

The configuration-settings file is a JSON file that describes the data that needs to be gathered dynamically during the OS deployment process. For this scenario, we want to specify the operating-system locale (en_US, ja_JP, pt_BR), the keyboard locale (english-us, Japanese, or portuguese-br), and up to three NTP server IP addresses to use for each OS deployment. For more information about creating a configuration-settings file, see Custom macros.

To import the configuration-settings file, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom configuration settings.

1. Click the **Configuration Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon (导入).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select SLES for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the configuration-settings file to import (for example, SLES_locale_customConfig.json).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Note:** When you import a custom configuration-settings file, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting in the file. You can add those macros to the unattend file. During OS deployment, the macros are replaced with actual values.
Step 3. Modify the SLES unattend file to specify dynamic values for the operating-system locale, keyboard locale, and NTP server IP addresses, and then import the custom file to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

Just after the `<profile>` tag, add the NTP server and networking information. The following example includes tags for two NTP servers. The IP addresses will be added as macros in a later step.

```xml
<ntp-client>
  <configure_dhcp config:type="boolean">false</configure_dhcp>
  <peers config:type="list">
    <peer>
      <address></address>
      <initial_sync config:type="boolean">true</initial_sync>
      <options></options>
      <type>server</type>
    </peer>
    <peer>
      <address></address>
      <initial_sync config:type="boolean">true</initial_sync>
      <options></options>
      <type>server</type>
    </peer>
  </peers>
  <start_at_boot config:type="boolean">true</start_at_boot>
  <start_in_chroot config:type="boolean">true</start_in_chroot>
</ntp-client>
```

In the `<general>` section, add the OS and keyboard locale info, as shown in the following example. The keyboard and operating system locale settings will be added as macros in a later step.

```xml
<keyboard>
  <keymap></keymap>
</keyboard>
<language></language>
```

**Note:** When you use a custom unattend file, XClarity Administrator does not provide many of the normal convenience features that you get when you use a predefined unattend file. For example, the targets `<DiskConfiguration>`, `<ImageInstall>`, `<ProductKey>`, and `<UserAccounts>` for Administrator, `<Interfaces>` for networking, and `<package>` list for installation features must be specified in the custom unattend file that is being uploaded.

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps.

1. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon ( )
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select SLES for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the unattend file to import (for example, `SLES_local_customUnattend.xml`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository

Step 4. Associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file, and add the required predefined and custom macros (settings) from the configuration-settings file to the unattend file. For more information, see Associating an unattend file with a configuration settings file and Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file

**Tip:** You can optionally the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file and add macros when importing the unattend file.
1. From the **Unattend Files** tab, select the custom attend file (for example, `SLES_locale_customUnattend.xml`).

2. Click the **Associate a Configuration File** icon ( 🌐 ) to display the Associate an Unattend File dialog.

3. Select the configuration-settings file to associate with the unattend file (for example, `SLES_locale_customConfig`).

4. Add the required predefined macros to the unattend file.
   a. Select **Predefined** from the **Available Macros** drop-down list.
   b. Place the cursor in the unattend file anywhere after line 1 (after the `<xml>` tag).
   c. Expand the `predefined → unattendSettings` list in the list of available predefined macros.
   d. Click the `preinstallConfig` and `postinstallConfig` macros to add the macros.
      
      For example:
      
      ```xml
      <?xml version="1.0"?>
      <!DOCTYPE profile SYSTEM "/usr/share/YaST2/include/autoinstall/profile.dtd">
      #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
      #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#
      <profile xmlns="http://www.suse.com/1.0/yast2ns" xmlns:config="http://www.suse.com/1.0/configs">
      
      5. Add the custom macro for specifying the operating-system locale.
        a. Select **Custom** from the **Available Macros** drop-down list
        b. Place the cursor after the `<language>` tag.
        c. Expand `server-settings → node` in the list of available custom macros, and then click `locale` to add the OS-locale macro.
        
        For example:
        
        ```xml
        <language>
        #server-settings.node.locale#
        </language>
        
        6. Add the custom macro for specifying the keyboard locale.
          a. Place the cursor after the `<keymap>` tag.
          b. Expand `server-settings → node` in the list of available custom macros, and then click `keyboardLocale` to add the keyboard-locale macro.
          
          For example:
          
          ```xml
          <keyboard>
            <keymap>
            #server-settings.node.keyboardLocale#
            </keymap>
          </keyboard>
          
          7. Add the custom macro for specifying the NTP server IP addresses.
             In this scenario, the custom configuration-settings file uses a template to specify zero to three NTP servers. When using templates in the configuration-settings file, macros that are associated with template are not displayed in the Associate an Unattend File dialog. Instead, you must manually edit the unattend file and add the macros and appropriate tags.
             
             For example, to include three NTP servers, you would add the following tags and macros to the unattend file. These tags and macros already exist in the example unattend file for this scenario.
             
             ```xml
             <ntp-client>
              <configure_dhcp config:type="boolean">false</configure_dhcp>
              <peers config:type="list">
                <peer>
                  <address>#server-settings.ntpserver1#</address>
                  <initial_sync config:type="boolean">true</initial_sync>
                  <options></options>
                </peer>
              </peers>
            </ntp-client>
8. Click **Associate** to bind the files together and save the changes to the unattend file.

**Step 5.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom configuration-settings and unattend files. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, **Basic**).
3. Click **Create** icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom SLES for OS and keyboard locale and NTP server).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **Associated unattend and configuration-settings files** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.
5. On the **Driver Options** tab, click **Next**. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the **Software** tab, click **Next**.
7. On the **Unattend Files** tab, select the unattend file (for example, **SLES_locale_customUnattend.xml**), and click **Next**.
   The associated configuration-settings file is automatically selected.
8. On the **Installation Scripts** tab, click **Next**.
9. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.
10. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

**Step 6.** Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target server. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected → Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

**Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings → IP Assignment → Use VLANS**.
c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>`|`<timestamp>` Custom SLES for OS and keyboard locale and NTP server) from the drop-down list in the Image to Deploy column

**Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

d. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the Storage column.

**Note:** To ensure that operating system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

e. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is Ready.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Custom Settings tab, click the Unattend and Configuration Settings subtab, and select the custom configuration-settings file (for example, SLES_locale_customConfig).

**Note:** The associated custom unattend file is selected automatically.

部署操作系统映像

5. On the Server-Specific Settings subtab, select the target server, OS locale, and keyboard locale.

6. On the Common Settings subtab, click Add to specify the IP address of up to three NTP servers.

7. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

8. Click Deploy to deploy the operating system.

**Deploying VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization to a local disk using a static IP address**

This scenario installs the VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization operating system to the local disk using the static IP address of the host server. A custom OS-image profile is used that includes an unattend file with predefined macros. This custom profile can be selected on the Deploy OS Images page. Known values are substituted for the predefined macros in the custom unattend file, and the VMware ESXi kickstart installer uses those values in the unattend file to configure the operating system.
Before you begin

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- ESXi_staticIP_customUnattend.cfg. This custom unattend file uses values in predefined macros.

Procedure

To deploy VMware ESXi v6.7 using custom OS-image profile, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Download the VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization operating system from the VMware Support – Downloads webpage website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➞ Manage OS Images to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

2. Click the OS Images tab.

3. Click Import icon ( aspiration).

4. Click Local Import.

5. Click Browse to find and select the ESXi image to import (for example, ESXi6.7-7535516-RC-Lenovo_20180126_Async.iso).

6. Click Import to upload the image to the OS-images repository.

7. Wait for the import to complete.

Step 2. Modify the ESXi unattend (kickstart) file to add the required predefined macros and other predefined macros where applicable, such as the IP address, gateway, DNS and host name settings, and then import the custom file to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

For ESXi and RHEL only, XClarity Administrator provides the #predefined.unattendSettings.networkConfig# macro, which adds all network settings that are defined in the UI to the unattend file. Because this example specifies a setting (--addvmportgroup) that is not defined in the UI, the #predefinedunattendSettings.storageConfig# macro is not used in the sample unattend file. Instead, network settings are individually added to the file, and the #predefined.hostPlatforms.networkSettings.<setting># macros are used.

For ESXi and RHEL only, XClarity Administrator also provides the #predefined.unattendSettings.storageConfig# macro, which adds all storage settings that are defined in the UI to the unattend file. Because this example specifies settings (--nomfsondisk and --ignoressd) that are not defined in the UI, the #predefinedunattendSettings.storageConfig# macro is not used in the sample unattend file. Instead, storage settings are individually added and --firstdisk=local is hardcoded in the file.

Note: XClarity Administrator provides some basic convenience macros, such as OOB driver injection, status reporting, post-install scripts, custom software. However, to take advantage of these predefined macros, you must specify the following macros in the custom unattend file. The example file already contains the required macros. Note that because the %firstboot section is included, the ordering of these predefined macros matters. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#

The example file already contains the required macros and additional predefined macros for dynamically specifying network settings for the target server. For more information about adding macros to unattend files, see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file.

For more information about available predefined macros, see Predefined macros.
To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps.

1. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon ( ).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select ESXi for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the unattend file to import (for example, `ESXi_staticIP_customUnattend.cfg`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 3.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom unattend. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, `Virtualization`).
3. Click **Create** icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, `Custom ESXi using static IP`).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **Only unattend files** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.
5. On the **Unattend Files** tab, select the unattend file (for example, `ESXi_staticIP_customUnattend.cfg`), and click **Next**.
6. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.
7. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

**Step 4.** Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target server. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected → Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   **Tip:**
   - VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings → IP Assignment → Use VLANs**.
   - The network settings that you specify on the Network Settings dialog are added to the unattend file at runtime using the `#predefined.hostPlatforms.networkSettings.<setting>\#` macros.
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>|<timestamp>_Custom ESXi using static IP`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

   **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.
   d. (Optional) Click the **License Key** icon ( ) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.
   e. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.
Note: Because --firstdisk=local is specified in the unattend file, you do not need to specify the preferred storage location in the Storage column. The setting in the UI is ignored.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Custom Settings tab, click the Unattend and Configuration Settings subtab, and select the custom unattend file (for example, ESXi_staticIP_customUnattend.cfg).

Deploy OS Images

Operating systems on the selected servers will be over-written.

Choose the unattend and configuration files that you want to use for this deployment. If applicable, also configure common and server-specific configuration settings for operating-system deployments.

Unattend and Configuration Settings | Server Specific Settings | Common Settings

Customization Type: Only unattend file

Select an Unattend File to be applied to the deploy.

Unattend File: None

None

ESXi_staticIP_customUnattend

5. On the Summary tab, review the settings.

6. Click Deploy to deploy the operating system.

Deploying VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization with a configurable locale and second-user credentials

This scenario installs the VMware ESXi v6.7 with Lenovo Customization operating system with a configurable language enabled for the keyboard locale and credentials for a second ESXi user. This example also uses basic network and storage settings that are defined in the UI. A custom OS-image profile is used that includes an unattend file (with predefined and custom macros) and a configuration-settings file for selecting the password. This custom profile can be selected on the Deploy OS Images page. Then, the password can be specified on the Custom Settings tab. The specified value is substituted for the custom macro in the custom unattend file, and the ESXi installer uses those values in the unattend file to configure the operating system.

Before you begin

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- ESXi_locale_customConfig.json. This custom configuration file prompts for the keyboard locale and credentials for the second ESXi user.
- ESXi_locale_customUnattend.cfg. This custom unattend file uses values in predefined macros and custom macros that are defined in the configuration file.

Procedure

To deploy VMware ESXi v6.7 using custom OS-image profile, complete the following steps.
Step 1. Download the VMware vSphere® Hypervisor (ESXi) with Lenovo Customization operating system from the VMware Support – Downloads webpage website to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.

2. Click the **OS Images** tab.

3. Click **Import** icon ( )

4. Click **Local Import**.

5. Click **Browse** to find and select the ESXi image to import (for example, ESXi6.7-7535516-RC-Lenovo_20180126_Async.iso).

6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.

7. Wait for the import to complete.

Step 2. Create a custom configuration-settings file, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

The configuration-settings file is a JSON file that describe the data that needs to be gathered dynamically during the OS deployment process. For this scenario, we want to choose keyboard locale and the user ID and password for a second ESXi user to use for each OS deployment. For more information about creating a configuration-settings file, see Custom macros.

To import the configuration-settings file, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom configuration settings.

1. Click the **Configuration Files** tab.

2. Click the **Import** icon ( )

3. Click **Local Import**.

4. Select ESXi for the operating system.

5. Click **Browse** to find and select the configuration-settings file to import (for example, ESXi_local_customConfig.json).

6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

   **Note:** When you import a custom configuration-settings file, XClarity Administrator generates custom macros for each setting in the file. You can add those macros to the unattend file. During OS deployment, the macros are replaced with actual values.

Step 3. Modify the ESXi unattend (kickstart) file to specify the operating-system locale and keyboard locale and user credentials for the second ESXi user, and then import the custom file to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

Add commands to set the keyboard locale, for example:

```
# Set the keyboard locale
keyboard ''
```

Add commands to create a second ESXi user. In the following example, `<user_id>` and `<password>` will be replaced with custom macros in the next step.

```
#Create second user
/usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/adduser -D -h /tmp <user_id>
echo <password> | /usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/passwd <user_id> --stdin
/bin/vim-cmd vimsvc/auth/entity_permission_add vim.Folder-ha-folder-root <user_id> false Admin true
```

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps.

1. Click the **Unattend Files** tab.
2. Click the **Import** icon (ilmiş).
3. Click **Local Import**.
4. Select **ESXi** for the operating system.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the unattend file to import (for example, **ESXi_local_customUnattend.cfg**).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository

**Step 4.** Associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file, and add the required predefined and custom macros (settings) from the configuration-settings file to the unattend file. For more information, see **Associating an unattend file with a configuration settings file** and **Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file**

**Tip:**
- You can optionally associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file and add macros when importing the unattend file.
- **XClarity Administrator** provides some basic convenience macros, such as OOB driver injection, status reporting, post-install scripts, custom software. However, to take advantage of these predefined macros, you must specify the following macros in the custom unattend file. The example file already contains the required macros. Note that because the %firstboot section is included, the ordering of these predefined macros matters. For more information, see **Importing custom unattend files**.
  ```
  #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
  #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#
  #predefined.unattendSettings.networkConfig#
  #predefined.unattendSettings.storageConfig#
  ```
- **XClarity Administrator** also provides macros that inject all network and storage-location settings that are defined in the UI. These macros are useful when only basic settings are needed for the deployment. The example file already contains the required macros.

For more information about adding macros to unattend files, see **Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file**. For more information about available predefined macros, see **Predefined macros**.

To associate the custom unattend file with the custom configuration-settings file, complete these steps.

1. From the **Unattend Files** tab, select the custom attend file (for example, **ESXi_local_customUnattend.cfg**).
2. Click the **Associate a Configuration File** icon (呤呤) to display the Associate an Unattend File dialog.
3. Select the configuration-settings file to associate with the unattend file (for example, **ESXi_local_customConfig**).
4. Select **Custom** from the **Available Macros** drop-down list.
5. Add the custom macro for specifying the keyboard locale by placing the cursor between the single quotes after keyboard, and then clicking **keyboard_locale**.

For example:
```
# Set the keyboard locale
keyboard 'keyboard_locale' #
```
6. Add the custom macro for specifying the second user’s ID by placing the cursor at each location where you want to add the user ID, and then clicking **second_user_id**. In the example file, replace each occurrence of `<user_id>` with the custom macro.
For example:
#Create second user
/usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/adduser -D -h /tmp #second_user_id#

#second_user_id#
echo <password> | /usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/passwd #second_user_id# --stdin
/bin/vim-cmd vmsvc/auth/entity_permission_add vim.Folder:ha-folder-root #second_user_id# false Admin true

7. Add the custom macro for specifying the second user’s password by placing the cursor at the location where you want to add the password, and then clicking `second_user_password`. In the example file, replace `<password>` with the custom macro.

For example:
#Create second user
/usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/adduser -D -h /tmp #second_user_id#

#second_user_password#
echo #second_user_password# | /usr/lib/vmware/auth/bin/passwd #second_user_id# --stdin
/bin/vim-cmd vmsvc/auth/entity_permission_add vim.Folder:ha-folder-root #second_user_id# false Admin true

8. Click **Associate** to bind the files together and save the changes to the unattend file.

Step 5. Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom configuration-settings and unattend files. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the **OS Images** tab.
2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Virtualization).
3. Click **Create** icon (>Create<) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom ESXi using custom locale and second user credentials).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **Associated unattend and configuration-settings files** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.
5. On the **Unattend Files** tab, select the unattend file (for example, ESXi.locale_customUnattend.cfg), and click **Next**.
   The associated configuration-settings file is automatically selected.
6. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.
7. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 6. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target server. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➜ Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.
2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➜ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   **Tip:**
   - VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➜ IP Assignment ➜ Use VLANS**.
   - The network settings that you specify on the Network Settings dialog are added to the unattend file at runtime using the `#predefined.hostPlatforms.networkConfig#` macro.
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>-<timestamp>_Custom ESXi using custom locale and second user credentials`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.
**Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

d. (Optional) Click the License Key icon (وجب) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the Storage column.

**Notes:**
- To ensure that operating system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.
- The storage settings that you specify on the Storage Settings dialog are added to the unattend file at runtime using the #predefined.hostPlatforms.storageConfig# macro.

f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is Ready.

3. Select all target servers, and click the Deploy image icon (وجب) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the Custom Settings tab, click the Unattend and Configuration Settings subtab, and select the custom configuration-settings file (for example, ESXi_localc_customConfig).

**Note:** The associated custom unattend file is selected automatically.

### Deploying Windows 2016 with custom features

This scenario installs the Windows 2016 operating system and several additional features. A custom profile is used that includes a custom unattend file. The custom profile can then be selected on the Deploy OS Images page.

**Before you begin**
This scenario uses the following sample files.

- **Windows_installFeatures_customUnattend.xml**. This custom unattend file installs the WindowsMediaPlayer and BitLocker features, and uses predefined macros for dynamic values.

**Procedure**

To deploy Windows 2016 with custom features, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Download the Japanese Windows 2016 operating system to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the **OS Images** tab.
3. Click **Import** icon ( ![Import](import_icon.png)).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, ja_windows_server_2016_x64_dvd_9720230.iso).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 2.** Download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing device drivers.

The bundle file contains the latest device drivers and WinPE boot files that you can add to your custom OS-images profiles. This scenario uses a custom boot file, so the boot file in the bundle will not be used.

1. Click the **Driver Files** tab.
2. Click **Downloads ➔ Windows Bundle Files** to go to the Lenovo Support webpage, and download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system.
3. Click **Import** icon ( ![Import](import_icon.png)).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, bundle_win2016_20180126130051.zip).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 3.** Modify the Windows unattend file to install the additional features (such as WindowsMediaPlayer and BitLocker), and import the custom file to the OS-images repository.

In the “servicing” section of the Windows unattend file, add the Windows features to install, for example

```
<servicing>
  <package action="configure">
    <assemblyIdentity name="Microsoft-Windows-Foundation-Package" version="10.0.14393.0"
      processorArchitecture="amd64" publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35"
      language=""/>
    <selection name="Microsoft-Hyper-V" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="MultipathIo" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="FailoverCluster-PowerShell" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="FailoverCluster-FullServer" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="FailoverCluster-CmdInterface" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="FailoverCluster-AutomationServer" state="true"></selection>
    <selection name="FailoverCluster-AdminPak" state="true"></selection>
  </package>
</servicing>
```

Chapter 14. Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers 533
<selection name="MicrosoftWindowsPowerShellRoot" state="true"></selection>
<selection name="MicrosoftWindowsPowerShell" state="true"></selection>
<selection name="ServerManager-Core-RSAT" state="true"></selection>
<selection name="WindowsMediaPlayer" state="true"></selection>
<selection name="BitLocker" state="true"></selection>

</package>
</servicing>

Notes:

- These tags are in the sample unattend file.
- When you use a custom unattend file, XClarity Administrator does not provide many of the normal convenience features that you get when you use a predefined unattend file. For example, the targets <DiskConfiguration>, <ImageInstall>, <ProductKey>, and <UserAccounts> for Administrator, <Interfaces> for networking, and <package> list for installation features must be specified in the custom unattend file that is being uploaded.

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

1. Click the Unattend Files tab.
2. Click Import icon ( ).
3. Click Local Import.
4. Select Windows for the operating system.
5. Click Browse to find and select the custom unattend file (for example, Windows_installFeatures_customUnattend.xml).
6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

XClarity Administrator provides some basic convenience macros, such as OOB driver injection, status reporting, post-install scripts, and custom software. However, to take advantage of these predefined macros, you must specify the following macros in the custom unattend file.

- #predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#
- #predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#

The example file already contains the code for installing the additional features, required macros, and other macros that are needed for dynamic input. For more information about adding macros to unattend files, see Injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file.

For more information about available predefined macros, see Predefined macros.

Step 4. Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the unattend file. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the OS Images tab.
2. Select the profile to customize (for example, win2016-x86_64-install-Datacenter_Virtualization).
3. Click Create icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the General tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom Windows with features).
   b. Use the default value for the Custom data and file path field.
   c. Select Only unattend files for the customization type.
   d. Click Next.
5. On the Driver Options tab, click Next. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the **Boot Options** tab, and click **Next**. The predefined WinPE boot file is selected by default.

7. On the **Software** tab, click **Next**.

8. On the **Unattend Files** tab, select custom unattend file (for example, `Windows_installFeatures_customUnattend.xml`), and click **Next**.

9. On the **Installation Scripts** tab, click **Next**.

10. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

11. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

**Step 5.** Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➤ Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.

2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➤ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, gateway, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➤ IP Assignment ➤ Use VLANS**.
   
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>-<timestamp>_CustomWindowsWithFeatures`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

   **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

   d. (Optional) Click the **License Key** icon (`,` and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

   e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.

   **Note:** To ensure that operating system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

   f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.

3. Select all target servers, and click the **Deploy image** icon (``) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the **Custom Settings** tab, click the **Unattend and Configuration Settings** subtab, and select the custom unattend file (for example, `Windows_installFeatures_customUnattend.xml`).

5. (Optional) On the **Active Directory Domain** tab, specify information to join an Active Directory domain as part of a Windows image deployment (see Integrating with Windows Active Directory).

6. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

7. Click **Deploy** to deploy the operating system.

**Deploying Windows 2016 with custom software**

This scenario installs the Windows 2016 operating system along with custom software (Java and Eclipse IDE). A custom profile is used that includes the custom software and post-installation scripts to install and configure the custom software. The custom software packages are copied to the host during the deployment and made available for the custom post-install script to use.
Before you begin

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- `jre-8u151-windows-x64-with-configfile.zip` This is the installation file for Java for Eclipse.
- `eclipse-java-oxygen-1a-win32-x86_64.zip` This is the installation file for Eclipse IDE.
- `Windows_installSoftware_customScript.ps1` This post-installation script creates a user to launch Eclipse, and installs Eclipse IDE and Java.

Notes:

- Windows installation scripts can be in one of the following formats: Command file (.cmd), PowerShell (.ps1)
- Software files and installation scripts are installed from the custom data and files path that you specify during deployment. The default custom data and files path is `C:\lxca`.

Procedure

To deploy Windows 2016 with custom software, complete the following steps.

Step 1. Download the Japanese Windows 2016 operating system to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➙ Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the **OS Images** tab.
3. Click **Import** icon ( ![Import icon](image.png)).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, `ja_windows_server_2016_x64_dvd_9720230.iso`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

Step 2. Download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing device drivers.

The bundle file contains the latest device drivers and WinPE boot files that you can add to your custom OS-images profiles. This scenario uses a custom boot file, so the boot file in the bundle will not be used.

1. Click the **Driver Files** tab.
2. Click **Downloads ➙ Windows Bundle Files** to go to the Lenovo Support webpage, and download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system.
3. Click **Import** icon ( ![Import icon](image.png)).
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, `bundle_win2016_20180126130051.zip`).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

Step 3. Download the custom software to the local system and import the files into the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing custom software.

1. Click the **Software** tab.
2. Click the Import icon.

3. Click Local Import.

4. Select Windows for the operating system.

5. Click Browse to find and select the configuration-settings file to import (for example, jre-8u151-windows-x64-with-configfile.zip).

6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

7. Click the Import icon again.

8. Click Local Import.

9. Select Windows for the operating system.

10. Click Browse to find and select the configuration-settings file to import (for example, eclipse-java-oxygen-1a-win32-x86_64.zip).

11. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

Step 4. Create a custom post-installation script, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

Add commands to install the software, for example:

Write-Output "Install Java...."
Invoke-Command -ScriptBlock
{
#predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#
jre-8u151-windows-x64.exe
[INSTALLCFG=#predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#
javacfgfile.cfg]
/s}

Write-Output "Install Eclipse..."
$eclipseDir="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\eclipse"
New-Item -ItemType directory -Path $eclipseDir
Expand-Archive -LiteralPath
"#predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation#\eclipse-java-oxygen-1a-win32-x86_64.zip"
-DestinationPath $eclipseDir

Note that these command use the predefined macro for the path to the extracted data and software files (predefined.otherSettings.deployDataAndSoftwareLocation).

You can also add commands to send custom messages to the jobs log in XClarity Administrator, as shown in the sample file. For more information, see Adding custom status reporting to installation scripts.

To import the custom installation script, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom installation scripts

1. Click the Installation Scripts tab.

2. Click the Import icon.

3. Click Local Import.

4. Select Windows for the operating system.

5. Click Browse to find and select the unattend file to import (for example, Windows_installSoftware_customScript.ps1).

6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

Step 5. Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom unattend file. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the OS Images tab.

2. Select an OS-image profile to customize (for example, Datacenter virtualization).
3. Click **Create** icon (>Create<) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.

4. On the **General** tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom Windows with software).
   b. Use the default value for the **Custom data and file path** field.
   c. Select **None** for the customization type.
   d. Click **Next**.

5. On the **Driver Options** tab, click **Next**. The inbox device drivers are included by default.

6. On the **Boot Options** tab, and click **Next**. The predefined WinPE boot file is selected by default.

7. On the **Software** tab, select the software installation files (for example, jre-8u151-windows-x64-with-configfile.zip and eclipse-java-oxygen-1a-win32-x86_64.zip), and click **Next**.

8. On the **Installation Scripts** tab, select the installation scripts (for example, Windows_installSoftware_customScript.ps1), and click **Next**.

9. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

10. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

**Step 6.** Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➙ Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.

2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➙ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➙ IP Assignment ➙ Use VLANs**.
   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>_<timestamp>_Custom Windows with software`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

   **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.
   d. (Optional) Click the **License Key** icon (License Key<) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.
   e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.

   **Note:** To ensure that operating-system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.
   f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.

3. Select all target servers, and click the **Deploy image** icon (Deploy image<) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

5. Click **Deploy** to deploy the operating system.
**Deploying Windows 2016 for Japanese**

This scenario installs the Windows 2016 operating system to multiple servers with Japanese enabled for the keyboard and operating-system locales. A custom profile is used that includes a custom WinPE boot file and unattend file. The custom profile can then be selected on the Deploy OS Images page.

**Before you begin**

This scenario uses the following sample files.

- **WinPE_64_ja.zip**. This custom Windows boot (WinPE) file installs the Japanese locale.
- **Windows_locale_customUnattend.xml**. This custom unattend file uses the WinPE file to install Japanese.

**Notes:** The sample custom unattend file assumes the following:

- The server only has one visible disk (disk 0) and does not already have a system partition on it.
- Static IPv4 mode is used and sets a static IP (which gets used in the custom unattend as a predefined macro).

**Procedure**

To deploy Japanese Windows 2016 to target servers using a custom OS-image profile, complete the following steps.

**Step 1.** Download the Japanese Windows 2016 operating system to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing operating-system images.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning → Manage OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Manage OS Images page.
2. Click the **OS Images** tab.
3. Click **Import** icon ()
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, ja_\windows_server_2016_x64_dvd_9720230.iso).
6. Click **Import** to upload the image to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.

**Step 2.** Download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system, and import the image to the OS-images repository. For more information, see Importing device drivers.

The bundle file contains the latest device drivers and WinPE boot files that you can add to your custom OS-images profiles. This scenario uses a custom boot file, so the boot file in the bundle will not be used.

1. Click the **Driver Files** tab.
2. Click **Downloads → Windows Bundle Files** to go to the Lenovo Support webpage, and download the bundle file for Windows 2016 to the local system.
3. Click **Import** icon ()
4. Click **Local Import**.
5. Click **Browse** to find and select the OS image that you want to import (for example, bundle_\win2016_20180126130051.zip).
6. Click **Import** to upload the file to the OS-images repository.
7. Wait for the import to complete. This might take a while.
Step 3. Create a custom WinPE boot file that uses the Japanese locale during the WinPE install, and import the file to the OS-images repository.

XClarity Administrator uses a predefined Windows PreInstallation (WinPE) boot file to install the Windows operating system. The locale that is used with this predefined boot file is English (en-US). If you want to change the locale that is used during Windows Setup, you can create a custom WinPE boot file with the desired locale and assign that custom boot file to your custom profile.

For information about injecting locales into WinPE, see the [Windows WinPE: Add packages](#) webpage.

**Important:** Specifying a non-English locale in the WinPE boot file does not change the locale of the final OS being deployed. It only changes the locale that is shown during Windows install and setup.

To create a custom WinPE boot file that includes the Japanese locale, complete these steps. For more information, see Creating a boot (WinPE) file.

1. Using a user ID with administrator authority, run the Windows ADK command “Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment.” A command session is displayed.
2. From the command session, change to the directory where the genimage.cmd and starnet. cmd files were downloaded (for example, C:\customwim).
3. Ensure that no previously mounted images are on the host by running the following command:
   ```
   dism /get-mountedwiminfo
   ```
   If there are mounted images, discard them by running the following command:
   ```
   dism /unmount-wim /MountDir:C:\<mount_path> /Discard
   ```
4. If you are adding in-box device drivers to a customized Windows profile, copy the raw device-driver files, in .inf format, to the host system in the C:\drivers directory.
5. Run the following command to generate the boot file, in .wim format, and then wait a few minutes for the command to complete.
   ```
   genimage.cmd amd64 <ADK_Version>
   ```
   Where `<ADK_Version>` is one of the following values.
   - **8.1.** For Windows 2012 R2
   - **10.** For Windows 2016
   This command creates a boot file named C:\WinPE_64\media\Boot\WinPE_64.wim.
6. Mount the boot file by running the following command:
   ```
   DISM /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\WinPE_64\media\Boot\WinPE_64.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\WinPE_64\mount
   ```
7. If you are adding out-of-box device drivers directly to the boot file, complete the following steps.
   a. Create the following directory structure, where `<os_release>` is 2012R2, or 2016 drivers\`<os_release>`\`
   b. Copy the device drivers, in .inf format, to a directory inside that path, for example:
      ```
      drivers\`<os_release>`\<driver1>\<driver1_files>
      ```
   c. Copy the drivers directory to the mount directory, for example:
      ```
      C:\WinPE_64\mount\drivers
      ```
8. **Optional:** Make additional customizations to the boot file, such as adding folders, files, startup scripts, language packs, and apps. For more information about customizing boot files, see the [WinPE: Mount and Customize website](#).
9. Add the Japanese packages, for example.
10. View installed packages to ensure that the Japanese-specific packages are installed.
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_64\mount"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\lp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-DismCmdlets_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-NetFx_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-PowerShell_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-RNDIS_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-Scripting_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-StorageWMI_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-WDS-Tools_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-WMI_ja-jp.cab"
/PackagePath="C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\ja-jp\WinPE-FontSupport-JA-JP.cab"

11. Review the International Settings in the image.
   Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\WinPE_64\mount"

12. Unmount the image by running the following command.
   DISM /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\WinPE_64\mount /commit

13. Compress the contents of the C:\WinPE_64\media directory into a zip file called WinPE_64_ja.zip.

14. Import the .zip file into XClarity Administrator (see Importing boot files).
   a. Click the Boot Files tab.
   b. Click Import icon (open).
   c. Click Local Import.
   d. Select Windows for the operating system.
   e. Click Browse to find and select the custom boot file (for example, WinPE_64_ja.zip).
   f. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

Step 4. Modify the Windows unattend file to specify that Japanese is included in the OS image, and import the custom file to the OS-images repository.

In the “windowsPE” pass of the Windows install, add the Japanese as the operating-system language and the locale, for example:

```xml
<settings pass="windowsPE">
  <component name="Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE" processorArchitecture="amd64"
    publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
    <SetupUILanguage>
      <UILanguage>j-a-JP</UILanguage>
    </SetupUILanguage>
    <SystemLocale>j-a-JP</SystemLocale>
    <UILanguage>j-a-JP</UILanguage>
    <UserLocale>j-a-JP</UserLocale>
    <InputLocale>0411:00000411</InputLocale>
  </component>
</settings>
```
Note: When you use a custom unattend file, XClarity Administrator does not provide many of the normal convenience features that you get when you use a predefined unattend file. For example, the targets `<DiskConfiguration>`, `<ImageInstall>`, `<ProductKey>`, and `<UserAccounts>` for Administrator, `<Interfaces>` for networking, and `<package>` list for installation features must be specified in the custom unattend file that is being uploaded.

XClarity Administrator provides some basic convenience macros, such as OOB driver injection, status reporting, post-install scripts, custom software. However, to take advantage of these predefine macros, you must specify the following macros in the custom unattend file.

- `#predefined.unattendSettings.preinstallConfig#`
- `#predefined.unattendSettings.postinstallConfig#`

The example file already contains the required macros. For more information about adding macros to unattend files, see injecting predefined and custom macros to an unattend file. For more information about available predefined macros, see Predefined macros.

To import the custom unattend file, complete these steps. For more information, see Importing custom unattend files.

1. Click the Unattend Files tab.
2. Click Import icon ( ).
3. Click Local Import.
4. Select Windows for the operating system.
5. Click Browse to find and select the custom unattend file (for example, `Windows_locale_customUnattend.xml`).
6. Click Import to upload the file to the OS-images repository.

**Step 5.** Create a custom OS-image profile that includes the custom boot (WinPE) file and unattend file. For more information, see Creating a custom OS-image profile.

1. Click the OS Images tab.
2. Select the profile to customize (for example, `win2016-x86_64-install-Datcenter_Virtualization`).
3. Click Create icon ( ) to display the Create Customized Profile dialog.
4. On the General tab:
   a. Enter a name for the profile (for example, Custom Windows for Japanese profile).
   b. Use the default value for the Custom data and file path field.
   c. Select Only unattend files for the customization type.
   d. Click Next.
5. On the Driver Options tab, click Next. The inbox device drivers are included by default.
6. On the Boot Files tab, select custom boot file (for example, `WinPE_64_ja`), and click Next.
7. On the Software tab, click Next.
8. On the Unattend Files tab, select custom unattend file (for example, `Windows_locale_customUnattend.xml`), and click Next.
10. On the Summary tab, review the settings.
11. Click **Customize** to create the custom OS-image profile.

Step 6. Deploy the custom OS-image profile to the target servers. For more information, see Deploying an operating-system image.

1. From the XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS Images** to display the Deploy Operating System: Deploy OS Images page.

2. For each target server:
   a. Select the server.
   b. Click **Change Selected ➔ Network Settings**, and specify the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, gateway, DNS, MTU and VLAN settings for the server.

   **Tip:** VLAN settings are available only when VLAN mode is set in **Global Settings ➔ IP Assignment ➔ Use VLANS**.

   c. Select the custom OS-image profile (for example, `<base_OS>-<timestamp>_Custom Windows for Japanese profile`) from the drop-down list in the **Image to Deploy** column.

   **Note:** Ensure that all target servers use the same custom profile.

   d. (Optional) Click the **License Key** icon (キー) and specify the license key to use to activate the operating system after it is installed.

   e. Select the preferred storage location where you want to deploy the operating system image from the **Storage** column.

   **Note:** To ensure that operating system deployments are successful, detach all storage from the managed server except the storage that is chosen for the operating-system deployment.

   f. Verify that the deployment status for the selected server is **Ready**.
3. Select all target servers, and click the **Deploy image** icon ( ) to initiate the operating-system deployment.

4. On the **Custom Settings** tab, click the **Unattend and Configuration Settings** subtab, and select the custom unattend file (for example, *Windows_locale_customUnattend.xml*).

5. (Optional) On the **Active Directory Domain** tab, specify information to join an Active Directory domain as part of a Windows image deployment (see Integrating with Windows Active Directory).

6. On the **Summary** tab, review the settings.

7. Click **Deploy** to deploy the operating system.

   The Windows installation dialog is displayed in Japanese.

   ![Windows installation dialog](image)

   After installation is complete, the Windows login page also displayed in Japanese.
Chapter 14. Installing operating systems on bare-metal servers
Chapter 15. End-to-end scenarios for setting up new devices

Use these end-to-end scenarios describe how to help you use Lenovo XClarity Administrator to set up new devices in a way that is consistent and easily repeatable.

Deploying ESXi to a local hard drive

Use these procedures to deploy VMware ESXi 5.5 to a locally installed hard drive on a Flex System x240 Compute Node. It illustrates how to learn a server pattern from an existing server, modify the extended UEFI-settings category pattern for that server pattern, and how to install VMware ESXi.

VMware ESXi 5.5 requires memory-mapped I/O (MMIO) space to be configured within the initial 4 GB of the system. Depending on the configuration, certain systems attempt to use memory higher than 4 GB, which might cause a failure. To resolve the issue, you can increase the value of the MM Config option to 3 GB through the Setup utility for each server on which VMware ESXi 5.5 is going to be installed.

An alternative is to deploy a server pattern that contains one of the predefined extended UEFI category patterns that is related to virtualization, which sets the MM Config option and disables the PCI 64-bit resource allocation.

Deploying a predefined virtualization pattern

A category pattern defines specific firmware settings that can be reused by multiple server patterns. To deploy a predefined virtualization pattern, you create a server pattern and then apply a predefined extended UEFI pattern to that server pattern. That server pattern can then be applied to multiple servers of the same type, such as the Flex System x240 Compute Node or the Flex System x880 X6 Compute Node.

About this task

When creating a server pattern, you can choose to complete the configuration yourself or learn the pattern attributes from an existing server that has already been set up. When you learn a new pattern from an existing server, most of the pattern attributes are already defined.

For more information about server patterns and category patterns, see Working with server patterns.

Procedure

To learn a new pattern from an existing server, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click Provisioning ➔ Patterns. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. Click the Server Patterns tab.
Step 3. Click the Create icon (Create). The New Server Patterns Wizard is displayed.

**New Server Pattern Wizard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>Local Storage</th>
<th>I/O Adapters</th>
<th>Boot</th>
<th>Firmware Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Before you begin this wizard

Select a starting point

- Create a new pattern from an existing server
- Create a new pattern from scratch

Step 4. Click **Create a new pattern from an existing server**. You can choose to create a pattern from scratch, but it is typically more efficient to create a pattern from an existing server that has the desired configuration.

When you create a server pattern from an existing server, Lenovo XClarity Administrator learns the settings from a managed server (including the extended port, UEFI, and baseboard management controller settings) and dynamically creates category patterns for those settings. If the server is brand new, Lenovo XClarity Administrator learns the manufacturing settings. If the server is in use, Lenovo XClarity Administrator learns the customized settings. You can then modify the settings specifically for the server to which this pattern is to be deployed.

Step 5. Select the server to use as a base configuration when creating the pattern.

**Note:** Remember that the server that you choose must be the same model as the servers to which you intend to deploy the server pattern. This scenario is based on choosing a Flex System x240 Compute Node.

Step 6. Enter the name of the new pattern, and provide a description.

For example:

- Name: `x240_ESXi_deployment`
- Description: *Pattern with extended UEFI settings that are appropriate for the deployment of VMware ESXi*

Step 7. Click **Next** to load the information from the selected server.

Step 8. On the **Local Storage** tab, select **Specify storage configuration**, and choose one of the storage types. Then click **Next**.

For more information about the local-storage settings, see Defining local storage.

Step 9. On the **I/O adapters** tab, enter information about the adapters that are in the servers on which you intend to install VMware ESXi.

Any adapters that were present in the server used as a base are displayed.

If all Flex System x240 Compute Nodes in your installation have the same adapters, you do not need to modify any settings on this tab.

For more information about the I/O adapters settings, see Defining I/O adapters.

Step 10. Click **Next** to continue.
Step 11. On the Boot tab, configure settings for legacy-only boot environment and SAN boot environments. Unless you are using one of these environments, accept the default, which is UEFI Only Boot, and click Next.

For more information about the boot settings, see Defining boot options.

Step 12. On the Firmware Settings tab, specify the management controller and UEFI firmware settings that are to be used for target servers when this pattern is deployed (for example, select x240 Virtualization).

On this tab, you can choose one of the predefined extended UEFI patterns:

For more information about the firmware settings, see Defining firmware settings.

Step 13. Click Save and Deploy to save the pattern to Lenovo XClarity Administrator and deploy it to the servers on which you intend to install VMware ESXi.

What to do next

After the server pattern has been deployed to all servers, you can install the operating system on those servers.

Deploying VMware ESXi to a Flex System x240 Compute Node

Use this procedure as an example flow to illustrate the process for deploying the ESXi operating system to a Flex System x240 Compute Node.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, ensure that Lenovo XClarity Administrator is managing the chassis in which the Flex System x240 Compute Node is installed.

Procedure

Complete the following steps to deploy the ESXi operating system to an Flex System x240 Compute Node.

Step 1. Ensure that the image to be deployed is already loaded into the OS images repository by click All actions ➔ Manage OS images to display a list of all available images.
Step 2. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Deploy OS images**. The Deploy OS Images page is displayed.

Step 3. Set global settings that are to be used as defaults for all image deployments by clicking **All actions ➔ Global Settings** to display the Global Settings dialog.

**Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems**

Specify settings that are used for all image deployments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Credentials</th>
<th>IP Assignment</th>
<th>License Keys</th>
<th>Active Directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Set the credentials to be used on the deployed operating systems.

### Linux or ESXi

User: **root**

Password: 

Confirm Password: 

### Windows

User: **Administrator**

Password: 

Confirm Password: 

a. On the **Credentials** tab, enter the password that is to be used by the administrator account to log in to the operating system.
b. On the IP Assignment tab, specify how the IP address for the operating system will be assigned to the server. If you choose **Use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)** to assign IP addresses, the IP address information is not displayed on the Edit Network Settings dialog (see step Step 8 on page 551). If you choose **Assign static IP address (IPv4)**, you can specify an IP address, subnet, and gateway for each deployment.

c. On the License Keys tab, enter a mass-activation license key, if desired.

d. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

**Step 4.** Ensure that the server is ready for operating system deployment. by selecting the server to which the operating system is to be deployed. Initially, the deployment status might be shown as Not Ready. The deployment status must be Ready before you can deploy an operating system to a server.

**Tip:** You can choose multiple servers in multiple Flex System chassis if you intend to deploy the same operating system to all servers. You can choose up to 28 server.

**Deploy Operating Systems: Deploy OS Images**

Select one or more servers to which images will be deployed. Learn more...

**Note:** Before you begin, validate that the management server network port being used to attach to the data network is configured to be on the same network as the data network ports on the servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Rack Name Unit</th>
<th>Chassis Bay</th>
<th>IP Addr</th>
<th>Deploy Status</th>
<th>Image to Deploy</th>
<th>Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fo-coasm</td>
<td>Fie...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10...</td>
<td>Ready</td>
<td>win2016</td>
<td>win2016-x64_64...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fo-rH5</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10...</td>
<td>Not Ready</td>
<td>sles12.3</td>
<td>2018010933330...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5.** Click in the Image to Deploy column, and select VMware ESXi 5.5 (**esxi5.5_2.33|esxi5.5_2.33-x86_64-install-Virtualization**).

**Step 6.** In that same column, click the License Key icon (_license_key_icon_1_2_3_) to enter the license key for this deployment.

**Tip:** You can also choose to use a mass-activation key that you entered in the Global Settings dialog.

**Step 7.** Ensure that Local Disk is selected in the Storage column.

**Step 8.** Click **Edit** in the Network Settings column of the server row to configure the network settings that are to be used for this deployment. The Edit Network Settings page is displayed.

Fill in the following fields:

- Hostname
- MAC address of the port on the host where the operating system is to be installed
- Domain name system (DNS) servers, if required
- maximum transmission unit (MTU) speed
**Notes:** If you chose **Assign static IP address (IPv4)** from the Global Settings dialog (see step Step 3 on page 550), also enter the following information:

- IPv4 address
- Subnet mask
- Gateway

**Edit Network Settings**

Manage the network settings for operating-system deployments. [Learn More...](#)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chassis and Node</th>
<th>Host Name</th>
<th>MAC Address</th>
<th>*IP Address</th>
<th>*Subnet Mask</th>
<th>*Gateway</th>
<th>DN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lite-btpen-bld1</td>
<td>nodeE36B683B84F</td>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lite-bcpn-bldl</td>
<td>node12498C0000D2</td>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 9. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

From the Deploy OS images page, ensure that the server shows a Deploy Status of Ready.

Step 10. Deploy the operating system by clicking **All actions ➜ Deploy images**.

Step 11. From the confirmation page, click **Deploy** to deploy the image.

If the server currently has an operating system installed, you are warned about the fact that deploying the image will overwrite the current operating system.

**Tip:** You can set up a Remote Control session to watch the installation as it progresses. Click **All actions ➜ Remote Control** to start a Remote Control session with the server.

When you deploy the operating system, Lenovo XClarity Administrator starts a job to track the deployment. To view the status of the deployment job, click **Jobs** from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar. Then, click the **Running** tab.
Hover over the running job to see the details, such as the percentage of the job that is complete.

**Results**

After the operating system deployment has completed, log in to the IP address that you specified on the Edit Network Settings page to continue with the configuration process.

**Note:** The license provided with the image is a 60-day free trial. You are responsible for meeting all VMware licensing requirements.
Deploying ESXi to SAN storage

Use these procedures to deploy VMware ESXi 5.5 to SAN volumes that are attached to servers.

When you deploy an operating system to a SAN, the operating system is deployed to the first SAN boot target that is configured through a server pattern. In addition, a local hard drive cannot be enabled in the server that will be booting from SAN. It must be disabled or removed if a hard drive is present.

Deploying a server pattern to support SAN boot

When you create and deploy a server pattern to support booting a system from SAN, ensure that you identify the SAN boot target and the adapters that are part of the server.

Procedure
To create and deploy a server pattern that supports the deployment of the operating system on SAN storage, complete the following steps.

Step 1. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Patterns**. The Configuration Patterns: Patterns page is displayed.

Step 2. To identify the WWPN and LUN IDs of the storage volumes where the operating system is to be deployed, create a category pattern.
   a. Click the **Category Patterns** tab.
   b. Click **Fibre Channel Boot Target Patterns**, and then click the **Create** icon (➕).
   c. Enter the WWPN of the storage target.

   **Note:** Click **Allow Multiple LUN Identifiers** to assign multiple target LUN identifiers to the same storage volumes.

   **New Fibre Channel Boot Target Pattern**

   ![New Fibre Channel Boot Target Pattern](image)

   d. Click **Create** to create the pattern. The target is displayed in the list of Fibre Channel boot target patterns.

Step 3. Click the **Server Patterns** tab to create a pattern.

Step 4. Click the **Create** icon (➕). The New Server Patterns Wizard is displayed.
New Server Pattern Wizard

Step 5. Click **Create a new pattern from scratch**.

Step 6. On the **General** tab:
- Select **Flex Compute Node** for the form factor.
- Specify a pattern name (**x240_san_boot**) and description.
- Click **Next**.

Step 7. On the **Local Storage** tab, consider disabling the local storage adapter if you are using a diskless system to improve boot times that are related to scanning for local drives. Then, click **Next**.

Step 8. On the **I/O Adapters** tab, add the Ethernet and Fibre Channel cards. Ensure that they are in the appropriate PCI slots.

a. For each card, click **Add I/O Adapter**, choose the PCI slot where the card is located, and select the card.

**Note:** Ensure that you specify an Ethernet card and a Fibre Channel card.

Edit Server Pattern Wizard

b. Ensure that I/O adapter addressing is set to **Virtual**. Then click the **Edit** icon to specify the configuration to be used for Ethernet (MAC) virtual addressing and Fibre Channel (WWN) virtual addressing.
Note: From the Edit Virtual Addressing page, you can choose to use the burned-in MAC address for the Ethernet card by disabling the virtual addressing. However, to select and use a Fibre Channel boot-target pattern, you must use virtual addressing for the Fibre Channel adapter.

c. Click Next.

Step 9. On the Boot tab, add the SAN boot target pattern that you created earlier.

a. On the SAN Boot tab, choose the boot target pattern that you defined.

b. Click Next.

Step 10. On the Firmware Settings tab, define any additional category patterns that are to be included in this server pattern. You can define the following category patterns.

- **System information** (see Defining system-information settings)
- **Management interface** (see Defining management-interface settings)
- **Device and I/O ports** (see Defining devices and I/O ports settings)
- **Extended BMC**. You can choose from baseboard management controller settings that have been learned previously (see Defining extended management-controller settings).
- **Extended UEFI**. You can choose from predefined settings or from UEFI settings that have been learned previously (see Defining extended UEFI settings).

Step 11. Click **Save and Deploy** to save the pattern to Lenovo XClarity Administrator, and deploy it to the servers on which you intend to install VMware ESXi.

What to do next

Consider the following steps after the server pattern has been deployed to all servers.

1. Take the virtualized WWPN addresses that were created, and add them to the storage zone so that the server can reach the defined storage LUNs.

   **Tip:** After you deploy the server profile, you can find the virtualized WWPN addresses by viewing the server profile.

   a. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➔ Server profiles**.

   b. Click the deployed server profile (for example, **x240_SAN_boot**). The **Virtual Address Mapping** tab displays the list of addresses.

2. Deploy the operating system to the server.

**Deploying VMware ESXi to SAN storage**

Use this procedure as an example flow to illustrate the process for deploying the ESXi operating system to SAN storage that is connected to a server.

**Before you begin**

Before you begin this procedure, ensure that Lenovo XClarity Administrator is managing the chassis in which the Flex System x220 Compute Node is installed.

**Procedure**

Complete the following steps to deploy the ESXi operating system to an Flex System x222 Compute Node.

Step 1. Ensure that the image to be deployed is already loaded into the OS images repository by clicking **All actions ➔ Manage OS images**.
Step 2. From the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar, click **Provisioning ➞ Deploy OS images**

Step 3. Set global settings that are to be used as a default for all image deployments by clicking **All actions ➞ Global Settings** to display the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog.

**Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems**

Specify settings that are used for all image deployments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Deploy Status</th>
<th>Customization</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>win2016</td>
<td>Base OS Image</td>
<td></td>
<td>Customizable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhels7.4-060815</td>
<td>Base OS Image</td>
<td></td>
<td>Customizable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esxi6.7-8169022</td>
<td>Base OS Image</td>
<td></td>
<td>Customizable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Set the credentials to be used on the deployed operating systems.

**Linux or ESXi**

User: root
Password:
Confirm Password:

**Windows**

User: Administrator
Password:
Confirm Password:

a. On the **Credentials** tab, enter the password that is to be used by the administrator account to log in to the operating system.

b. On the **IP Assignment** tab, specify how the IP address for the operating system is to be assigned to the server.
If you choose **Use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)** to assign IP addresses, the IP address information will not be displayed on the Edit Network Settings dialog (see step Step 8 9 on page 559). If you choose **Assign static IP address (IPv4)**, you can specify an IP address, subnet, and gateway for each deployment.

c. On the **License Keys** tab, enter a mass-activation license key, if desired.
d. Click **OK** to close the dialog.

**Step 4.** Ensure that the server is ready for operating-system deployment by selecting server to which the operating system is to be deployed. Initially, the deployment status might be shown as Not Ready. The deployment status must be Ready before you can deploy an operating system to a server.

**Tip:** You can choose multiple servers from multiple Flex System chassis if you intend to deploy the same operating system to all servers. You can choose up to 28 servers.

**Deploy Operating Systems: Deploy OS Images**

Select one or more servers to which images will be deployed. [Learn more...]

**Note:** Before you begin, validate that the management server network port being used to attach to the data network is configured to be on the same network as the data network ports on the servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Rack Name Unit</th>
<th>Chas Bay</th>
<th>IP Addr</th>
<th>Deploy Status</th>
<th>Image to Deploy</th>
<th>Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fc-osm</td>
<td>File...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10....</td>
<td>Ready</td>
<td>win2016\win2016-x86_64...</td>
<td>Local Disk Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpx-fc-mds</td>
<td>File...</td>
<td>Un...</td>
<td>10....</td>
<td>Not Ready</td>
<td>sles12.3</td>
<td>0218010933339...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5.** Click in the **Image to Deploy** column, and select VMware ESXi 5.5 (*esxi5.5_2.33*|esxi5.5_2.33-x86_64-install-Virtualization*)

**Step 6.** In that same column, click the **License Key** icon (쐤) to enter the license key for this deployment.

**Tip:** You can also choose to use a mass-activation key that you entered in the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog.

**Step 7.** In the **Storage** column, select the SAN storage to which the operating system is to be deployed.

The storage is listed as:

**LUN:** <LUN VALUE>  **WWPN:** <WWPN_VALUE>

**Step 8.** Click **Edit** in the **Network Settings** column of the server row to configure the network settings that is to be used for this deployment. The Edit Network Settings page is displayed.

Fill in the following fields:
- Hostname
- MAC address of the port on the host where the operating system will be installed
- Domain name system (DNS) serveres, if required
- Maximum transmission unit (MTU) speed

**Notes:** If you chose **Assign static IP address (IPv4)** from the Global Settings: Deploy Operating Systems dialog (step Step 3 4 on page 558), also enter the following information:
- IPv4 address
- Subnet mask
Step 9. Click OK to close the dialog.

From the Deploy OS images page, the server now shows a deployment status of Ready.

Step 10. Deploy the operating system by clicking All actions ➤ Deploy images.

Step 11. From the confirmation page, click Deploy to deploy the image.

If the server currently has an operating system installed, you are warned about the fact that deploying the image will overwrite the current operating system.

Tip: You can set up a remote-control session to watch the installation as it progresses. Click All actions ➤ Remote Control to start a remote-control session with the server.

When you deploy the operating system, Lenovo XClarity Administrator starts a job to track the deployment. To view the status of the deployment job, click Jobs from the Lenovo XClarity Administrator menu bar. Then, click the Running tab.
Hover over the running job to see the details, such as the percentage of the job that is complete.

Results

After the operating-system deployment has completed, log in to the IP address that you specified on the Edit Network Settings page to continue with the configuration process.

Note: The license provided with the image is a 60-day free trial. You are responsible for meeting all VMware licensing requirements.
Notices

Lenovo may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in all countries. Consult your local Lenovo representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area.

Any reference to a Lenovo product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that Lenovo product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any Lenovo intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user’s responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any other product, program, or service.

Lenovo may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document is not an offer and does not provide a license under any patents or patent applications. You can send inquiries in writing to the following:

Lenovo (United States), Inc.
1009 Think Place
Morrisville, NC 27560
U.S.A.
Attention: Lenovo VP of Intellectual Property

LENOVO PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. Lenovo may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

The products described in this document are not intended for use in implantation or other life support applications where malfunction may result in injury or death to persons. The information contained in this document does not affect or change Lenovo product specifications or warranties. Nothing in this document shall operate as an express or implied license or indemnity under the intellectual property rights of Lenovo or third parties. All information contained in this document was obtained in specific environments and is presented as an illustration. The result obtained in other operating environments may vary.

Lenovo may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Any references in this publication to non-Lenovo Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this Lenovo product, and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the result obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.
Trademarks

LENOVO, SYSTEM, NEXTSCALE, SYSTEM X, THINKSERVER, THINKSYSTEM, and XCLARITY are trademarks of Lenovo.

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Windows PowerShell, Hyper-V, Internet Explorer, and Active Directory are registered trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

Mozilla and Firefox are registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Nutanix is a trademark and brand of Nutanix, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Red Hat is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

SUSE is a trademark of SUSE IP Development Limited or its subsidiaries or affiliates.

VMware vSphere is a registered trademark of VMware in the United States, other countries, or both.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.